



3 1761 04482 9786

Mandeville's Travels



UNIV. OF
TORONTO
LIBRARY

Mandeville's Travels.

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, No. 153.

1919 (for 1916).

Price 15s.

NEW YORK : C. SCRIBNER & CO., LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA : J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

Philol.

Mandeville's Travels,

Translated from the French of Jean d'Outremeuse.

EDITED FROM
MS. COTTON TITUS C. XVI,
IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM.

BY
P. HAMELIUS,
PROFESSOR OF ENGLISH LITERATURE IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LIÉGE.

VOL. I.: TEXT.

180165-
9. 5. 23.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.,
BROADWAY HOUSE, LUDGATE HILL, E.C. 4.

AND BY HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS
AMEN CORNER, E.C. 4, AND IN NEW YORK.

MDCCCXCIX.

PR
1119
AZ
no 153-154

Original Series, 153.

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY RICHARD CLAY & SONS, LIMITED,
BRUNSWICK ST., STAMFORD ST., S.E. 1, AND BUNGAY, SUFFOLK.

TO
GENERAL LEMAN

DEFENDER OF LIÉGE

THIS EDITION OF A FAMOUS WORK WHICH LINKS
OLD ENGLAND WITH THE CITY OF LIÉGE
IS FITTINGLY AND GRATEFULLY
DEDICATED

PREFACE.

THE introduction and notes, in which the reasons for re-editing the Cotton MS. of Mandeville with hardly any emendations will be fully stated, are reserved for a later volume. For the present, it may be stated that the editor's choice lay between two principal manuscripts, the Cotton MS., first edited in 1725 and since then frequently reprinted from that edition, and the Egerton MS., edited with full commentary for the Roxburghe Club by Sir George Warner (1889). Imperfect as the Cotton version is, it adheres very closely to the French original, as represented in Sir George Warner's Anglo-French text, and in two Brussels MSS. copied by the present editor. Its mistakes are to a great extent due to the anonymous English translator. They exemplify the way in which the growth of literary Middle English was influenced by French phraseology, and they are traceable to three main causes: (1) the original French book, and *a fortiori* its Englisher, is quite inaccurate in its geography; (2) the Englisher followed a faulty manuscript; (3) he was very imperfectly acquainted with its language, and very slipshod in his grammar. On the whole, his method was that of a schoolboy, who follows his author literally, without much attention to sense or idiom.

For these reasons, the task of distinguishing between original mistakes, which an editor has no right to remove, and the copyist's scribal blunders has been found a delicate one, and no attempt has been made to produce a *correct* or faked text. The punctuation is the editor's. An account of the origin of Mandeville is to be found in the *Quarterly Review*, April, 1917.

P. H.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

CHAPTER	PAGE
PROLOGUE	1
I. TO TECHÉ 3OU THE WEYE OUT OF ENGLOND TO COSTANTYNOBLE	4
II. OF THE CROSS AND THE CROUNE OF OURE LORD JHESU CRIST	6
III. OF THE CYTEE OF COSTANTYNOBLE t OF THE FEITH OF GREKES	9
IV. OF SEYNT JOHN THE EUUANGELIST t OF YPOCRAS DOUGHTER TRANSFORMED FROM A WOMMAN TO A DRAGON	13
V. [OF DIVERSITIES IN CYPRUS; OF THE ROAD FROM CYPRUS TO IERUSALEM, AND OF THE MARVELS OF THE FOSS FULL OF SAND]	16
VI. OF MANYE NAMES OF SOUDANS, t OF THE TOUR OF BABILOYNE	21
VII. OF THE CONTREE OF EGIPT; OF THE BRID FENIX; OF ARABYE; OF THE CYTEE OF CAYRE; OF THE CONNYNGE TO KNOWN BAWME AND TO PREVEN IT, AND OF THE GERNERES OF JOSEPH	28
VIII. OF THE YLE OF CECYLE; OF THE WEYE FRO BABYLOYNE TO THE MOWNT SYNAY; OF THE CHIRCHE OF SEYNTE KATERYNE, AND OF ALLE THE MERUAYLLES þERE	34
IX. OF THE WEYE THAT GOTII FROM BABILOYNE, VNTO THE MOWNT SYNAY, t OF THE MERUEYLES þERE	37
X. OF THE DESERT BETWENE THE CHIRCHE OF SEYNTE KATERYNE t IERUSALEM; OF THE DRIE TRE, t HOW ROSES CAM FIRST IN þE WORLD	42

EDITOR'S ANALYSIS.

[PART FIRST: THE HOLY LAND AND THE NEAR EAST.]

CHAPTER	PAGE
[PROLOGUE. VALUE OF THE PILGRIMAGE] . . .	1
[I. THE WAY TO CONSTANTINOPLE]	4
[II. THE CROSS AND CROWN]	6
[III. CONSTANTINOPLE AND THE GREEK FAITH] . . .	9
[IV. THE LADY OF LANGO]	13
[V. CYPRUS AND ACRE]	16
[VI. CAIRO AND THE SULTANS]	21
[VII. EGYPT, BALM, THE PYRAMIDS]	28
[VIII. FROM ITALY TO ALEXANDRIA]	34
[IX. FROM CAIRO TO SINAI]	37
[X. THE DESERT AND BETHLEHEM]	42

CHAPTER		PAGE
XI.	OF THE PILGRIMAGES IN IERUSALEM † OF THE HOLY PLACES þERABOWTE	48
XII.	OF THE TEMPLE OF OURE LORD ; OF THE CRUELTEE OF KYNG HEROD ; OF THE MOUNT SYON ; OF PROBatica PISCINA, AND OF NATATORIUM SYLOE	53
XIII.	OF THE DEDE SEE, AND OF THE FLOM JORDAN ; OF THE HED OF SEYNT JOHN THE BAPTIST, † OF THE VSAGES OF THE SAMARITANES	66
XIV.	OF THE PROVINCE OF GALILEE † WHERE ANTECRIST SCHAEŁ BEN BORN ; OF NAZARETH ; OF THE AGE OF OURE LADY ; OF THE DAY OF DOOM, † OF THE CUSTOMES OF IACOBITES, SURRYENES † OF THE VSAGES OF GEORGYENES	73
XV.	OF THE CYTEE OF DAMASCE ; OF .iij. WEYES TO IERUSALEM : ON BE LONDE † BE SEE, ANOTHER MORE BE LONDE þAN BE SEE, AND THE THRIDDE WEYE TO IERUSALEM : AŁ BE LONDE	81
XVI.	OF THE CUSTOMES OF SARASINES, † OF HIRE LAWE, † HOW THE SOUDAN ARRESOND ME AUTOUR OF THIS BOOK, AND OF THE BEGYN- NYNGE OF MACHOMETE	84

PART II.

XVII.	OF THE LONDES OF ALBANYE AND OF LIBYE ; OF THE WISSHINGES FOR WACCHINGE OF THE SPERHAUK, † OF NOES SCHIPPE	95
XVIII.	OF THE LOND OF IOB † OF HIS AGE ; OF THE ARAY OF MEN OF CALDEE ; OF THE LOND WHERE WOMMEN DUELLE WITHOUTEN COM- PANYE OF MEN ; OF THE KNOULECHE † VER- TUES OF THE VERRAY DYAMAUNT	100
XIX.	OF THE CUSTOMS OF YLES ABOUTEN YNDE ; OF THE DIFFERENCE BETWIX YDOLES † SIMU- LACRES ; OF .iij. MANER GROWYNGES OF PEPE- R VPON O TREE ; OF THE WELLE þAT CHAUNGETH HIS ODOUR EVERY HOUR OF THE DAY, † þAT IS MERUAYLLE	107

PTER	PAGE
[XI. JERUSALEM AND THE SEPULCHRE] . . .	48
[XII. THE TEMPLE, SION AND OLIVET] . . .	53
[XIII. THE DEAD SEA, THE SAMARITANS] . . .	66
[XIV. GALILEE. CHRISTIAN SECTS] . . .	73
[XV. VARIOUS ROUTES TO JERUSALEM] . . .	1
[XVI. MAHOMET AND HIS LAW] . . .	84

[PART SECOND:

THE COUNTRIES BEYOND THE HOLY LAND.]

[XVII. ARMENIA. THE SPARROW-HAWK TALE . . .	95
[XVIII. CHALDEA. VARIETIES OF DIAMONDS] . . .	100
[XIX. INDIA. ITS SUPERSTITIONS] . . .	107

CHAPTER	PAGE
XX OF THE DOMES MADE BE SEYNT THOMAS HOND; OF DEUOCIOUN & SACRIFICE MADE TO YDOLES PERE, IN THE CYTEE OF CALAMYE; AND OF THE PROCESSION IN GOYNGE ABOUTE THE CYTEE	114
XXI. OF THE EUYEL CUSTOMS VSED IN THE YLE OF LAMARY, & HOW THE ERTHE AND THE SEE BEN OF ROWND FORME AND SCHAFF, BE PREF OF THE STERRE THAT 'IS CLEPT ANTARTYK, PAT IS FIX IN THE SOUTH	118
XXII. OF THE PALAYS OF THE KYNG OF THE YLE OF IAUA; OF THE TREES PAT BEREN MELE, HONY, WYN & VENYM, & OF OTHERE MERUAYLLES & CUSTOMS VSED IN THE YLES MARCHINGE PERE ABOUTEN	124
XXIII. HOW MEN KNOWEN BE THE YDOLE, 3IF THE SIKE SCHALL DYE OR NON; OF FOLK OF DYUERSE SCHAP AND MERUEYLOUSLY DIS- FIGURED, AND OF THE MONKES PAT 3EVEN HIRE RELEEF TO BABEWYNES, APES & MAR- MESETTES & TO OPER BESTES	132
XXIV. OF THE GRETE CHANE OF CHATAY; OF THE RIALTEE OF HIS PALAYS & HOW HE SITT AT METE, AND OF THE GRETE NOMBRE OF OFFICERES PAT SERUEN HYM	140
XXV. WHERFORE HE IS CLEPT THE GRETE CHANE; OF THE STYLE OF HIS LETTRES, AND OF THE SUPERSCRIPCION ABOWTEN HIS GRETE SEALL & HIS PRYUEE SEALL	145
XXVI. OF THE GOUERNANCE OF THE GRETE CHANES COURT & WHAN HE MAKETH SOLEMPNE FESTES; OF HIS PHILOSOPHRES, AND OF HIS ARRAY WHAN HE RIDETH BE PE CONTRE	152
XXVII. OF THE LAWE & THE CUSTOMS OF THE TAR TARIENES, DUELLYNGE IN CHATAY, & HOW PAT MEN DON WHAN THE EMPEROUR SCHAL DYE, & HOW HE SCHAL BE CHOSEN	163
XXVIII. OF THE ROIALME OF THARSE & THE LONDES & KYNGDOMS TOWARDES THE SEPTENTRIONAL PARTIES IN COMYNGE DOWN FROM THE LOND OF CHATHAY	169

[XX. ST. THOMAS. THE JUGGERNAUT CAR]	114
--------------------------------------	-----

[XXI. THE EARTH IS A SPHERE]	118
------------------------------	-----

[XXII. STRANGE SPICES, STONES AND PEOPLE]	124
---	-----

[XXIII. IDOLATRY. TRANSMIGRATION OF SOULS]	132
--	-----

[XXIV. THE GREAT CAN'S COURT]	140
-------------------------------	-----

[XXV. RISE OF JENGHIZ KHAN]	145
-----------------------------	-----

[XXVI. SPLENDOUR OF THE CAN'S HOUSEHOLD]	152
--	-----

[XXVII. MANNERS OF THE TARTARS]	163
---------------------------------	-----

[XXVIII. TURKESTAN AND RUSSIA]	169
--------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXIX. OF THE EMPEROUR OF PERSYE AND OF THE LOND OF DERKNESSE, AND OF OTHER KYNG- DOMES þAT BELONGEN TO THE GRETE CANE OF CATHAY, AND OTHER LONDES OF HIS, VNTO THE SEE OF GRECE	171
XXX. OF THE CONTREES t YLES þAT BEN BEȜONDE THE LOND OF CATHAY t OF THE FRUTES þERE t OF .XXIJ. KYNGES ENCLOSED WITHYN THE MOUNTAYNES	175
XXXI. OF THE RYALL ESTATE OF PRESTRE IOHN t OF A RICHE MAN þAT MADE A MERUEYLOUS CASTELL AND CLEPED IT PARADYS t OF HIS SOTYLTEE	179
XXXII. OF THE DEUELES HEDE IN THE VALEYE PERILOUS, AND OF THE CUSTOMS OF FOLK IN DYUERSE YLES þAT BEN ABOUTEN IN THE LORDSCHYPE OF PRESTRE IOHN	187
XXXIII. OF THE GODENESS OF THE FOLK OF THE YLE OF BRAGMAN; OF KYNG ALISANDRE, AND WHEREFORE THE EMPEROUR OF YNDE IS CLEPT PRESTRE IOHN	194
XXXIV. OF THE HILLES OF GOLD þAT PISSEMYRES KEPEN, AND OF THE .IIIJ. FLODES þAT COMEN FROM PARADYS TERRESTRE	200
XXXV. OF THE CUSTOMS OF KYNGES t OPERE þAT DWELLEN IN THE YLES COSTYNGE TO PRESTE IOHNES LOND, AND OF THE WORSCHYPE þAT THE SONE DOTHTO THE FADER WHAN HE IS DEDE	204
APPENDIX.	
PART OF CHAPTER XV.	212

CHAPTER	PAGE
[XXIX. PERSIA AND TURKEY]	171
[XXX. THE LOST TRIBES. GOG AND MAGOG]	175
[XXXI. PRESTER JOHN. THE ASSASSINS]	179
[XXXII. THE VALE PERILOUS. MONSTERS]	187
[XXXIII. VIRTUOUS HEATHENS AND HERETICS]	194
[XXXIV. THE GOLD COUNTRY. PARADISE]	200
[XXXV. HEATHEN BELIEFS. THE POPE'S APPROVAL]	204

APPENDIX.

PART OF CHAPTER XV.	212
-----------------------------	-----

[PART FIRST:
THE HOLY LAND AND THE
NEAR EAST.]

Mandeville's Travels.

¹ **F**OR als moche as the lond bezonde the see þat is to
 seye the holy lond þat men callen the lond of pro-
 myssioun or of behestē passynge aH opere londes it is the
 4 most worthi lond most excellent and lady t souereyn of aH
 opere londes t is blessed t halewed of the precyous body
 t blood of oure lord ihesu crist; in the whiche land it
 lykede him to take flesh t blood of the virgine Marie to
 8 envyrone þat holy lond with his blessedē feet; And pere
 he wolde of his blessedness enoumbe him in the seyde
 blessed t gloriouse virgine Marie t become man t worche
 many myracles and preche and teche the feyth t the
 12 lawe of crystene men vnto his children. And pere it
 lykede him to suffre many repreynges and scornes for
 vs And he þat was kyng of heuene of eyr of erthe
 of see t of aH thinges þat ben containyd in hem wolde
 16 aH only be cleped kyng of þat lond whan he seyde:
 REX SUM IUDEORUM: þat is to seyne: I am kyng of Jewes.
 And þat lond he chees before aH oper londes as the beste
 t most worthi lond t the most vertuouse lond of aH the
 20 world. For it is the herte and the myddes of all the
 world, Wytnessynge the philosophere þat seyth thus:
 VIRTUS RERUM IN MEDIO CONSISTIT that is to seye: the
 vertue of thinges is in the myddes. And in þat lond he
 24 wolde lede his lyf t suffre passioun t deth of jewes for vs
 for to bye t to delyuere vs from peynes of helle And
 from deth withouten ende, the whiche was ordeynd for vs
 for ¹ the synne of oure formere fader Adam t for oure
 28 owne synnes also. For as for himself he hadde non
 cuyH deserued for he thoughte neuere cuyH ne did cuyH.

Prologue.

[1 fol. 2 a]

Palestine
is the best of
countries;

there our
Lord lived
and died.

He called
Himself
King of the
Jews.

It is the
centre of the
world:

our redemp-
tion was
achieved
there.

[1 fol. 2 b]

It was thus
honoured
above all
lands
because it
lies in the
middle of
the earth.

The dearest
price was
offred there
for redeem-
ing
mankind.

How He
loved us
sinners!

Therefore
we may well
love and
praise the
Holy Land,
which was
given to us
as an
inheritance.

[1 fol. 3 a]

Let us strive
to conquer
it from the
unbelievers.

But the
lords are too
covetous

And he þat was kyng of glorie t of ioye myghte best in
that place suffre deth because he ches in þat lond rather
þan in ony othere pere to suffre his passioun t his deth.
For he þat wil pupplische ony thing to make it openly 4
knownen he wil make it to ben cryed t pronounced in the
myddel place of a town so þat the thing þat is proclaimed
t pronounced may euenly strecche to aH parties. Right
so he þat was formyour of aH the world wolde suffre 8
for vs at ierusalem þat is the myddes of the world to
þat ende t entent þat his passioun t his deth þat was
pupplischt pere myghte ben knownen euenly to aH the
parties of the world. See now how dere he boughte man 12
þat he made after his owne ymage t how dere he agen-
bought vs for the grete loue þat he hadde to vs t we neuere
deserued it to him. For more precyous cateH ne gretter
raunsoun ne myghte he put for vs þan his blessedde body 16
his precious blood t his holy lyf þat he thrallled for vs t
aH he offred for vs þat neuere did synne. Dere god, what
loue hadde he to vs his subiettes whan he þat neuere
trespaced wolde for trespassours suffre deth! Right wel 20
aughte vs for to lone t worseipe to drede t serue such a
lord and to worschipe t preyse such an holy lond þat
brought forth such fruyt porghe the whiche enery man is
saued but it be his owne defeaute. Wel may þat lond be 24
called ¹delytable t a fructuouse lond þat was bebledd t
moysted with the precyouse blode of oure lord jhesu crist,
the whiche is the same lond þat oure lord behighte vs in
heritage. And in þat lond he wolde dye as seised for to 28
leve it to vs his children. Wherefore enery gode cristene
man þat is of powere t hath whereof scholde peynen him
with aH his strengthe for to conquere oure right heritage
t chacen out aH the mysbeleenyng men. For wee ben 32
clept cristene men after crist oure fader And 3if wee be
right children of crist we oughte for to chalenge the
heritage þat oure fader lasse vs t do it out of hethene
mennes hondes. But now pryde couetyse t envye han so 36
enflawmed the hertes of lordes of the world þat þei are

more besy for to disherite here neyghbores more þan for
 to chalenge or to conquere here right heritage before seyð.
 And the comōūn peple þat wolde putte here bodyes t here
 4 eateH for to conquere oure heritage þei may not don it
 withouten the lordes. For a semblee of peple withouten
 a cheuenteyn or a chief lord is as a flok of scheep withouten
 a schepperde the which departeth t desparpleth t wyten
 8 neuer whider to go. But wolde god þat the temporel
 lordes t aH workldly lordes were at gode acord t with the
 comoun peple wolden taken this holy viage over the see
 . þanne I trowe wel þat within a lityl tyme oure right
 12 heritage before seyð scholde be reconsyled t put in the
 hondes of the right heires of jhesu crist. And for als
 moche as it is longe tyme passed þat þer was no generatH
 passage ne vyage over the see t many men desiren for to
 16 here ¹speke of the holy lond t han þere of gret solace t
 comforte, I John Maundevylle knyght aH be it I be not
 worthi þat was born in Englund, in the town of seynt
 Albones t passed the see in the 3eer of oure lord jhesu
 20 crist .MiH eee t xxij. in the day of seynt MicheH t hiderto
 haue ben longe tyme over the see t haue seyn t gon
 þorgh manye dyuerse londes t many prouynces t kyng-
 domes t jles And haue passed þorghout Turkye Ermonyne
 24 the lityH t the grete þorgh Tartarye Pereye Surrye Arabye
 Egypt the high t the lowe thorgh lybye Caldee t a gret
 partie of Ethiope þorgh Amazoyne Inde the lasse t the
 more a gret partie t thorgh out many othere jles þat ben
 28 abouten Inde where dwellen many dyuerse folk t of dyuerse
 maneres t lawes and of dyuerse schappes of men Of
 whiche londes t jles I schaH speke more pleynty here after
 And I schaH devise 3ou sum partie of thinges þat þere ben
 32 whan tyme schaH ben after it may best come to my mynde.
 And speccially for hem þat wiH t are in purpos for to
 visite the holy citee of Ierusalem t the holy places þat are
 pereaboute. And I schaH tell the weye þat þei schuH
 36 holden thider For I haue often tymes passed t ryden þat
 way with gode compaigne of many lordes, god be thonked.

and envious,
 and the
 commoners
 want
 leaders.

If all would
 only agree,
 we should
 soon regain
 our
 inheritance.

As it is
 some time
 since the last
 Crusade, I,
 John Maun-
 devylle, who
 have
 travelled far
 and wide,
 will tell you
 of some of
 the things
 that I have
 seen.

[1 fol 3b]

To intending
 pilgrims I
 will tell the
 way.

I have translated this book for the benefit of gentlemen unacquainted with the Latin tongue.

For any mistakes in it I ask forgiveness.
[1 fol. 4 a]

And 3ee schuH vnderstonde þat I haue put this boke out of latyn in to frensch & translated it azen out of frensch in to Englyssch þat euery man of my nacioun may vnderstonde it. + But lordes & knyghtes & othere noble & worthi men þat conne not latyn but lityH & han ben bezonde the see knowen & vnderstonden 3if I seye trouthe or non. And 3if I þerr in deuisinge for forȝetynge or eH þat þei mowe redresse it & amende it. For thinges passed out of longe tyme from a mannes mynde or from his syght turnen sone in to forȝetynge because þat mynde of man ne may not ben comprehended ne with holden for the freeltee of mankynde.

Ch. I. TO TECHE 3OU THE WEYE OUT OF ENGLOND TO COSTANTYNOPLE.

Many ways lead to Jerusalem.

One road leads from the West through the states of the King of Hungary, who is lord over Slavonia, Cumania, Bulgaria, and part of Russia.

IN the name of god glorious & almyghty he þat wil passe ouer the see & come to londe after the contree þat he cometh fro manye of hem comen to on ende. But troweth not þat I wil telH 3ou aH the townes & cytees & castelles þat men schuH go by for þan scholde I make to longe a tale But aH only summe contrees & most princypal stedes þat men schuH gone þorgh to gon the righte way. First 3if a man come from the west syde of the world as Engeland Ireland Wales Skotland or Norweye he may 3if þat he wole go þorgh Almayne & þorgh the kyngdom of hungarye þat marcheth to the lond of Polayne & to the lond of Pannonye & so to Slesie. And the kyng of hungarie is a gret lord and a myghty & holdeth grete lordschippes & meche lond in his hond. For he holdeth the kyndom of hungarie Solanonye & of Comanye a gret part & of Bulgarie þat men clepen the lond of Bongiers & of the reme of Roussye a gret partie where of he hath made a Duchee þat lasteth vnto the lond of Niflan & marcheth to Pruyse. And men gon þorgh the lond of this lord þorgh a cytee þat is clept Cypron & by the eastH of Neisburgh & be the euyH

town þat sytt toward the end of hungarye And þe[re]
 passe men the ryuer of Danubee. This ryuere of Danubee
 is ¹a fuH gret ryuer t it goth in to Almayne vnder the
 4 hilles of lombardye and it receyueth in to him .xl. opere
 ryueres And it renneth þorgh hungarie t þorgh Grece t
 þorgh Trachie t it entreth in to the see (1) toward the Est
 so rudely t so scharly þat the water of the see is fressch t
 8 holdeth his swetness .xx. myle within the see. And after
 gon men to Belgraue t entren into the lond of Bourgres t
 þere passe men a brigge of ston þat is vpon the ryuer of
 Marrok t men passen þorgh the lond of Pyncemarez t
 12 comen to Grece to the cytee of Nye and to the cytee of
 fynepape t after to the cytee of Dandrenoble t after to
 Constantynoble þat was wont to be clept Bezanon. And
 þere dwelleth comounly the emperour of Grece. And
 16 þere is the most fayr chirche t the most noble of aH the
 world t it is of seynt Sophie. And before þat chirche
 is the ymage of Justynyan the emperour couered with
 gold. And he sytt vpon an hors yecrowned t and he was
 20 wont to holden a round appeH of gold in his hond but it
 is fallen out þereof. And men seyn þere þat it is a tokene
 þat the Emperour hath ylost a gret partie of his londes
 t of his lordschipes. For he was wont to ben emperour
 24 of Romanie t of Grece of aH Asye the lesse t of the
 lond of Surrye of the lond of Judee, in the whiche is
 ierusalem t of the lond of Egypt of Percy of Arabye.
 But he hath lost aH but Grece t þat lond he holt aH
 28 only. And men wolden many tymes put the appuH into
 the ymages hond agen but it wil not holde it. This
 appuH betokeneth the lordschipe þat he hadde ouer aH
 the ² world þat is round. And the tother hond he lifteth
 32 vp agenst the Est in tokene to manace the mysdoeres.
 This ymage stont vpon a pylere of marble at Costantynoble.

At Male-
ville, the
Danube is
crossed,
which runs
through
Greece and
Thrace into
the sea.

[1 fol. 4 b]

At Belgrade,
the land of
the Bulgars
is entered,
then comes
that of the
Pincenati,
Nish, Philip-
popoli,
Adrianople,
and finally
Constanti-
nople or
Byzantium.

Before St.
Sophia
stands an
equestrian
statue of
Justinian,
from whose
hand the
apple has
dropped.

The Eastern
Empire is
now shorn
of all its
dominions,
except
Greece.

[2 fol. 5 a]

(1) so C.

Ch. II OF THE CROSS AND THE CROUNE OF OURE LORD JHESU CRIST.

The True Cross, the Tunica, the sponge and reed, and one of the nails are there.

The cross in Cyprus is that of the good thief.

The True Cross was made of four kinds of wood: cypress for the vertical piece, palm for the horizontal, cedar for the foundation, olive for the inscription over the head.

[fol. 5 b]

Cedar is incorruptible.

Cypress is aromatic.

Palm means victory.

AT Costantynoble is the cros of oure lord Jhesu crist and his cote *withouten* semes þat is clept TUNICA INCON-
SUTILIS ⁊ the spounge ⁊ the reed of the whiche the Jewes
ȝaue oure lord eyseh ⁊ galle in the cros. And þere is on of 4
the nayles þat crist was naylled *with* on the cros. And sum
men trowen þat half the cros þat crist was don on be in
Cipres in an abbey of monkes þat men callen the hiȝh of the
holy cros but it is not so. For þat cros þat is in Cypre is 8
the cros in the whiche Dysmas the gode thief was honged
onne. But aȝ men knowen not þat ⁊ þat is euyȝ ydon.
For for *profyte* of the offrynge þei seye þat it is the cros
of oure lord Jhesu cryst. And ȝee schuȝ vnderstonde 12
þat the cros of oure lord was made of .iiij. manere of trees
as it is conteyned in this vers: IN CRUCE FIT PALMA
OEDRUS CYPRESSUS OLYUA. For that pece þat wente
vpriȝht fro the erȝlie to the heued was of cypresse ⁊ the 16
pece þat wente ouerthwart to the whiche his hondes
weren nayled to was of palme. And the stok that stode
within the erȝlie in the whiche was made the morteyns
was of cedre And the table abouen his heued þat was 20
a fote ⁊ an half long on the whiche the tytle was writen
in Ebren greu ⁊ latyn þat was of Olyue. And the Jewes
maden the cros of theise .iiij. manere of trees for þei
trowed þat oure lord Jhesu crist scholde haue honged on the 24
cros als longe as the cros myȝhte laste ⁊ þerfore made þei
the foot of the cros of Cedre. For Cedre may not in erȝlie
ne in water rote ⁊ þerfore þei wolde þat it scholde haue
lasted longe. For þei trowed þat the body of crist scholde 28
haue stonken þei made þat pece þat went from the erȝlie
vpward of Cypres for it is wel smellynge so þat the smeȝ
of his body scholde not greue men þat wente forby. And
the ouerthwart pece was of palme for in the olde testa- 32
ment it was ordeyned þat whau on was ouercomen he
scholde be crowned *with* palme. And for þei trowed þat

thei hadden the victorye of crist Jhesus perfore made þei
 the ouerthwart pece of palme. And the table of the tytle
 þei maden of olyue For olyue betokeneth pes, As the
 4 storye of Noe witnesseth whan þat the culuer broughte
 the braunche of Olyue þat betokend pes made betwene god
 t man. And so trowed the Jewes for to haue pes whan
 crist was ded. For þei seyde þat he made discord t strif
 8 amonges hem. And 3ee schull vndirstonde þat oure lord
 was ynaylled on the cros lyggyng t perfore he suffred
 the more payne. And the cristenemen þat dwellen be-
 yond the see in Grece seyn þat the tree of the cros þat
 12 wee callen cypress was of þat tree þat Adam ete the
 appyll of t þat fynde þei writen. And þei seyn also þat
 here scripture seyth þat Adam was seek and seyde to his
 sone Seth þat he scholde go to the aungeH þat kepte
 16 paradys þat he wolde senden hym oyle of mercy for to
 anoynte with his membres þat he myghte haue hele.
 And Seth wente but the aungeH wolde not late him¹ come
 in but seyde to him þat he myght not haue of the oyle of
 20 mercy. but he toke him .iiij. greynes of the same tree
 þat his fader eet the appeH offe t bad him als sone as his
 fader was ded þat he scholde putte þeise .iiij. greynes
 vnder his tonge t graue him so t so he dide. And of
 24 þeise .iiij. greynes sprong a tree as the aungel seyde þat
 it scholde [growe] t bere a fruyt porgh the whiche fruyt
 Adam scholde be saued. And whan Seth cam azen he
 fonde his fader nere ded and whan he was ded he did
 28 with the greynes as the aungeH bad him of the whiche
 sprongen .iiij. trees of the whiche the cros was made þat
 bare gode fruyt t blessed, oure lord Ihesu crist porgh whom
 Adam t all þat comen of him scholde be saued t delyuered
 32 from drede of deth withouten ende, but it be here owne
 defeaute. This holy cros had the Jewes hydd in the erthe
 vnder a roche of the mownt of Caluarie t it lay þere .cc.
 36 3eer t more into the tyme [of] (1) seynt Elyne þat was
 moder to Constantyn the Emperour of Rome. And sche

Olive is a
symbol of
peace.

The Eastern
Christians
say that the
Cross was
made of the
wood of the
Tree of
Knowledge.

When Adam
felt death
near, he
sent Seth to
Paradise for
oil of Mercy,

[1 fol. 6 a]

but he was
only allowed
three seeds
of the Tree.

He was
buried with
those seeds
under his
tongue;

from the
sprang the
three trees
that went to
the making
of the Cross.

For two
hundred
years the
True Cross
was hidden.
St. Helena,
King Coel's
daughter.

(1) þat, C.

Part of the
Crown of
Thorns is in
the Sainte
Chapelle, in
Paris.

[1 fol. 6 b]

This Crown
is made of
rushes of the
sea.

The other
part is in
Constanti-
nople.

Many thorns
are broken
off.

When our
Lord was
first taken,
He was
crowned
with white
thorns.

There fore
white thorn
is a pro-
tection
against
thunder and
ghosts.

was daughter of kyng Cool born in Colchestre þat was
kyng of Engeland þat was clept þanne Brytayne the more
the whiche the Emperour Constance wedded to his wif
for her bewtee & gat vpon hire Constantyn þat was after 4
Emperour of Rome & kyng of Englund. And ȝee schull
vndirstonde þat the cros of oure lord was .viij. cubytes
long And the onerthwart piece was of lengthe .iiij.
cubytes & an half And .x. partie of the crowne of oure 8
lord wherwith he was crowned & on of the nayles & the
spereheed & many oper relikes ben in Fraunce ¹ in the
kynges ChapeH And the crowne lyth in a vesseH of
cristall richely dyght. For a kyng of Fraunce boughte 12
peise relikes somtyme of the Jewes to whom the Emperour
had leyde hem to wedde for a gret summe of syluer. And
ȝif aH it be so þat men seyn þat this crowne is of thornes,
ȝee schuH vnderstonde þat it was of jonkes of the see þat 16
is to sey russches of the see þat prykken als scharpely as
thornes. For I haue seen & beholden many tymes þat of
parys & þat of Costantynoble for þei were bothe on made
of russches of the see. But men han departed hem in 20
.ij. parties of the whiche .x. part is at Parys & the oper
part is at Costantynoble. And I haue on of the preeyouse
thornes þat semeth liche a white thorn And þat was
ȝouen to me for gret specyalte. For þere are many of 24
hem broken & fallen in to the vesseH þat the crowne lyth
in. For þei breken for dryeness whan men meven hem to
schewen hem to grete lordes þat comen thider. And ȝee
schuH vnderstond þat oure lord Ihesu in þat nyght þat 28
he was taken he was ylad in to a gardyn & pere he was
first examyned right scharly & pere the Jewes scorned him
& maden him a crowne of the braunches of Albespyne þat
is white thorn þat grew in þat same gardyn & setten it on 32
his hened so faste & so sore þat the blood ran down be
many places of his visage & of his necke & of his schuldres.
And perfore hath the white thorn many vertues. For
he þat bereth A braunche on him percoffe no thonder ne 36
no maner of tempest may dere him ne in the hows þat it

is june may non enyht gost entre ne come vnto the place
 pat it is june. And ¹ in pat same gardyn seynt Peter denyed
 oure lord thryes. Afterward was oure lord lad forth
 4 before the Bisschoppes t the maystres of the lawe in to
 anoper gardyn of Anne And pere also he was examyned
 repleued t scorned and crowned eft with a swete thorn pat
 men clepeth Barbarynes pat grew in pat gardyn t pat
 8 hath also manye vertues. And afterward he was lad
 into a gardyn of Cayphas t pere he was crowned with
 Eglentier And after he was lad into the chambre of
 Pylate t pere he was examynd t crowned. And the
 12 Jewes setten him in a chayere t cladde him in a mantell
 t pere made pei the crowne of jonkes of the see And pere
 pei kneled to him t skornede him seyenge: AVE REX
 JUDEORUM, pat is to seye: heyl kyng of Jewes. And of
 16 this crowne half is at Parys and the other half at Costan-
 tynoble. And this crowne had crist on his heued whan he
 was don vpon the cros t perfore oughte men to worschipe
 it t holde it more worthi pan any of the othere. And the
 20 spere schaft hath the Emperour of Almayne but the
 heued is at Parys. And natheles the Emperour of
 Costantynoble seyth pat he hath the spere heed t I haue
 often tyme seen it but it is grettere pan pat at Parys.

[1 fol. 7 a]

In Annab's
garden He
was crowned
with sweet
thorn.He was
twice
crowned
afterwards.This is the
Crown now
divided
between
Paris and
Constanti-
noble, and
worn on the
Cross.
There is one
spearhead
in Paris and
another in
Constanti-
noble.

OF THE CYTEE OF COSTANTYNOBLE t OF THE FEITH OF GREKES.

Ch. III.

24 **A**T Costantynoble lyeth seynte Anne oure ladyes moder
 whom seynte Elyne leet brynge fro Ierusalem. And
 pere lyeth also the body of John Crisostom pat was Erche-
 bischopp of Costantynoble. And pere lyth also seynt
 28 luke the Euuangelist for his bones weren brought from
 Bethanye where ² he was beryed t many opere relikes ben
 pere. And pere is the vessell of ston as it were of marbel
 pat men clepen Enydros pat euere more droppeth water t
 32 filleth himself euereich 3eer til pat it go ouer aboue with-
 outen pat that men take fro withjune. Costantynoble is

The shrines
of St. Anne,
St. John
Chrysostom,
and St. Luke
are in Con-
stantinople.

[2 fol. 7 b]

There is also
a marble
vessel for
ever drop-
ping water
and filling
itself.

Constanti-
nople is
triangular
and lies
on the
Hellespont.

The ruins of
Troy are on
the sea-side.

The Isles of
Greece.

In Lemnos
is Mount
Athos.

At Stagira
Aristotle
was born,
and there
annual cele-
brations
take place
near his
tomb.

[1 fol. 8 a]

Mount
Olympus
stands
between
Macedonia
and Thrace.
The shadow
of Mount
Athos
reaches
Lemnos;
the air on
its summit
is clear
and dry.

Philoso-
phers have
found that
the dust on
the summit
was undis-
turbed after
a year,
showing

a fuH fair cytee t a gode t a wel walled t it is .iij. cornered.
And *pere* is an arm of the see hellespont and *sum men*
callen it the mouth of Costantynoble And *sum men*
callent it the brace of seynt George. And *pat* arm closeth 4
the .ij. partes of the cytee. And vpward to the see vpon
pat water was wont to be the grete cytee of Troye in a
fuH fayr playn but *pat* cytee was destroyed by hem of
Greece t lytyll appereth *pereof* because it is so longe sith 8
it was destroyed. Abouten Greece *pere* ben many Iles
As Calistre Calcas Critige Tesbria Mynea Flaxon Melo
Carpate t Lempue. And in this jle is the Mount Athos
pat passeth the cloudes. And *pere* ben manye dyuerse 12
langages t many contreys *pat* ben obedyent to the
Emperour, *pat* is to seyne Turcople Pyncynard Comange
t manye othere as Tragye t Macedoigne of the whiche
Alisandre was kyng. In *pat* contree was Aristotle born 16
in a cytee *pat* men clepen Stragers a lytil fro the cytee of
Trachye. And at Stragers lyth Aristotle t *pere* is an
awtier vpon his tounge And *pere* maken men grete festes
of hym euery 3eer as *þough* he were a seynt. And at his 20
awtier *pei* holden here grete conseilles t here assembleez
And thei hopen *pat* *þorgh* inspiracioun of god t of him
pei schuH haue the better conseilH. In this contree ben
right hyghe ¹hilles toward the ende of Macedonye 24
And *pere* is a gret hiH *pat* men clepen Olympus *pat*
departeth Macedonye t Trachie And it is so high *pat* it
passeth the cloudes. And *pere* is ano^{per} hill *pat* is clept
Athos *pat* is so high *pat* the schadewe of hym recheth to 28
Lempne *pat* is an Ile and it is .lxxvj. myle betwene. And
abouen at the cop of *pat* hiH is the eyr so cleer *pat* men
may fynde no wynd *pere* And *þerfore* may no best lyue
pere so is the eyr drye. // And men seye in this contrees 32
pat Philosophres some tyme wenten vpon theise hilles t
helden to here nose a sponge moysted with water for to
haue eyr for the eyr aboue was so drye. And abouen in the
dust t in the powder of *þo* hilles *pei* wroot *lettres* t figures 36
with liue fyngres t at the 3eres ende *pei* comen azen t founden

- the same *lettres* & figures the whiche þei hadde writen the
 3eer before *withouten* ony defeaute. And þerfore it semeth
 wel þat theise hilles passen the clowdes & ioynen to the
 4 pure eyr. At Costantynoble is the palays of the Emperour
 right fair & wel dyght And þere in is a fair place for
 justynges or for oþer pleyes & desportes. And it is made
 with stages & hath degrees aboute þat euery man may wel
 8 se & non greue oþer. And vnder þeise stages ben stables
 wel yvowted for the emperours hors & aH the pileres ben
 of marbeH. And within the chirche of seynt Sophie
 An Emperour somtyme wolde haue biryed the body of
 12 his fader whan he was ded & as þei maden the graue þei
 founden a body in the erthe & vpon the body lay a fyn
 plate of gold And þere on was writen in Ebru / greu / &
 latyn lettres þat seyden þus : IIESUS CRISTUS NASCE ¹TUR
 16 DE VIRGINE MARIA & EGO CREDO IN EUM. þat is to
 seyne : Jhesu crist schaff be born of the virgyne Marie
 & I trowe in hym. And the date whan it was leyd in the
 erthe was .ij.Mit. 3eer before oure lord was born And 3[it]
 20 is the plate of gold in the thresorye of the chirche. And
 men seyn þat it was hermogene the wise man. And 3if
 aH it so be þat men of Grece ben cristene 3it þei varien
 from oure feith For þei seyn þat the holy gost may not
 24 come of the sone but aH only of the fadir. . And þei are
 not obedyent to the chirche of Rome ne to the pope And
 þei seyn þat here Patriark hath as meche power ouer the
 see as the Pope hath on this syde the see. And þerfore
 28 Pope John the .xxij. sende *lettres* to hem how cristene feith
 scholde ben aH on & þat þei scholde ben obedyent to the
 Pope þat is goddes (¹) [vicarie] on erthe to whom god 3af his
 pleyn powere for to bynde & to assoille & þerfore þei scholde
 32 ben obedyent to him. And þei senten a3en dyuerse answeres
 & amonges othere þei seyden þus : POTENCIAM TUAM SUM-
 MAM CIRCA TUOS SUBIECTOS FIRMITER CREDIMUS SUPERBIAM
 TUAM SUMMAM TOLERARE NON POSSUMUS AUARICIAM TUAM
 36 SUMMAM SACIARE NON INTENDIMUS. DOMINUS TECUM QUIA
 vacrie. C.

that no
clouds
reached so
high.

The amphi-
theatre at
Constanti-
nople.

In St.
Sophia was
found the
grave of
Hermo-
genes, who
believed in
Christ two
thousand
years be-
fore the
Nativity.

[¹ fol. 8 b]

The Greek
Church, its
faith and
independ-
ence of the
Pope.

Pope
John XXII
bade the
Greeks
submit
to him.

They defied
and insulted
him.

How the
Greeks pre-
pare the
bread for
the
Eucharist.

[1 fol. 9 a]

What
unctions
they use.

They deny
purgatory,

condone
carnal sin,
forbid
second
marriages.

Simony
prevails in
the East
as in the
West.

Their rules
for Lent
and for the
weekly
fasts.

They forbid
the Latins
to use their
altars.

They deny
that Jesus
use l food
for his body.
They con-
demn the
practice of
shaving,
and that of
eating the
flesh of
animals
forbidden
in the Old
Testament.
[2 fol. 9 b]

DOMINUS NOBISCUM EST. þat is to seye: Wee trowe wel
þat thi power is gret vpon thi subgettes. Wee may not
suffre thin high pryde Wee ben not in purpos to fulfille
thi gret couetyse. lord be with þe for oure lord is with vs. 4
fare weH. And oper answeere myghte he not haue of hem.
And also þei make here sacrement of the awteer of therf
bred for oure lord made it of such bred whan he made his
mawndee. And on the scherethorsday make ¹þei here therf 8
bred in tokene of the mawndee t dryen it at the sonne
t kepen it all the 3eer t 3euen it to seke men in stede of
goddess body. And þei make but on vnxioun whan þei
cristene children And þei anoynte not the seke men. 12
And thei seye þat þere nys no purgatorie t þat soules
schuH not haue nouper ioye ne payne tiH the day of
doom. And þei seye þat Forniciacioun is no synne dedly
but a thing þat is kyndely And þat men t wommen scholde 16
not wedde but ones And whoso weddeth offere þan ones
here children ben bastardes t geten in synne And here
prestes also ben wedded. And þei sey also þat vsure is
no dedly synne. And þei sellen benefices of holy chirche 20
t so don men in opere places, god amende it whan his
wille is, And þat is gret selaundre. For now is Simonye
kyng crowned in holy chirche, god amende it for his
mercy. And þei seyn þat in lentone men schaff not faste 24
ne synge masse but on the saterday t on the sonday.
And þei faste not on the saterday no tyme of the 3eer but
it be cristemass euen or Ester euen. And þei suffre not
the latynes to synge at here awteres t 3if thei don be ony 28
aventure anon þei wasschen the awteer with holy water.
And þei seyn þat þere scholde be but .i. masse seyde at on
awtier vpon .i. day. And þei seye also þat oure lord ne
eet nenere mete but he made tokene of etyng. And also 32
þei seye þat wee synne dedly in schauynge oure berdes.
For the berd is tokene of a man t 3ifte of oure lord.
And þei seye þat wee synne dedly in etyng of bestes
þat weren forboden in the olde testament t of the 36
olde lawe as swyn hares t opere bestes ²þat chewen not

here code. And þei seyn þat wee synnen whan wee eten
 flesch on the dayes before Asschwednesday ⁊ of þat
 þat wee eten flesch the wednesday ⁊ egges ⁊ chese vpon
 4 the frydayes And þei acursen aH þo þat abstynen hem
 to eten flesch the saterday. Also the Emperour of Cos-
 tantynoble maketh the Patriark the Erchebysschoppes ⁊
 the Bisshoppes ⁊ 3eueth the dignytees ⁊ the benefices
 8 of chirehes ⁊ depriueth hem þat ben worthy whan he
 fyndeth ony cause And so is he lord bothe temporeH ⁊
 spiritueH in his contree. And 3if 3ee wil wite of here
 .A.B.C. what lettres þei ben here 3ee may seen hem
 12 with the names þat þei clepen hem pere amonges hem :

Other
 variations
 between the
 Churches.

The Greek
 Emperor is
 the head
 of their
 Church.

The Greek
 alphabet.

[Only photographs can do justice to the various alphabets
 contained in Mandeville.]

OF SEYNT JOHN THE EUUANGELIST ⁊ OF Ch. IV.
 YPOCRAS DOUGHTER TRANSFORMED FROM
 A WOMMAN TO A DRAGON.

AND aH be it þat þeise thinges touchen not to .o. way
 neuertheles þei touchen to þat þat I haue hight 3ou
 to schewe 3ou a partie of custumes ⁊ maneres ⁊ dyuersitees
 16 of contrees. And for this is the firste contree þat is dis-
 cordant in feyth ⁊ in beleue ⁊ varieth from oure feyth
 on this half the see, þefore I haue sett it here, þat 3ee
 may knowe the dyuersitee þat is betwene oure feyth ⁊
 20 theires. For many men han gret likyng to here speke
 of straunge thinges of dyuerse contreyes. ¹ Now returne I
 a3en for to teche 3ou the way from Constantynoble to
 Ierusalem. He þat wol porgh Turkye he goth toward
 24 the eytee of Nike ⁊ passeth porgh the 3ate of Chienctout
 ⁊ aH weys men seen before hem the hiH of Chienctout
 þat is right high ⁊ it is a myle ⁊ an half from Nike.
 And whoso wil go be watre be the brace of seynt George
 28 ⁊ by the see where seynt Nicholas lyeth ⁊ toward many
 oper places First men goth to an yle þat is clept Sylo.
 In þat Ile groweth Mastyk on smale trees ⁊ out of hem
 cometh gomme as it were of plombtrees or of cherietrees.

These
 variations
 of Church
 rules,
 though no
 part of an
 Hinerary,
 are yet
 curious to
 notice.

[1 fol. 10 a]

The land
 road.

The sea
 voyage.

Pathmos. And after gon men þorgh the Ile of Pathmos t þere wrot
 seynt John the Euuangelist the apocalips. And 3ee
 St. John schuH vnderstonde þat seynt John was of age .xxxij. 3eer
 lived a hundred years. whan oure lord suffred his passioun And after his passioun 4
 he lyuede .lxxvij. 3eer And in the .c. 3eer of his age he
 dyede. From Pathmos men gon vnto Ephesim a faire
 citee t nygh to the see And þere dyede seynte John t
 He died and was buried in Ephesus. was buried behynde the high awtiere in a tounge. And 8
 þere is a fair chirche For cristene men weren wont to
 holden þat place alweys. And in the tombe of seynt John
 His grave contains mannah, for his body is in Paradise. is nought but Manna þat is clept Aungeles mete for his
 body was translated in to paradys. And Turkes holden 12
 The Turks hold Asia Minor. now aH þat place t the citee t the chirche And aH Asie
 the lesse is yeleped Turkye. And 3ee schuH vnderstonde
 St. John lay down in his grave alive. Some be- lieve he is not dead. þat seynt John leet make his graue þere in his lyf t leyd
 himself þerejme aH quyke And þefore somme men seyn 16
 þat he dyed nought, but þat he resteth þere til the day
 of doom. And forsothe þere is a gret merneyle for men
 may see þere the erthe of the tombe ¹apertly many tymes
 steren t meuen as þere weren quykke thinges vnder. And 20
 The soil of his grave moves as if a live thing stirred below.
 Patera, the birthplace of St. Nicholas. [1 fol. 10 b]
 from Ephesim men gon þorgh many Iles in the see vnto
 the eytee of Paterane where seynt Nicholas was born t
 so to martha where he was chosen to ben Bissehopp t
 þere groweth right g[o]de wyn t strong And þat men 24
 callen wyn of martha. And from thens gon men to the
 Ile of Crete þat the Emperour 3af somtyme to Janeweys
 And þanne passen men þorgh the Iles of Colcos t of
 lango of the whiche Iles ypocras was lord offe. And 28
 somme men seyn þat in the Ile of lango is 3it the doughter
 of ypocras in forme t lykness of a gret dragoun þat is an
 hundred fadme of lengthe as men seyn, for I haue not seen
 hire. And þei of the Iles callen hire lady of the lond 32
 And sche lyeth in an olde castell in a cave t scheweth
 twyes or thryes in the 3eer and sche doth non harm to
 no man but 3if men don hire harm. And sche was thus
 chaunged t transformed from a fair damysele in to lyk- 36
 ness of a dragoun be a Goddess þat was clept Deane. And

Hippo-
 crates'
 daughter
 has been
 transformed
 into a
 dragon by
 Diana.

men seyn þat sche schal so endure in þat forme of a
 dragoun vnto tyme þat a knyght come þat is so hardy þat
 dar come to hire & kisse hire on þe mouth and þan schall
 4 sche turne aȝen to hire owne kynde & ben a womman aȝen
 but after þat sche schal not lyuen longe. And it is not
 longe sithen þat a knyght of the [hospital of] Rhodes þat
 was hardy & doughty in armes seyde þat he wolde kysse
 8 hire. And whan he was vpon his coursere & wente to
 the casteH & entred in to the cave the dragoun lifte vp
 hire hed aȝenst him And whan the knyght saugh hire in
 þat forme so hidous & so horrible he fleygh away & the
 12 dragoun bare the knyght vpon a roche mawgree his hede
 And from þat roche sche caste him in to the see & so was
 lost bothe hors & man. And also a ȝonge man þat wiste
 not of the dragoun wente out of a schipp & wente þorgh
 16 the Ile til þat he come to the castell & cam in to the
 cave and wente so longe til þat he foud a chambre & pere
 he saugh a damysele þat kembel hire hede & lokede in
 a myrour. And sche hadde meche tresoure abouten hire
 20 & he trowede þat sche hadde ben a comoun womman þat
 dwelled þere to resceyue men to folye. And he abode til
 the damysele saugh [t]he schadewe of him in the myrour.
 And sche turned hire toward him & asked hym what he
 24 wolde And he seyde he wolde ben hire lemman or para-
 mour and sche asked him ȝif þat he were a knyght & he
 seyde nay. And þan sche seyde þat he myghte not ben
 hire lemman But sche bad him gon aȝen vnto his felowes
 28 & [let] make him knyght & come aȝen vpon the morwe
 & sche scholde come out of the cave before him & þanne
 come and kysse hire on the mowth. & haue no drede, for
 I schal do þe no maner harm all be it þat þou see me
 32 in lykeness of a dragoun For þough þou se me hidouse
 & horrible to loken omne I do þe to wytene þat it is
 made be enchauntement. For withouten doute I am non
 oþer þan þou seest now, a womman, ¹ And þerfore drede
 36 þe nought. And ȝif þou kisse me þou schalt haue aH
 this tresoure & be my lord & lord also of all þat Ile. And

She can
 only be
 reconverted
 into a
 woman if a
 knight dares
 kiss her.

A bold
 knight of
 Rhodes
 would try
 the adven-
 ture,
 [fol. 11 a]

but he fled
 in terror
 and she cast
 him into
 the sea.

Another
 young man
 came upon
 the damsel
 in her fair
 natural
 shape, and
 asked for
 her love.

She replied
 that he
 must be
 knighted
 first and he
 might then
 gain herself,
 her treasure
 and her
 island.

But he must
 not be afraid
 of her
 dragon's
 shape.

[1 fol. 11 b]

When he
had been
knighted, he
came back,
but fled in
terror at her
sight.

She cried
with sorrow,
and he soon
died. Since
then, no
knight can
see her and
live.

She may yet
be freed by
a kiss.

Rhodes
belongs to
the Hospita-
lers.
The Colos-
sians of
Paul's
epistle were
the people
of Rhodes.

he departed fro hire & wente to his felowes to schippe &
leet make him knyght & cam azen vpon the morwe for
to kysse this damysele. And whan he saugh hire comen
out of the cave in forme of a dragoun so hidouse & so 4
horrible he hadde so gret drede þat he fleygh azen to the
schipp & sche folewed him. And whan sche sawgh þat he
turned not azen sche began to crye as a thing þat hadde 8
meche sorwe And þanne sche turned azen in to hire cave
And anon the knyght dyede & sithen hiderwardes myghte
no knyght se hire but þat he dyede anon. But whan a
knyght cometh þat is so hardy to kisse hire he schall not
dye, but he schall turne the damysele in to hire right 12
forme & kyndely schapp & he schal be lord of all the
contreyes & Iles aboueseyd. And from þens men comen
to the Ile of Rodes the whiche Ile hospitaleres holden &
gouernen And þat token þei sumtyme from the Emperour 16
And it was wont to be clept Collos & so calle it the Turkes
3it And seynt Poul in his epistles writeth to hem of þat
Ile AD COLLOCENSES. This Ile is nygh .viij^e. myle long
from Constantynoble. 20

Ch. v. [OF DIVERSITIES IN CYPRUS; OF THE ROAD
FROM CYPRUS TO JERUSALEM, AND OF THE
MARVELS OF THE FOSS FULL OF SAND.]

The wines
of Cyprus.

In Satalia
was a lover
who desec-
rated the
grave of a
dead lady.

[f fol. 12 a]

AND from this Ile of Rodes men gon to Cypre where
beth many [wynes] ⁽¹⁾ þat first ben rede & after .o.
3ere þei becomen white And þeise wynes þat ben most white
ben ⁽²⁾ most clere & best of smett. And men passen be þat 24
way be a place þat was wont to ben a gret cytee & a gret
lond & the cytee was clept Cathaillye, the whiche cytee
1 & lond was lost þorgh folye of a 3onge man. For he had
a fayr damysele þat he loued wel to his paramour & sche 28
dyed sodeynly & was don in a tombe of marble & for the
grete lust þat he had to hire he wente in the nyght vnto
hire tombe & opened it & went in & lay be hire & wente

⁽¹⁾ vynes, C.

⁽²⁾ repeated in C.

his wey. And whan it cam to the ende of .ix. monethes
 pere com a voys to him & seyde: Go to the tombe of þat
 womman & open it & behold what pou hast begoten on
 4 hire & ȝif þou lette to go þou schalt haue a gret harm.
 And he ȝede & opened the tombe & pere fleygh out an
 Eddere right hidous to see, the whiche als swythe fleigh
 aboute the cytee & the contree & sone after the cytee sank
 8 down & pere ben manye perilouse passages with outen
 fayle. From Rodes to Cypre ben .v. myle & more, But
 men may gon to Cypre & come not at Rodes. Cypre is
 right a gode Ile and a fair & a gret and it hath .iiij.
 12 prineypall cytees within him And pere is an Erchebysshopp
 at Nichosie & .iiij. othere bysschoppes in þat lond. And
 at Famagost is on of the prineypall hauenes of the see,
 þat is in the world And pere arryuen cristene men &
 16 sarazynes & men of aȝ nacyons. In Cipre is the hiȝh of
 the holy cros & pere is an abbeye of monkes blake And
 pere is the cros of Dismas the gode thief as I haue seyd
 before, And summe men trowen þat pere is half the cross
 20 of oure lord but it is not so and þei don euyȝ þat make
 men to beleue so. In Cipre lyth seynt zenomyne of
 whom men of þat contree maken gret solempnytee. And
 in the casteȝ of amoure lyth the body of seynt Hyllarie
 24 & men kepen it right¹ worschippfully. And besyde Famagost
 was seynt Barnabee the Apostle born. In Cipre men
 huntun with Papyouns þat ben lyche lyberdes & þei
 taken wyldre bestes right well and þei ben somdeȝ more
 28 þan lyouns & þei taken more scharpelych the bestes &
 more delyuerly þan don houndes. In Cipre is the manere
 of lordes & all opere men aȝ to eten on the erthe, for þei
 make dyches in the erthe aȝ aboute in the halle depe to
 32 the knee & þei do paue hem And whan þei wil ete þei
 gon pere in & sytten pere. And the skyȝ is for þei may
 be the more fressch for þat lond is meche more hottere
 þan it is here. And at grete festes & for straungeres þei
 36 setten formes & tables as men don in this contree, but þei
 had leuer sytten in the erthe. From Cypre men gon to

MANDEVILLE.

An adder
 rose from
 the grave,
 and the city
 sank down.

In Cyprus
 is the busy
 harbour of
 Famagosta.

In Cyprus
 are the cross
 of the good
 thief,

and the
 shrines of
 St. Zeno-
 myne and
 St. Hilary.

[¹ fol. 12 b]

Hunting
 leopards are
 used there.

Meals are
 taken in
 sunk ditches
 in which it
 is cool.

Tyre is the
first port on
the passage
to Jeru-
salem.

Scriptural
associations
of Tyre.

[1 fol. 13 a]

Sarphen
or Sarepta.

Sydon, the
home of
Dido.

Byronth.

Jaffa.

the lond of Jerusalem be the see and in a day & in a
nyght he þat hath gode wynd may come to the hauene
of Thire þat now is clept Surrye. There was somtyme a
gret cytee & a gode of crystenemen but sarazins han 4
destroyed it a gret partye And þei kepe þat haue right
weþ for drede of cristene men. Men myghte go more
right to þat hauene & come not in Cypre But þei gon
gladly to Cipre to reste hem on the lond or eþ to byggen 8
thinges þat þei haue nede to here lyuynge. On the see
syde men may fynde many rubyes. And þere is the welle
of the whiche holy writt speketh offe & seyth: FONS
ORTORUM & PUTEUS AQUARUM VIUENCIUM, þat is to seye: 12
the welle of gardyns & the dyche of lyuynge watres. In
this cytee of Thire seyde the womman to oure lord:
BEATUS VENTER QUI TE PORTAUIT & VBERA QUE SUCCISTI,
þat is to seye: Blessed be the body þat þe baar & the 16
pappes þat þou sowkedest. And þere oure lord forȝaf¹ the
womman of Chanance hire synnes And before Tyre was
wont to be the ston on the whiche oure lord sat &
prechede & on þat ston was founded the chirche of seynt 20
sauyour. And .viij. myle from Tyre toward the Est vpon
the see is the cytee of Sarphen in sarept of sydonyens
And þere was wont for to dwelle helye the prophete &
þere reysed he Jonas the wydwes sone from deth to lyf. 24
And .v. myle fro sarphen is the cytee of Sydon of the
whiche citee Dydo was lady þat was Eneas wif after the
destruction of Troye & þat founded the cytee of Cartage
in Affrik & now is cleped Sydon Sayete. And in the 28
cytee of Tyre regned Agenore the fader of Dydo. And
.xvj. myles from Sydon is Beruth And fro Beruth to
Sardenare is .iij. iourneyes And from Sardenar is .v. myle
to Damask. And whoso wil go longe[r] tyme on the see 32
& come nerre to Jerusalem he schal go fro Cipre be see to
the port Jaff For þat is the nexte hauene to Jerusalem.
And the town is called Jaff for on of the sones of Noe
þat highte Japhet founded it & now it is clept Joppe. 36
And ȝee schuþ vnderstonde þat it is on of the oldest

Glass made
from metal

trouble And ȝif ony man do *pere* june ony maner metaH
it turneth anon to glass. And the glass pat is made of
pat graueH ȝif it be don aȝen in to the graueH it turneth
anon in to graueH as it was first And *perfore* somme men 4

Gaza.

Akoun aboue seyð gon men forth .iiij. iournees to the citee
of Palestyne pat was of the Philistynes pat now is clept
Gaza pat is a gay cytee t a riche t it is right fayr t fuH 8
of folk t it is a lytill fro the see. And from this cytee

Samson
Delilah, and
the Philis-
tines.

brought Sampson the stronge the ȝates vpon an high lond
whan he was taken in pat cytee And *pere* he slowgh in a
paleys the kyng t hymself t gret nombre of the beste of 12
the Philistienes the whiche had put out his eyen t
schauen his hed t enprisound him be tresoun of Dalida
his *paramour*, And *perfore* he made falle vpon hem a
gret halle whan þei were at mete. And from þens gon 16

Land
journey to
Jerusalem.

men to the cytee of Cesaire t so to the casteH of
Pylgrymes t so to Ascolonge t þan to Jaff t so to
Jerusalem. And whoso wiH go be londe porgh the lond
of Babyloyne where the sowdan dwelleth comonly he 20

To reach
Cairo and
obtain the
sultan's
licence for a
pilgrimage
to Sinai, one
should pass
the desert

moste gete grace of him t leue to go more sikerly þorgh
þo londes t contrees And for to go to the mount of synay
before pat men gon to Jerusalem t þanne turne aȝen to
Jerusalem he scha go fro Gaza to the casteH of Daire. 24

[1 fol. 14 b]

And after pat men comen out of Surrye t entren in to
wylderness t *pere* the weye is fuH¹ sondy. And pat
wylderness t desert lasteth .viij. iourneyes but aH weys
men fynden gode junes t aH pat hem nedeth of vytaylle, 28

Egypt.

And whan a man cometh out of pat desert he entreth in to Egypt pat
me clepen Egipt Canopat And after *ofer* langage men
clepen it Morsyn. And *pere* first men fynden a gode 32
toun pat is clept Beleth t it is at the ende of the
kyngdom of Halappee t from þens men gon to Babyloyne
t to Cayre

OF MANYE NAMES OF SOUDANS, ⁊ OF THE TOUR OF BABILOYNÆ. Ch. vi.

AT Babyloynē þere is a faire chirche of oure lady where she dwelled .vij. ȝeer whan sche fleygh out of the lond of Judee for drede of kyng heroud. And þere
 4 lyth the body of seynt Barbre the virgine ⁊ martyr And þere duelled Joseph whan he was sold of his bretheren. And þere made Nabugodonozor the kyng putte .iiij. children in to the forneys of fuyr for þei weren in the right trouthe
 8 of beleue The whiche children men cleped Ananya Azaria MizaeH as the psalm of *Benedicite* seith But Nabugodonozor cleped hem oþerwise Sydrak Misak ⁊ Abdenago þat is to seye god glorious, god victorious ⁊
 12 god ouer all thinges ⁊ remes and þat was for the myracle þat he saugh goddes sone go with the children þorgh the fuyre, as he seyde. þere duelleth the Soudan in his Calahelyk for þere is comounly his see in a fayr
 16 casteH strong ⁊ gret ⁊ wel sett vpon a roche. In þat casteH dueHe aH wey to kepe it ⁊ for to serue the sowdan mo þan .viij. ^{ml}persones þat ^{ml} taken aH here necessities of the sowdanes court. I oughte right wel to knowen it for
 20 I duelled with him as soudyour in his werres a gret while, aȝen the Bedoynes And he wolde haue maryed me fuH highly to a gret Princes daughter ȝif I wolde han forsaken my lawe ⁊ my beleue. But I thanke god I had
 24 no wiH to don it for nothing þat he belighite me. And ȝee schuH vnderstonde þat the soudan is lord of .v. kyngdomes þat he hath conquered ⁊ apropred to him be strengthe And þeise ben the names: The kyngdom of
 28 Canapak þat is Egipt ⁊ the kyngdom of Jerusalem where þat Danid ⁊ Salomon were kynges And the kyngdom of Surrye of the whiche the cytee of Damase was chief And the kyngdom of Alappee in the lond of Math ⁊ the
 32 kyngdom of Arabye þat was to on of the .iiij. kynges þat

Cairo,
church of
the Virgin,

shrine of St.
Barbara.

The Three
Holy
Children.

The soudan's
castle.

Its guard.
[¹ fol. 15 a]

I refused to
marry a
Princess.

The soudan's
five
kingdoms :

Egypt, Jeru-
salem, Syria,

Aleppo,
Arabia,

- made offryng to oure lord whan he was born. And many opere lordes he holdeth in his hond. And þere with aȝ he holdeth Calyffes, þat is a full gret thing in here langage And it is als meche to seye as kyng. 4
- Caliph. And þere were wont to ben .v. soudans but now þere is nomo but he of Egypt. And the firste soudan was Zarocon þat was of Mede t was fader to Sahaladyn þat toke the Califfee of Egypt t slough him t was made soudan be 8
- List of 16 soudans of Egypt. 1
2. Saladin sloughs Richard Cœur de Lion; strengthe. After þat was soudan Sahaladyn in whoos tyme the kyng of Englund Richard the firste [was þere] with manye opere þat kepten the passage þat Sahaladyn ne myghte not passen. After Sahaladyn regned his sone 12
- 3, 4. Boradyn And after him his nevewe. After þat the [1 fol. 15 b] Comaynz¹ þat weren in seruage in Egypt felten hemse[lf] þat þei weren of gret power þei chesen hem a Soudan amonges hem the whiche made him to ben cleped Melechisalan. 16
5. And in his tyme entred into the contree of the kynges of France seynt Lowyys t faught with him t [he] toke him t enprisound him. And this was slayn of his owne seruantes And after þei chosen an other to be soudan 20
6. þat þei cleped Tympieman And he let delyueren seynt lowys out of prisoun for certeyn raunsoun. And after on of theise Comaynz regned þat highte Cachas t slough Turqueman for to be soudan t made him ben cleped 24
7. Melechemes. And after anoper þat hadde to name Bendochdare þat slough Melechemes for to be Soudan t cleped him self Melechdare. In his tyme entred the gode 28
8. kyng Edward of Englund in Syrye t dide gret harm to the Sarrazines. And after was this soudan enpoysound at Damasce And his sone thoughte to regnen after him be heritage t made him to ben clept Meleschsach. But 32
9. another þat had to name Elphy chaced him out of the contree t made him soudan. This man toke the eytee of Tripollee t destroyede manye of the cristene men the 36
10. 3eer of grace .Miiij cc iiij score t ix. And after was he enprisound of another þat wolde be Soudan but he was
- Edward I, when Prince of Wales.

anon slayn. After þat was the sone of Elphy chosen to
ben Soudan & cleped him Mellethasseraf & he tok the 11.
citee of Akoun & chased out the cristene men & this was
4 also enpoysond. And þan was his brother ymade Soudan
& was cleped Melechmasser And after on þat was clept 12.
Guytoga toke him & put him in prisoun in the casteH of 13.
¹ MountryuaH & made him Soudan be strengthe & cleped [¹ fol. 16 a]
8 him MelechcadeH & he was [a] (¹) Tartaryne. But the
Comaynz chased him out of þe contree & diden hym
meche sorwe And maden on of hem self soudan þat
hadde to name lachyn & he made him to ben clept 14.
12 Melechmanser the whiche on a day pleyed at the chess
& his swerd lay besyde him & so befeH þat on wratthed
him & with his owne propre swerd he was slayn. And
after þat þei weren at gret discord for to make a soudan
16 And fynally þei accordeden to Melechmasser þat Guytoga
had put in prisoun at MountrivaH And this regnele
longe & gouerned wisely so þat his eldest sone was chosen
after him Melechmader the whiche his brother leet sle 15.
20 priuily for to haue the lordschipe & made him to ben
clept Melechmadabron & he was Soudan whan I departed 16.
fro þo contrees. And wyte 3ee wel þat the Soudan may
lede out of Egipt mo þan .xx. MiH. men of armes And out
24 of Surrye & out of Turkye & out of oþer contrees þat he
holt he may arrere mo þan .i. MiH. and aH þo ben at his
wages And þei ben aH weys at him *withouten* the folk of
his contree þat is *withouten* nombre. And euerych of hem
28 hath be 3ere the mountance of .vj. score. floreyues But it
behoueth þat euery of hem holde .iiij. hors & a cameyll.
And be the cytees & be townes ben amyralles þat han
the gouernance of the peple, On hath to gouerne .iiij.
32 & anoþer hath to gonerue .v. anoþer mo & anoþer wel
mo And als many taketh the AmyraH be him allone as
aH the oþer ²souldyours han vnder hym And *perfore* [² fol. 16 b]
whan the Soudan wiH auance ony worthi knyght he
36 maketh him a amiraH. And whan it is ony derthe the

The soudan's
power.

His
Emirs, or
Governors.

His four
wives.

His con-
cubines.

How
strangers
are received
in audience.

[1 fol. 17 a]

No visitor is
dismissed
without
some favour.

knyghtes *ben* right pore & þanne þei sellen bothe here
hors & here harneys. And the Soudan hath .iiij. wyfes on
cristene & .iiij. sarazines of the whiche on dwelleth at Ieru-
salem & anoþer at Damasee & anoþer at Ascolon And 4
whan hem lyst þei remewen to oþer eytees And whan
the Soudane wiþ he may go to visite hem whan him list.
And he hath as many paramours as him lyketh. For he
maketh to come before him the fairest & the nobleste of 8
birthe & the gentylleste damyseles of his contree And he
maketh hem to ben kept & serued full honourabely And
whan he wole haue on to lye with him he maketh hem all
to come before him And he beholdeth in all which of 12
hem is most to his plesance & to hire anon he sendeth
or casteth a ryng fro his fynger And þanne anon sche
schaft ben bathed & richely atyred & anoynted with delicat
thinges of swete smeþ & þan lad to the Soudanes chambre, 16
and þus he doth als often as him list whan he will haue
onye of hem. And before the soudan cometh no strangier
but ȝif he be clothed in cloth of gold or of tartarie or of
camaka in the Sarazines guyse & as the sarazins vsen. And 20
it behoueth þat anon at the firste sight þat men see the
Soudan be it in windowe or in what place elles ¹ þat men
knele to him & kysse the erthe For þat is the manere to
do reuerence to the soudan of hem þat speken with him. 24
And whan þat messangeres of straunge contrees comen
before him the meynce of the Soudan, Whan the
strangeres speken to hym, þei ben aboute the souldan
with swerdes drawn & gysarmes & axes, here armes lift 28
vp in high with þo wepenes for to smyte vpon hem ȝif
þei seye ony woord þat is displesance to the soudan.
And also no straungere cometh before him but þat he
maketh him sum promys & graunt of þat the soudan 32
asketh resonably beso it be not aȝenst his lawe. And
so don opere Prynces bezonden For þei seyn þat noman
schaft come before no Prynce but þat the souldan is better
And schaft be more gladdere in departynge from his 36
presence þanne he was at the comynge before hym. And

vnderstandeth þat that Babyloyne þat I haue spoken offe
 where þat the Soudan dwelleth is not þat gret Babyloyne
 where the dyuersitee of langages was first made for
 4 vengeance by the myracle of god whan the grete tour of
 Babel was begonnen to ben made of the whiche the walles
 weren .lxiiiij. furlonges of heichte. þat is in the grete
 desertes of Arabye vpon the weye as men gon toward the
 8 kyngdom of Caldee. But it is full longe sith þat ony
 man durste neyghe to the tour for it is all desert & full of
 dragouns & grete serpentes & full of dyuerse venymouse
 bestes all abouten. þat tour with the cytee was of .xxv.
 12 myle in cyrcuyt of the walles As þei of the contree seyn¹
 & as men may demen by estimacioun after þat men tellen
 of the contree. And þough it be clept the tour of Babi-
 loyne 3it natheles þere were ordeyned withynne many
 16 mansiouns and many gret dwellynge places in lengthe &
 brede And þat tour conteyned gret contree in circuyt, for
 the tour allone conteyned .x. myle square. þat tour
 founded kyng Nembroth þat was kyng of þat contree &
 20 he was the firste kyng of the world And he leet make an
 ymage in the lykness of his fader & constreyned all his
 subgettes for to worschipe it. And anon begonnen othere
 lordes to do the same And so begonnen the ydoles & the
 24 simulacres first. The town & the cytee weren full wel
 sett in a fair contree & a playn þat men clepen the contree
 of Samar of the whiche the walles of the cytee weren .cc.
 cubytes in heichte & .l. cubytes of depnes. And the
 28 Ryuere of Euftrate ran þorgh out the cytee & aboute the
 tour also. But Cirus the kyng of Perse toke from hem
 the ryuere & destroyed all the cytee and the tour also.
 For he departed þat Ryuere in .ccc. & .lx. smale ryueres
 32 be cause þat he had sworn þat he scholde putte the ryuere
 in such poynt þat a womman myghte wel passe þere with
 outen castynge of of hire clothes for als moche as he hadde
 lost many worthi men þat troweden to passen þat ryuere
 36 be swymmynge. And from Babyloyne where the soudan
 dwelleth to go right betwene the Oryent & the Septem-

Cairo, or
 Babylon the
 Less, dis-
 tinguished
 from Baby-
 lon the
 Great, where
 the Tower
 of Babel was
 built.

Extent of
 the Tower
 and the city
 around it.

[¹ fol. 17 b]

Nimrod
 introduced
 idolatry.

King Cyrus
 avenged
 himself
 on the
 Euphrates
 by dividing
 it into
 brooks.

Babylon the
Great is in
Persia, far
from Baby-
lon the Less.

[1 fol. 18 a]

Power and
greatness
of the
Great Chan.

Mahomet's
shrine is in
Methon in
Arabia.

The desert
is barren
from lack of
water only.

Extent of
Arabia.

[2 fol. 18 b]

Carthage,
Dido and
Eneas.

Haran.

tryon toward the grete Babyloyne is xl. iourneyes to
passen be desert. But it is not the grete Babiloyne in
the lond t in the powere of the seyde Soudan but it is in
the power and the lordschipe of Persye. ¹ But he holdeth 4
it of the grete Chane þat is the gretteste Emperour t the
most souereyn lord of aH the parties bezonde t he is lord
of the iles of Cathay t of manye opere iles t of a gret
partie of Inde And his lond marcheth vnto Prestre 8
Johnes lond And he holt so moche lond that he
knoweth not the ende And he is more myghty t gretter
lord *withouten* comparoun þan is the Soudan. Of his
ryaH estate t of his myght I schaf speke more plenerly 12
when I schall speke of the lond t of the contree of ynde.
Also the cytee of Methon where Machomet lyth is also
of the grete desertes of Arabye. And þere lith the body
of hym fuH honourably in here temple þat the Sarazines 16
clepen Musketh. And it is fro Babyloyne the lesse
where the Soudan dwelleth vnto Methon aboueseyd in
to a .xxxij. iourneyes. And wyteth wel þat the rewme
of Arabye is a full gret contree, but þere in is ouer moche 20
desert And noman may dweH þere in þat desert for
defaute of water. For þat lond is aH grauelly t fuH
of sond And it is drye t no thing fructuous be cause
þat it hath no moysture t þerfore is þere so meche desert. 24
And gif it hadde Ryueres t welles t the lond also were
as it is in oper partyes it scholde ben als fuH of peple
t als fuH enhabyted *with* folk as in other places. For
þere is fuH gret multitude of peple where as the lond 28
is enhabyted. Arabye dureth fro the endes of the reme
of Caldee vnto the laste ende of ² Affryk t marcheth to
the lond of ydumee toward the ende of Botron. And
in Caldee the chief cytee is Baldak And of Affryk the 32
chief cytee is Cartage þat Dydo þat was Eneas wif
founded The whiche Eneas was of the cytee of Troye t
after was kyng of Itaylle. Mesopotamy streceheth also
vnto the desertes of Arabye t it is a gret contree. In 36
this contree is the cytee of Daraym where abrahames

- fader duelled t from whens Abraham departed be
 commandement of the AungeH. And of þat cytee was
 Effraym þat was a gret clerk t a gret doctour And
 4 Theophilus was of þat cytee also þat oure lady sauede
 from oure enemye. And Mesopotayme dureth fro the
 ryuere of Eufates vnto the ryuere of Tygris. For it
 is betwene þo .ij. ryueres. And bezonde the ryuere of
 8 Tygre is Caldee þat is a fuH gret kyngdom. In þat
 rewme, at Baldak aboueseyd was wont to duelle the
 Calyffez þat was wont to ben bothe as Emperour t Pope
 of the Arabyenez so þat he was lord spiritueH t temporeH
 12 And he was successour to Machomete t of his generacioun.
 þat cytee of Baldak was wont to ben cleped Sutis t
 Nabugodonozor founded it And pere duelled the holy
 prophete Daniel t pere he saugh visionnes of heuene
 16 t pere he made the exposicioun of dremes. And in old
 tyme pere were wont to be .iiij. Calyffez: He of Arabye,
 he of Caldeez And þei dwelleden in the cytee of Baldak
 aboueseyd. And at Cayre besides Babyloyne duelled the
 20 Calyffee of Egypt t at Marrok vpon the west see duelte
 the Calyffee of Barbaryenes t of Affrycanes. And now
 is pere non of the Calyffeez ne nought han ben siþe the
 tyme of the Sowdan Sahaladyn For from þat tyme hider
 24 the Sowdaun clepeth him self Calyffee And so han the
 Calyffeez ylost here name. Also wyteth wel þat Babyloyne
 þe lesse where the Soudan duelleth t⁽¹⁾ the cytee of
 Cayr þat is nygh besyde it ben grete huge cytees manye
 28 t fayre and þat on sitt nygh þat other. Babyloyne sytt
 upon the ryuere of Gyson somtyme clept Nyle þat cometh
 out of Paradys terrestre. þat ryuere of Nyle aH the 3eer
 whan the sonne entreth in to the signe of Cancer it
 32 begymeth to waxe And it waxeth aHweys als longe as the
 sonne is in Canero t in the signe of the lyoun. And
 it waxeth in such manere þat it is somtyme so gret þat
 it is .xx. cubytes or more of depness And þanne it doth
 36 gret harm to the godes þat ben vpon the lond For þanne

Mesopotamia, the
 home of
 Abraham,
 Ephraim
 and
 Theophilus.

Chaldea;
 Bagdad the
 seat of the
 Caliphs.

Nebuchad-
 nezzar and
 Daniel.

The three
 Caliphates.
 [1 fol. 19 a]

Cairo.

The floods of
 the Nile.

(1) at, MS.

Times of
dearth from
excessive or
insufficient
floods.

[1 fol. 19b]

The Nile
runs under-
ground from
India to
Ethiopia.

The ibis is
like a stork.

may noman trouaylle to ere the londes for the grete
moystness And þerfore is þere dere tyme in þat contree.
And also whan it wexeth lytyl it is dere tyme in þat
contree for defaute of moysture. And whan the sonne ⁴
is in the signe of Virgo þanne begynneth the ryuere for
to ¹wane & to decrece lytyl & lytyl So þat whan the sonne
is ⁽¹⁾entred in to the igne of *libra* þanne þei entren
betwene theise ryueres. This ryuere cometh rennyng ⁸
from Paradys terrestre betwene the desertes of ynde &
after it smytt vn to londe & renneth longe tyme many
grete contrees vnder ertlie And after it goth out vnder
an high hill þat men clepen *Aloth* þat is betwene ynde ¹²
& Ethiopie the mountance of .v. monethes iourneyes fro the
entree of Ethiopie And after it envyrouneth aH Ethiopie
& Morekane & goth aH along fro the lond of Egipte vnto
the cytee of Alisandre to the ende of Egipte and þere it ¹⁶
falleth in to the see. Aboute this ryuere ben many
bridides & foules As Sikonyes þat þei clepen Ibes.

Ch. VII. OF THE CONTREE OF EGIPT; OF THE BRID
FENIX; OF ARABYE; OF THE CYTEE OF
CAYRE; OF THE CONNYNGE TO KNOWEN
BAWME AND TO PREUEN IT, AND OF THE
GERNERES OF JOSEPH.

Egypt is
long and no
wider than
the floods
can reach.

The dry
climate
fauours the
study of
astronomy.

[2 fol. 26a]

EGYPT is a long contree but it is streyt þat is to seye
narrow for þei may not enlargen it toward the desert ²⁰
for defaute of water And the contree is sett along vpon
the ryuere of Nyle he als moche as þat ryuere may serue
be flodes or oþerwise þat whanne it floweth it may spreden
abrood þorgh the contree, so is the contree large of lengthe. ²⁴
For þere it reyneth not but lityll in þat contree & for þat
cause þei haue no water, but ȝif it ²be of þat flood of þat
ryuere. And for als moche as it ne reyneth not in
þat contree but the eyr is alwey pure & cleer, þerfore in ²⁸

(1) is repeated in MS.

- pat contree ben the gode astronomyeres, for þei fynde
 pere no cloudes to letten hem. Also the cytee of Cayre
 is right gret & more huge þan pat of Babyloyne the lesse
 4 And it sytt abouen toward the desert of Syrre a lytill
 abouen the ryuere aboueseyd. In Egypt pere ben .ij.
 parties, The heghte pat is toward Ethiopie & the loweness
 pat is towardes Arabye. In Egypt is the lond of
 8 Ramasses & the lond of Gessen. Egypt is a strong
 contree for it hath many schrewede haunenes be cause
 of the grete Roches pat ben stronge and daungerouse
 to passe by. And at Egypt toward the Est is the rede
 12 see pat dureth vnto the cytee of Coston & toward the
 west is the cytee of lybye pat is a full drye lond & lityll
 of fruyt, for it is ouer moche plentee of hete And pat
 lond is clept Fusth. And toward the partie meridionaill
 16 is Ethiopie & toward the north is the desert pat dureth
 vnto Syrre & so is the contree strong on all sydes. And
 it is wel a .xv. iourneyes of lengthe & more þan two
 so moche of desert & it is but .ij. iournees of largeness.
 20 And betwene Egypt & Nubye it hath wel a .xij. iournees
 of desert And men of Nubye ben cristen but þei ben
 blake as the Mowres for gret hete of the sonne. ¹In
 Egypt pere ben .v. prouynces, pat on hight SAHYTH pat
 24 other hight DEMESEER another RESICH, pat is an Ile in
 NYLE, Another ALISANDRE & another the lond of DAMYTE.
 pat citee was wont to be right strong but it was twyes
 wonnen of the cristene men And perfore after pat the
 28 sarazines beten down the walles And with the walles &
 the toures perof the sarazines maden another cytee more
 fer from the see & clepeden it the newe Damyete, So pat
 now no man duelleth at the rathere town of Damyete.
 32 At pat cytee of Damyete is on of the haunenes of Egypt
 & at Alisandre is pat other pat is a full strong cytee, But
 pere is no water to drynke, but 3if it come be condyt from
 Nyle pat entreth in to here cisternes, And who so stopped
 36 pat water from hem, þei myghte not endure pere. In
 Egypt pere ben but fewe Forcelettes or castelles be cause

Cairo lies up
the river.

Higher and
Lower
Egypt.

Egypt is
naturally
strong on
all sides.

Its extent.

[1 fol. 20 b]

Its five
provinces.

Damiette
twice taken
by Chris-
tians, then
rebuilt by
Saracens.

Alexandria's
water-
supply from
the Nile.

St. Anthony
the Great
meets a
satyr, who
asks the
saint to pray
for him.

[1 fol. 21 a]

Heliopolis.

The bird
Phoenix.

Every five
hundred
years it
burns itself
on an altar
in a fire of
spices and
native
sulphur.

[2 fol. 21 b]

The Phoenix
is a symbol
of Christ.

pat the contree is so strong of himself. Nota of a
MERUEYLE. At the desertes of Egypte was a worthi man
pat was an holy heremyte & pere mette with him a Monstre
pat is to seyne a monstre is a þing disformed aȝen kynde 4
bothe of man or of best or of ony þing elles & pat is cleped
a Monstre. And this monstre pat mette with this holy
heremyte was as it hadde ben a man pat hadde .ij. hornes
trenchant on his forhede & he hadde a body lyk a man 8
vnto þe navele 1 And benethe he hadde the body lych a
goot & the heremyte asked him what he was. And the
monstre answerde him & seyde he was a dedly creature
such as god hadde formed & duelled in þo desertes in 12
purchacyng his sustynance, & besoughte the heremyte
pat he wolde preye god for him the whiche pat cam from
henene for to sauē aȝen mankynde & was born of a mayden
& suffred passioun & deth as wee wel knowen, be whom 16
wee lyuen & ben. And ȝit is the hede with the .ij. hornes
of pat monstre at Alisandre for a merueyle. In Egypt
is the citee of Elyople pat is to seyne the cytee of the sonne.
In pat cytee pere is a temple made round after the schap 20
of the temple of Ierusalem. The prestes of pat temple han
all here wrytynges vnder the date of the foul pat is clept
Fenix & pere is non but on in aȝen the world And he cometh
to brenne himself vpon the awtere of pat temple at the ende 24
of .v. hundred ȝeer for so longe he lyueth. And at the
.v. ȝeres ende the prestes arrayen here awtere honestly
and putten pere vpon spices & sulphur vif & oþer thinges
pat wolen brennen lightly And þan the brid Fenix 28
cometh & brenneth himself to askes. And the first day
next after men fynden in the askes a worm And the
seconde day next after men fynden a brid quyk & parfyt
And the thridde day next after he fleeth his wey And 32
so pere is no mo briddes of pat 2 kynde in aȝen the world
but it allone & treuly pat is a gret myracle of god. And
men may wel lykne pat bryd vnto god be cause pat pere
nys no god but on And also pat oure lord aroos from 36
deth to lyne the thridde day. This bryd men seen often

- tyme fleen in þo contrees And he is not meecheles more
 þan an Egle And he hath a crest of fedres vpon his hed
 more gret þan the poocok hath & his nekke is 3alow after
 4 colour of an Oriē þat is a ston wel schynynge. And It is yellow,
blue and
purple.
 his bak is coloured blew as ynde And his wenges ben
 of purpre colour And the tayH is 3elow & red, eastynge
 his tayH a3en in travers. And he is a fuH fair brid to
 8 loken vpon a3enst the sonne, for he schyneth full glori-
 ously & nobely. Also in Egipt ben gardynes þat han
 trees & herbes þe whiche beren frutes .vij. tymes in the Seven crops
in a year.
Emeralds.
 3eer And in þat lond men fynden manye fayre Emeraudes
 12 & ynowe And þefore þei ben þere grettere cheep. Also
 whan it reyneth ones in the somer in the lond of Egipt
 þanne is aH the contree fuH of grete myzs. Also at Cayre Mice.
 þat I spak of before sellen men comounly bothe men & The slave-
market.
 16 women of other lawe as we don here bestes in the markat.
 And þere is a comoun hows in þat eytee þat is aH fuH of
 smale furneyns & thider bryngen women of the town here
 eyren of hennes of gees & of dokes for to ben put into
 20 þo forneysses And þei þat kepen þat hows coueren hem
 with hete of hors dong Withouten henne goos or doke
 or ony oþer foul. And at the ende ¹ of .iiij. wokes or of a [1 fol. 22 a]
 moneth þei comen a3en & taken here chikenes & norisschen
 24 hem & bryngen hem forth so þat aH the contree is fuH of
 hem And so men don þere bothe winter & somer. Also
 in þat contree & in oþere also men fynden longe Apples to
 selle in hire cesoun & men clepen hem Apples of Paradys Apples of
Paradise.
 28 & þei ben right swete & of gode sauour And þogh 3ee
 kutte hem in neuer so many gobettes or parties ouer-
 thwart or endlonges enere more 3ee schull fynden in the
 myddes the figure of the holy eros of oure lord Ihesu
 32 But þei wil roten within .viij. dayes And for þat cause
 men may not carye of þo apples to no fer contrees. Of
 hem men fynden the mountance of an hundred in a
 bascat to selle & þei han grete leues of a fote & an half
 36 of lengthe & þei ben conenably large. And men fynden
 þere also the appuH tree of Adam þat han a byte at on Adam's
apples.

Figs of
Pharaoh.
The field
where balm
grows.

Wells made
by the
Infant
Christ.

[f. fol. 22 b]

Balm will
grow
nowhere
else.

The boughs
should not
be cut with
iron.

Saracen
names for
the wood
the fruit,
and the
gum.

Only Chris-
tians can
grow balm.

It is said to
grow in
India
Major.

It is sophis-
ticated in
various
ways.

of the sydes And þere ben also Fige trees þat beren no
leues but fyges vpon the smale braunches & men clepen
hem Figes of PHAROON. Also besyde CAYRE withouten
þat cytee is the feld where Bawme groweth And it 4
cometh out on smale trees þat ben non hyere þan to a
mannes breck girdil & þei semen as wode þat is of the
wyld vyne. And in þat feld ben .vij. welles þat ourc
lord Ihesu crist made with on of his feet whan he wente 8
to pleyen with oþer children. þat feld is not so wel
closed but þat men may entren at here owne list, But
in þat cesoun þat the ¹bawme is growynge men put
þere to gode kepynge þat no man⁽¹⁾ dar ben hardy to 12
entre. This bawme groweth in no place but only þere
And þough þat men bryngen of þe plauntes for to planten
in oþer contrees þei growen wel & fayre but þei bryngen
forth no fructuous thing. & the leues of bawme ne falle 16
nought. And men kutten the braunches with a scharp
flyntston or with a scharp bon whanne men wil go to
kutte hem, For who so kutte hem with jren it wolde
destroie his vertue & his nature. And the sarazines 20
clepen the wode ENOCHBALSE, And the fruyt the whiche
þat is as quybybes þei clepen ABEISSAM And the lycour
þat droppeth fro the braunches þei clepen Guybalse.
And men maken all weys þat bawme to ben tyled of the 24
cristen men or elles it wolde not fructyfye As the Sara-
zins seyn hemself for it hath ben oftentye preued.
Men seyn also þat the bawme groweth in ynde the more
in þat desert where Alysandre spak to the trees of the 28
sonne & of the mone But I haue not seen it For I haue
not ben so fer abouen vward because þat þere ben to
many perilouse passages. And wyte ȝee wel þat a man
oughte to take gode kepe for to bye bawme but ȝif he 32
eone knowe it right wel, for he may right lyghtly ben
disceyned For men sellen a gomme þat men clepen
Turbentyne in stede of bawme And þei putten þereto a
litil bawme for to ȝeuen gode odour And summe putten 36

(¹) entre, MS.

- wax in oyle of the ¹ wode of the fruyt of bawme & seyn
 þat it is bawme And summe destyllen clowes of gylofre
 & of spykenard of Spayne & of opere spices þat ben
 4 wel smellynge & the lykour þat goth out þerof þei
 clepe it bawme And þus ben many grete lordes & opere
 disceyned And þei wenen þat þei han bawme & þei haue non.
 For the Sarazines countrefeten it be sotyltee of craft for to
 8 disceyuen the cristene men as I haue seen full many a
 tyme. And after hem the marchauntes & the Apotecaries
 countrefeten it eftsones & þanne it is lasse worth & a gret
 del worse. But ȝif it lyke ȝou I schall schewe how ȝee
 12 schuþ knowe & preue to the ende þat ȝee schull not ben
 disceyued. First ȝee schuþ wel knowe þat the natureþ
 bawme is full cleer & of cytryne colour & strongly
 smellynge. And ȝif it be thikke or reed or blak it is
 16 Sophisticate þat is to seyne contrefeted & made lyke it
 for disceyt. And vnderstondeþ þat ȝif ȝee wil putte a
 lityll bawme in the pawme of ȝoure hond aȝen the sonne,
 ȝif it be fyn & gode ȝee ne schuþ not suffre ȝoure hand
 20 aȝenst the hete of the sonne. Also taketh a lytill bawme
 with the poynt of a knyf & touche it to the fuyr & ȝif it
 brenne it is a gode signe. After take also a drope of
 bawme & put it into a dissch or in a cuppe with mylk of
 24 a goot And ȝif it be natureþ bawme anon it wole take &
 beclippe the mylk. Or put a drope of bawme in clere
 water in a cuppe of syluer or in a clere bacyn & stere it
 wel with the clere water And ȝif þat the ² bawme be
 28 fyn & of his owne kynde the water schall neuere trouble,
 And ȝif the bawme be sophisticat þat is to seyne
 countrefeted the water schall beco[m]e anon trouble.
 And also ȝif the bawme be fyn it schall falle to the
 32 botme of the vesseþ as pough it were quyk syluer, For
 the fyn bawme is more heuy twyes þan is the bawme þat
 is sophisticat & countrefeted. Now I haue spoken of
 bawme & now also I schall speke of another thing þat is
 36 bezonde Babyloine aboute the Flode of Nile toward the

Turpentine,
wood of the
balm-tree,
cloves and
spikenard
are used as
substitutes.

[¹ fol. 23 a]

Saracens,
merchants
and apo-
thecaries
adulterate
it.

Genuine
balm is
yellow and
light.

It burns in
the sun and
in fire,

and curdles
goat's milk.

[² fol. 23 b]

It does not
make clear
water
turbid.

1. 30, becone, C.

The Pyramids, or Garners of Joseph, where corn was kept in times of dearth.

They are not sepulchral monuments,

[1 fol. 24 a]

for then they would neither be hollow, nor have any gates.

The Egyptian alphabet.

desert betwene Affrik & Egypt þat is to seyne of the
 Gernerres of Joseph þat he leet make for to kepe the
 greynes for the perile of the dere 3eres. And þei ben
 made of ston full wel made of Masounes craft Of the whiche 4
 .ij. ben merueylouse grete & hye And the toþere ne ben
 not so grete. And euery Gerner hath a 3ate for to entre
 withjune A lytiȝ hygh from the erthe For the lond is
 wasted & fallen sithe the Gernerres were made. And 8
 withjune þei ben all full of serpentres And abouen the
 Gernerres withouten ben many scriptures of dyuerse
 langages. And summen seyn þat þei ben sepultures of
 grete lordes þat weren somtyme but þat is not trewe For 12
 all the comoun rymour & speche is of all the peple ¹þere
 bothe fer & nere þat þei ben the Garneres of Joseph And
 so fynden þei in here scriptures & in here cronyeles. On
 þat oþer partie, 3if þei weren sepultures þei scholden not 16
 ben voyd withjune Ne þei scholde haue no 3ates for to
 entre withjune. For 3ee may wel knowe þat tombes &
 sepultures ne ben not made of such gretness ne of suche
 highness, Wherefore it is not to belene þat þei ben tombes 20
 or sepultures. In Egypt also þere ben dyuerse langages
 & dynerse lettres & of oþer manere condicioun þan þere
 ben in oþer partes As I schall deuyse 3ou suche as þei
 ben And the names how thei clepen hem, To such entent 24
 þat 3ee mowe knowe the difference of hem & of othere.

[Another alphabet.]

Ch. VIII.
 [fol. 24 b]

OF THE YLE OF CECYLE; OF THE WEYE FRO
 BABYLOYNE TO THE MOWNT SYNAY; OF
 THE CHIRCHE OF SEYNT KATERYNE, AND
 OF ALLE THE MERUAYLLES þERE.

More routes
 towards
 Egypt.

NOW wil I retourne a3en or I procede any ferthere for
 to declare 3ou the othere weyes þat drawn towardes
 Babiloyne where the Soudan himself duelleth þat is at 28

- the entree of Egypt, for als moche as many folk gon
 pider first t after þat to the mownt Synay t after re-
 tournen to Ierusalem, As I haue seyd 3ou here befor.
- 4 For þei fulfillen first the more longe pilgrymage t after
 retournen agen be the nexte weyes because þat the more
 ny weye is the more worthi t þat is Ierusalem, For non
 other pilgrymage is not lyk in comparoun to it. But
- 8 for to fufille here pilgrymages more esily t more sykerly
 men gon first the longer weye rathere þan the nerere
 weye. But whoso wil go to Babyloyne be another weye
 more schort from þe contrees of the west þat I haue
- 12 reherced before or from oþer contrees next fro hem, þan
 men gon by Fraunce be Burgoyne t be Lombardye. It
 nedeth not to telle 3ou the names of the cytees ne of
 the townes þat ben in þat weye For the weye is comoun
- 16 t it is knowen of many naeyouns. And þere ben manye
 havenes [where] þat men taken the see. Summe men taken
 the see at ¹Gene, Somme at Venyse t passen be the see
 Adryatyk þat is clept the Goulf of Venyse, þat departeth
- 20 ytaylle t Grece on þat syde. And somme gon to Naples
 somme to Rome t from Rome to Brandys t þere þei
 taken the see t in many othere places where þat hauenes
 ben. And men gon be Tussye be Champayne be Calabre
- 24 be Appuille t be the hilles of ytaylle be Chorisqe be
 Sardyne t be Cycile þat is a gret Ile t a gode. In þat
 Ile of Cycile þer is a maner of a gardyn in the whiche
 ben many dyuerse frutes And the gardyn is always
- 28 grene t florissching, aft the cesouns of the 3eer als wel
 in winter as in somer. þat Ile holt in compas aboute
 .ccc t l. frensche myles And betwene Cycile t Itaylle
 þere is not but a lytiH arm of the see þat men clepen
- 32 the Farde of Mescyne And Cycile is betwene the see
 Adryatyk t the see of lombardye, And fro Cycile in
 to Calabre is but .viij. myles of lombardye. And in
 Cycile þere is a manere of serpentes be the whiche men
- 36 assayen t preuen wheþer here children ben bastardes or
 none or of lawefull mariage, For 3if þei ben born in right

Many
pilgrims go
there and to
Sinai before
turning to
Jerusalem.

From the
West,
Northern
Italy is first
reached.

Genoa,
Venice.
[¹ fol. 25 a]

Naples,
Brindisi.

Tuscany,
Campania,
Apulia,
Corsica,
Sardinia.

Sieily and
its garden.

Straits of
Messina.

The serpents
that try the
legitimacy of
children.

Etna and
the vol-
canoes.
[¹ fol. 25 b]

Pisa.

Corfu.

Valona,
Durazzo.

Alexandria,
the scene of
St. Cath-
erine's and
of St. Mark's
martyrdom.
[² fol. 26 a]

Pictures
white-
washed by
Saracens.

mariage the *serpentes* gon aboute hem & don hem non
harm And ȝif þei ben born in avowtrie the *serpentes*
byten hem & envenyme hem & thus manye wedded men
preuen ȝif the children ben here owne. Also in þat Ile 4
is the Mount Etlma þat men elepen Mount GybeH ¹ & the
wleanes þat ben eueremore brennynge. And þere ben
vij. places þat brennen & þat casten out dyuerse flawmes 8
and dyuerse colour And be the chaungynge of þo flawmes
men of þat contree knowen whanne it schall be derthe or
gode tyme or cold or hoot or moyst or drye or in aH
othere manere how the tyme schall be gouerned. And
from Itaille vnto the wleanes nys but .xxv. myle And 12
men seyn þat the wleanes ben weyes of helle. Also
whoso goth be Pyse ȝif þat men list to go þat weye þere
is an arm of the see where þat men gon to opere haunenes
in þo marches And þan men passen be the Ile of GREEF 16
þat is at GENE And after arryueth men in GRECE at the
haunene of the cytee of Myrok or at the hauene of Valone
or at the cytee of Duras, & þere is a Duk at Duras, or at
opere haunenes in þo marches & so men gon to Costanty- 20
noble. And after gon men be watre to the Ile of Crete &
to the Ile of Rodes & so to Cypre & so to Venyse & fro
pens to Costantynoble, to holde the more right weye be
see it is wel a .m^t viij & ^ciiij. ^{xx}score myle of lombardye. 24
And after from Cypre men gon be see & leuen Ierusalem &
aH þat contre on the left hond vnto Egypt & arryuen at
the cytee of DAMYETE þat was wont to ben fuH strong &
it sytt at the entree of Egypt. And fro Damyete gon 28
men to the Cytee of Alizandre þat sytt also vpon the see.
In þat cytee was seynte katelyne beheded And þere was
seynt ² Mark the Euuangelist martyred & buried, But the
Emperour Leoun made his bones to ben brought to 32
Venyse. And ȝit þere is at Alizandre a faire chirche
aH white withouten peynture and so ben all the othere
chirches þat weren of the cristene men aH white with-
inne, For the Paynemes & the Sarrazynes maden hem 36
white for to fordon the ymages of seyntes þat weren

peynted on the walles. þat eytee of Alizandre is wel
 .xxx. furlonges in lengthe but it is but .x. on largeness
 And it is a full noble eytee t a fayr. At þat eytee
 4 entreth the ryuere of Nyle in to the see as I to 3ou haue
 seyð before. In þat ryuere men fynden many precyouse
 stones t meche also of lignum aloes And it is a manere
 of wode þat cometh out of paradys terrestre the whiche
 8 is good for manye dyuerse medicynes And it [is] right
 dereworth. And from Alizandre men gon to Babyloyn
 where the Soudan dwelleth þat sytt also vpon the ryuere
 of Nyle, And this weye is most schort for to go streyght
 12 vnto Babiloyne.

Extent of
Alexandria.Lignum
aloes.Babylon
the Less.

OF THE WEYE THAT GOTH FROM BABI-
 LOYNE, VNTO THE MOWNT SYNAY, t OF
 THE MERUEYLES þERE.

Ch. IX.

NOW schall I seye 3ou also the weye þat goth fro
 Babiloyne to the Mount of Synay where seynte
 kateryne lyth. He moste passe be the desertes of Arabye
 16 Be the whiche desertes Moyses ladde the peple of Israel
 And þanne passe men be the welle þat Moyses made with
 his hond in þo desertes whan the peple gruced for þei
 fownden no^thing to drynke. And þan passe men be
 20 the welle of Marach of the whiche the water was first
 bytter But the children of Israel putten þerejune a tree
 t anon the water was swete t gode for to drynke. And
 þanne gon men be desert vnto the vale of Elyn In the
 24 whiche vale ben .xij. welles And þere ben .lxxij. trees
 of palme þat beren the dates The whiche Moyses fond
 with the children of Israel, And fro þat valeye is but a
 gode iourneye to the Mount of Synay. And whoso wil
 28 go be another weye fro Babiloyne þan me goth be the
 Rede see þat is an arm of the see OCCEAN. And þere
 passed Moyses with the children of Israel ouerthwart
 the see all drye, Whan Pharao the kyng of Egypt chased

To Mount
Sinai.Moses made
a well with
his hand.

[1 fol. 26 b]

The well of
Marah.

Elim.

The Red
Sea.

hem, And þat see is wel a .vj. myle of largeness in lengthe.
 And in þat see was Pharao drowned & all his hoost þat he
 ladde. þat see is not more reed þan another see but in
 s[o]me place þereof is the graueH reed And þefore men 4
 clepen it the rede see. þat see renneth to the endes of
 Arabye & of Palestyne, þat see lasteth more þan .iiij.
 iourneyes And þan gon men be desert vnto the vale
 of Elyn And fro þens to the mount of Synay. And 8
 3ee may wel vndirstonde þat be this desert no man may
 go on horsbak because þat þere nys nouþer mete for hors
 ne water to drynke And for þat cause men passen þat
 desert with CameH, For the Camaylle fynt allwey mete on 12
 trees & on bussches þat he fedeth him with And he may
 wel faste fro drynk. ij. ¹ dayes or .iiij. And þat may non
 hors don. And wyte well þat from Babyloyn to the
 Mount Synay is well a .xij. gode iourneyes And sum men 16
 maken hem more And sum men hasten hem & peynen
 hem & þefore þei maken hem lesse, And all weys fynden
 men latymeres to go with hem in the contrees & ferthere
 bezonde into tyme þat men conne the langage. And it 20
 behoueth men to bere vitaiH with hem þat schall duren
 hem in þo desertes & oþer necessities for to lyue by. And
 the Mount of Synay is clept the desert of Syne þat is for
 to seyne the bussch brennyng Because þat Moyses sawgh 24
 oure lord god many tymes in forme of fuyr brennyng
 vpon þat hiH And also in a bussch brennyng & spak to
 him And þat was at the foot of the hill. There is an
 Abbeye of Monkes wel bylded & wel closed with 3ates of 28
 Iren for drede of the wyld bestes. And the monkes
 ben Arrabyenes or men of Grece & þere [is] a gret conent
 And all þei ben as heremytes & þei drinken no wyn but
 3if it be on principaH festes And þei ben fuH deuoute 32
 men & lyuen porely & sympely with joutes & with dates
 And þei don gret abstynence & penaunce. þere is the
 chirche of seynte kateryne in the whiche ben manye
 lampes brennyng For þei han of oyle of Olyue ynow 36

The sand
is red.

Horses can-
not be used,
but only
camels.

[1 fol. 27 a]

From Baby-
lon the Less
to Sinai is a
twelve days'
journey.

Interpreters
act as
guides.

Origin of the
name Sinai.

The
Convent.

St. Cath-
erine's
Church.

bothe for to brenne in here lampes & to ete also And þat
 plentee haue þei be the myracle of god For the ravenes
 & the crowes & the choughes & oþer foules ¹ of the contree [1 fol. 27 b]
 4 assemblen hem þere euery þeer ones & fleen þider as in
 pilgrymage And euerych of hem bryngeth a braunche of
 the Bayes or of Olyue in here bekes in stede of offryng &
 leuen hem þere, of the whiche the monkes maken gret
 8 plentee of oyle & this is a gret meruaylle. And sith þat
 foules þat han no kyndely wytt ne resoun gon thider to
 seche þat gloriouse virgyne wel more oughten men þan to
 seche hire & to worschipe hire. Also behynde the awtier
 12 of þat chirche is the place where Moyses saugh oure lord
 god in a brennyng bush And whanne the monkes
 entren in to þat place þei don of bothe hosen & schoon
 or botes always, Be cause þat oure lord seyde to Moyses :
 16 do of thin hosen & thi schon for the place þat þou stondest
 on is lond holy & blessed. And the monkes clepen þat
 place DOZOLEEL þat is to seyne the schadew of god. And
 besyde the high awtier .iiij. degrees of heighþe is the ferte
 20 of Alabastre where the bones of seynt Kateryne lyȝn And
 the prelate of the monkes scheweth the relykes to the
 pilgrymes And with an Instrument of syluer he froteth
 the bones & þanne þer goth out a lytyll oyle as þough it
 24 were a maner swetyng þat is nouthur lych to oyle ne to
 bawme but it is full swete of smell. And of þat þei
 zeuen a lytill to the pilgrymes, for þere goth out but lityll
 quantitee of þat likour. And after þat þei schewen the
 28 heed ² of seynte kateryne & the cloth þat sche was wrapped
 jnne þat is ȝit all bloody, And in þat same cloth so
 ywrapped the aungeles beren hire body to the mount Synay
 & þere þei buried hire with it. And þanne þei schewen
 32 the bussch þat brenned & wasted nought in the whiche
 oure lord spak to Moyses & oþere relikes ynowe. Also
 whan the prelatē of the abbeye is ded I haue vndirstonden
 be informacioun þat his lampe quencheth And whan þei
 36 chesen anoþer prelate ȝif he be a gode man & worthi to be
 prelate his lampe schal lighte with the grace of god with-

The birds
 bring twigs
 of olive-
 trees for
 making oil.

The spot
 where the
 Burning
 Bush
 appeared.

The sarco-
 phagus of
 St. Cath-
 erine.

The mirac-
 ulous oil.

The Saint's
 head.
 [2 fol. 28 a]

The miracle
of the lampes
going out
and re-
kindled
without
being
touched.

I admon-
ished the
monks to
publish
God's graces
to them.

[1 fol. 28 b]

No vermin
can enter
the
Monastery.

for the
Virgin has
banished
them.

The ascent
up the steps.

outen touchinge of any man. 'For euerych of hem hath a
lampe be himself And be here lampes þei knowen wel
whan ony of hem schall dye. For whan ony schall dye
the lyght begynneth to chaunge & to wexe dym And 3if 4
he be chosen to ben prelate & is not worthi his lampe
quencheth anon. And other men han told me þat he þat
syngeth the masse for the prelate þat is ded he schall
fynde vpon the awtier the name written of him þat schall 8
ben prelate chosen. And so vpon a day I asked of the
monkes bothe on & oþer how this befell, But þei wolde
not tell me no thing Into the tyme þat I seyde þat þei
scholde not hyde the grace þat god did hem but þat þei 12
scholde publische it to make the peple to haue the more
deuocioun And þat þei diden synne to hide goddes
myracle as me semed, For the myracles þat god hath don
and 3it ¹doth enery day ben the wytnesse of his myght & of 16
his merueylles as dauid seyth in the psaultere: MIRABILIA
TESTIMONIA TUA DOMINE, þat is to seyne: Lord thi
merueyles ben þi wytness. And þanne þei tolde me
bothe on and oþer how it befell full many a tyme, But 20
more I myghte not haue of hem. In þat abbeye ne
entreth not no flye ne todes ne ewtes ne such foul
venymouse bestes ne lýzs ne flees be þe myracle of god
& of oure lady. For þere were wont to ben many suchē 24
manere of filthes þat the monkes weren in wiþ to leue the
place & the abbeye And weren gon fro thens vpon the
mountayne abonen for to eschewe þat place. And oure
lady cam to hém & bad hem turnen azen And from þens 28
forewardes neuere entred such filthe in þat place amonges
hem Ne neuere schall entre here after. Also before the
gate is the welle where Moyses smot the ston of the
whiche the water cam out plenteuously. Fro þat abbeye 32
men gon vp the mountayne of Moyses be many degrees &
þere men fynden first a chirche of oure lady where þat
sche mette the monkes whan þei fledden away for the
vermy n aboneseyd. And more high vpon þat mountayne 36
is the Chapell of helye the prophete And þat place þei

clepen Oreb, whereof holy writt speketh : Et AMBULAUIT Horeb.
 IN FORTITUDINE CIBI ILLIUS VSQUE AD MONTEM DEI OREB,
 þat is to ¹seyne : And he wente in strengthe of þat mete [1 fol. 29 a]
 4 vnto the hill of god Oreb. And þere nygh is the vyne
 þat seynt Iohn the Euuangelist planted þat men clepen
 Reisins of Staphis. And a lytill abouen is the Chapell of Chapel of
Moses.
 8 Moyses t the roche where Moyses fleygh to for drede
 whan he saugh oure lord face to face, And in þat roche is
 printed the forme of his body For he smot so strongly t
 so harde him self in þat roche þat all his body was doluen
 withinne þorgh the myracle of god. And þere besyde is
 12 the place where oure lord toke to Moyses the .x. com-
 mandementes of the lawe. And þere is the caue vnder
 the roche where Moyses duelte whan he fasted .xl. dayes
 t .xl. nyghtes But he dyede in the lond of promissioun,
 16 But noman knoweth where he was buryed. And from
 þat mountayne men passen a gret valeye for to gon to The valley.
 anoper mountayn where seynt Kateryne was buryed of
 the Angeles of oure lord. And in þat valeye is a
 20 chirche of .xl. martyres t þere singen the monkes of the
 abbeyes often tyme And þat valeye is right cold. And
 after men gon vp the mountayne of seynt Kateryne þat is Mount St.
Catherine.
 more high þan the mount of Moyses And þere where
 24 seynt Kateryne was buryed is nouthir chirche ne chapell
 ne other duellynge place, But þere is an heep of stones The ruins of
a chapel
mark the
spot where
she was
first buried.
 aboute the place where the body of hire was put of the
 Angeles. ²þere was wont to ben a chapell but it was
 28 casten down t 3it lyggen the stones þere And all be it þat
 the Collect of seynte kateryne seye þat it is the place
 where oure lord betaughte the .x. commandementes to
 Moyses t þere where the blessed virgyne seynte kateryne
 32 was buryed, þat is to vnderstonde in .o. contree or in .o.
 place berynge .o. name, For bothe þat on t þat oper is clept
 the mount of Synay, But þere is a gret weye from þat on
 to þat oper t a gret deep valeye betwene hem.

[2 fol. 29 b]

Mount St.
 Catherine
 and the
 Mount of
 Moses are
 distinct
 parts of
 Sinai.

Ch. X. OF THE DESERT BETWENE THE CHIRCHE
OF SEYNTE KATERYNE & IERUSALEM; OF
THE DRIE TRE, & HOW ROSES CAM FIRST
IN þE WORLD.

From Sinai
to Jerusa-
lem.

The
Bedouins.

Scarcity of
water in the
desert.

[1 fol. 80 a]

The Nomads
eat no breȝl.

They live by
hunting.

They despise
death and
fear no
princes.

Their arms
are a shield
and a spear.

NOW after þat men han visited þo holy places þanne
wil þei turnen toward Ierusalem And þan wil þei
take leue of the monkes & recommenden hem to here
preyeres, And þanne þei zeuen the pilgrimes of here vitaylle 4
for to passe with the desertes toward Surrye. And þo
desertes duren wel a .xiiij. iourneyes. In þat desert
duellen manye of Arrabyenes þat men clepen Bedoynes
& Ascopardes. And þei ben folk full of aȝt euyȝ con- 8
diciouns And þei haue none houses but tentes þat þei
maken of skynnes of bestes as of Camaylles & of oþer
bestes þat þei eten And þere benethe þei conchen hem &
dwellen in place where þei may fynden water As on the 12
Rede see or elleswhere, For in þat desert is full gret
defaute of water ¹ And often tyme it falleth þat where
men fynden water at o tyme in a place it fayleth anoþer
tyme And for that skylle þei make none habitaciouns 16
þere. Theise folk þat I speke of þei tylen not the lond
ne þei laboure nought for þei eten no bred but ȝif it be
ony þat dwellen nygh a gode toun þat gon thider & eten
bred somtyme And þei rosten here flesch & here fisch 20
vpon the hote stones aȝenst the sonne. And þei ben
stronge men & wel fyghtyng And þere is so meche
multytude of þat folk þat þei ben with outen nombre
And þei ne recchen of no thing ne don not but chacen 24
after bestes to eten hem And þei recchen no þing of here
lif And þefore þei dowten not the Soudan ne non oþer
prince, But þei dar wel werre with hem ȝif þei don ony
thing þat is greuance to hem. And þei han often tyme 28
werre with the Soudan & namely þat tyme þat I was
with him. And þei beren but o scheld & o spere with
outen oþer armes And þei wrappen here hedes & here

- necke with a gret quantytee of white linnen cloth And
 þei ben right felonouse ⁊ foule ⁊ of cursed kynde. And
 whan men passen this desert in comynge toward Ieru-
 4 salem þei comen to Bersabee þat was wont to ben a full Beersheba
 fair town ⁊ a delytable of cristene men And zit þere ben
 summe of here chirches. In þat town dwelled Abraham
 the Patriark a longe tyme. þat town of Bersabee founded
 8 Bersabee the wif of sire vrye the knyght on the whiche founded by
 kyng Dauid ¹gatt Salomon the wyse þat was kyng after Bathsheba,
 Dauid vpon the .xij. kynredes of Ierusalem And regned
 .xl. ȝeer. And fro þens gon men to the cytee of Ebron
 12 þat is the montance of .ij. gode myle And it was clept
 somtyme the vale of Mambree And sumtyme it was clept
 the vale of teres because þat Adam wepte þere an .c. ȝeer
 for the deth of Abell his sone þat Caym slowgh. Ebron
 16 was wont to ben the princypall cytee of the Philistynes
 And þere duelleden somtyme the Geauntz And þat cytee
 was also Sacerdotall þat is [to]⁽¹⁾ seyne seyntuarie of the
 tribe of Iuda. And it was so fre þat men resceyued þere
 20 aȝ manere of fugityfes of oþer places for here enyl dedes.
 In Ebron Iosue Caleph ⁊ here companye comen first to
 aspyen how þei myghte wynnen the lond of behest. In
 Ebron regned first kyng Dauid .vij. ȝeer ⁊ an half And in
 24 Ierusalem he regnede .xxxiiij. ȝeer ⁊ an half. And in
 Ebron ben aȝ the sepultures of the Patriarkes Adam
 Abraham ysaac ⁊ of Iacob ⁊ of here wyfes Eue Sarre
 ⁊ Rebekke ⁊ of Lya the whiche sepultures the Sarazines
 28 kepen full curiously ⁊ han the place in gret reuerence
 for the holy fadres the Patriarkes þat lyȝn þere And þei
 suffre no cristene man entre in to that place but ȝif it be
 of specyall grace of the Soudan, For þei holden cristene
 32 men ⁊ Iewes as dogges And þei seyn þat þei scholde
 not entre into so holy place. And men clepen ²þat place
 where þei lyȝn double spelunke or double cave or double
 dyeh for als meche as þat on lyeth aboue þat other And
 36 the Sarazines clepen þat place in here langage KARICARBA Kirjath-
 Arba.

(1) *to* missing in MS.

The cave of
Adam and
Eve.

Cambil dug
from the
earth.

[1 fol. 31 b]

The Dry
Tree.

pat is to seyne the place of Patriarkes And the Iewes
clepen pat place ARBOTH. And in pat same place was
Abrahames hous And pere he satt t saugh .iiij. persones
t worschipte but on as holy writt seyth: TRES VIDIT t 4
VNUM ADORAVIT, pat is to seyne: he saugh .iiij. t worschipped
on. And of po same reseceyued Abraham the Aungeles
in to his hous. And right faste by pat place is a cave in
the roche where Adam t Eue duelleden whan pei weren 8
putt out of paradyse t pere goten pei here children. And
in pat same place was Adam formed t made, after pat
summen seyn. For men weren wont for to clepe pat
place the feld of Damasee, be cause pat it was in the 12
lordschipe of Damask. And fro pens was he translated
into paradys of delytes, as pei seyn. And after pat he
was dryuen out of paradys he was pere left. And the
same day pat he was putt in paradys, the same day he 16
was putt out, For anon he synned. pere begynneth the
vale of Elbron pat dureth nygh to Ierusalem. There the
Aungell commaunded Adam pat he scholde duelle with
his wyf Eue, Of the whiche he gatt Seth, of whiche tribe 20
pat is to seye kynrede Ihesu crist was born. In pat
valeye is a feld where men drawen out of the erthe a
thing pat men clepen Cambyll t pei ete it in stede of
spice ¹ t pei here it to selle. And men may not make 24
the hole ne the cave where it is taken out of the erthe
so depe ne so wyde, but pat it is at the 3eres ende full
a3en vp to the sydes, porghe the grace of god. And .ij.
myle from Ebron is the graue of loth pat was Abrahames 28
broper [sone]. And a lytill fro Ebron is the mount of
Mambre, of the which the valeye taketh his name, And
pere is a tree of Oke pat the Sarazines clepen DIRPE
pat is of Abrahames tyme, the whiche men clepen the 32
drye tree. And pei seye pat it hath ben pere sithe the
begynnyng of the world t was sumtyme grene t bare
lenes vnto the tyme pat oure lord dyede on the cros
And panne it dryede t so diden aH the trees pat weren 36

þanne in the world [or elles þai failed in þaire hertes and
 become holle within, of whilk þer er many ȝit standand in
 diuerse placez of the world](¹) And summe seyn be here
 4 propheeyes þat a lord, a Prince of the west syde of the world
 schall wynnen the lond of promysсион þat is the holy lond
 with helpe of cristene men t he schall do synge a masse
 vndir þat drye tree t þan the tree schall wexen grene t
 8 bere bothe fruyt t leues And þorgh þat myracle manye
 Sarazines t Lewes schuH ben turned to cristene feyth.
 And þefore þei don gret worschipe þereto t kepen it full
 besyly. And all be it so þat it be drye natheles ȝit he
 12 bereth gret vertue for certeynly he þat hath a litill pere
 of vpon him it heleth him of the fallynge euyH, And
 his hors schuH not ben afoundred t manye oþer vertues
 it hath, Wherefore men ¹holden it full precyous. From
 16 Ebron men gon to Bethlem in half a day, for it is but
 .v. myle t it is full fayre weye be pleynes t wodes full
 delectable. Bethleem is a lityll cytee long t narwe t
 wel walled t in eche syde enclosed with gode dyches
 20 And it was wont to ben cleped Efrata, as holy wrytt
 seyth: ECCE AUDIUMUS EUM IN EFFRATA, þat is to seye:
 lo wee herde him in efrata. And toward the est ende
 of the cytee is a full fair chirche and a graciouse t it
 24 hath many toures, pynacles t corneres full stronge t
 curiously made And within þat chirche ben .xliiij.
 pyleres of marble grete t faire. And betwene the cytee
 t the chirche is the feld Floridous, þat is to seyne, the
 28 feld florissched. For als moche as a faire mayden was
 blamed with wrong t schaudred þat sche hadde don
 fornyacioun, For whiche cause sche was demed to the
 deth t to be brent in þat place, to the whiche sche was
 32 ladd. And as the fyre began to brenne aboute hire sche
 made hire preyeres to oure lord þat as wissely as sche
 was not gilty of þat synne þat he wolde helpe hire t
 make it to be knowen to aH men of his mercyfull grace.
 36 And whan sche hadde þus seyð sche entred in to the

At the re-
conquest of
the Holy
Land, that
tree will
wax green.

Virtues of
its wood.

[fol. 32 a]

Bethlehem.

X

Campus
floridus.

The innocent
maiden
saved from
fire.

(¹), Omitted through homoiotel. Restored partly from Eg.

The glowing
twigs are
turned to
red rose
bushes, the
others to
white.

[¹ fol. 32 b]

Cave of the
Nativity.

Names of
the Three
Kings.

Charnel
of the
Innocents.

Shrine of St.
Jerome.

[² fol. 33 a]

Spots of
Our Lady's
milk on red
marble.

fuyr And anon was the fuyre quenched t oure. And the
brondes þat weren brennyng becomen red roseres And
the brondes þat weren not kyndled nor tend becomen
white roseres full of roses. And þeise ¹ weren the first 4
Roseres t Roses bothe white t rede, þat euere ony man
saugh. And þus was þis mayden saued be the grace of
god And þerfore is þat feld clept the feld of god florysscht,
for it was full of roses. Also besyde the queer of the 8
chirche at the right syde as men comen downward .xvj.
greces is the place where oure lord was born, þat is full
wel dyght of marble t full richely peynted with gold
syluer azure t oþer coloures. And .iiij. paas besyde 12
is the crybbe of the ox t the asse. And besyde þat is
the place where the sterre fell þat ladde the .iiij. kynges
Iaspar Melchior t Balthazar, But men of Greece clepen
hem þus: Galgalath Malgalath t Saraphie, And the Iewes 16
clepen [hem] in this manere in Ebrew: APPELIUS AMERRIUS
t DAMASUS. Theise .iiij. kynges offreden to oure lord gold
ensence t myrre And þei metten to gedre þorgh myracle of
god, For þei metten to gedre in a cytee in ynde þat men 20
clepen Cassak þat is .liij. iourneyes fro Bethleem. And
þei weren at Bethleem the .xiiij. day And þat was the
.iiij. day after þat þei hadden seyn the sterre whan þei
metten in þat cytee, And þus þei weren in .ix. dayes 24
fro þat cytee at Bethleem t þat was gret myracle. Also
vnder the cloystre of the chirche be .xviij. degrees at the
right syde is the charneff of the Innocentes where here
bones lyzn And before the place where oure lord was 28
born is the tombe of seynt ²Ierome þat was a preest t a
Cardynaß þat translatede the bible t the psaltere from
Ebrew in to latyn And withoute the mynstre is the
chayere þat he satt in whan he translated it. And faste 32
besyde þat chirehe a .lx. fedme is a chirehe of seynt
Nicholas where oure lady rested hire after sche was
lyghted of oure lord And for as meeche as sche had to
meeche mylk in hire pappes þat greued hire, sche mylked 36
hem on the rede stones of marble so þat the traces may

3 it ben sene in the stones aH w[h]yte.⁽¹⁾ And 3ee schuH
 vnderstonde pat aH þat dwellen in Bethleem ben cristene
 men And þere ben faire vynes aboute the cytee t gret
 4 plentee of wyn pat the cristene men han don let make
 But the Sarazines ne tylen not no vynes ne þei
 drynken no wyn. For here bokes of here lawe pat
 Makomete betoke hem, whiche þei clepen here ALKARON
 8 t summe clepen it MESAPH t in anoþer langage it is
 cleped HARME And the same boke forbedeth hem to
 drinke wyn, For in þat boke Machomete cursed aH þo
 pat drynken wyn t alle hem þat sellen it. For summen
 12 seye þat he slough ones an heremyte in his drunkenness
 þat he loued ful wel And þerfore he cursed wyn t hem
 þat drynken it. But his curs be turned in to his owne
 hed as holy writt seith: ET IN VERTICEM IPSIUS INIQUITAS
 16 EIUS DESCENDET, þat is for to seye: his wykkedness
 schall turne t falle in his owne heed. ¹ And also the
 Sarazines bryngen forth no pigges nor þei eten no swynes
 flessch, for þei seye it is brother to man t it was forboden
 20 be the olde lawe t þei holde[n]⁽²⁾ hem alle acursed þat eten
 þereof. Also in the lond of Palestyne t in the lond of
 Egypt þei eten but lytill or non of flessch of veel or of
 beef but he be so old þat he may nomore trauayle for
 24 elde, for it is forbode And for because þei hauen but
 fewe of hem, þerfore þei norissche hem for to ere here
 londes. In this cytee of Bethleem was Dauid the kyng
 born And he hadde .lx. wyfes t the firste wyf highte
 28 Michol And also he hadde .ccc. lemmannes. And fro
 Bethleem vnto Ierusalem nys but .ij. myle And in the
 weye to Ierusalem half a myle fro Bethleem is a chirche
 where the aungel seyde to the schepperdes of the birthe
 32 of crist. And in þat weye is the tombe of RacheH þat
 was Iosephes moder the patriarke. And sche dyede anon
 after þat sche was delyuered of hire sone Beniamyn t
 þere sche was buryed of Iacob hire husbonde, And he

The
Saracens.
drink no
wine.

[1 fol. 33 b]

They eat
no pork.

Beef and
veal are
scarce.

King David.

RacheH's
tomb.

⁽¹⁾ wlyte, MS.

⁽²⁾ holdem C.

leet setten .xij. grete stones on hire in tokene þat sche
 had born .xij. children. In þat same weye half myle
 fro Ierusalem appered the sterre to the .iiij. kynges, In
 þat weye also ben manye chirches of cristene men be the
 whiche men gon towardes the cytee of Ierusalem. 4

The star of
 Bethlehem.

Ch. XI. OF THE PILGRIMAGES IN IERUSALEM & OF THE HOLY PLACES þERABOWTE.

Position of
 Jerusalem.

[fol. 34 a]

Her names.

Syria.

Maritime
 plain.

Distances
 from other
 cities.

St. Chariton.

AFTER for to speke of Ierusalem the holy cytee þee
 schuþ vnderstonde þat it stont full faire betwene
 hilles & ¹pere ben no ryueres ne welles but water cometh 8
 be condyte from Ebron. And þee schuþ vnderstonde þat
 Ierusalem of olde tyme vnto the tyme of Melchisedech
 was cleped Iebus, And after it was elept Salem vnto the
 tyme of kyng Dauid þat putte theise .ij. names togidere & 12
 cleped it Iebusalem And after þat kyng Salomon cleped
 it Ierosolomye And after þat men¹ cleped it Ierusalem &
 so it is cleped ȝit. And aboute Ierusalem is the kyngdom
 of Surrye And þere besyde is the lond of Palestyne And 16
 besyde it is Ascolone And besyde þat is the lond of
 Maritame. But Ierusalem is in the lond of Iudee, And
 it is elept Iude for þat Iudas Machabeus was kyng of
 þat contree And it marcheth Estward to the kyngdom 20
 of Arabye, on the south syde to the lond of Egipt & on
 the west syde to the grete see, On the north syde
 toward the kyngdom of Surrye & to the see of Cypre. In
 Ierusalem was wont to be a Patriark & Erchebysschoppes 24
 & Bisschoppes abouten in the contree. Abowten Ieru-
 salem ben þeise cytees: Ebron at .vij. myle, Ierico at .vj.
 myle, Bersabee at .viij. myle, Ascalon at .xviij. myle, Iaff at
 .xvj. myle, Ramatha at .iiij. myle And Bethleem at .ij. 28
 myle. And a .ij. myle from Bethleem toward the south
 is the chirehe of seynt karitot þat was Abbot þere For

1. 5, men, repeated in C.

1. 22, to, repeated in C.

whom þei maden meeche doel amonges the monkes whan
 he scholde dye & 3it þei ben in moornyng¹ in the wise [1 fol. 31 b]
 þat þei maden here lamentacioun for him the firste tyme
 4 & it is full gret pytee to beholde. This contree & lond of
 Ierusalem hath ben in many dyuerse naciounes hondes
 And often perfore hath the contree suffred meeche tribu-
 lacioun for the synne of the poeple þat duellen þere. For
 8 þat contree hath ben in the hondes of aȝ nacyouns þat is to
 seyne of Iewes, of Chananees, Assiryenes, Perses, Medoynes,
 Macedoynes, of Grekes, Romaynes, of Cristenemen, of
 Sarrazines, Barbaryenes, Turkes, Tartaryenes & of manye
 12 othere dyuerse nacyouns. For god wole not þat it be longe
 in the hondes of traytours ne of symeres be þei cristene or
 othere And now haue the bettere men holden þat lond in
 here hondes .xl. ȝere & more, But þei schuȝ not holde it
 16 longe ȝif god wole. And ȝee schuȝ vnderstonde þat whan
 men comen to Ierusalem here first pilgrymage is to the
 chirche of the holy Sepulchre where oure lord was buryed
 þat is *withoute* the cytee on the north syde But it is now
 20 enclosed in *with* the town waȝ. And þere is a full fair
 chirche aȝ Rownd & open aboue & couered *with* leed
 And on the west syde is a fair tour & an high for belles
 strongly made And in the myddes of the chirche is a
 24 tabernacle as it were a lityȝ hows made *with* a low lityȝ
 dore And þat tabernacle is made in manere of half a
 compas right curiously & richely made of gold & azure &
 opere riche coloures full nobelyche made And ²in the
 28 right syde of þat tabernacle is the sepulchre of oure lord
 And the tabernacle is .viij. fote long & .v. fote wyde & .xj.
 fote in heȝhte. And it is not longe sitlie the sepulchre
 was aȝ open þat men myghten kisse it & touche it. But
 32 for pilgrymes þat comen thider peyned hem to breke the
 ston in peeces or in poudre perfore the Soudan hath do
 make a waȝ aboute the sepulchre þat noman may towche
 it. But in the left syde of the waȝ of the tabernacle is
 36 wel the heichte of a man is a gret ston to the quantytee of
 a mannes hed þat was of the holy sepulchre & þat ston

Many
nations have
ruled the
Holy Land.

No sinners
can hold it
long.

The Holy
Sepulchre.

The
Compass.
[2 fol. 35 a]

Why the
Sepulchre
was fenced
in.

The miracle
of the Light-
ing of the
lamp.

Golgotha,
blood-marks
on the white
rock.

[¹ fol. 35 b]

The tombs
of the first
Crusaders.
The place
of the
Crucifixion.

The age of
Our Lord ;
conflicting
statements
reconciled.

kissen the pilgrymes þat comen þider. In þat tabernacle
ben no wyndowes but it is aH made light *with* lampes þat
hangen before the sepulere And þere is a lampe þat
hongeth before the Sepulere þat brenneth light & on the 4
gode Fryday it goth out be himself [and on þe Pasch day
it lightez agayne by it self]⁽¹⁾ at þat hour þat oure lord roos
fro deth to lyue. Also *with* in the chirehe at the right
syde besyde the queer of the chirehe is the mount of 8
Caluarye where oure lord was don on the cros And it is
a roche of white colour and a lytiH medled *with* red
And the cros was set in a morteyns in the same roche & on
þat roche dropped the woundes of oure lord whan he was 12
pyned on the cross & þat is cleped Galgathia, And men
gon vp to þat Golgathia be degrees. And in the place of
þat morteyns was Adames hed founden after Noes flode in
tokene þat the synnes of Adam scholde ben ¹bought in þat 16
same place And vpon þat roche made Abraham sacrifice
to oure lord. And þere is an awtere And before þat
awtier lyzn Godefray de Boleyne & Bawdewyn & opere
cristene kynges of Ierusalem. And þere nygh where oure 20
lord was cruecyfied is this writen in Greew: OTHEOS
BASILION YSMON PROSIONAS ERGASA SOTHIAS EMESOTIS GYS.
þat is to seyne in latyn: HIC DEUS NOSTER REX
ANTE SECLA OPERATUS EST SALUTEM IN MEDIO TERRE. 24
þat is to seye: this god oure kyng before the worldes
bath wrought hele in myddes of the ertlie. And also on
þat roche where the cros was sett is writen *within* the
roche þeise wordes: CYOS MYST YS BASIS TOUPISTEOS THEY 28
THESMOFY, þat is to seyne in latyn: QUOD VIDES EST
FUNDAMENTUM TOCIUS FIDEI MUNDI HUIUS, þat is to seye:
þat þou seest is ground of aH the world & of this feyth.
And 3ee schuH vndirstonde þat whan oure lord was don 32
vpon the cros he was .xxxiiij. 3er & .iiij. monethes of
elde And the propheeye of *Dauid* seyth þus: QUAD-
RAGINTA ANNIS PROXIMUS FUI GENERACIONI HUIC, þat
is to seye: Fourty 3eer was I neighbore to this kynrede, 36

(¹) Eg. 1982.

- And þus scholde it seme þat the propheeyes ne were not trewe, But þei ben bothe trewe, For in old tyme men maden o 3eer of .x. monethes, of the whiche March was
- 4 the firste & Decembre was the laste, But Gayus þat was Emperour of Rome putte þeise .ij. monethes þere to : Janyuer & Feurer & ordeyned the 3eer of .xij. monethes, ¹þat is to seye .ccclxv. dayes *withoute* lepe 3eer after the
- 8 propre cours of the sonne. And þerfore after cowntynge of .x. monethes of the 3eer he dyede in the .xl. 3eer, as the prophete seyde & after the 3eer of .xij. monethes he was of age .xxxij. 3eer & .iij. monethes. Also *within* the
- 12 mount of Caluarie on the right side is an awtere where the piler ly3th þat oure lord Ihesu was bounden to whan he was scourged And þere besyde .iiij. fote ben .iiij. pileres of ston þat aHweys droppen water & *summen* seyn
- 16 þat þei wepen for oure lordes deth. And uygh þat awtier is a place vnder erthe .xliij. degrees of depnesse where the holy croys was founden be the wytt of seynte Elyne vnder a roche where the Iewes had hidde it And þat was the
- 20 veray croys assayed For þei founden .iiij. crosses, on of oure lord & .ij. of the .ij. thefes And seynte Elyne preued hem on a ded body þat aros from deth to lyue whan þat it was leyd on it þat oure lord dyed on. And
- 24 þereby in the waH is the place where the .iiij. nayles of oure lord weren hidd, For he had .ij. in his hondes & .ij. in his feet And of on of þeise the Emperour of Costantynople made a brydith to his hors to bere him in bataylle
- 28 & þorgh vertue þereof he ouercaun his enemyes And wan aH the lond of Asye the lesse þat is to seye Turkye, Ermonye the lasse & the more And from Surrye to Ierusalem, From Arabye to Persie, from Mesopotayme
- 32 to the kyngdom of Halappee, From Egypt the highe & the lowe & aH the opere kyngdomes vnto ²the depe of Ethiope & in to ynde the lesse þat þanne was cristene. And þere was in þat tyme many gode holy men & holy heremytes of
- 36 whom the book of fadres lyfes speketh & þei ben now in paynemes & sarazines hondes, But whan god aH myghty

Thirty-three
is equal to
forty.

Julian
calendar.

[1 fol. 36 a]

The weeping
pillars.

The True
Cross found
by St.
Helen;

it revives a
dead body.

Con-
stantine's
victory
through the
nails of the
True Cross.

[2 fol. 36 b]

The coun-
tries lost to
Christianity
shall be
recovered.

The Com-
pass marks
the centre of
the world.

The Resur-
rection.

The steps
leading up
to Calvary.

[1 fol. 37 a]

The Indian
priests con-
secrate the
Host in the
way of the
primitive
Church.

The weak
spot in the
fortifica-
tions of
Jerusalem.

wole right als the londes weren lost þorgh synne of
cristene men, so schuH þei ben wonnen azen be cristen
men þorgh help of god. And in myddes of þat chirche is a
compas in the whiche Ioseph of Aramathie leyde the body 4
of oure lord whan he had taken him down of the croys t þere
he wassched the woundes of oure lord And þat compas
seye men is the myddes of the world. And in the chirche
of the sepulchre on the north syde is the place where oure 8
lord was put in prisoun, For he was in prisoun in many
places. And þer is a partye of the cheyne þat he was
bounden with And þere he appered first to Marie Magda-
leyne whan he was rysen t sche wende þat he had ben 12
a gardener. In the chirche of seynt Sepulcre was wont
to ben Chanouns of the ordre of seynt Augustyn t hadden
a Priour but the Patriark was here souereyn. And with-
oute the dores of the chirche on the right syde as men 16
gon vpward .xviij. greces seyde oure lord to his moder :
MULIER ECCE FILIUS TUUS, þat is to seye : Womman lo
thi sone, And after þat he seyde to John his disciple :
ECCE MATER TUA, þat is to seyne : lo behold thi moder 20
And þeise wordes he seyde on the cros. And on þeise
greces wente oure lord ¹whan he bare the cros on his
schulder And vnder this grees is a chapeH t in þat
chapeH synge prestes yndyenes þat is to seye prestes of 24
ynde noght after oure lawe but after here t all wey þei
maken here sacrement of the awtier.[of breed] ⁽¹⁾ seyenge
PATER NOSTER t opere preyeres þerewith, With the whiche
preyeres þei seye the wordes þat the sacrement is made of 28
For þei ne knowe not the Addicionns þat many popes han
made, but þei synge with gode deuocioun. And þere nere
is the place where þat oure lord rested him whan he was
wery for berynge of the cros. And 3ee schuH vnder- 32
stonde þat before the chirche of the Sepulcre is the cytee
more feble þan in any othere partie for the grete playn
þat is betwene the chirche t the citee. And toward the
Est syde withoute the walles of the cytee is the vale of 36

(¹) Eg.

Iosaphath þat toucheth to the walles as pough it were
 a large dych, And abouen þat vale of Iosaphath, out of the
 cytee, is the chirche of Seynt Steuene where he was
 4 stoned to deth And þere beside is the gildene 3ate þat
 may not ben opened, be the whiche 3ate oure lord entrede
 on PALMESONDAY vpon an asse ⁊ the 3ate opened azenst
 him whan he wolde go vnto the temple And 3it apperen
 8 the steppes of the asses feet in .iiij. places of the degrees
 þat ben of fuH harde ston. And before the chirche of
 seynt Sepulere toward the south a .cc. paas is the gret
 hospitaH of seynt Iohn of the whiche the Hospitaleres
 12 hadd ^{xx} here foundacioun And withinne the palays of the
 sekenen of þat hospitaH ben .v.j. ⁊ .iiij. pileres of ston And
 in the walles of the hows withoute the nombre aboueseyd
 þere ben ^{ti} .liiij. pileres þat beren vp the hows And fro þat
 16 hospitaH to go toward the Est is a fuH fayr chirche þat
 is clept nostre Dame la graund And þan is þere another
 chirche right nygh þat is clept nostre Dame de latyne.
 And þere weren Marie Cleophee ⁊ Marie Magdaleyne
 20 ⁊ teren here heer whan oure lord was peyned in the
 cros.

St. Stephen's
Church.
The Golden
Gate.

The marks
of the ass's
feet.

St. John's
Hospital.
[1 fol. 37 b]

Notre-Dame
la Grande
and Notre-
Dame latine.

OF THE TEMPLE OF OURE LORD; OF THE Ch. XII.
 CRUELTEE OF KYNG HEROD; OF THE
 MOUNT SYON; OF PROBATA PISCINA,
 AND OF NATATORIUM SYLOE.

AND fro the chirche of the Sepulere toward the Est
 A ^{xx} at .viij. paas is *TEMPLUM DOMINI*. It is right a
 24 feir hows ⁊ it is aH round ⁊ high ⁊ c[u]uered with leed
 ⁊ it is wel pased with white marble, But the sarazines
 wole not suffre no cristenē man ne Iewes to come þerein,
 For þei seyn þat none so foule synfuH men scholde not
 28 come in so holy place. But I cam in þere ⁊ in othere
 places þere I wolde for I hadde lettres of the Soudan

The Temple
of the Lord.

I was privi-
leged to
enter by the
Soudan's
Great Seal.

with his grete seel t comounly oper men han but his
 signett. In the whiche lettres he commanded of his
 speeyaH grace to aH his subgettes to lote me seen aH the
 places t to enforme me pleyonly aH the mysteries of euery 4
 place t to condyte me fro cytee to cytee zif it were nede t
 [1 fol. 38 a] buxomly to resceyue me t my companye ¹t for to obeye to
 aH my requestes resonable zif pei weren not gretly azen
 the RyaH power t diguytee of the Soudan or of his lawe. 8
 And to opere pat asken him grace, suche as han serued
 him he ne zeueth not but his signett the whiche pei make
 to be born before hem hangunge on a spere. And the
 Ordinary
 people only
 obtain his
 signet,
 to which the
 greatest
 reverence is
 shown.
 folk of the contree don gret worschipe t reuerence to his 12
 signett or his seel t knelen pereto as lowly as wee don to
 CORPUS DOMINI And zit men don fuH grettere reuerence
 to his lettres, For the AdmyraH t aHe opere lordes pat
 pei ben schewed to, before or pei resceyue hem pei knelen 16
 down t pan pei take hem t putten hem on here hedes
 t after pei kissen hem t pan pei reden hem knelynge
 with gret reuerence t pan pei offren hem to do aH pat the
 berere asketh. And in this templum domini weren 20
 soumtyme Chanouns Reguleres t pei hadden an Abbot to
 whom pei weren obedient. And in this temple was
 Charle-
 magne here
 received the
 preputium,
 which he
 brought to
 Paris,
 Poitiers and
 Chartres.
 Destruction
 of the
 Temple of
 Solomon.
 Charlemayn whan pat the aungeH brouglite him the
 prepuee of oure lord Ihesu crist of his Circumcisioun And 24
 after kyng Charles leet bryngen it to Parys in to his
 chapeH And after pat he leet brynge it to Peyteres t
 after pat to Chartres. And see schuH vnderstonde pat
 this is not the temple pat Salomon made, for pat temple 28
 dured not but .mc t ij. 3eer, For Tytus Vaspasianes
 sone Emperour of Rome had leyd sege aboute Ierusalem
 for to discomfyte the Iewes for pei putten oure lord to
 dethe, ² withouten leue of the Emperour And whan he 32
 hadde wonnen the cytee he brente the temple t beet it
 down t aH the cytee t toke the Iewes t dide hem to
 dethe ^{Mit t} .xj.c. t the othere he putte in prisoun t solde hem

[2 fol. 38 b]

to seruage .xxx. for o peny, for þei seyde þei boughte
 Ihesu for .xxx. penyes And he made of hem better cheep
 Whan he ȝaf .xxx. for o peny. And after þat tyme
 4 IULIANUS APOSTATA þat was Emperour ȝaf leue to the
 Iewes to make the temple of Ierusalem for he hated
 cristene men. And ȝit he was cristned but he forsoke
 his lawe & becam a renegade And whan the Iewes hadden
 8 made the temple com an erthequakeng & east it down as
 god wolde & destroyed aȝ þat þei had made. And after
 þat Adryan þat was Emperour of Rome & of the lynage
 of Troye made Ierusalem aȝen & the temple in the same
 12 manere as Salomon made it And he wolde not suffre no
 Iewes to dwelþ þere, but only cristene men, For aȝpough
 it were so þat he were not cristned ȝit he louede cristene
 men more þan any other nacioun saf his owne. This
 16 Emperour leet enclose the chirche of seynt Sepulere &
 walle it within the cytee, þat before was withoute the
 cytee long tyme befor And he wolde haue chaunged the
 name of Ierusalem & hane cleped it Elya But þat name
 20 lasted not longe. Also ȝee schuȝ vnderstonde þat the
 sarazines don moche reuerence to þat temple & þei seyn
 þat that place is right holy And whan þei gon ¹ in þei
 gon barefote & knelen many tymes And whanne my
 24 felowes & I seygh þat whan wee comen in wee diden of
 oure schoon & camen in barefote & þoughten þat wee
 scholden don as moche worschipe & reuerence þereto as
 any of the mysbeleeuyng men scholde & als gret con-
 28 punctioun in herte to haue. This temple is .lxiiij. cubytes
 of wydeness & als manye in lengthe And of heghte it is
^{xx}
 .vj. cubites And it is withjnnne aȝ aboute made with
 pyleres of marble & in the myddel place of the temple
 32 ben many high stages of .xiiij. degrees of heghte made
 with gode pylers aȝ aboute. And this place the Iewes
 callen SANCTA SANCTORUM þat is to seye holy of halwes
 And in þat place cometh noman saf only here prelate
 36 þat maketh here sacrificise And the folk stonden aȝ

Thirty Jews
 for a penny.
 Under
 Julian the
 Apostate,
 the Temple
 was re-built
 and de-
 stroyed
 again.

Adrian pro-
 tected the
 Christians,

and called
 Jerusalem
 .Elya
 Capitolina.

The
 Saracens
 reverence
 the Temple.
 [fol. 39 a]

Its
 dimensions.

The Holy of
 Holies.

aboute in diuerse stages after þei ben of dignytee or of
 worschipe so þat þei aH may see the sacrifice. And in
 þat temple ben .iiij. entrees t the 3ates ben of cypress wel
 made t curiously dight And within the Est 3ate oure
 lord seyde: here is Ierusalem. And in the north syde of 4
 þat temple within the 3ate þere is a well but it renneth
 nought of the whiche holy writt speketh of t seyth: VIDI
 AQUAM EGREDIENTEM DE TEMPLO, þat is to seyne: I saugh
 water come out of the temple. And on þat other syde of 8
 the temple þere is a roche þat men clepen Moriach, but
 after it was clept Bethel where the Arke of god with
 relykes of Iewes weren wont to ben put. þat¹ arke
 or hucchie with the Relikes Tytus ledde with hym to 12
 Rome whan he had scomfyted aH the Iewes. In þat
 arke weren the .x. commandementes t of Aarones 3erde t
 of Moyses 3erde with the whiche he made the rede see
 departen as it had ben a waH on the right syde t on the 16
 left syde, while þat the peple of Israel passeden the see
 drye foot. And with þat 3erde he smoot the Roche t
 the water cam out of it t with þat 3erde he dide manye
 wondres. And þere in was a vessel of gold full of 20
 MANNA t clothinges t honournementes t the tabernacle of
 Aaron t a [table]⁽¹⁾ square of gold with .xij. precyous stones
 And a boyst of Iasper grene with .iiij. figures t .viij.
 names of oure lord t .viij. candelstykes of gold t .xij. 24
 pottes of gold t .iiij. Censeres of gold t an Awtier of gold
 t .iiij. lyouns of gold vpon the whiche þei bare Cherubyn
 of gold .xij. spannes long and the Cercle of Swannes of
 heuene with a tabernacle of gold t a table of syluer t 28
 .ij. trompes of siluer t .viij. barly lounes t aH the opere
 relikes þat weren before the birthe of oure lord Ihesu crist.
 And vpon þat roche was Iacob slepyng whan he saugh
 the aungeles gon vp t down by a ladder t he seyde: VERE 32
 LOCUS ISTE SANCTUS EST t EGO IGNORABAM, þat is to seyne:
 Forsothe this place is holy t I wiste it nought. And

The dried-up
well.

Moriah or
Bethel.

[1 fol. 39b]

Contents of
the ark.

The box
of jasper.

Signs of the
Zodiac.

Jacob's
ladder.

⁽¹⁾ tabernacle, C.

l. 14, -but, repeated in C.

pere an aungel helde Iacob stille & turned his name &
 cleped him Israel. And in þat same place David saugh
 the AungeH þat smot the folk *with* a swerd & put it vp
 4 bloody in the schethe. ^[1 fol. 40 a] And in þat same Roche was
 seynt Symeon whan he reseeyued oure lord in to the
 temple; And in this roche he sette him whan the Iewes
 wolde a stoned him & a sterre cam down & 3af him
 8 light. And vpon þat Roche preched oure lord often
 tyme to the peple & out þat seyð temple oure lord drof
 out the byggeres & the selleres. And vpon þat roche
 oure lord sette him whan the Iewes wolde haue
 12 stoned him & the Roche cleef in two & in þat
 cleynge was oure lord hidd And pere cam down a sterre &
 3af light & serued him *with* claretee. And vpon þat roche
 satt oure lady & lerned hire sawtere And pere oure lord
 16 for3af the womman hire synnes þat was founden in
 avowtrie And pere was oure lord circumeicyded And pere
 the aungeH schewede tydynges to zacharie of the birthe of
 seynt Baptyst his sone And pere offred first Melchisedech
 20 bred & wyn to oure lord in tokene of the sacrement þat
 was to comene And pere feH David preyeng to oure lord
 & to the AungeH þat smot the peple þat he wolde haue
 mercy on him & on the peple & oure lord herde his preyere
 24 & þefore wolde he make the temple in þat place, but oure
 lord forbade him be an AungeH. for he had don tresoun
 whan he leet sle vrie the worthi knyght for to haue
 Bersabee his wyf And þefore aH the purueyance þat he
 28 hadde ordeyned to make the temple *with* he toke it
 Salomon his sone & he made it. And he preyed oure
 lord þat aH þo þat preyeden to him in þat place *with*
 gode herte þat he wolde heren here preyere & graunten it
 32 hem 3if þei asked it right ^[2 fol. 40 b] fullyche And oure lord
 graunted him And þefore Salomon cleped þat temple the
 temple of conseiH & of help of god. And *with*oute the
 36 3ate of þat temple is an awtiere where Iewes weren wont
 to offren dowues & turtles. And betwene the temple &
 þat awtier was zacharie slayn & vpon the pynacle of þat

The rock
shelters
Our Lord.

David not
allowed to
build the
Temple.

Solomon.

temple was oure lord brought for to ben tempted of the enemye the feend. And on the heghite of þat pynacle the lewes setten seynt Iame t casted hym down to the erthe þat first was bisshop of Ierusalem. And at the entree 4
of þat temple toward the west is the gate þat is clept
PORTA SPECIOSA. And nygh besyde þat temple vpon the
right syde is a chirche couered with leed þat is clept
Salomones scole And fro þat temple towards the south 8
right nygh is the temple of Salomon þat is right fair t
wel pollisscht And in þat temple dueHe the knyghtes of
the temple þat weren wont to be clept TEMPLERES t þat
was the fundacioun of here ordre so þat pere duelleden 12
knyghtes t IN TEMPLO DOMINI Chanouns Reguleres.
Fro þat temple to ward the Est a .vj. paas in the cornere
of the cytee is the bath of oure lord And in þat bath was
wont to come water fro paradys t 3it it droppeth. And 16
pere besyde is oure ladyes bed And faste by is the
[tombe] of seynt Symeon. t withoute the cloystre of the
temple toward the north is a full faire chirche of seynte
Anne oure ladyes moder And per¹ was oure lady con- 20
ceyued And before þat chirche is a gret tree þat began to
growe the same nyght. And vnder þat chirche in goenge
doun be .xxij. degrees lyth Ioachym oure ladyes fader in
a faire tombe of ston And pere besyde lay somtyme seynt 24
Anne his wif but seynt Helyne leet translate hire to
Costantynople. And in þat chirche is a welle in manere
of a cisterne þat is clept PROBATA PISCINA þat hath .v.
entreez. Into þat welle Aungeles weren wont to come 28
from heuene t bathen hem withinne t what man þat first
bathied him after the mevyng of the water was made
hool of what maner sykenes þat he hadde. And pere
oure lord heled a man of the palasye þat lay .xxxviiiij. 3eer 32
t oure lord seyde to him: TOLLE GRABATUM TUUM t
AMBULA, þat is to seye: Take thi bed t go. And pere
besyde was Pilates hows And faste by is kyng Heroudes
hows þat leet sle the Innocentes. This heronde was ouer 36
l. 18, temple of seynt Symeon, C.

The Beauti-
ful Gate.

The knights
Templars.

The bath
of Our Lord.

Church of
St. Anne.
[1 fol. 41 a]

Probatica
Piscina.

The howses
of Pilate and
Herod.

- moche cursed t crueH. for first he leet sle his wif þat he
 louede right weH t for the passynge lone þat he hadde to
 hire whan he saugh hire ded he feH in a rage t oute of his
 4 wytt a gret while t sithen he cam azen to his wytt t after
 he leet sle his .ij. sones þat he hadde of þat wyf. And after
 þat he leet sle another of his wyfes t a sone þat he hadde
 with hire And after þat he let sle his owne moder t he
 8 wolde haue slayn his broþer also, but he dyede sodeynly.
 And after þat he dide aH the harm þat he cowde or
 myghte And after he feH in to sekness t whan he felte
 1 þat he scholde dye he sente after his suster t after aH [1 fol. 41 b]
 12 the lordes of his lond t whan þei were comen he leet
 commande hem to prisoun t þan he seyde to his suster
 he wiste wel þat men of the contree wolde make no sorwe
 for his deth t þefore he made his suster swere þat sche
 16 scholde lete smyte of aH the hedes of the lordes whan he
 were ded t þan scholde aH the lond make sorwe for his
 deth t eH nought t þus he made his testament. but his
 suster fulfilled not his wiH For als sone as he was ded
 20 sche delyuered aH the lordes out of prisoun t lete hem
 gon eche lord to his owne [hous] t tolde hem aH the
 purpos of hire brothers ordynance t so was this eursed
 kyng neuer made sorwe fore as he supposed for to haue
 24 ben. And 3ee schuH vnderstonde þat in þat tyme pere
 weren .iiij. heroudes of gret name t loos for here crueltee.
 This heroude of which I haue spoken offe was HEROUDE
 ASCOLONITE And he þat leet beheden seynt Iohn the
 28 Baptist was HEROUDE ANTYPAS And he þat leet smyte of
 seynt Iames hed was HEROUDE AGRIPPA t he putte
 seynt Peter in prisoun. Also furthermore in the cytee
 is the chirche of seynt Sauyours t pere is the left Arm of
 32 Iohn Grisostom t the more partye of the hed of seynt
 Steuene. And on þat oþer syde in the strete toward the
 south as men gon to mount Syon is a chirche of seynt
 Iames where he was beheded. And fro þat chirche a
 St. James's.
 xx
 36 .vij. paas is the mount Syon t pere is 2a faire chirche of Mount Sion.
 oure lady where sche dwelled t pere shee dyed And pere [2 fol. 42 a]

Herod's
cruelty.

His death.

The three
Herods:
Ascalonite,
Antipas,
Agrippa.St. Saviour's
Church.

The stone
of the
Sepulchre.

House of
Annah.

The Table of
the Last
Supper.

The Washing
of the Feet.

[1 fol. 42b]

Doubting
Thomas.

Pentecost.

was wont to ben an abbot of Chanouns reguleres, And
fro þens was sche born of the Apostles vnto the vale of
Iosaphatli. And þere is the ston þat the AungeH
broughte to oure lady fro the mount of Syñay ⁊ it is of 4
þat colour þat the roche is of seynt katelyne And þere
besyde is the 3ate where thorgh oure lady wente whan
sche was with childe whan sche wente to Bethleem.
Also [at] the entree of the mount syon is a chapeH ⁊ in 8
þat chapeH is the ston gret ⁊ large with the whiche the
sepulchre was couered with whan Ioseph of Aramathie had
put oure lord þerejnne. The whiche ston the .iiij. Maries
sawen turnen vpward whan þei comen to the sepulchre the 12 .
day of his resurrexioun And þere founden an aungeH þat
tolde hem of oure lordes vprisynge fro deth to lyue.
And þere also is a ston in a waH besyde the 3ate of the
pyleer þat oure lord was scourged ate. And þere was 16
Annes hows þat was Bisshop of the Iewes in þat tyme
And þere was oure lord examyned in the nyght ⁊
scourged ⁊ smyten ⁊ vyleously entreted. And in þat
same place seynt Peter forsoke oure lord thries or the cok 20
creew. And þere is a party of the table þat he made his
souper onne whan he made his maundee with his discyple
whan he 3af hem his flesh ⁊ his blode in forme of bred ⁊
wyn. And vnder þat chapeH .xxxij. degrees is the place 24
where oure lord wossh his discyple fete And 3it is the
vesseH where the water was And þere besyde þat same
vesseH was seynt Steuene buried And þere is the autier
where oure lady herde the Aungeles synge messe And 28
þere appered first oure lord to his discyple after his
Resurrexioun the 3ates enclosed ¹and seyde to hem:
PAX VOBIS, þat is to seye: Pees to 3ou ⁊ on þat mount
appered crist to seynt Thomas the Apostle and bad him 32
assaye his woundes ⁊ þan beleened he first ⁊ seyde:
DOMINUS MEUS ⁊ DEUS MEUS, þat is to seye: my lord ⁊
my god. In the same chirche besyde the awteer weren
aH the Aposteles on Wytsonday when the holy gost 36
l. 8, þat, C.

- descended on hem in lykness of fuyr. And þere made
 oure lord his Pask with his disciples And þere slepte
 seynt Iohn the Euangelist vpon the breest of oure lord
 4 Ihesu crist & saugh slepyng many heuenly prynces.
 Mount Syon is *withjune* the cytee & it is a lytiH
 hiere þan the oþer syde of the cytee And the cytee
 is strongere on þat syde þan on þat other syde
 8 For at the foot of the mount Syon is a faire casteH & a
 strong þat the soudan leet make. In the mount Syon
 weren buryed kyng *Dauid* & kyng Salomon & many
 othere kynges Iewes of Ierusalem And þere is the place
 12 where the Iewes wolden han cast vp the body of oure lady
 whan the Apostles beren the body to be buryed in the
 vale of Iosaphath And þere is the place where seynt Petir
 wepte full tenderly after þat he hadde forsaken oure lord.
 16 And a ston cast fro þat chapeH is an oþer chapeH where
 oure lord was juggel, for þat tyme was þere Cayphases
 hows. From þat chapeH to go toward the est at .viij. paas
 is a depe cave vnder the roche þat is clept the Galylee
 20 of (1) oure lord where seynt Peter hidde him whan he had
 forsaken oure lord. Item betwene the mount syon & the
 temple Salomon is the place where oure lord reysed the
 mayden in hire faderes hows. Vnder the mount Syon
 24 toward the vale of Iosaphath is a welle þat is clept
 NATATORIUM SILOE & þere was oure lord wasshen after
 his bapteme And þere made oure lord the blynde man
 to see And þere was yburyed ysaye the prophete. Also
 28 streight from Natatorie Syloe is an ymage of ston & of
 olde aunyen werk þat Absalon leet make And he cause
 þere of men clepen it the hond of Absalon. And faste
 by is jit the tree of Eldre þat Iudas henge him self vpon
 32 for dispeyr þat he hadde whan he solde and betrayed
 oure lord. And þere besyde was the synagoge where the
 byschoppes of Iewes & the sarrazins camen togidere and
 helden here conseil And þere caste Iudas the .xxx. pens
 36 before hem and seyde þat he hadde synned betrayenge

St. John the
Evangelist's
dream.

Graves of
Jewish
Kings.

Caiaphas'
house.

Pool of
Siloam.
[1 fol. 43 a]

Where Judas
hanged
himself.

The
Synagoge.

Aceldama.

Church of
the
Magnificat.Castle of
Emmaus.The Lion's
Cave.
[1 fol. 43 b]

Mountjoy.

Tomb of
Samuel.Vale of Je-
hoshaphat.The brook
Kidron.

oure lord. And þere nygh was the hows of the Apostles
 Philipp ⁊ Iacob Alphe. And on þat oþer syde of mount
 Syon toward the south beþonde the vale a stones cast is
 Acheldamaþ þat is to seye the feld of blood þat was 4
 bought for the .xxx. pens þat oure lord was sold fore
 And in þat feld ben many tombes of cristene men for
 þere ben manye pilgrymes grauen. And þere ben many
 oratories as chapel⁹ ⁊ hermytages where heremytes weren 8
 wont to due⁹. And toward the est an .c. pas is the
 charne⁹ of the hospita⁹ of seynt Io⁹n where men weren
 wont to putte the bones of dede men. Also fro Ierusalem
 toward the west is a fair chirche where the tree of the 12
 cros grew. And .ij. myle fro þens is a faire chirche
 where oure lady mette with Elizabeth whan þei weren
 bothe with childe ⁊ seynt Io⁹n stered in his modres
 wombe ⁊ made reuerence to his creatour þat he saugh 16
 not. And vnder the awtier of þat chirche is the place
 where seynt Io⁹n was born. And fro þat chirche is a
 myle to the caste⁹ of Emaux. And þere also oure lord
 schewed him to .ij. of his disciples after his resurrexioun. 20
 Also on þat oþer syde .cc. pas fro Ierusalem is a chirche
 where was wont to ^{ti} be the caue of the lyoun And vnder
 þat chirche at .xxx. degrees of depness weren entered .xij
 ⁊ m. martires in the tyme of kyng Cosdroe, þat the lyoun 24
 mette with⁹ in a nyght be the wille of god. Also fro
 Ierusalem .ij. myle is the mountjoye a fu⁹ fair place ⁊ a
 delicyous and þere lyth Samuel the prophete in afaire
 tombe. And men clepen it mountioye for it zeueth 28
 ioye to pilgrymes hertes because þat þere men seen first
 Ierusalem. Also betwene Ierusalem ⁊ the mount of
 Olyuete is the vale of Iosaphath vnder the walles of the
 cytee as I haue seyð before. And in the myddes of þat 32
 vale is a lyti⁹ ryuere þat men clepen TORRENS CEDRON.
 And abouen it ouerthwart lay a tre þat the cros was made
 offe þat men zeden ouer omne. And faste by it is a lity⁹
 pytt in the erthe where the foot of the pileer is 36

entered And *pere* was oure lord first scourged, for he
 was scorged & vileyusly entreted in many places. Also
 in the myddel place of the vale of Iosaphath is the
 4 chirche of oure lady & it is of .xliiij. degrees vnder the
 erthe vnto the sepulchre of oure lady; And oure lady was
 of age whan sche dyed .lxxij. 3eer And beside the sepulere
 of oure lady is an awtier where oure lord forʒaf seynt
 8 Peter aʒ his synnes & fro thens toward the west vnder an
 awtere is a welle þat cometh out of the floīe of *paradys*.
 And wyteth wel þat þat chirche is fuʒ lowe in the erthe
 & sum is aʒ *withjūne* the erthe, But I suppose wel þat it
 12 was not so founded, But for because þat Ierusalem hath
 often tyme *ben* destroyed & the walles abated & beten
 down & tombled into the vale And þat þei han *ben* so
 filled aʒen & the ground enhaunced, & for þat skyʒ is the
 16 chirche so lowe *within* the erthe & natheles men seyn
pere comounly þat the erthe hath so *ben* clouen ^{1 syth the} [1 fol. 41 a]
 tyme þat oure lady was *pere* buried, And ʒit men seyn
pere þat it wexeth & groweth euery day *withouten* dowe.
 20 In þat chirche were wont to *ben* monkes blake þat
 halden hire abbot. And besyde þat chirche is a chapeʒ
 besyde the Roche þat hight Gethisemany & *pere* was oure
 lord kyssed of Iudas. And *pere* was he taken of the
 24 Iewes And *pere* laft oure lord his disciples whan he wente
 to *preye* before his *passioun* whan he *preyed* & seyde:
 PATER SI FIERI POTEST TRANSEAT A ME CALIX ISTE, þat is
 to seye: Fader ʒif it may be do lete this chalys go fro
 28 me, And whan he *cam* aʒen to his disciples he foud hem
 slepynge. And in the Roche *withjūne* the chapeʒ ʒit
 apperen the fyngres of oure lordes hond whan he putte
 hem in the roche whan the Iewes wolden haue taken him.
 32 And fro thens a stoness cast toward the south is another
 chapeʒ where oure lord swette droppes of blood. And
pere right nygh is the tombe of kyng Iosaphath of whom
 the vale bereth the name. This Iosaphath was kyng of
 36 þat contree & was *conuerted* by an heremyte þat was a
 worthi man & dide moche gode. And fro þens a bowe

Sepulchre
of Our Lady.

How the
charch has
sunk into
the earth.

Gethisemane.

King Je-
hoshaphat.

The Mount
of Olives.

Ascension
church.

[¹ fol. 44 b]

Bethphage.

Bethany, St.
Julian.

The raising
of Lazarus.

drawght toward the south is the chirehe where seynt
James & Zacharie the prophete weren buried. And aboue
þat vale is the mount of Olyuete And it is cleped so for
the plentee of Olyues þat growen þere. þat mount is 4
more high þan the cytee of Ierusalem is And þefore may
men vpon þat mount see manye of the stretes of the cytee
And betwene þat mount & the cytee is not but the vale
of Iosaphath þat is not full large & fro þat mount steigh 8
oure lord Ihesu crist to heuene vpon Ascencioun day
And ȝit þere scheweth the schapp of his left foot in
the ston, And þere is a chirche where was wont to ¹ be
An Abbot & Chanouns reguleres. And a lytyl thens 12
.xxviiij. pas is a chapeil & þerein is the ston on the whiche
oure lord sat whan he prechede the .viij. blessinges &
seyde þus : BEATI PAUPERES SPIRITU. And þere he taughte
his disciples the PATER NOSTER And wrot it with his 16
fynger in a ston. And þere nygh is a chirche of seynte
Marie Egipeyane & þere sche lyth in a tombe. And fro
þens toward the Est a .iiij. bowe schote is Bethfagee to the
whiche oure lord sente seynt Peter & seynt James for to 20
seche the Asse vpon Palme sonday & rode vpon þat asse
to Ierusalem. And in comynge down fro the mount of
Olyuete toward the est is a casteil þat is cleped Bethanye
And þere dwelte Symon leprous & þere herberwed oure 24
lord & after he was baptized of the apostles & was clept
Iulian & was made bisschoff, And this is the same Iulyan
þat men clepe to for gode herberghigage, for oure lord
herberwed with him in his hows. And in þat hous oure 28
lord forȝaf Marie Magdaleyne hire synnes, þere sche
wissch his feet with hire teres & wyped hem with hire
heer And þere serued seynt Martha oure lord; þere oure lord
reysed lazarus fro deth to lyue þat was ded .iiij. dayes & stank 32
þat was brother to Marie Magdaleyne & to Martha; And
þere dwelte also Marie Cleophe. þat casteil is wel a myle
long fro Ierusalem. Also in comynge down fro the mount
of Olyuete is the place where oure lord wepte vpon Ieru- 36
salem. And þere besyde is the place where oure lady appe-

- red to seynt Thomas the Apostle after hire Assumpeioun
 ⁊ 3af him hire gyrdyH. And right nygh is the ston where Our Lady's
girdle.
 oure lord often tyme sat vpon whan he prechede And
 4 vpon þat same he schaf sytte at the day of doom right as
 him self seyde. Also after the mount of Olyuete is the
 mount of Galilee, þere assembleden the Apostles whan
 Marie Magdaleyne cam ¹ ⁊ tolde hem of cristes vprisynge [1 fol. 45 a]
 8 And þere betwene the mount Olyuete ⁊ the mount Galilee
 is a chirche where the angel seyde to oure lady of hire deth.
 Also fro Bethanye to Ierico [er fyue myle. Ierico](¹) was Jericho,
Joshua.
 somtyme a lityH cytee but it is now aH destroyed ⁊ now
 12 is þere but a lityH village. þat citee tok Iosue be myracle
 of god ⁊ commandement of the Angel ⁊ destroyed it ⁊ cursed
 it ⁊ aH hem þat bygged it agen. Of þat citee was zacheus the Zacchaus
in the
sycomore.
 dwerf þat clomb vp into the sycomour tre for to see oure
 16 lord because he was so litiH, he myghite not seen him
 for the peple. And of þat cytee was Raab the comoun Rahab and
the spies.
 womman þat ascaped allone with hem of hire lynage ⁊
 sche often tyme refressched ⁊ fed the messageres of Israel
 20 ⁊ kepte hem from many grete periles of deth ⁊ þefore
 sche hadde gode reward as holy writt seyth: QUI ACCIPIT
 PROPHE TAM IN NOMINE MEO MERCEDEM PROPHETE ACCIPIET,
 þat is to seye: he þat taketh a prophete in my name, he
 24 schaf take mede of the prophete. And so hadde sche, For
 sche propheyed to the messageres seyenge: NOVI QUOD
 DOMINUS TRADET VOBIS TERRAM HANC, þat is to seye: I wot
 wel þat oure lord schal betake 3ou this lond, And so he
 28 dide And after Salomon Naasones sone wedded hire ⁊
 fro þat tyme was sche a worthi womman ⁊ serued god wel.
 Also fro Betanye gon men to flom Iordan by a moun-
 tayne ⁊ þorgh desert ⁊ it is nygh a day iorneye fro
 32 Bethanye toward the est to a gret hiH where oure lord
 fasted .xl. dayes. Vpon þat hiH the enemy of heH bare The Tempta-
tion of Our
Lord.
 oure lord ⁊ tempted him ⁊ seyde: DIC VT LAPIDES ISTI PANES
 FIAN T, þat is to seye: sey þat theise stones be made loues.
 36 In þat place vpon the hiH was wont to ben a faire chirche,

(1) Missing in C.

The
Georgians.
[fol. 45 v]

The blind
man cured.

but it is aH destroyed so *pat pere* is now but an hermytage
pat a maner of cristene men holden *pat* ben cleped Geor-
gyenes for seynt George conuerted hem. Vpon ¹*pat* hiH
duelte Abraham a gret while & perfore men elepen it 4
Abrahames gardyn And betwene the hiH & this gardyn
renneth a lityH broke of water *pat* was wont to ben
bytter, but be the blessing of helisee the prophete it
becam swete & gode to drynke. And at the foot of this 8
hiH toward the playn is a grete welle *pat* entreth into
flom Iordan. Fro *pat* hiH to Ierico *pat* I spak of before
is but a myle in goynge toward flom Iordan. Also as men
gon to Ierico sat the blynde man cryenge : *IHESU FILI* 12
DAVID MISERERE MEI, *pat* is to seye : Ihesu danides sone
haue mercy on me, & anon he hadde his sight. Also .ij.
myle fro Ierico is flom Iordan & an half myle more nygh
is A faire chirche of seynt Iohn the Baptist, where he 16
baptised oure lord And pere besyde is the hous of Ieremye
the prophete.

Ch. XIII. OF THE DEDE SEE, AND OF THE FLOM
JORDAN; OF THE HED OF SEYNT JOHN THE
BAPTIST, & OF THE VSAGES OF THE
SAMARITANES.

The Dead
Sea.

Engeddi.

Balaam the
priest, son
of Beor or
Bosor.

Zoar.

AND fro Jerico a .iiij. myle is the dede see; Aboute
pat see groweth moche Alom & of Alkatran. 20
Betwene Jerico & *pat* see is the lond of Dengalde & pere
was wont to growe the bawme, But men make drawe the
braunches pereof & beren hem to ben graffed at Babyloyne,
And jit men elepen hem vynes of Gaddy. At a cost of *pat* 24
see as men gon from Arabe is the mount of the Moabytes
where pere is a cave *pat* men elepen karua. Vpon *pat*
hiH ladde Balak the sone of Booz Balaam the prest for to
curse the peple of Israel. *pat* dede see departeth the 28
lond of [Iudee] ⁽¹⁾ & of Arabye and *pat* see lasteth from
Soara vnto Arabye. The water of *pat* see is fuH bytter

⁽¹⁾ ynde, MS.

- † salt And ȝiff the erthe were made moyst † weet with
 þat water it wolde neuere bere fruyt. And the erthe
 † the lond chaungeþ often his colour And it casteth †
 4 out of the water a thing þat men clepen Aspalt Also gret Asphalt.
 peces as the gretness of an hors ¹ euery day † on aȝ sydes. [¹ fol. 46 a]
 * And fro Ierusalem to þat see is .CC. furlonges; þat see is
 in lengthe fyue hundred and foure skore furlonges And
 8 in brede an hundred and fifty furlonges And it is clept Why called |
 the dede see for it renneth nought, but is euere vnnen- the Dead
 able. And nouther man ne best ne nothing þat bereth Sea.
 lif in him ne may not dyen in þat see And þat hath ben Nothing can |
 die in it.
 12 preued many tymes be men þat han disserued to ben dede
 þat han ben cast þerinne † left þerinne .iiij. dayes or .iiij.
 † þei ne myghte neuer dye þerinne for it resceyueth no
 thing withynne him that bereth lif. And noman may
 16 drynken of the water for bytternesse, And ȝif a man caste Iron floats |
 jren þerein it wole flete abouen, And ȝif men caste a fedre and feathers |
 þerein it wole synke to the botme. And þeise ben Those are |
 thinges aȝenst kynde. And also the cytees þere weren things against |
 nature.
 20 lost because of synne [aȝenst kynde] And þere besyden Apples of |
 growen trees þat beren full faire apples † faire of colour Sodom.
 to beholde but whoso breketh hem or eutteth hem in two
 he schal fynde within hem coles † cyndres in tokene þat
 24 be wratthe of god the cytees † the lond weren brente
 † sonken in to helle. Summen clepen þat see the lake
 dalfetidee, summe the flom of deueles † summe the flom
 þat is euer styntyng [for þe water þerof es styntand].⁽¹⁾
 28 And in to þat see sonken the .v. cytees be wratthe of god The five |
 þat is to seyne Sodom Gomorre Aldama Seboym † Segor doomed
 for the abhomyneable synne of sodomye þat regned in cities.
 hem. But Segor be the preyere of loth was saued † kept
 32 a gret while For it was sett vpon an hiȝ And ȝit scheweth
 þerof sum party aboue the water † men may see the
 walles whan it is fayr weder † cleer. In þat cytee loth
 dwelte a lytyȝ while † þere was he made dronken of his

1. 3, †, to, cancelled C.

(1) Missing in C. Inserted from Eg.

doughtres & lay with hem & engendred of hem Moab
 & Amon And the cause whi his doughtres made him
 [1 fol. 46 b] drunken & for to ly by hem was this: because þei ¹sawgh
 no man aboute hem but only here fader And þerfore þei 4
 trowed þat god had destroyed aȝ the world as he hadde
 don the cytees, as he had don before be Noeis flood,
 & þerfore þei wolde ly with here fader for to haue issue &
 for to replenyssche the world aȝen with peple to restore 8
 the world aȝen be hem, for þei trowed þat þer had ben no
 mo men in aȝ the world. And ȝif here fader had not ben
 drunken he hadde not yleye with hem. And the hiȝh
 abouen SEGOR men cleped it þanne Edom And after men 12
 cleped it SEYR And after ydumea. Also at the right syde
 of þat dede see dwelleth ȝit the wif of loth in lykness of
 Lot's wife. a salt ston for þat schee loked behynde hire whan the
 cytees sonken in to helle. This loth was Araāmes sone 16
 þat was brother to Abrāham, And Sarra Abrahames wif &
 Melcha Nachors wif weren sustren to the seyd loth.
 And the same sarra was of elde ^{xx}.iij. ȝeer and .x. whan
 ysaac hire sone was goten on hire, And Abraham hadde 20
 another sone ysmael þat he gat vpon Agar his chambrere
 whan he was but .xiiij. ȝeer of elde. And whan ysaac
 his sone was .viij. dayes old Abraham his fader leet him
 ben circumeȝded And ysmael with him þat was .xiiij. 24
 ȝeer old, wherfore the Iewes þat comen of ysaaces lyne
 ben circumeȝded the .viij. day And the sarrazines þat
 comen of ysmaeles lyne ben circumeȝded whan þei ben
 .xiiij. ȝeer of age. And ȝee schuȝ vndirstonde þat within 28
 the dede see renneth the flom Iordan & pere it dyeth, for
 it renneth no furþermore And þat is to a place þat is a
 myle fro the chirche of seynt Ioȝn the Baptist toward
 the west, a lytiȝ benethe the place where þat cristene 32
 men bathen hem comounly. And a myle from flom
 Jabbok. Jordan is the ryuere of laboch, the whiche Iacob passed
 ouer whan he cam fro Mesopotayme. This flom Iordan
 [2 fol. 47 a] is no ²gret ryuere but it is plentefous of gode fissch And 36
 it cometh out of the hiȝh of lybau be .ij. welles þat ben

Age of cir-
 cumcision
 among Jews
 and Muham-
 madans.

The mouth
 of Jordan.

- cleped Ior and Dan, and of þo .ij. welles bath it the
 name And it passeth be a lake þat is clept Maron and Meron.
 after it passeth by the see of Tyberye & passeth vnder the
 4 hilles of GELBOE. And þere is a fuH faire vale bothe on
 þat o syde & on þat other of the same ryuere. And (1)
 gon the hilles of lyban aH in lengthe vnto the desert of
 Pharan And þo hilles departen the kyngdom of surrye Lebanon
 8 and the contree of PHENESIE And vpon þo hilles growen divides Syria
 trees of Cedre þat ben fuH hye & þei beren longe apples & from
 als grete as a mannes heued. And also this flom Iordan Phenicia.
 departeþ the lond of Galilee & the lond of YDUMYE & the The course
 12 lond of BETRON. And þat renneth vnder ertie a gret of Jordan.
 weye vnto a fayre playn & a gret þat is clept MELDAN
 in SARMOYZ þat is to seye feyre or markett in here
 langage be cause þat pere is often feres in þat playn; And
 16 þere becometh the water gret & large. In þat playn is
 the tombe of Iob And in þat flom Iordan aboneseyd was The Baptism
 oure lord baptized of seynt Iohn And the voys of god the of Christ.
 20 fader was herd seyenge: HIC EST FILIUS MEUS DILECTUS
 & CETERA, þat is to seye: this is my beloued sone, in the
 which I am wel plesed, hereth hym. And the holy gost
 alyghte vpon him in lykness of a coluer And so at his
 baptizynge was aH the hool trynytee. And þorgh þat
 24 flom passeden the children of Israel aH drye feet And þei The river
 putten stones þere in the myddel place in tokene of the crossed dry-
 myracle þat the water withdrowgh him so. Also in þat foot.
 flom Iordan NAAMAN of Syrie bathed him þat was fuH Naaman's
 28 riche but he was meseH & þere anon he toke his hele. cure.
 Abouten the flom Iordan ben manye chirches where þat
 manye cristene men dwelleden And nygh þerto is the
 cytee of HAYLLA þat Iosue assayled & toke. ¹ Also bezonde Ai.
 32 the flom Iordan is the vale of Mambre & þat is a fuH fair [fol. 47 b]
 vale. Also [from] (2) the hiH þat I spak of before where
 oure lord fasted .xl. dayes, a .ij. myle long [towards] (3)
 Galilee is a fair hiH & an high [where] (4) the enemy the
 36 fend bare oure lord the thridde tyme to temple him & Temptation
 of Our Lord.

(1) men, in C. (2) vpon, C. (3) from, C. (4) when, C.

schewede him aH the regiouns of the world t seyde: HEC
 OMNIA TIBI DABO SI CADENS ADORAUERIS ME, þat is to
 seyne: AH this schah I zeue þe 3if þou falle t worschipe
 me. Also fro the dede see to gon estward out of the 4
 marches of the holy lond þat is clept the lond of promys-
 sioun is a strong casteH and a fair in an hiH þat is clept
 KARAK EN SARMOYZ, þat is to seyne Ryally. þat casteH
 let make kyng Baldwyn þat was kyng of France whan he 8
 had conquered þat lond t putte it into cristene mennes
 hondes for to kepe the contree; And for þat cause was it
 clept the Mownt riaH. And vnder it þere is a town þat
 hight SOBACH And þere aH abowte dwellen cristene men 12
 vnder trybute. Fro þens gon men to NAZARETH of the
 whiche oure lord bereth the surname, And fro þens þere
 is .iiij. ionrneyes to Ierusalem t men gon be the prouynce
 of GALYLEE, be RAMATHA, be Sothym t be the high hiH 16
 of EFFRAIM, where Elchana t ANNE the moder of SamueH
 the prophete dwelled. þere was born this prophete
 And after his detH he was buryed at mountjoye as I haue
 seyd 3ou before. And þan gon men to Sylo where the 20
 Arke of god with the relikes weren kept longe tyme
 vnder Ely the prophete; þere made the peple of Ebron
 sacrifice to oure lord t þei 3olden vp here arowes And
 þere spak god first to SAMUEH and schewed him the 24
 mutacioun of ordre of presthode t the misterie of the
 sacrement And right nygh on the left syde ¹is GABAON
 t RAMA t BENIAMYN of the whiche holy writt speketH
 offe. And after men gon to Sychem sumtyme clept 28
 Sychar t þat is in the prouynce of Samaritanes t þere is a
 fuH fair vale t a fructuouse t þere is a fair cytee t a gode
 þat men clepen Neople. And from þens is a iorneye to
 Ierusalem And þere is the welle where oure lord spak to 32
 the womman of Samaritan And þer was wont to ben a
 chirche but it is beten down. Besyde þat welle kyng
 Roboas let make .iij. CALUEREN of gold t made hem to ben
 worschipt t put þat on at Dan t þat oper at BETHEL. 36
 And a myle from SYCHAR is the cytee of Deluze And in

Krak, or
Montroyal.

Samuel's
birthplace
in Mount
Ephraim.

Shiloh.

[¹ fol. 48 a]

Sichem, or
Nablus.

Luz.

- þat cytee dwelte ABRAHAM a certeyn tyme. SYCHEM is a
 .x. myle fro Ierusalem & it is clept Neople, þat is for to
 seyne the newe cytee. And nygh besyde is the tombe of
 4 Ioseph the sone of Iacob þat gouerned Egypt, For the
 Iewes baren his bones from Egypt & buryed hem þere,
 And þider gon the Iewes often tyme in pilgrimage with
 gret deuocioun. In þat cytee was Dyne Iacobes doughter
 8 rauysschit for whom hire brethieren slown many persones
 & diden many harmes to the cytee. And þere besyde is
 the hiH of GARASOUN where the Samaritanes maken here
 sacrificise; In þat hiH wolde Abraham haue sacrificed his
 12 sone ysaac. And þere besyde is the vale of DOTAYM &
 þere is the cisterne where Ioseph was cast in of his
 breþeren which þei solden & þat is a .ij. myle fro SYCHAR.
 From þens gon men to SAMARYE þat men clepen now
 16 SEBAST And þat is the chief cytee of þat contree And it
 sytt betwene the hiH of AYGUES as Ierusalem doth. In
 that cytee was the sittynge of the .xij. tribes of Israel
 but the cytee is not now so gret as it was wont to be.
 20 þere was ¹buryed seynt IOHN THE BAPTIST betwene .ij.
 prophetes; helyseus and ABDYAN, but he was beheded in
 the casteH of Macharyme besyde the dede see And after
 he was translated of his disciples & buryed at SAMARIE
 24 And þere let IULIANUS AROSTATA dyggen him vp & let
 brennen his bones, for he was þat tyme Emperour, & let
 wyndwe the askes in the wynd; But the fynger þat
 schewed oure lord seyenge: ECCE AGNUS DEI, þat is to
 28 seyne: lo the lomb of god, þat nolde neuere brenne but
 is aH hol, þat fynger leet seynte Teele the holy virgyne
 be born in to the hiH of Sebast & þere maken men gret
 feste. In þat place was wont to ben a fair chirche &
 32 manye opere þere weren but þei ben aH beten down. þere
 was wont to ben the heed of seynt IOHN BAPTIST enclosed
 in the waH, but the Emperour THEODOSIE let drawe it
 out & fond it wrapped in a litiH cloth aH bloody And
 36 so he leet it to be born to COSTANTYNOPLE, And
 37 at Costantynoble is the hynder partye of the heed.

The Tomb
of Joseph.

Mount
Gerizim.

Dothan.

Samaria, or
Sebaste.

The burial
of St. John
the Baptist.
[1 fol. 48 b]

St. John's
finger.

St. John's
head partly
in Con-
stantinople,
partly in
Rome.

Julian the
Apostate
had it
burned.

The charger
is at Genoa.

Whiche St.
John's head
is at
Amiens?

[1 fol. 49 a]

Well of Job.

The
Samaritan
sect.

Their creed
and sacred
books.

Their
clothing.

And the forpartie of the heed til vnder the chyn is at Rome in the chirche of seynt SILUESTRE, where ben Nonnes of an hundred ordres & it is zit aȝt broyllly as 4
pough it were half brent, For the Emperour IULIANUS aboueseyd of his cursedness & malice let brennen þat 4
partie with the oper bones & zit it scheweth. And this thing hath ben preued botlie be Popes & by Emperours. And the jowes benethe þat holden to the chyn & a partie 8
of the assches & the plater þat the hed was leyd in whan it was smyten of is at GENE, And the Geneweyes maken of it gret feste, And so don the Sarazynes also. And summe seyn þat the heed of seynt Iohn is at AMYAS in 12
Picardye And oper men seyn þat it is the heed of seynt Iohn the bysschop; I wot nere, but god knoweth. ¹ But in what wyse þat men worschipe it the blessed seynt Iohn holt him apayd. Fro this cytee of SEBAST vnto 16
IERUSALEM is .xij. myle And betwene the hilles of þat contree þere is a welle þat .iiij. sithes in the ȝeer chaungeth his colour, somtyme grene somtyme reed somtyme cleer & somtyme trouble, And men clepen þat welle 20
IOB And the folk of þat contree þat men clepen SAMARITANES weren conuerted & baptized by the Apostles, but þei holden not wel here doctryne, And aȝt weys þei holden lawes by hem self, varyenge from cristene men, 24
from Sarrazines, Iewes & paynemes. & the samaritanes leeven wel in o god And þei seyn wel þat þer is but only o god þat aȝt formed & aȝt schaff deme And þei holden the bible after the lettre And þei vsen the psawtere 28
as the Iewes don And þei seyn þat þei ben the right sones of god, And among aȝt oper folk þei seyn þat þei ben best beloued of god, And þat to hem belongeth the heritage þat god belighete to hise beloued children. And 32
þei han also dyuerse clothinge & schapp to loken on þan oper folk han, for þei wrappen here hedes in red lynnene cloth, in difference from opere. And the Sarazines wrappen here hedes in white lynnene cloth, And the 36

cristene men þat duellen in the contree wrappen hem in
 blew of ynde, And the Iewes in 3elow cloth. In þat
 contree dwellen manye of the Iewes payenge trybute as
 4 cristene men don And 3if 3ee wil knowe the lettres þat the
 Iewes vsen þei ben suche And the names ben As þei
 clepen hem writen abouen in manere of here . A . B . C .

The Hebrew
 alphabet.

[Another alphabet.]

OF THE PROUINCE OF GALILEE & WHERE
 ANTECRIST SCHALL BEN BORN; OF NAZA-
 RETH; OF THE AGE OF OURE LADY; OF
 THE DAY OF DOOM, & OF THE CUSTOMES OF
 IACOBITES, SURRYENES & OF THE VSAGES
 OF GEORGYENES.

Ch. XIV.
 [fol. 49 b]

8 **F**ROM this contree of the samaritanes þat I haue
 spoken of before gon men to the playnes of
 GALILEE And men leuen the hilles on þat o partye.
 And GALILEE is on of the prouynces of the holy lond,
 And in þat prouynce is the cytee of NAYM & CAPHARNAUM
 12 & CHOROSAYM and BETHSAYDA. In this BETHSAYDA was
 seynt Peter & seint Andrew born And þens a .iiij. myle
 is CHOROSAYM & .v. myle fro CHOROSAYM is the cytee of
 Cedar whereof the psauter speketh: ET HABITAU CUM
 16 HABITANTIBUS CEDAR, þat is for to seye: And I haue
 dwelled with the dwellynge men in Cedar. In CHORO-
 SAYM schall ANTECRIST be born, as summen seyn, And
 oþer men seyn he schall be born in Babyloyne. For the
 20 prophete seyth: DE BABILONIA COLUBER EXIET, QUI
 TOTUM MUNDUM DEORABIT, þat is to seyne: Out of
 Babyloyne schal come a worm þat schal deuouren aȝ the
 world. This ANTECRIST schall be norysschit in BETH-
 24 SAYDA & he schall regnen in CAPHARNAUM And þerfore
 seyth holy writt: VE TIBI CHOROSAYM, VE TIBI BETH-
 SAYDA, VE TIBI CAPHARNAUM! þat is to seye: Wo be

Galilee.

Chorazin.

The birth-
 place of
 Antichrist.

to þe CHOROSAYM, Wo to þe BETHSAYDA, Wo to þe
 Cana of Galilee. CAPHARNAUM! And aH theise townes ben in the lond
 of GALILEE And also the CANE of GALILEE is .iiij. myle
 fro NAZARETH. Of þat cytee was SYMON CHANANEUS 4
 t his wif Canee of the which the holy Emuangelist
 [1 fol. 50 a] speketh offe. ¹ þere dide oure lord the firste myracle at
 Architriclinus = ruler of the feast. the weddyng of Architriclyn when he turned water in to
 wyn. And in the ende of Galilee at the hilles was 8
 the Arke of god taken t on þat oper syde is the mownt
 Endor, Kishon. hendor or hermon And þere aboute goth the broke
 of Torrens Cison þat somtyme was clept the broke
 Radumu. And þere besyde Barach þat was Abymelech 12
 Deborah. sone with sone of Delbore the prophetisse ouercam the
 oost of ydumea whan Cysara the kyng was slayn of
 GebeH the wif of Aber t chaced bezonde the flom Iordan
 be strengthe of swerd, zeb and zebec t Salmana t þere 16
 he slowgh hem. Also a .v. myle fro Naym is the cytee
 of Iezrael, þat somtyme was clept zarym, of the whiche
 Queen Jezabel. cytee Iexabel the cursed queen was lady t queen þat
 toke away the vyne of Nabaoth be hire strengthe. 20
 Faste by þat cytee is the feld MAGEDE in the whiche
 the kyng Ioras was slayn of the kyng of Samarie And
 after was translated t buried in the mount Syon. And
 The hills of Gilboa cursed by David after Saul's defeat. a myle fro Iezrael ben the hilles of Gelboe, where Saul 24
 t Ionathas þat weren so faire dyeden, wherfore David
 cursed hem as holy writt seyth: MONTES GELBOE NEC
 ROS NEC PLUUIA t CETERA, þat is to seye: 3ee hilles of
 gelboe nouper dew ne reyn com vpon 3ou. And a myle 28
 fro the hilles of Gelboe toward the est is the cytee
 Bethshan, or Scythopolis. of Cytople þat was clept before Bethsayn And vpon
 the walles of þat cytee was the hed of Saul honged.
 Afte gon men be the hiH besyde the pleynes of Galylee 32
 Nazareth. vnto Nazareth where was wont to ben a gret cytee and
 a fair, but now þere is not but a lytill village t houses
 a brood here t þere. And it is not walled t it sytt in
 a litiH valeye t þere ben hilles aH aboute. þere was 36

- ¹oure lady born, but sche was goten at Ierusalem. And [1 fol. 50 b]
 because þat oure la[d]y was born at Nazareth þerfore bare
 oure lord his surname of þat town. þere toke Ioseph
⁴oure lady to wyf whan sche was .xiiij. ȝeere of age And
 þere GabrieH grette oure lady seyeuge: Aue gracia plena
 dominus tecum, þat is to seyne: Heyl fuH of grace oure
 lord is with þe. And this salutacioun was don in a
⁸place of a gret awteer of a faire chirche þat was wont to
 be somtyme, but it is now aH downe. t men han made
 a lityH resceyt besyde a pylere of þat chirche for to
 resceyne the offrynges of pilgrymes And the sarrazines
¹²kepen þat place fuH derely for the profyte þat þei han
 þereofle And þei ben fuH wykked sarrazines t crueH t
 more dispytous þan in ony oþer place t han destroyed
 aH the chirches. þere nygh is Gabrielles welle where
¹⁶oure lord was wont to bathe him whan he was ȝong
 And fro þat welle bare he water oftentyme to his moder
 And in þat welle sche wosch oftentyme the clowtes
 of hire sone Ihesu crist, And fro Ierusalem vnto thider
²⁰is .iiij. iourneyes. At Nazareth was oure lord norisschit,
 Nazareth is als meche to seye as flour of the gardyn And
 be gode skyH may it ben clept flour, for þere was
 norisschit the flour of lyf, þat was crist Ihesu. And
²⁴.ij. myle fro Nazareth is þe cytee of Sephor be the weye
 þat goth fro Nazareth to Acon. And an half myle fro
 Nazareth is the lepe of oure [lord]⁽¹⁾, for the Iewes ladden
 [him]⁽²⁾ vpon an high roche for to make [him]⁽²⁾ lepe
²⁸down t haue slayn [him]⁽³⁾ but Ihesu passed amonges hem
 t lepte vpon another roche t ȝit ben the steppes of his
 feet sene in the roche where he allyghte. And þerfore
 seyn summen whan þei dreden hem of thefes in ony
³²weye or of ene²myes: IHESUS AUTEM TRANSIENS PER
 MEDIUM ILLORUM IBAT, þat is to seyne: Ihesus forsothe
 passyunge be the myddes of hem he wente, In tokene t
 mynde þat oure lord passed þorghout the Iewes crueltee
³⁶t scaped safly fro hem, so surely mowe men passen the

The Ave
Maria.

The wicked
Saracens.

The well in
which the
Infant
Christ
bathed.

The Flower
of the
Garden.

The leap of
Our Lord.

A charm
against
robbers.

[2 fol. 51 a]

(1) lady, C.

(2) hire, C.

(3) hire, C.

perile of thefes. And þan sey men .iij. vers of the
 psauter .iij. sithes: IRRUAT SUPER EOS FORMIDO t PAUOR
 IN MAGNITUDE BRACHIJ TUI DOMINE. FIANI IMMOBILES
 QUASI LAPIS DONEC PERTRANSEAT POPULUS TUUS DOMINE 4
 DONEC PERTRANSEAT POPULUS TUUS ISTE QUEM POSSEDESTI.

Our Lady's
 life. And þanne may men passe with outen perile. And 3ee
 schuH vnderstonde þat oure lady hadde child whan sche
 was .xv. 3eere old and sche was conuersant with hire 8
 sone .xxxiiij. 3eer t .iij. monethes And after the passioun
 of oure lord sche lyuede .xxiiij. 3eer. Also fro Nazareth
 men gon to the mount Thabor t þat is a .iiij. myle t it
 is a fuH faire hiH t wel high, where was wont to ben 12
 a toun t many chirehes but þei ben aH destroyed, but
 3it þere is a place þat men clepen the scole of god, where
 he was wont to techen his disciples t tolde hem the
 prinytees of heuene. At the foot of þat hiH Melchisedech 16
 þat was kyng of Salem in the turninge of þat hiH mette
 Abraham in comynge a3en from the bataylle whan he
 had slayn Abyrnelech t þis Melchisedech was bothe kyng
 t prest of Salem þat now is cleped Ierusalem. In þat 20
 hiH Thabor oure lord transfigured him before seynt
 Peter seynt Iohn and seynt Iame And þere þei sawgh
 gostly Moyses t Elye the prophetes beside hem And
 þefore seyde seynt Peter: DOMINE BONUM EST NOS HIC 24
 ESSE, FACIAMUS HIC TRIA TABERNACULA, þat is to seye:
 Lord it is gode for vs to ben here, make wee here .iij.
 [1 fol. 51 b] dwellyng places. And þere herd þei a voys of the fadir þat
 seyde: HIC EST FILIUS MEUS DILECTUS IN QUO MIHI BENI 28
 COMPLACUI. And oure lord defended hem þat þei scholde
 not tel þat a visoun til þat he were rysen from deth to lyf.

Doomsday. In þat hiH t in þat same place at the day of doom .iiij.
 Aungeles with .iiij. trompes schuH blowen t reysen aH 32
 men þat hadden suffred deth sith that the world was
 formed from deth to lyue. And schuH comen in body
 [and] (1) soule to juggement before the face of oure lord in
 the vale of Iosaphath And the doom schuH ben on Estre 36

day, such tyme as oure lord aroos, And the dom schal
 begynne such houre as oure [lord]⁽¹⁾ descended to heH &
 dispoyled it. For at such houre schal he despoyle the
 4 world & lede his chosene to blisse & the opere schaff he
 condempne to perpetueH peynes. And þanne schaff enery
 man haue after his dissert ouþer gode or euyH but ȝif the
 merey of god passe his rightwisness. Also a myle from
 8 mount Thabor is the mount heremon & þere was the cytee
 of Naym. Before the ȝate of þat cytee reysed oure lord
 the wydewes sone þat had no mo children. Also .iiij.
 myle fro Nazareth is the casteH Saffra of the whiche the
 12 sones of zebedee & the sones of Alþee weren. Also a .viij.
 myle fro Nazareth is the mount kayn & vnder þat is a
 welle And besyde þat welle lamech Noees fader slough
 kayn with an arwe. For this kayn wente þorgh breres
 16 & busshes as a wyld best & he had lyued fro the tyme
 of Adam his fadir vnto the tyme of Noe & so he lyuede
 nygh to .M.M.^{††} ȝeer, And this Lamech was aH blynd for
 elde. Fro Saffra me goth to the see of Galylee & to the
 20 cytee of Tyberye þat sytt vpon the same see And aH
 be it þat men clepen it a see ȝit is it nouþer see ne arm of
 the see, for it is but ¹a stank of fresch water þat is in
 lengthe .c. furlonges & of brede .xl. furlonges & hathi within
 24 him gret plentee of gode fissch & renneth into flom Iordan.
 The cytee is not fuH gret but it hathi gode bathes within
 him And þere as the flom Iordan parteth fro the see
 of Galilee is a gret brigge where men passen from the lond
 28 of promysсион to the lond of kyng Baazan & the lond of
 Gerasentz þat ben aboute the flom Iordan And the begyn-
 nyng of the see of Tyberie. And fro þens may men
 go to Damask in .iiij. dayes be the kyngdom of Traconye,
 32 the whiche kyngdom lasteth fro mount heremon to the
 see of Galilee or to the see of Tyberie or to the see of
 Ienazareth & aH is o see, And this [is] the stank þat I
 haue told ȝou, But it chaungeth þus the name for the names
 36 of the cytees þat sytten besyde hem. Vpon þat see wente

Hermon and
 the city of
 Nain.

Mount Cain.

The Sea of
 Galilee is
 only a lake.
 [1 fol. 52 a]

The city of
 Tiberias.

Bashan and
 Gerasa
 beyond
 Jordan.

(1) Missing, C.

Our Lord
walked on
the sea.

oure lord drye feet And *pere* he toke vp seynt Peter whan
he began to drenche *within* *pat* see & seyde to him :
MODICE FIDEI, QUARE DUBITASTI ? And after his resur-
rexioun oure lord appered on *pat* see to his disciples 4

The net full
of fishes.

& bad *hem* fysschen & filled aH the nett full of gret
fisshes. In *pat* see rowed oure lord often tyme &
pere he called to him seynt Peter, seynt Andrew, seynt
Iames & seynt Iohn the sones of zebedee. In *pat* cytee 8
of Tyberie is the table vpon the whiche oure lord eete
vpon *with* his disciples after his resurrexioun & *pei* knewen
him in brekyng of bred as the gospeH seyth : ET COGNO-
UERUNT EUM IN FRACTIONE PANIS. And nygh *pat* cytee 12

The miracle
of the loaves
and fishes.

of Tyberie is the hiH where oure lord fedde .v. Mit
persones *with* .v. barly loues & .ij. fisshes. In *pat* cytee
a man cast an brennyng dart in wratthe after oure
lord & the hed smot in to the erthe & wax grene & it 16
growed to a gret tree & ¹³it it groweth & the bark *pere* of
is aH lyk coles. Also in the hed of *pat* see of Galylee
toward the Septemtryon is a strong castel & an high *pat*

A dart cast
at Our Lord
grows to a
tree.

[1 fol. 52 b]

hight Saphor & fast beside it is CAPHARNAUM ; *with* 20
in the lond of promyssioun is not so strong a casteH
& *pere* is a gode town benethe *pat* is clept also Saphor.
In *pat* castel seynt Anne oure ladyes moder was born
And *pere* benethe was Centurioes hous. *pat* contree 24
is clept the Galilee of folk *pat* weren taken to tribute
of Sabulon & of Neptalym. And in azen comynge

Capernaum
and Sephor.

City of Dan.

fro *pat* casteH a .xxx. myle is the cytee of Dan *pat*
pat somtyme was clept Belynas or Cesaire Philippon, *pat* sytt 28
at the foot of the mount of lyban, where the flom Iordan
begynneth. *pere* begynneth the lond of promyssioun &

Cesarea
Philippi.

Extent of
the Holy
Land.

dureth vnto Bersabee in lengthe in goynge toward the
north into the South & it conteyneth wel a .ix. myles. & of 32
lengthe, *pat* is to seye fro Iericho vnto Iaffe, & *pat* con-
teyneth a .xl. myle of lombardye or of oure contree *pat* ben
also lytyH myles ; *peise* be not myles of Gascoyne ne of
the prouynce of Almayne, where ben grete myles. And 36
wite 3e weH *pat* the lond of promyssioun is in Sirye For

- the Reme of Syrye dureth fro the desertes of Arabye
vnto Cecyle And þat is Ermony the grete, þat is to
seyne fro the south to the north. ⁊ fro the est to the
4 west it dureth fro the grete desertes of Arabye vnto the
west see. But in þat Reme of Syrie is the kyngdom of
Indee ⁊ many oþer prouncees as Palestyne, Galilee, lityh
Cilicye ⁊ many othere. In þat contree ⁊ oþer contrees
8 bezonde þei han a custom whan þei schuþ vsen werre
⁊ whan men holden sege abouten cytee or casteþ ⁊ þei
withjnnen dur not senden out messagers ¹with lettres
from lord to lord for to aske sokour þei maken here
12 lettres ⁊ bynden hem to the nekke of a coluer ⁊ leten the
coluer flec ⁊ the colueren ben so taughte þat þei fleen
with þo lettres to the verry place þat men wolde sende
hem to. For the colueres ben noryssehit in þo places where
16 þei ben sent to ⁊ þei senden hem þus for to beren here
lettres. And the colueres retournen aȝen whereas þei
ben norissehit ⁊ so þei don comounly. And ȝee schuþ
vnderstonde þat amonges the sarazines o part ⁊ other,
20 duellen many cristene men of many maneres ⁊ dyuerse
names ⁊ aȝ ben baptized ⁊ han dyuerse lawes ⁊ dyuerse
customes. But aȝ beleuen in god the fader ⁊ the sone
⁊ the holy gost, But aȝ weys fayle þei in somme artictes
24 of oure feyth. Somme of þeise ben clept Iacobytes
for seynt Iame conuerted hem ⁊ seynt Iohn baptized
hem; þei seyn þat a man schal maken his confessioun
only to god ⁊ not to a man, for only to him scholde man
28 ȝelden him gylty of aȝ þat he hath mysdon. Ne god
ordeyned not ne neuer deuysed ne the prophete nouthir
þat a man scholde schryuen him to another, as þei seyn
but only to god, as Moyses writeth in the Bible ⁊ as
32 Dauid seyth in the psawter boke: CONFITEBOR TIBI
DOMINE IN TOTO CORDE MEQ, And: DELICTUM MEUM
TIBI COGNITUM FECI ⁊: DEUS MEUS ES TU ⁊ CONFITEBOR
TIBI, And: QUONIAM COGITATIO HOMINIS CONFITEBITUR
36 TIBI ⁊ CETERA. For þei knowen aȝ the bible ⁊ the psautere
⁊ perfore allegge þei so the lettre but þei alleggen not the

Syria ex-
tends from
Arabia to
Cilicia.

Its divisions.

The pigeon
post.

[1 fol. 53 a]

The pigeons
fly home.

Variety of
Christian
sects in the
East.

Jacobites.

Their views
on con-
fession.

The psalms
on con-
fession.

	Auctoritees þus in latyn but in here langage full appertely t seyn wel þat <i>David</i> t opere prophetes seyn it. Natheles	
The Church Fathers.	seynt Austyn t seynt Gregory seyn þus, <i>AUGUSTINUS:</i> <i>QUI SCELERA SUA COGITAT t CONVERSUS FUERIT VENIAM</i> 4	
[¹ fol. 53 b]	<i>SIBI CREDAT.</i> ¹ <i>Gregorius: DOMINUS POCIUS MENTEM QUAM</i> <i>VERBA RESPICIT.</i> And seynt Hillary seyth: <i>LONGORUM</i> <i>TEMPORUM CRIMINA IN ICTU OCULI PEREUNT SI CORDIS</i> <i>NATA FUERIT CONPUNCTIO.</i> And for suchie auctoritees þei 8	
Confession in the smoke of incense.	seynt þat only to god schaff a man knowleche his de- fautes, 3eldynge him self gylty t cryenge him mercy t behotyng to him to amende himself. And þefore	
St. Peter introduced confession to the priest,	whan þei wil schryuen hem þei taken fyre t sette it 12 besyde hem t casten þer in poudre of frankencens t in the smoke þerof þei schryuen hem to god t cryen him mercy. But sothi it is þat this confessioun was first t	
	kyndely, but seynt peter the apostle t þei þat camen after 16 him han ordeynd to make here confessioun to man t be gode resoun. For þei perceyueden wel þat no sykness was curable, gode medecyne to leye þerto but	
who is the physician of souls.	3if men knewen the nature of the maladye. And also 20 no man may 3euen couenable medecyne but 3if he knowe the qualitee of the dede. For o synne may ben gretter in o man þan in another t in o place t in o tyme þan in another t þefore it behoveth him þat he knowe the 24 kynde of the dede t þerevpon to 3euen him penance.	
Syrians hold an inter- mediate position. Consecra- tion of unleavened bread.	þere ben opere þat ben clept <i>SURIENES</i> and þei holden the beleve amonges vs t of hem of Grece And þei vsen aH berdes as men of Grece don t þei maken the sacrament 28 of therf bred t in here langage þei vsen <i>lettres</i> of Sarazines, but after the misterie of holy chirche thei vsen <i>lettres</i> of Grece t þei maken here confessioun right as the	
Georgians.	<i>Iacobytes</i> don. þere ben opere þat men clepen <i>GEORGIENES</i> 32 þat seynt George conuerted t him þei worschipen more þan any other seynt t to him þei erien for help t þei camen out of the Reme of George; þoise folk vsen cronnes schanen. ² The clerkes han rounde cronnes t the lewed 36 men han crownes aH square t þei holden cristene lawe	
Various shapes of their tonsures, [² fol. 54 a]		

as don þei of Grece of whom I haue spoken of before.
 Othere pere ben þat men clepen cristene men of gyrdyng
 for þei ben aH gyrt abouen. And per ben opere þat
 4 men clepen Nestoryenes, And summe Arryenes, Summe
 Nubyenes, Summe of Grees, summe of Ynde t summe
 of Prestre Iohnes lond. And aH þeise han manye
 articles of oure feyth t to othere þei ben varyaunt t of
 8 here variance were to longe to telle t so I wil leue as
 for the tyme withouten more spekyng of hem.

Christians of
gyrding and
other sects.

OF THE CYTEE OF DAMASCE; OF .iiij. Ch. xv.
 WEYES TO IERUSALEM: ON BE LONDE t BE
 SEE, ANOTHER MORE BE LONDE þAN BE
 SEE, AND THE THRIDDE WEYE TO IERU-
 SALEM: AÆ BE LONDE.

NOW after þat I haue told 3ou sum partye of folk in
 the contrees before [said] ⁽¹⁾ now wil I turnen azen
 12 to my weye for to turnen azen on this half. þazne whoso
 wil go fro the lond of GALILEE of þat þat I haue spoke for
 to come azen on this half, men comen azen be Damasce þat
 is a fuH fayr cytee t fuH noble t fuH of aH marchandise
 16 And a .iiij. iorneyes long fro the see t a .v. iorneyes fro
 Ierusalem. But vpon Camaylles / mules / hors / drome-
 daries t oper bestes men caryen here marchandise thider,
 And thider comen the marchauntes with marchandise be
 20 see from ynde, persee, Caldee Ermony t of manye opere
 kyngdomes. This cytee founded Helizeus Damascus þat
 was 3oman t despenser of Abraham before þat ysaac was
 born, for he thoughte for to haue ben Abrahames heir
 24 t he named the toun after his surname Damasee. And
 in þat place where Damase was ¹ founded kaym slough
 Abel his broþer And besyde damase is the mount Seyr.
 In þat cytee of Damasee per is gret plentee of welles And
 28 within the cytee t withoute ben many fayre gardynes
 t of dyuerse frutes. Non oper cytee is not lyche in

The way
from the
Holy Land
to Europe.

Damascus.

Merchants
from all
parts meet
here.
Its epony-
mous hero
Eliezer.

[fol 54 b]

Its fair
gardens.

(1) Missing, C.

St. Paul a
physician,
first of
bodies, then
of soules.

The Vision
of St. Paul.

Our Lady of
Sardenak.

The miracu-
lous image.

comparisoun to it of faire gardynes t of faire desportes.
The cytee is gret t fuH of peple t wel walled with double
walles. And pere ben manye Phisicyens And seint Poul
himself was pere a phisieyen for to kepen mennes bodyes 4
in hele before he was conuerted t after pat he was
phisicien of soules. And seynt luk the Euuangelist was
disciple of seynt Poul for to lerne phisik t many opere.
For seint Poul held þanne scole of phisik. And neere 8
beside damasce was he conuerted t after his conuersioun
he duelte in pat cytee .iiij. dayes withouten sight t with-
outen mete or drinke And in þo .iiij. dayes he was
ravisschit to heuene t pere he saugh many preuytees of 12
oure lord. And faste beside damasce is the casteH of
Arkes pat is bothe fair t strong. From Damasce men
comen azen be oure lady of Sardenak, pat is a .v. myle
on this half damasce t it sytt vpon a roche t it is a 16
fuH faire place t it semeth a casteH for pere was wont to
ben a casteH, but it is now a fuH faire chirche. And
pere withinne ben monkes t nonnes cristene And per is a
vowt vnder the chirche where pat cristene men duellen 20
also t þei han many gode vynes. And in the chirche
behinde the high awtere in the waH is a table of blak
wode on the whiche somtyme was depeynted an ymage
of oure lady pat turneth into flesch, but now the ymage 24
scheweth but litiH. But aH weys be the grace of god þe

[A long gap here occurs in the Cotton MS. As the only alternative text is in a more Northern dialect, we print it in appendix.]

[fol. 55 a]
Evil habits
of the
Tartars.

t þei eten houndes, cattes, ratouns t aH opere wyld
bestes. And þei haue no wode or eH lytyH And jefore
þei warmen t sethen here mete with hors dong t cow 28
dong t of oper bestes dryed azenst the sonne. And
princes t opere eten not but ones in the day t pat but

lytiH & þei ben right foule folk & of euyl kynde. And
 in somer be aH þo contrees fallen many tempestes & many
 hidouse thondres & leytes And slen meeche peple & bestes
 4 also fuH oftentyne. And soleyonly is þere passynge hete &
 soleyonly also passynge cold And it is the foulest contree
 & the most cursd and the porest þat men knowen. And
 here prince þat gouerneth þat contree þat þei clepen
 8 БАРХО, duelleth at the cytee of Orda. And treuly no
 gode man scholde not duellen in þat contre, For the
 lond & the contree is not worthi boundes to dueH june;
 It were a gode contree to sowen june thristeH & breres
 12 & broom & thornes & breres, & for non oþer þing is it not
 good. Natheles þere is gode lond in sum place but it
 is pure litiH as men seyn. I haue not ben in þat contre
 ne be þo weyes but I haue ben at oþer londes þat marchen
 16 to þo contreyes As in the lond of Russye & in the lond of
 Nyllan & in the reme of Crako & of lette & in the reme of
 Daresten & in manye oþer places þat marchen to þo costes,
 but I wente neuer be þat weye to Ierusalem, Wherfore I
 20 may not wel teH 3ou the manere. But 3if this matiere
 plese to ony worthi man þat hath gon be þat weye he
 may telle it 3if him lyke to þat entent þat þo þat wolen go
 by þat weye and maken here viage be þo costes mowen
 24 knowen what weye is þere. For nonman may passe be þat
 weye godely but in ¹tyne of wynter for the perilous
 watres & wykkede mareys þat ben in þo contrees, þat
 nonman may passe but 3if it be strong frost & snowe
 28 abouen, for 3if the snow ne were men myght not gon vp
 on the yse ne hors ne earre nouþer & it is wel a .iiij.
 iourneyes of suchie weye to passe from Prusse to the
 lond of sarazin habitable. And it behoueth to the
 32 cristene men þat schuH werre a3en hem euery 3eer to here
 here vitaylles with hem, for þei schuH fynde þere no good,
 And þan most þei let carye here vitaylle vpon the yse with
 earres þat haue no wheeles þat þei clepen Seleyes, And als
 36 longe as here vitailles lasten þei may abyde þere but no
 longer, For þere schuH þei fynde no wight þat wil selle

Wretched
climate of
their
country.

Batu, khan
of the
Golden
Horde.

Only weeds
will grow
there.

Russia,
Livonia,
Cracow,
Lithuania
and
Daresten.

The marshes
can only be
passed in
winter, on
the ice.

[fol. 55 b]

Sledges or
sleighs for
moving sup-
plies over
the ice.

The spies
call the
warriors
together
when
strangers
pass.

hem ony vitaille or ony thing. And whan the spyes seen
ony cristene men comen vpon hem þei rennen to the
townes & cryen with a lowd voys KERRA KERRA KERRA
& þan anon þei armen hem & assemble hem togydere. 4
And 3ee schuþ vnderstonde þat it freseth more strongly
in þo contrees þan on this half & þerfore hath euery man
stewes in his hous & in þo stewes þei eten & don here
occupacionns aþ þat þei may. For þat is at the north 8
parties þat men clepen the septentrioneþ where it is aþ
only cold, For the sonne is but lytiþ or non toward þo
contreyes & þerfore in the Septemtryon þat is verry north
is the lond so cold þat noman may dueþ þere & in the 12
contrarye toward the south it is so hoot þat noman ne
may dueþ þere, be cause þat the sonne whan he is
vpon the South casteth his bemes aþ streght vpon þat
partye. 16

The natives
live near
their stoves.

Why it is
cold in the
North and
hot in the
South.

Ch. XVI. OF THE CUSTOMES OF SARASINES, & OF HIRE
LAW, & HOW THE SOUDAN ARRESOND ME
AUTOUR OF THIS BOOK, AND OF THE BE
GYNNYNGE OF MACHOMETE.

The religion
of Saracens.
[1 fol. 56 a]
The Coran.

NOW because þat I haue spoken of sarazines & of here
contre now 3if 3ee wil knowe a partye of here lawe
& of here ¹beleue I schaþ tell 3ou after þat here book þat
is clept ALKARON telleth, And summen clepen þat book 20
MESHAF & summe clepen it HARME after the dyuerse
langages of the contree, The whiche book Machamete toke
hem. in the whiche boke among oþer thinges is writen, as
I haue often tyme seen & radd, þat the gode schuþ gon to 24
paradys & the cuele to helle & þat beleuen aþ sarazines.
And 3if a man aske hem what paradys þei menen þei seyn
to paradys þat is a place of delytes where men schuþ
fynde aþ maner of frutes in aþ cesouns & ryueres rennyng 28
of mylk & hony & of wyn & of swete water & þat þei schuþ
haue faire houses & noble euery man after his dissert made
of precious stones & of gold & of syluer. And þat euery

Paradise
according to
Muhamma-
dans.

man schaH haue ^{xx}iiij. wyfes aH maydenes t he schaH haue
 ado enery day with hem t 3it he schaH fynden hem aH
 weys maydenes. Also þei belecuen t spoken gladly of the
 4 virgine Marie t of the Incarnacioun And þei seyn þat
 Marie was taught of the Angel t þat GabrieH seyde to
 hire þat sche was forehosen from the begynnyng of the
 world t þat he schewed to hire the Incarnacioun of Ihesu
 8 crist t þat sche conceyued t bare child mayden t þat
 wytnesseth here boke. t þei seyn also þat Ihesu crist
 spak als sone as he was born t þat he was an holy
 prophete t a trewe in woord t dede t meke t pytous
 12 t rightfuH t with outen ony vyce. And þei seyn also
 þat whan the Angel schewed the Incarnacioun of crist
 vnto Marie sche was 3ong t had gret drede. For þere was
 panne an enchauntour in the contree þat deled with
 16 wycchecraft þat men clepten Taknia þat he his enchaunte-
 mentes cowde make him in lykness of an Angel t wente
 often tymes t lay with maydenes ¹ t þefore Marie dredde
 lest it hadde ben Taknia þat cam for to desceyue the
 20 maydenes. And þefore sche comired the Angel þat he
 scholde teH hire 3if it were he or nō And the angel
 answerde t seyde þat sche scholde haue no drede of him
 for he was very messenger of Ihesu crist. Also here book
 24 seyth þat whan þat sche had childed vnder a palme tre
 sche had gret schame þat sche hadde a child t sche grette
 t seyde þat sche wolde þat sche hadde ben ded; And
 anon the child spak to hire t comforted hire t seyde:
 28 Moder ne dysmaye þe nougth, for god hath hidd in þe his
 preuytees for the saluacioun of the world. And in othere
 many places seyth here ALKARON þat Ihesu crist spak als
 sone as he was born. And þat book seyth also þat Ihesu
 32 was sent from god aH myglity for to ben myrour t
 ensample t tokne to alle men. And the Alkaron seyth
 also of the day of doom, how god schal come to deme aH
 maner of folk t the gode he schaH drawen on his syde
 36 t putte hem into blisse, And the wykkede he schal
 condempne to the peynes of heH. And amonges aH

Teaching of
the Coran
on the Virgin
and the
Incarnation.

The Sara-
cens believe
Christ to be
free from
sin.

Mary mis-
took Gabriel
for the
enchanter
Taknia, who
deceived
maidens.

[fol. 56 b]

Christ com-
forts his
Mother as
soon as born.

Perfections
of Jesus.

The Coran's
teaching on
Doomsday.

Jesus was
more than
prophet.

The Rama-
dan fast.

[1 fol. 57 a]

The Coran
against the
Jews.

The Sara-
cens believe
Judas
Iscariot to
have been
crucified
instead of
Christ,

for God can-
not have
allowed the
Innocent to
suffer.

Many points
of agreement
between the
creeds of
Saracens
and Chris-
tians.

prophetes Ihesu was the most excellent & the moste
worthi next god, And þat he made the gospelles in the
whiche is gode doctryne & helesuþ, fuþ of c[h]aritee⁽¹⁾ &
sotlifastness & trewe *preching* to hem þat beleuen in god 4
And þat he was a verry prophete & more þan a prophete
& lyued *withouten synne* & ȝaf syghit to þe blynde & helede
the lepres & reysede dede men & steigh to heuene. And
whan þei mowe holden the boke of the gospelles of oure 8
lord writen & namely *MISSUS EST ANGELUS GABRIEL*, þat
gospel þei seyn þo þat ben lettred often tymes in here
orisouns & þei kissen it & worschipen it with gret
deuocioun. þei fasten an hool moneth in the ȝeer & eten 12
nought but be nyghte¹ & þei kepen hem from here wyfes
aþ þat moneth. But the seke men be not constreyned to
þat fast. Also this book spekth of Iewes & seyth þat þei
ben cursed for þei wolde not beleuen þat Ihesu crist was 16
comen of god & þat þei lyeden falsely on Marie & on hire
sone Ihesu crist seyenge þat þei hadden crucefyed Ihesu
the sone of Marie. For he was neuere crucefyed as þei
seyn, but þat god made him to stye vp to him *withouten* 20
deth & *withouten* anoye, But he transfigured his lykness
into *IUDAS SCARIOTH* & him crucefyeden the Iewes &
wenden þat it had ben Ihesus But Ihesu steygh to
heuenes aþ quyk & þerfore þei seyn þat the cristene men 24
erren & han no gode knoueleche of this & þat þei beleuen
folyly & falsly þat Ihesu crist was crucefyed. And þei
seyn ȝit þat, & he had ben crucefyed, þat god had don aȝen
his rightwisness for to suffre Ihesu crist þat was Innocent 28
to ben put vpon the cros *withouten* gylt. And in this
article þei seyn þat wee faylen & þat the gret rightwisness
of god ne myhte not suffre so gret a wrong. And in this
fayleth here feyth, For þei knouelechen wel þat the werkes 32
of Ihesu crist ben gode & his wordes & his dedes & his
doctryne be his gospelles weren trewe & his meracles also
trewe & the blessedde virgine Marie is good & holy mayden
before & after the birthe of Ihesu crist, And þat aþ þo þat 36

(1) claritee, C.

- beleuen perfectly in god schul ben saued. And be cause
 þat þei gon so ny oure feyth þei ben lyghtly conuerted to
 cristene lawe whan men preche hem And schewen hem dis-
 4 tynctly the lawe of Ihesu crist t whan [men]⁽¹⁾ tellen hem
 of the prophecyes. And also þei seyn þat þei knowen wel
 be the prophecyes þat the lawe of Machomete schaff fayte
 as ¹the lawe of the Iewes dide And þat the lawe of cristene
 8 peple schaff laste to the day of doom. And ȝif ony man
 aske hem what is here beleene, þei answeren þus t in
 this forme: Wee beleuen god formyour of heuene t of
 erthe t of all opere thinges þat he made t withouten him
 12 is no thing made. And we beleuen of thay of doom t þat
 euery man schaff haue his meryte after he hath disserued
 And we beleue it for sothi all þat god hath seyde be the
 mouthes of his prophetes. Also Machomet commanded in
 16 his ALKARON þat euery man scholde haue .ij. wyfes or
 .iiij. or .iiij. but now þei taken vnto .ix. t of lemmannes als
 manye as he may susteyne. And ȝif ony of here wifes mys
 beren hem aȝenst hire husbonde he may caste hire out
 20 of his hous t departe fro him t take anoþer, But he schaff
 departe with hire of his godes. Also whan men speken
 to hem of the fader t of the sone t of the holy gost þei
 seyn þat þei ben .iiij. persones, but not o god, For here
 24 Alkaron speketh not of the trynute. But þei seyn wel
 þat god hath speche t eH were he downb t god
 hath also a spirit þei knowen wel for eH þei seyn he were
 not on lyue. And whan men speken to hem of the
 28 Incarnacioun how þat be the word of the Angel god sente
 his wysdom in to erthe t enymbred him in the virgyne
 Marie t be the woord of god schaff þe dede ben reysed
 at the day of doom, þei seyn þat it is sotli t þat the woord
 32 of god hath gret strengthe, And þei seyn þat whoso knew
 not þe woord of god he scholde not knowe god. And þei
 seyn also þat Ihesu crist is the woord of god t so seythi hire
 ALKARON, where it seythi þat the Angel spak to Marie

When well
taught, they
are easily
converted,

[fol. 57 b]

They believe
in God, in
Doomsday
and in the
prophets.

Polygamy.

Divorce.

The Sara
cens allow
the three
persons of
the Trnity,
but deny
that they
are one God.

The Word.

The Spirit.

⁽¹⁾ Missing, C.

l. 12, thay = the day, phonetic or scribal

[¹ fol. 58 a]

Christ is
better than
Abraham,
Moses and
Mahomet.

They inter-
pret Holy
Writ liter-
ally, not
spiritually,
like the wise.

Christians
blamed for
disobeying
their own
religion.

Churchmen
give bad
example.

Therefore
the com-
mon^s spend
their holi-
days in
gluttony.

[² fol. 58 b]

and seyde: Marie, god schaff preche þe the ¹gospell be
the woord of his mowth & his name schaff be clept Ihesu
crist. And þei seyn also þat Abraham was frend to god
And þat Moyses was familier spekere with god & Ihesu 4
crist was the woord & the spirit of god & þat Machomete
was right messenger of god. And þei seyn þat of theise .iiij.
Ihesu was the most worthi & the most excellent & the
most gret so þat þei han many gode articles of oure feyth, 8
aH be it þat þei haue no parfite lawe & feyth as cristene
men han. & þefore ben þei lightly conuerted & namely
þo þat vnderstonden the scriptures & the prophecies, For
þei han the gospels & the prophecies & the byble writen 12
in here langage. Wherefore þei conen meche of holy
wrytt, but þei vnderstonde it not but after the *lettre* & so
don the Iewes. For þei vnderstonde not the *lettre* gostly
but bodyly & þefore ben þei reprened of þe wise þat gostly 16
vnderstonden it. And þefore seyth Seynt Poul: LITERA
OCCIDIT, SPIRITUS AUTEM VIVIFICAT. Also the sarazines
seyn þat the Iewes ben cursed for þei han defouled the
lawe þat god sente hem be Moyses, And the cristene ben 20
cursed also, as þei seyn, for þei kepen not the commande-
mentes & the preceptes of the gospel þat Ihesu crist
taughte hem. And þefore I schaff tell þou what the
Soudan tolde me vpon a day in his chambre. He leet 24
voyden out of his chambre aH maner of men, lordes &
opere, for he wolde speke with me in conseil. And þere
he asked me how the cristene men gōuerued hem in oure
contree, and I seyde him right wel, thonked be god. & he 28
seyde me treulych may, for 3ee cristene men ne recche
right noght how vntrewly to serue god; 3ee scholde 3euen
ensample to the lewed peple for to do wel & 3ee 3euen
hem ensample to don euyH. for the comownes vpon 32
festyfuH dayes whan þei scholden gon to chirche ²to serue
god, þan gon þei to tauernes & ben þere in glotony aH þe day
& aH nyght & eten & drynken as bestes þat hane no resoun
& wite not whan þei haue ynow. And also the cristene 36
men enforcen hem in aH maneres þat þei mowen for to

- fighten t for to desceyuen þat on þat other, And þere-
 withaH þei ben so proude þat þei knowen not how to ben
 clothed, now long, now schort, now streyt, now large,
 4 now swerled, now daggered t in aH manere gyses. þei
 scholden ben symple meke t trewe t fuH of almesdede as
 Ihesu was in whom þei trowe, but þei ben aH the con-
 trarie t euere enelyned to the enyH t to don enyH. And
 8 þei ben so coneytous þat for a lytyH syluer þei sellen
 here doughitres, here sustres t here owne wyfes to putten
 hem to lecherie, And on withdraweth the wif of another
 t non of hem holdeth feyth to another, but þei defoulen
 12 here lawe þat Ihesu crist betook hem to kepe for here
 saluacioun. And þus for here synnes han þei lost aH
 this lond þat wee holden. For for hire synnes here god
 hath taken hem in to oure hondes, noght only be strengthe
 16 of oureself, but for here synnes. For wee knowen wel in
 verry soth þat whan 3ee seruen god god wil helpe 3ou,
 And whan he is with 3ou noman may ben a3enst 3ou.
 And þat knowe we wel be oure prophceyes, þat cristene
 20 men schuH wynnem a3en this lond out of oure hondes
 whan þei seruen god more deuoutly. But als longe as þei
 ben of foul t of vnelene lyvyng as þei ben now wee haue
 no drede of hem in no kynde, for here god wil not helpen
 24 hem in no wise. And þan I asked him how he knew the
 state of aH cristene men t he answerde me þat he knew
 aH the state of aH contres of cristene kynges t princes
 t the state of the comounes also be his messangeres, þat
 28 he sente to aH londes in manere as þei weren marchauntes
 of preeyous stones, of clothes of gold t of othere¹ thinges
 for to knowen the manere of enery contree amonges
 cristenemen. And þan he leet clepe in aH the lordes þat
 32 he made voyden first out of his chambre t þere he schewed
 me .iiij. þat weren grete lordes in the contree þat tolden
 me of my contree t of manye oþer cristene contrees als wel
 as þei had ben of the same contree t þei spak frensch
 36 right wel t the sowdan also, whereof I had gret meruaylle.
 Allas, þat it is gret schauudre to oure feith t to oure lawe,

The pride of
fashions in
dress.

Immorality.

The Holy
Land was
lost through
sin,

and shall be
regained
through
righteous-
ness.

Saracen
informers
report to
the Sowdan
on the state
of Christian
countries.

[fol. 59 a]

The Sowdan
and his lords
speak
French.

What a
shame for us
to be re-
proved by
unbelievers!

The Sara-
cens are
loyal to their
religion.

Mahomet
first was a
camel-
driver.

His first
miracle.

[1 fol. 59 b]

The Koreish.

Khadidjah.

Fits of the
falling
sickness.

whan folk þat ben withouten lawe schuH repreuen vs t
vndernemen vs of oure synnes, And þei þat scholden ben
conuerted to crist t to the lawe of Ihesu be oure gode
ensamples t be oure acceptable lif to god, t so conuerted 4
to the lawe of Ihesu crist, ben þorgh oure wykkedness t
euyH lyuynge fer fro vs t straungeres fro the holy t verry
beleewe schuH þus appelen vs t holden vs for wykkede
lyneres t cursede. And treuly þei sey soth, For the 8
sarazines ben gode t feythfuH, For þei kepen entierly the
commandement of the holy book ALKARON þat god sente
hem be his messenger Machomet, to the whiche, as þei seyn,
Seynt GabrieH the aungel often tyme tolde the wille of 12
god. And 3ee schuH vnderstonde þat Machamote was
born in Arabye, þat was first a pore knaue þat kepte
Cameles þat wenten with Marchantes for marchandise; t
so befeH þat he wente with the marchandes in to Egipt 16
t þei weren þanne cristene in þo partyes. And at the
desertes of Arabye he wente in to a chapeH where a
Eremyte duelte, And whan he entred in to the chapeH
þat was but a lytiH t a low thing t had but a lityl dore 20
t a low, þan the entree began to wexe so gret t so large
t so high as þough it had ben of a gret mynstre or, the
gate ¹ of a paleys. And this was the firste myracle the
sarazins seyn þat Machomete dide in his 3outhie. After 24
began he for to wexe wyse and riche t he was a gret
Astronomer t after he was gouernour t prince of the
lond of Corrodane t he geuerned it fuH wisely in such
manere þat whan the prince was ded he toke the lady to 28
wyfe, þat highte Gadrige. And Machomete feH often in
the grete sikeness þat men callen the fallynge euyH,
Wherfore the lady was fuH sory þat euere sche toke him
to husbonde. But Machomete made hire to beleewe þat 32
aH tymes whan he feH so Gabriel the angel cam for to
speke with him t for the gret light t brightness of the
augeH he myghte not susteyne him fro fallynge; And
þerfore the sarazines seyn þat Gabriel cam often to speke 36
with him. This Machomete regned in Arabye the 3eer

of oure lord Ihesu crist .vj. C. t .x. and was of the
 generacioun of ysmael þat was Abrahames sone þat he
 gat vpon Agar his chamberere. And þefore þer ben
 4 sarazines þat ben clept Ismaelytenes, t summe Agaryenes
 of Agar t the opere properly ben clept Sarrazines of Sarra:
 t summe ben clept Moabytes t summe Amonytes for the
 .ij. sones of lothi, Moab t Amon þat he begatt on his
 8 doughtres, þat weren aftirward grete erthely princees.
 And also Machomete louned wel a gode heremyte þat
 duelled in the desertes a myle fro þat Mount Synay in
 the weye þat men gon fro Arabye toward Caldee t toward
 12 ynde, o day iourney fro the see, where the marchauntes
 of Venyse comen often for marchandise. And so often
 wente Machomete to this heremyte þat aH his men weren
 wrothe for he wolde gladly here this heremyte preche t
 16 make his men wake aH nyght, t þefore his men
 þoughten to putte the heremyte to deth. t so befel
 vpon a nyght þat Machomete was dronken of gode wyn ¹ t
 he fel on slepe t his men toke Machometes swerd out of
 20 his schethe whils he slepte t þere with þei slowgh this
 heremyte t putten his swerd al blody in his schethe
 agen. And at morwe whan he fond the heremyte ded
 he was fuH sory t wroth t wolde haue don his men
 24 to deth, but þei aH with on accord [said] ⁽¹⁾ þat he himself
 had slayn him whan he was dronken t schewed him his
 swerd aH blody t he trowed þat þei hadden seyð soth.
 And þan he cursed the wyn t aH þo þat drynken it,
 28 And þefore sarazines þat ben denout drynken neuere
 no wyn; but summe drynken it preuily, For 3if þei
 dronken it openly þei scholde ben repreued. But þei
 drynken gode benegerage t swete t norysshynge þat is
 32 made of GalameH t þat is þat men maken sugre of,
 þat is of right gode sauour t it is gode for the breest.
 Also it befalleth sumtyme þat cristene men becomen
 sarazines ouper for pouertee or for sympleness or elles
 36 for here owne wykkedness; And þefore the Archillamyn

The
prophet's
descent.

Names of
the Arabs.

The
Nestorian
Sergius,

[fol. 60 a]

murdered by
servants
during
Mahomet's
drunken-
ness.
The
Prophet
sorry.

He curses
wine.

The Sara-
cens drink
"Galamel"
instead.

The
renegade
Christians;

(1) Missing, C.

how ad-
mitted by
Saracen
divines.

or the Flamyn, [as]⁽¹⁾ oure E[r]chebisshopp⁽²⁾ or Bisshopp,
Whan he resceyueth hem seyth þus: LA ELLEC OLLA
SYLA MACHOMET RORES ALLA, þat is to seye: þere is no
god but on t Machomete his messenger. Now I haue 4
told 3ou a party of here lawe t of here customes I schal
seye 3ou of here lettres þat þei haue with here names t
the manere of hire figures, What þei ben.

[Another alphabet.]

[f. fol. 60v]

The English
alphabet has
two extra
letters.

And .iiij. lettres þei haue more þan oþere for dyuersitee 8
of hire langage ¹ t speche, for als moche as þei speken in
here throtes. And wee in Englonð haue in oure langage
t speche .ii. lettres mo þan þei haue in hire .A.B.C. t þat
is: þ t 3, the whiche ben clept þorn t 3ogh. 12

(¹) os, C.

(²) Echebisshopp, C.

[PART SECOND:
THE COUNTRIES BEYOND THE
HOLY LAND.]

OF THE LONDES OF ALBANYE AND OF
LIBYE; OF THE WISSHINGES FOR WACCH-
INGE OF THE SPERHAUK, t OF NOES
SCHIPPE.

Ch. XVII.

NOW sith I haue told you befor of the holy lond t
of þat contree abouten t of many weyes for to
go to þat lond t to þe mount Synay t of Babyloyne
4 the more t the less t to oper places þat I haue spoken
befor, now is tyme 3if it lyke you for to teH you of the
marches t Iles t dyuerse bestes t of dyuerse folk bezond
these marches. For in po contrees bezonden ben many
8 dyuerse contrees t many grete kyngdomes þat ben departed
be the .iiij. flodes þat comen from paradys terrestre. For
Mesopotayme t the kyngdom of Caldee t Arabye ben
betwene the .ij. ryueres of Tygre t of Eufrates, And the
12 kyngdom of Mede t of Persye ben betwene the ryueres
of Nile t of Tygres. And the kyngdom of Syrie where
of I haue spoken befor t Palestyne t Phenicye ben
betwene Eufrates t the se Medytterrane. The whiche see
16 dureth in lengthe fro Mayrok vpon the see of Spayne
vnto the grete see, so þat it lasteth bezonde Costanty-
nople .¹ .¹ .¹ .MMM. t .xl. myles of lombardye. And toward
the see Occyan t Inde is the kyngdom of Shithie
20 þat is aH closed with hilles And after vnder Schithie t
fro the see of Caspie vnto the flom of Thamys is
AMAZOYNE þat is the lond of FEMYNYE, where þat noman
is bu[t] only aH women. And after is Albanye a fuH
24 gret reme, And it is clept Albanye be cause þat the folk
ben whitere þere þan in oper marches þere abouten; And
in þat contree ben so gret houndes t so stronge þat þei
assaylen lyouns t slen hem. And þanne after ¹is Hircanye
28 Bactrie Hiberie t many oper kyngdomes. And betwene
the rede see t the see occyan toward the south is the
kyngdom of Ethiope t of libye the hyere, The whiche lond
of Lybye þat is to seyne libye the lowe þat begynneth at

The
countries
beyond the
Holy Land.

The four
rivers of
Paradise.

The Medi-
terranean.

Seythia.

Feminye.

Albania.

Hircania,
Bactria,
Hiberia.

[¹ fol. 61a]

Lybia.

The sea
higher than
the land.

In Lybia
men's
shadows
fall on the
right if they
face east.

The water of
the sea boils
so that no
fish can live.

From Genoa
or Venice to
Trebizond.

There St.
Athanasius
lies buried.

The Pope
first
arrested,
then
released
him.

[fol. 61 b]

the see of Spayne fro þens where the pyleres of hercules
ben And dureth vnto aneyntes Egipt t toward Ethiope.
In þat contre of libye is the see more high þan the lond
t it semeth þat it wolde couere the ⁽¹⁾ erthe t natheles 4
zit it passeth not his markes. And men seen in þat
contre a mountayne to the whiche noman come. In this
lond of libye whoso turneth toward the Est the schadewe
of himself is on the right syde And here in oure contree 8
the schadwe is on the left syde. In þat see of libye is
no fissch, for þei mowe not lyve ne dure ⁽²⁾ for the
gret hete of the sonne, because þat the water is euermore
boyllunge for the gret hete. And many opere ⁽³⁾ londes þer 12
ben, þat it were to long to telle or to nombren, But of
sum parties I schal speke more pleyuly here after.
Whoso wil þanne gon toward Tartarie, toward Persie,
toward Caldee t toward ynde, he most entre the see at 16
Gene or at Venyse or at sum oþer hauene þat I haue
told þou before ; And þan passe men the see t arryuen at
Trapazond þat is a gode cytee t it was wont to ben the
hauene of POUNTZ. þere is the hauene of Persanes t of 20
Medaynes t of the marches þere bezonde. In þat cytee
lyth seynt Athanasie þat was Bisshopp of Alisandre
þat made þe psalm : QUICUNQUE VLT. This ATHANASIUS
was a gret doctour of dyuynytee t because þat he preched 24
t spak so depely of dyuynytee t of the godhede he was
accused to the Pope of Rome þat he was an heretyk,
Wherfore the Pope sente after hym t putte him in
presoun. And whils he was in presoun he made þat 28
psalm t sente it to the Pope t seyde þat 3if he were an
heretyk þan was þat heresie, for þat he seyde was his
beleue. And whau the Pope saugh it t had examyned
it, þat it was perfite t gode t verryly oure feyth t oure 32
beleue, he made him to ben delyuered out of presoun t
commanded þat psalm to ben seyde euery day at pryme t
so he held Athanasie a gode man. But he wolde neuere

(1) lond, cancelled, C.

(2) for, repeated, C.

(3) operes, C.

- go to his bisshopriche azen because *pat* *pei* accused him of
heresy. Trapezond was wont to *ben* holden of the
Emperour of Costantynople, But a gret man *pat* he sente
4 for to kepe the contree azenst the Turkes vsurped the lond
& helde it to him self & cleped him Emperour of Trapezond.
And from *pens* men gon thorgh litil Ermonyne, Armenia.
And in *pat* contree is an old casteH *pat* stont vpon a roche
8 the whiche is cleped the casteH of the SPARRENHAWK, *pat*
is bezonde the cytee of LAYAYS beside the town of
Pharsipee *pat* belongeth to the lordschipe of CRUK *pat*
is a riche lord & a gode cristene man; Where men fynden
12 a Sparehawk vpon a perche right fair & right wel made &
a faire lady of fayrre *pat* kepeth it. And who *pat* wil
wake *pat* Sparhawk .vij. dayes & .vij. nyghtes & as summe
men seyn .iij. dayes & .iij. nyglites withouten companye
16 & withouten sleep, *pat* faire lady schal zeuen him whan he
hath don the first wysseH *pat* he wil wyssehe of erthely
thinges; & *pat* hath ben proued often tymes. And o
tyme befeH *pat* a kyng of Ermonyne *pat* was a worthi
20 knyght & a doughty man & a noble prince woke *pat* hawk
sum tyme & at the ende of .vij. dayes & .vij. nyghtes the
lady cam to him & bad him wissehen: for he had wel
disserued it. And he answerde *pat* he was gret lord ynow
24 & wel in pees ¹ & hadde ynowgh of worldly richess & *perfore*
he wolde wisshen non *oper* thing but the body of *pat*
faire lady to haue it at his wille. And sche answerde him
pat he knew not what he asked & seyde *pat* he was a fool
28 to desire *pat* he myghte not haue for sche seyde *pat* he
scholde not aske but erthely thing, for sche was non
erthely thing, but a gostly thing. And the kyng seyde
pat he ne wolde asken non *oper* thing. And the lady
32 answerde: sythe *pat* I may not withdrawe you fro youre
lewed courage I schal zeue you withouten wysschinge & to
aH hem *pat* schuH com of you. Sire kyng see schuH haue
werre withouten pees & aH weys to the .ix. degree see
36 schuH ben in subieccioun of youre enemyes & see schuH
ben nedy of aH godes. And neuere sithen nouthen the

The Empire
of Trebi-
zond.

Armenia.

The castle
of the
Sparrow-
hawk.

Whoever
watches the
hawk shall
have his
first wish.

A king of
Armenia
wished for
the lady of
fairy's love.

[¹ fol. 62a]

She gives
him and his
descendants
eternal war.

A poor man's son wished for wealth, and obtained it.

A Templar obtained a purse always full of gold.

[fol. 62 b]

Erzeruun.

Subterranean streams from Euphrates.

Ararat.

Some claim to have touched Noah's Ark.

kyng of Ermonyne ne the contree weren neuer in pees ne
 þei hadden neuer sithen plentee of godes t þei han ben
 sithen aHweyes vnder tribute of the sarrazines. Also the
 sone of a pore man woke þat hauke t wissched þat he myghite 4
 cheue wel t to ben happy to marchandise t the lady graunted
 him And he becam the most riche t the most famouse
 marchant þat myghite ben on see or on erthe. And he
 becam so riche þat he knew not the .M. part of þat he 8
 hadde t he was wysere in wisschinge þan was þe kyng.
 Also a knyght of the temple wooke þere t wyssched a
 purs eueremore full of gold t the lady graunted him. But
 sche seyde him þat he had asked the destruccioun of here 12
 ordre for the trust t the affiance of þat purs t for the grete
 pryde þat þei scholde hauen t so it was. And þerfore
 loke he kepe him wel þat schaf wake, For ȝif he slepe he
 is lost þat neuere man schaf seen him more. This is not 16
 the right weye for to go to the parties þat I haue nempned
 before, but for to see the merueyle þat I haue spoken of,
 And þerfore whoso wil go right weye, men gon from
 TRAPAZOND toward Ermonyne the grete vnto a cytee þat is 20
 clept ARTYROUN : þat was wont to ben a gode cytee t a
 plentifulous, but the Turkes han gretly wasted it. þere
 aboute groweth no wyn ne frut but lityH or eH non. In
 this lond is the erthe more high þan in ony oþer t þat 24
 maketh gret cold And þere ben many gode watres t
 gode welles þat comen vnder erthe fro the flom of Paradys
 þat is clept EUFRATES, þat is a iomeye besyde þat cytee.
 And þat ryuere cometh towardes ynde vnder erthe t 28
 resorteth into the lond of Altazar And so passe men be
 this Ermonyne t entren the see of Persie. Fra þat cytee
 of Artyroun go men to an hiH þat is clept SABISSOCOLLE ;
 And þere besyde is anoþer hiH þat men clepen Ararath, 32
 but þe Iewes clepen it TANEEZ, where Noes schipp rested
 t ȝit is vpon þat montayne, And men may seen it a ferr
 in cleer weder. And þat montayne is wel a .vij. myle
 high And summen seyn þat þei han seen t touched the 36
 schipp t put here fyngres in the parties where the feend

- went out, Whan þat Noe seyde : BENEDICITE, But þei þat
 seyn suche woordes seyn here wille. For a man may
 not gon vp the montayne for gret plentee of snow þat is
 4 allweys on þat montayne nouþer somer ne wynter, so þat
 noman may gon vp þere ne neuere man dide sithe the tyme
 of Noe saf a monk þat he the grace of god broughte on
 of the plankes down, þat zit is in the mynstre at the foot
 8 of the montayne. And besyde is the cytee of DAYNE þat
 Noe founded, And faste by is the cytee of Any in the
 whiche were wont to ben a .M. chirches. But vpon þat
 montayne to gon vp this monk had gret desir And so vpon
 12 a day he ¹wente vp And whan he was vpward the .iiij.
 part of the montayne he was so wery, þat he myghte no
 ferthiere and so he rested him & feH oslepe. And whan
 he awook he fonde him self liggyng at the foot of the
 16 montayne And þan he preyede deuoutly to god þat he
 wolde vouchesaf to suffre him gon vp. And an angeH
 cam to him & seyde þat he scholde gon vp And so he
 dide, And sith þat tyme neuer non ; wherfore men
 20 scholde not beleewe suche woordes. Fro þat montayne go
 men to the cytee of THAURISO þat was wont to ben
 clept FAXIS þat is a fuH fair cytee & a gret & on of the
 beste þat is in the world for marchandise. þider comen
 24 all marchauntes for to hyen auoir de poys and it is
 in the lond of the Emperour of Persie And men seyn þat
 the Emperour taketh more gode in þat cytee for custom of
 marchandise þan doth the ricchest cristene kyng of all his
 28 reme þat lyueth ; For the toH & the custom of his marchantes
 is withouten estymacyoun to ben nombred. Beside þat
 cytee is an hiH of salt And of þat salt euery man taketh
 what he wil for to salte with to his nede. þere duellen
 32 many cristene men vndir tribute of Sarrazines. And fro
 þat cytee men passen be many townes & casteH in goyng
 toward ynde vnto þe cytee of Sadonye þat is a .x. iourneyes
 fro Thauriso & it is a fuH noble cytee & a gret. And þere
 36 duelleth the Emperour of Persie in somer for the contree
 is cold ynow & þere ben gode ryueres berynge schippes.

Only a monk
has been up.

Ayne, Ani.

[¹ fol. 63 a]

Having
fallen asleep
on the
slope, the
monk awoke
at the bot-
tom of the
mountain.

An angel
helped him
up.

Tauris.

Soldania.

After go men the weye toward ynde be many iorneyes t
 Cassan. be many contreyes vnto the cytee þat is clept CASSAK þat
 is a full noble cytee t a plentyfous of cornes t wyne
 [1 fol. 63 b] t of all oþer godes. This ¹is the cytee where the .iiij. 4
 kynges metten togedre whan þei wenten to sechen oure
 lord in Bethlem to worschipe him t to presente him with
 gold, ensence t myrr. And it is from þat cytee to
 Bethleem .liij. iorneyes. Fro þat cytee men gon to 8
 Geth. aneþer cytee þat is clept Geth þat is a iorneye fro the see
 þat men clepen the gravely see. þat is the beste cytee
 þat the Emperour of Persie hath in all his lond And þei
 clepen flessch þere DABAGO t the wyn VAPA. And the 12
 Christians soon die there. paynemes seyn þat no cristene man may not longe duelle
 ne enduren with the lif in þat cytee, but dyen within
 schort tyme t noman knoweth not the cause. After gon
 men be many cytees t townes t grete contrees þat it were 16
 to longe to tell vnto the cytee of Cornaa þat was wont to
 be so gret þat the walles abouten helden .xxv. myle
 aboute. the walles schewen 3it, but it is not all inhabited.
 Fro CORNAA go men be many londes t many cytees t 20
 townes vnto the lond of IOB, And þere endeth the lond
 of the Emperour of PERSIE. And 3if 3ee wole knowe
 the lettres of Persaynes t what names þei han, þei ben
 suche as I last deuysed 3ou, but not in sownynge of here 24
 woordes.

Ch. XVIII. OF THE LOND OF IOB t OF HIS AGE;
 OF THE ARAY OF MEN OF CALDEE; OF
 THE LOND WHERE WOMMEN DUELLE
 WITHOUTEN COMPANYE OF MEN; OF THE
 KNOULECHE t VERTUES OF THE VERRAY
 DYAMAUNT.

THE land of Job.
 Bozrah in Teman.

AFTER the departyng fro CORMAA men entren into
 þe lond of Iob þat is a full fair contree t a
 plentyfous of all godes, And men clepen þat lond the 28
 lond of Sweze. In þat lond is the cytee of THEMAN.

- Iob was a payneem & he was ARE of Gosra is sone & held þat lond as prynee of that contree & he was so riche þat he knew not the hundred ¹part of his godes. [1 fol. 64 a]
- 4 And aH þough he were a payneem natheles he *serued* wel god after his lawe And oure lord toke his seruice to his plesance. And whan he feH in pouerte he was .lxxviiij. 3eer of age. And after whan god had preued his
- 8 pacyence & it was so gret, he broughte him agen to richness & to heere estate þan he was before. And after þat he was kyng of YDUMYE after kyng Esau. And whan he was kyng he was clept IOBAB And in þat kyngdom
- 12 he lyuede after .clxx. 3er And so he was of age whan he dyed .ccxlviiij. 3eer. In þat lond of Iob þere nys no defeaute of no þing þat is nedefuH to mannes body. þere ben hilles where men geten gret plente of Manna,
- 16 in gretter habundance þan in any other contree. This MANNA is clept bred of aungeles & it is a white þing þat is fuH swete & right delicyous & more swete þan hony or sugre and it cometh of the dew of heuene þat falletH
- 20 vpon the herbes in þat contree And it congeleth & becometh aH white & swete. And men putten it in medicynes for ryche men to make the Wombe lax & to purge euyl blode, for it clenseth the blood & putteth
- 24 out malencolye. This lond of IOB marcheth to the kyngdom of Caldee; This lond of CALDEE is fuH gret & the langage of þat contree is more gret in sownynge þan it is in oþer parties bezonde þe see. Men passen
- 28 to go bezonde be the tour of Babiloyne the grete of the whiche I haue told 3ou before, where þat aH the langages weren first chaunged; And þat is a .iiij. iorneyes fro Caldee.
- In þat reme ben faire men & þei gon fuH nobely arrayed
- 32 in clothes of gold orfrayed ²& apparayled with grete perles & precyous stones fuH nobely, & the women ben right foule & euyl arrayed & þei gon aH bare fote & clothed in euyl garnementes large wyde but þei ben
- 36 schorte to the knees & longe sleeves down to the feet lych a Monkes frokke & here sleeves ben hongyng down to the

Job identi-
fied with
Jobab.

Manna.

Chaldaea.

Men are
fair and
wear fine
garments.
Women are
foul and
poorly
dressed.

[2 fol. 64 b]

feet; And þei han gret heer t long hanginge aboute here schuldres. And þei ben blake wommen, foule t hidouse; And treuly as foule as þei ben als euele þei ben. In þat kyngdom of Caldee in a cytee þat is clept Hur 4 duelea Thare Abrahames fader t þere was Abraham born. And þat was in þat tyme þat Nunus was kyng of Babiloyne of Arabye t of Egypt. This Nunus made the cytee of Nynyuee the whiche þat Noe had begonne 8 before t he cause þat Nunus performed it he cleped it Nynyuee after his owne name. þere lyth Thobye the prophete of whom holy writt speketh offe. And fro þat cytee of Hur Abraham departed be the commande- 12 ment of god fro þens after the deth of his fader t ladde with him Sarra his wif t Loth his brotheres sone because þat he hadde no child, And þei wenten to duelle in the lond of CHANAAN in a place þat is clept SYCHEM. And 16 þis loth was he þat was saued whan Sodom t Gomorre t the opere cytees (¹) weren brent t sonken down to helle where þat the dede see is now, as I haue told 30u before. In þat lond of Caldee þei han here propre 20 langages t here propre lettres, suche as 3ee may see here after. Besyde the lond of Caldee is the lond of AMAZOYNE þat is the lond of FEMYNNE t in þat reme 24 is aH wommen t noman, Noght as summe ¹men seyn þat men mowe not lyue þere, but for because þat the wommen wil not suffre no men amanges hem to ben here souereynes. For sum tyme þer was a kyng in þat contrey t men maryed as in oper contreyes t so befeH 28 þat the kyng had werre with hem of SICHIE, the whiche kyng highite COLEPEUS, þat was slayn in bataylle t aH the gode blood of his reme. And whan the queen t aH the othere noble ladyes sawen þat þei weren aH wydewes t þat 32 aH the riaH blood was lost þei armed hem t as creatures out of wytt þei slowen aH the men of the contrey þat weren laft for þei wolden þat aH the wommen weren wydewes as the queen t þei weren. And fro þat tyme hiderwardes 36

Hur.

Ninus
founded
Nineveh.Tobijah
buried
there.Abraham,
Sarah and
Lot went
from Hur
to Sicheu.Amazonie
or Feminie.
[¹ fol. 65 a]Colopens
killed in
Seythia.All the men
killed by
women.

pei neuere wolden suffren man to dwel amonges hem
 lenger þan .vij. dayes & .vij. nyghtes, Ne þat no child þat
 were male scholde dwell amonges hem lenger þan he were
 4 noryschit & þanne sente to his fader. And whan þei wil
 haue ony companye of man þan þei drawen hem towardes
 the londes marcheinge next to hem. And þan þei [haue] ⁽¹⁾
 here loues þat vsen hem & þei duellen with hem an .viij.
 8 dayes or .x. & þanne gon hom agen. And ȝif þei haue
 ony knaue child þei kepen it a eerteyn tyme & þan senden
 it to the fadir whan he can gon allone & eten be him self
 or eH þei sleen it; And ȝif it be a femele þei don away
 12 þat on pappe with an hote hiren. And ȝif it be a
 womman of gret lynage þei don away the left pappe þat
 þei may the better beren a scheeld, And ȝif it be a
 womman on fote þei don away the [right] ⁽²⁾ pappe for to
 16 scheten with bowe turkeys, For they schote wel with
 bowes. In þat lond þei haue a queen þat gouerneth aH
 þat lond & aH þei ben obeyssant to hire And ȝalweys þei
 maken here queen by electioun þat is most worthy in
 20 armes. For þei ben right gode werryoures & orped &
 wyse, noble & worþthi. And þei gon often tyme in sowd
 to help of oþer kynges in here werres for gold & syluer
 as othere sowdyoures don. And þei meyntenen herself
 24 right vygouresly. This lond of Amazoyne is an Ile aH
 enviourmed with the see saf in .ij. places where ben .ij.
 entrees, And bezonde þat water duellen the men þat ben
 here paramoures & hire loues, where þei gon to solacen
 28 hem whan þei wole. Besyde amazoyne is the lond of
 TARMEGYTE þat is a gret contree & a full delectable And
 for the godness of the contree kyng Alisandre leet first
 make þere the cytee of Alisandre; And ȝit he made .xij.
 32 eytees of the same name; But þat cytee is now elept
 Celsite. And fro þat oþer cost of Caldee toward the
 south is Ethiope a gret contree þat streecheth to the ende
 of Egypt; Ethiope is departed in .ij. parties princypaH.
 36 And þat is in the est partie & in the meridiaH partie,

No boys
allowed.

Girls'
breasts
burnt away,
to make
them better
fighters.

[1 fol. 65 b]

The queen
is elected.
The
Amazons
are great
warriors.

Tarmegite.

Selencia.

(1) Missing, C.

(2) left, MS.

Mauritania. The whiche partie meridionaH is clept MORETANE. And the folk of þat contree ben blake ynow t more blake þan in the toper partie t þei ben clept mowres. In þat partie is a weH þat in the day it is so cold þat noman may drynke þere offe And in the nyght it is so hoot þat noman may suffre hys hond þere in. And bezonde þat partie toward the south to passe by the see Occean is a gret lond t a gret contrey, but men may not dueH þere for the feruent brennynge of the sonne, so is it passynge hoot in þat contrey. In Ethiope aH the Ryneres t aH the watres ben trouble t þei ben somdeH salte for the gret hete þat is þere. And the folk of þat contree ben ¹lyghtly dronken t han but litiH appetyt to mete And þei han comounly the flux of the wombe t þei lyuen not longe. In Ethiope ben many dyuerse folk And Ethiope is clept CUSIS. In þat contree ben folk þat han but o foot t þei gon so blyue þat it is meruaylle And the foot is so large þat it schadeweth aH the body azen the sonne Whanne þei wole lye t reste hem. In Ethiope whan the children ben zonge t lytiH þei ben aH zalowe And whan þat þei wexen of age þat zalowness turneth to ben aH blak. In Ethiope is the cytee of Saba t the lond of the whiche on of the .iiij. kynges þat presented onre lord in Bethleem was kyng offe. Fro Ethiope men gon into ynde be manye dyuerse contreyes And men clepen the high ynde EMLAK. And ynde is devyded in .iiij. princypaH parties þat is [ynde] ⁽¹⁾ the more þat is a fuH hoot contree t ynde the less þat is a fuH atempree contrey þat strecceth to the loude of Mede. And the .iiij. part toward the Septentrion is fuH cold so þat for pure cold t contynueH frost the water becometh CristaH. And vpon tho roches of cristaH growen the gode dyamandes þat ben of trouble colour; 3alow CristaH draweth colour lyke oylle And þei ben so harde þat noman may pollysch hem t men clepen hem dyamandes in þat contree t NAMESE in anoþer contree. Othere dyamandes men

The hot
and cold
fountain.

Turbid and
salt water.

[1 fol. 66 a]

Weaknesses
of Ethio-
pians.

One-footed
men.

India major.

India minor.

Northern
India.
Crystal
from ice,
and
diamonds
from
crystal.

(¹) Missing, C.

fynden in Arabye þat ben not so gode t þei ben more
 broun t more tendre. And oper dyamandes also men
 fynden in the Ile of Cipre þat ben zit more tendre t hem
 4 men may wel pollischen; And in the lond of Macedoyne
 men fynden dyamaundes also, But the beste t the moste
 precyonse ben in ynde. ¹ And men fynden many tyme [fol. 66 b]
 harde dyamaundes in a masse þat cometh out of gold whan
 8 men puren it t fynen it out of the myne whan men
 breken þat mass in smale peces. And sum tyme it
 happeneth þat men fynden summe as grete as a pese t
 summe lasse t þei ben als harde as þo of ynde. And aH
 12 be it þat men fynden gode dyamandes in ynde, zit
 natheles men fynden hem more comounly vpon the roches
 in the see t vpon hilles where the myne of gold is; And
 þei growen many to gedre on lytiH another gret And per
 16 ben summe of the gretness of a bene t summe als grete
 as an haseH note t þei ben square t poynted of here owne
 kynde hope abouen t benethen withouten worchinge of
 mannes hond t þei growen togedre male t femele And
 20 þei ben norysschit with the dew of heuene And þei engen-
 dren comounly t bryngen forth smale children þat multi-
 plyen t growen aH the zeer. I haue often tymes assayed
 þat zif a man kepe hem with a lityH of the roche, t
 24 wete hem with may dew ofte sithes þei schuH growe
 eneryche zeer, t the smale wole wexen grete. For right
 as the fyn perl congeleth and wexeth gret of the dew
 of heuene right so doth the verray dyamand, And right
 28 as the perl of his owne kynde taketh roundness right so
 the dyamand be vertu of god taketh squareness. And
 men schaff bere the dyamaund on his left syde for it is
 of grettere vertue þanne þan on the right syde; For the
 32 strengthe of here growynge is toward the north þat is
 the left syde of the world, t the left partie of man is
 whan he turneth his face toward the est. And zif 3on lyke
 to knowe the vertues of þe dyamand ²as men may fynden [fol. 67 a]
 36 in the lapidarye þat many men knowen noglit, I schaff
 telle 3on as þei bezonde the see seyn t affermen, of whom

Diamonds
 from gold
 ore.

They grow
 and multi-
 ply like
 animals.

If watered
 enough,
 they will
 grow.

Pearls and
 diamonds
 grow from
 dew.

Diamonds
 should be
 worn on the
 left.

aH science t aH philosophie cometh from. He *pat* bereth
 the dyamand vpon him, it *zeueth him hardyness t man-*
 hode t it kepeth the lemes of his body hole, It *zeueth*
 him victorie of his enemyes in plee t in werre *3if* 4
 his cause be rightfuH, t it kepeth him *pat* bereth it in
 gode wytt. And it kepeth him fro strif t ryot, fro
 euyH sweuenes, from sorwes t from enchauntementes t
 from fantasies t illusiouns of wykked spirites. And *3if* 8
 ony cursed wycche or enchauntour wolde bewyechen him
pat bereth the dyamand, aH *pat* sorwe t mischance schaff
 turne to himself porgh vertue of *pat* ston And also no
 wyld best dar assaylle the man *pat* bereth it on him. 12
 Also the dyamand scholde ben *3ouen* frely withouten
 coueytynge t withouten byggyng t *pan* it is of grettere
 vertue. And it maketh a man more strong t more sad
 azenst his enemyes And it heleth him *pat* is lunatyk t 16
 hem *pat* the fend pursueth or trauayleth. And *3if*
 venym or poyson be brought in presence of the dyamand
 anon it begynneth to wexe moyst t for to swete. *pere* ben
 also dyamandes in ynde *pat* ben clept VIOLASTRES for here 20
 colour is liche vyolet or more browne *pan* the violettes,
pat ben fuH harde t fuH *precyous*, But *3it* sum men
 loue not hem so wel as the opere But in soth to me I
 wolde louen hem als moche as *pe* opere, For I haue seen 24
 hem assayed. Also *pere* is a *noper* maner of dyamandes
pat ben als white as cristaH but *pei* ben a lityH more
 trouble t *pei* ben gode t of gret vertue t aH *pei* ben
 square t poynted of here owne kynde, And summe 28
 ben .vj. squared ¹summe .iiij. squared t summe .iiij.
 as nature schapeth hem t *perfore* whan grete lordes t
 knyghtes gon to sechen worschipe in armes *pei* beren
 gladly the dyamaund vpon hem. I schal speke a 32
 litiH more of the dyamandes aH pough I tarye my
 matere for a tyme, to *pat* ende *pat* *pei* *pat* knowen
 hem not be not disceyued be gabberes *pat* gon be the
 contree *pat* sellen hem. For whoso wil bye the dyamand, 36
 it is nedefuH to him *pat* he knowe hem be cause *pat* men

They give man
courage,
health and
victory,

protect
him from
evil spirits,

and turn
away
witchcraft.

They cure
lunacy and
demoniac
possession.

Blue
diamonds.

White.

[¹ fol. 67 b]

Buyers are
often
deceived.

counterfeten hem often of cristaH þat is 3alow. ⁊ of
 SAPHIRES of cytryne colour þat is 3alow also, ⁊ of the
 Saphire loupe ⁊ of many oper stones; But I tell 3on theise
 4 contrefetes ben not so harde. And also the poyntes wil
 breken lightly ⁊ men may esily pollisschen hem But False stones
are softer.
 summe werkmen for malice wil not pollisschen hem, to
 þat entent to maken men beleue þat þei may not ben
 8 pollisscht. But men may assaye hem in this manere:
 First schere with hem or write with hem in SAPHIRES in
 cristaH or in oper precious stones. After þat men taken
 the ADEMAND þat is the schipmannes ston þat draweth
 12 the nedle to him And men leyn the dyamand vpon the
 Ademand ⁊ leyn the nedle before the ademand And 3if
 the dyamand be gode and vertuons, the ademand draweth
 not the nedle to him whils the dyamand is þere present.
 16 And pis is the preef þat þei bezonde the see maken.
 Natheles it befalleth often tyme þat the gode dyamand
 leseth his vertue be synne ⁊ for Incontynence of him
 þat bereth it And þanne is it nedful to make it to The
diamond
may lose
its virtue
through sin.
 20 recoueren his vertue a3en or eH it is of litiH value.

OF THE CUSTOMS OF YLES ABOUTEN YNDE; Ch. XIX.
 OF THE DIFFERENCE BETWIX YDOLES ⁊
 SIMULACRES; OF .IIJ. MANER GROWYNGES
 OF PEPPER VPON O TREE; OF THE WELLE
 þAT CHAUNGETH HIS ODOUR EUERY HOUR [1 fol. 68 a]
 OF THE DAY, ⁊ þAT IS MEZUAYLLE.

IN YNDE ben fulH manye dyuerse contrees And it is
 cleped YNDE for a flom þat renneth þorghout the
 contree þat is clept ynde. In þat flome men fynden
 24 ELES of .xxx. fote long ⁊ more And the folk þat duellen
 nygh þat water ben of cuyH colour, grene ⁊ 3alow. In
 YNDE ⁊ abouten ynde ben mo þan .v. M. Hles gode ⁊ grete
 þat men duellen in, withouten þo þat ben inhabitable ⁊ Indus and
its giant
eels.

Numberless
population
of India.

They stay
at home,
being under
slow
Saturn.

We travel
about, living
under the
quick-
moving
moon.

Hormuz.

[1 fol. 68 b]

The great
heat.

The people
lie in the
rivers to be
cooler.

withouten opere smale Iles. In euery Ile is gret plentee
of cytees & of townes & of folk with outen nombre, For
men of ynde han this condicioun of kynde, þat þei neuere
gon out of here owne contree & þerfore is þer gret multi- 4
tude of peple, but þei ben not sterynge ne mevable be
cause þat þei ben in the firste elymat, þat is of SATURNE
& SATURNE is slough & litiH mevyng^{ti}e. For he taryeth
to make his turn be the .xij. signes .xxx. 3eer. And the 8
mone passeth þorgh the .xij. signes in o moneth. And
for because þat Saturne is of so late sterynge þerfore the
folk of þat contree þat ben vnder his elymat han of
kynde no wiH for to meve ne stere to seche strange 12
places. And in oure contrey is aH the contrarie. For
wee ben in the seuenthe elymat þat is of the mone. And
the mone is of lyghtly mevyng^{ti}e & the mone is planete
of weye. And for þat skyH it zeneth vs wiH of kynde 16
for to meve lyghtly & for to go dyuerse weyes & to sechen
strange thinges & oper dyuersitees of the world, For the
mone envyrrouneth the erthe more hastyly þan any oper
planete. Also men gon þorgh ynde be many dyuerse 20
contrees to the gret see OCEAN And after men fynden
þere an Ile þat is clept CRUES & þider comen marchantes
of Venyse & Gene¹ and of oper marches for to hyen
marchandyses. But þere is so grete hete in þo marches 24
& namely in þat Ile, þat for the grete distress of the hete
mennes ballokkes hangen down to here knees for the gret
dissolucioun of the body. And men of þat contree þat
knowen the manere lat bynde hem vp or eH myghte þei 28
not lyue & anoynt hem with oynementes made þerfore to
holde hem vp. In þat contree & in Ethiope & in many
oper contrees the folk lyggen aH naked in ryueres &
watres, men and wommen to gedre, fro vndurne of the 32
day tiH it be passed the noon. And þei lyen aH in the
water saf the visage for the gret hete þat þere is. And
the wommen hanen no schame of the men, but lyen aH
togidre, syde to syde, tiH the hete be past. þere may 36
men see many foule figure assembled & namely nygh the

gode townes. In þat Ile ben schippes withouten nayles of Iren or bondes for the roches of the Ademandes, for þei ben all full þere aboute in þat see þat it is merueyle to 4 speken of. And ȝif a schipp passed be þo marches þat hadde ouþer Iren bondes or Iren nayles, anon he scholde ben perisschit, For the Ademand of his kynde draweth the Iren to him And so wolde it drawe to him the schipp, 8 be cause of the Iren, þat he scholde neuer departen fro it ne neuer go þens. Fro þat Ile men gon be see to a noþer Ile þat is clept CHANA, where is gret plentee of corn t wyne. And it was wont to ben a gret Ile t a gret 12 hauene t a good but the see hath gretly wasted it t ouercomen it. The kyng of þat contree was wont to ben so strong t so myghty þat he heeld werre ¹ aȝenst kyng Alisandre. (The folk of þat contree han a dyuers 16 lawe, for summe of hem worschipe the sonne, summe the mone, summe the fuyr, summe trees, summe serpentis or the firste þing þat þei meeten at morwen, And summe worschipe symulacres t summe ydoles.) But betwene 20 symulacres t ydoles is a gret difference, For symulacres ben ymages made after lykness of men or of women or of the sonne or of the mone or of any best or of any kyndely thing, t ydoles is an ymage made of lewed wiþ 24 of man þat man may not fynden among kyndely thinges As an ymage þat hath .iiij. hedes, on of man, anoper of an hors or of an ox or of sum oper best þat nowan hath seyn after kyndely disposicioun. And þei þat worschipe 28 symulacres þei worschipe hem for sum worthi man þat was sumtyme, as hercules t many oþere þat diden many meruayles in here tyme, For þei seyn wel þat þei be not goddes for þei knowen wel þat þere is a god of kynde 32 þat made all thinges, the whiche is in heuene. But þei knowen wel þat this may not do the meruayles þat he made but ȝif it had ben be the specyall ȝifte of god t þerfore þei seyn þat he was wel with god, And for because 36 þat he was so wel with god þerfore þei worschipe him. And so seyn þei of the sonne be cause þat he chaungeth

Near the rocks of magnet, ships can have no iron in them.

The island of Chana.

[1 fol. 69 a]

Religions of the natives.

✱

Pictures of natural things opposed to monstrosities.

Hero-worship.

Great deeds are evidence of God's favour.

Sun-worshippers justified.

[¹ fol. 69 b]Apology
for fire-
worshippers
and idola-
ters.Things that
bring luck
when met
in the
morning.Similar
supersti-
tions among
Christians.Men-at-arms
foretell the
future from
the flight of
birds.[² fol. 70 a]

the tyme & ȝeneth hete & norisscheth aH thinges vpon erthe
and for it is of so gret profite þei knowe wel þat þat
myghte not be, but þat god loueth it more þan any oþer
thing And for þat skyH god hath ȝouen it more gret vertue 4
in the world; þerfore it is gode resoun as þei seyn, to
don it worschipe and reuerence. And so seyn þei &
maken here resounes of ¹ oþere planetes & of the fuyr
also, be cause it is so profitable. // And of ydoles þei seyn 8
also þat the ox is þe moste holy best þat is in erthe & most
pacyent and most profitable þan any other, For he doth
good ynow & he doth non enyH & þei knowen wel þat it
may not be withouten speeyaH grace of god. And þerfore 12
maken þei here god of an ox the on part & the oþer
halfondett of a man be cause þat man is the most noble
creature in erthe & also for he hath lordschipe abouen aH
bestes; þerfore make þei the halfondel of ydole of a 16
man vpwardes & the toper half of an ox downwardes.
And of serpentis & of oþer bestes & dyuerse þinges þat
þei worschipen þat þei meten first at morwe. And þei
worschipen also speecyally aH þo þat þei han gode 20
meetynge of, And whan þei speden wel in here iorneye
after here meetynge, & namely suche as þei han preued
& assayed be experience of longe tyme. For þei seyn
þat þilke gode meetynge ne may not come but of the 24
grace of god And þerfore þei maken ymages lyeli to þo
thinges þat þei han beleue ȝune for to beholden hem
& worschipen hem first at morwe, or þei meeten ony
contrarious thinges. And pere ben also sum cristene 28
men þat seyn þat summe bestes han gode meetynge, þat
is to seye for to meete with hem first at morwe & summe
bestes wykked meetynge & þat þei han preued ofte tyme
þat the hare hath fuH enyH meetynge & swyn & many 32
oþere bestes. And the Sparhawk or oþer foules of raveyne
whan þei fleen after here praye & take it before men of
armes, it is a gode signe, And ȝif he fayle of takynge his
praye it is an enyH signe. And ² also to suche folk it is 36
an enyH meetynge of Rauenes. In þeise thinges & in such

- oþere þer ben many folk þat beleeven because it happeneth
 so oftentyme to fallen after here fantasies ; And also þere
 ben men ynowe þat han no beleve in hem. And sith
 4 þat cristene men han such beleewe, þat ben enformed t
 taught aH day be holy doctryne whereynne þei scholde
 beleewe, it is no meruaylle þanne þat the paynemes þat
 8 more largely for here symple. And treuly I haue
 seen of paynemes t sarazines þat men clepen AUGURYNES
 þat whan wee ryden in armes in dyuerse contrees vpon
 oure enemyes, be the flyenge of foules þei wolde teH vs
 12 the pronosticaciouns of thinges þat feH after And so þei
 diden fuH oftentymes t profreden here hedes to wedde,
 but ȝit it wold fallen as þei seyden. But natheles þefore
 scholde noght a man putten his beleewe in suche thinges,
 16 but always han fuH trust t beleewe in god oure souereyn
 lord. This Ile of CHANA the sarazines han wonnen t
 holden, In þat Ile ben many lyouns t many oþer wylde
 bestes And þere ben rattes in þat jle als grete as houndes
 20 here And men taken hem with grete mastyses, for cattes
 may not take hem. In this jle t manye othere men berye
 not no dede men, for the hete is þere so gret þat in a
 lityH tyme the flesch wil consume fro the bones. Fro
 24 þens men gon be see toward ynde þe more to a cytee þat
 men clepen SARCHEE, þat is a fair cytee t a gode t þere
 duellen many cristene men of gode feyth. And þere ben
 manye religious men t namely of mendynantes. After
 28 gon men be see to the lond of lomb, In þat lond ¹ groweth
 the peper in a Forest þat men clepen COMBAR t it
 groweth nowhere eH in aH the world but in þat Forest
 t þat dureth wel an .xviij. iourneyes in lengthe. In þat
 32 forest ben .ij. gode cytees, þat on lighte FLADRINE t
 þat other ZINGLANTZ And in euery of hem duellen cristene
 men t Iewes gret plentee, For it is a gode contree t a
 plentefous, but þere is ouer meche passynge hete. And
 36 ȝee schuH vnderstonde þat the peper groweth in maner as
 doth a wylde vyne þat is planted faste by the trees of þat

Such beliefs
are pardon-
able among
the simple
heathen.

I have heard
augurs
announce
future
events.

Giant rats.

The heat
consumes
dead men's
flesh.

A Christian
city.

[1 fol. 70 b]

The pepper
forest.

Pepper-
plants
grow like
vines.

When ripe,
the berries
are green,
like ivy
berries, until
put on an
oven.
Long, black,
and white
pepper.

Long pepper
is like the
catkins of
the hazel.

Black is
like grapes.

The white
is less
plentiful.

[1 fol. 71 a]

Snakes
abound
in that
country.

I do not
believe that
fires are
lighted in
the pepper
forest to
drive the
serpents
away.

The natives
anoint
themselves
with smell-
ing sap to
gather
pepper in
safety.

wode for to susteynen it by as doth the vyne, And the
fruyt perof hangeth in manere as reysynges And the tree
is so thikke charged þat it semeth þat it wolde breke ⁊
whan it is ripe it is aH grene as it were JUY beryes ⁊ þan men 4
kytten hem as men don the vynes ⁊ þan þei putten it
vpon an owven ⁊ þere it waxeth blak ⁊ crisp. And þere
is .iiij. maner of peper aH vpon o tree : Long peper, blak
peper ⁊ white peper. The long peper men clepen Sor- 8
BOTYN ⁊ the blak peper is clept FULFUL. And the
white peper is clept BANO. The long peper cometh first
whan the lef begynneth to come ⁊ it is lyche the chattes
of haseH þat cometh before the lef ⁊ it hangeth lowe ; 12
And after cometh the blake with the lef in manere of
clustres of reys[i]nges aH grene ; And whan men han
gadred it þan cometh the white þat is somdeH lasse þan
the blake And of þat men bryngen but litiH in to þis 16
1 contrees for þei bezonden withholden it for himself
because it is better and more attempree in kynde þan
the blake, ⁊ þefore is þe not so gret plentee as of the
blake. In þat contree ben manye manere of serpent 20
⁊ of oþer vermyn for the gret hete of þe contree
and of the peper. And summe men seyn þat whan þei
wil gadre the peper þei maken fuyr ⁊ brennen aboute to
make the serpent and the cokedrilles to flee, But saue 24
here grace of aH þat seyn so, For 3if þei brenten abouten,
the trees þat beren the peper scholden ben brent ⁊ it wolde
dryen vp aH þe vertue, as of ony oþer þing And þan þei
diden himself moche harm ; And þei scholde neuere 28
quenchen the fuyr. But þus þei don : þei enoynten here
hondes ⁊ here feet [with an oynement] (1) mad of snayles
⁊ of oþer thinges made þefore, of the whiche the serpent
⁊ the venymous bestes haten ⁊ dreden the sauour, ⁊ þat 32
maketh hem flee before hem be cause of the smeH ⁊ þan
þei gadren it seurlly ynow ⁊ wyndwe[n] 2 for þan is no drede
of no vermyn to come nere hem. Also toward the heed
of þat forest is the cytee of POLOMBE, And aboute the 36

(1) Missing in C.

2 wyndwed, C.

cytee is a grete mountayne þat also is clept POLOMBE And
 of þat mount the cytee hathi his name, And at the foot
 of that mount is a fair welle & a gret þat hathi odour &
 4 sauour of alle spices, And at euery hour of the day he
 chaungeth his odour & his sauour dyuersely And whoso
 drynketh .iiij. tymes fasting of þat water of þat welle he
 is hool of aH maner sykeness þat he hathi And þei þat
 8 duellen þere & drynken often of þat weH þei neuere han
 sekeness & þei semen aH weys 3onge. I haue dronken
 þere of .iiij. or .iiij. sithes & 3it me thinketh I fare the
 better. Sum men clepen it the weH of 3outhie for þei
 12 þat often drynken þere of semen aHweys 3ongly & lyuen
 with¹outen sykeness, And men seyn þat that welle cometh
out of paradys & þefore it is so vertuous. Be aH þat
 contree groweth gode gyngeuere And þefore thider gon the
 16 marchantes for spicerye. In þat lond men worschipe
 the Ox for his sympleness & for his mekeness & for the
 profite þat cometh of him And þei seyn þat he is the
 holiest best in erthe, For hem semeth þat whosoeuere
 20 be meke & pacyent he is holy & profitable, for þanne þei
 seyn he hathi aH vertues in him. þei maken the ox to
 laboure .vj. 3eer or .vij. & þan þei ete him. And the
 kyng of þat contree hathi aHwey an ox with him And
 24 he þat kepeth him hathi euery day grete fees & kepeth
 euery day his dong & his vryne in .ij. vessell of gold &
 bryngen it before here prelate þat þei clepen ARCHIPROTHE-
 PAPATON. And he bereth it before the kyng & maketh þere
 28 ouer a gret blessing & þan the kyng weteth his hondes
 þere in þat þei clepen Gaul & amoynteth his front & his
 brest and after he froteth him with the dong and with
 the vryne with gret reuerence for to ben fulfilt of vertues
 32 of the ox & made holy be the vertue of þat holy þing þat
 nought is worthi. And whan the kyng hathi don þanne
 don the lordes And after hem here mynystres & oþer men,
 36 3if þei may hane ony remenant. In þat contree þei maken
 ydoles half man half ox And in þo ydoles eueryH spiritus
 spoken & 3euen answere to men of what is asked hem.

The
Fountain
of Youth.

I tried it
three or
four times.

[1 fol. 71 b]

The worship
of oxen.

The pre-
late's duties.

Idolatrours
sacrifice.

The burning
of dead
bodies.

Suttee.

[1 fol. 72 a]

A widower
may marry
again.

Before þeise ydoles men sleen here children many tymes
 ⁊ spryngen the blood vpon the ydoles ⁊ so þei maken here
 sacrifice. And whan ony man dyeth in the contree þei
 brennen his body in name of penance to þat entent þat he
 suffre no payne in erthe to ben eten of wormes. And 3if
 1 his wif haue no child þei brenne hire with him ⁊ seyn þat
 it is reson þat sche make him companye in þat oper
 world as sche did in this. But ⁊ sche haue children with
 him þei leten hire lyue with hem to brynge hem vp 3if
 sche wole. And 3if þat sche loue more to lyue with here
 children þan for to dye with hire husbonde, men holden
 hire for fals ⁊ cursed ne schee schaff neuer ben loued ne
 trusted of the peple. And 3if the womman dye before
 the husbonde men brennen him with hire 3if þat he
 wole And 3if he wil not, noman constreyneth him þere
 to, but he may wedde anoper tyme withouten blame or
 reproof. In þat contree growen many stronge vynes ⁊ the
 wommen drynken wyn ⁊ men not And the wommen
 schauen hire berdes ⁊ men not.

Ch. XX. OF THE DOMES MADE BE SEYNT THOMAS
 HOND; OF DEUOCIΟΥ ⁊ SACRIFICE MADE TO
 YDOLES þERE, IN THE CYTEE OF CALAMYE;
 AND OF THE PROCESSION IN GOYNGE
 ABOUTE THE CYTEE.

FROM þat contree men passen be many marches
 toward a contree a .x. journeyes pens þat is
 clept MABARON ⁊ it is a gret kyngdom ⁊ it hath many
 faire cytees ⁊ townes. In þat kyngdom lith the body of
 seynt Thomas the Apostle in flesh ⁊ bon in a faire tombe
 in the cytee of CALAMYE, for þere he was martyred ⁊
 buried. But men of Assirie beeren his body in to MESO-
 PATAYME in to the cytee of EDISSE And after he was
 brought pider agen, And the arm ⁊ the hond þat he putte
 in oure lordes syde whan he appered to him after his

The tomb
of St.
Thomas
in Calamia.

His body
was some
time in
Edessa.

resurrexioun and seyde to him: *NOLI ESSE INCREDELUS*
SED FIDELIS, is ȝit lyggyng in a vesseH *withouten* the
 tombe. And be þat hond þei maken aH here Iuggementes
 4 in the contree, whoso hath right or wrong, For whan þer
 is ony dissencioun betwene *ij. parties* t euery of hem
 meynteneth his cause t seyth þat his cause is rightfuH
 And þat ofer seyth the contrarye, þanne bothe parties
 8 writen here causes in *ij. billes* And putten hem in the
 hond of seynt Thomas And anon he casteth a wey the
 bille of the wrong cause t holdeth stille the bille with
 the right cause. And þefore men comen fro fer contrees
 12 to haue iuggement of doutable causes, And ofer iugge-
 ment vse þei non þere. Also the chirche where seynt
 Thomas lyth is bothe gret t fair t aH fuH of grete
 SUMULACRÉS t þo ben grete ymages þat þei clepen here
 16 goddes, of the whiche the leste is als gret as *ij. men*.
 And amonges þeise opere þere is a gret ymage more þan
 ony of the opere þat is aH couered with fyn gold t
 precious stones t riche perles And þat ydole is the god
 20 of false cristene þat han reneyed hire feyth And it sytteth
 in a chayere of gold fuH nobely arrayed t he hath aboute
 his neeke large gyrdles wrought of gold t precious stones
 t perles; t this chirche is fuH richely wrought t aH ouer
 24 gylt withjune. And to þat ydole gon men on pilgrimage
 als comounly t with als gret deuocioun as cristene men
 gon to seynt Iames or ofer holy pilgrimages. And many
 folk þat comen fro fer londes to seeke þat ydole, for the
 28 gret deuocoun þat þei han, þei loken neuere vpward
 but euermore down to the ertlie, for drede to see ony thing
 aboute hem þat scholde lette hem of here deuocioun. And
 summe þer ben þat gon on pilgrimage to this ydole þat
 32 beren knyfes in hire hondes þat ben made fuH kene t
 sharpe t aH weyes as þei gon þei smyten hem self in
 here arnes t in here legges t in here thyes with many
 hidouse woundes t so þei scheden here blood for loue
 36 of þat ydole And þei seyn þat he is blessed t holy
 þat dyeth so for loue of his god. And opere þere ben

How his
hand gives
judgment.

[1 fol. 72 b]

Large idols
in his
church.

The god of
renegade
Christians.

Pilgrims
looking
always
towards the
earth.

Pilgrims
that wound
themselves
with knives.

[2 fol. 73 a]

Children
sacrificed.

Kneeling
at every
third step.

The pond
containing
valuables
for keeping
the minster
in repair.

The Juggernaut
car.

[fol. 73 b]

pat leden hire children for to sle to make sacrifice to pat
ydole t after þei han slayn hem þei spryngen the blood
vpon the ydole. And summe þer ben þat comen fro ferr
t in goynge toward this ydole at euery thrylde pas þat 4
þei gon fro here hows, þei knelen t so contynuen tiH
þei come thider. And whan þei comen þere þei taken
ensence t oper aromatyk thinges of noble smeH and
sensen the ydole as we wolde don here goddes precieuse 8
body. And so comen folk to worschipe this ydole sum
from an hundred myle t summe fro many mo. And
before the mynstre of this ydole is a vYUERE in maner
of a gret lake fuH of water And þere in pilgrymes casten 12
gold t syluer, perles t precious stones withouten nombre
in stede of offrynges And whan the mynystres of þat
chirche neden to maken any reparacioun of the chirche
or of any of the ydoles, þei taken gold t siluer, perles 16
or precious stones out of the vyuere, to quytten the
costages of such þing as þei maken or reparen; so þat
no thing is fawty, but anon it schaf ben amended. And
þee schuf vnderstonde þat whan [ben] (1) grete festes t 20
solempnytees of þat ydole, as the dedicacioun of the
chirche t the thronynge of the ydole aH the contree
aboute meten þere to gidere. And þei setten this ydole
vpon a chare with gret reuerence, wel arrayed with 24
clothes of gold, of riche clothes of TARTARYE, of CAMACAA
t oper precyous cloties, t þei leden him aboute the cytee
with gret solemp^hnytee. And before the chare gon first
in processiou aH the maydenes of the contree .ij. t .ij. 28
togydere fuH ordynatly, And after the maydenes gon
the pilgrymes And summe of hem fallen down vnder
the wheles of the chare t lat the chare gon ouer hem,
so þat þei ben dede anon. And summe han here armes 32
or here lymes aH tobroken t somme the sydes, t aH
this don þei for loue of hire god in gret devocioun.
And hem thinketh þat the more peyne t the more
tribulacioun þat þei suffren for loue of here god, the 36

(1) Missing, C.

- more ioye *pei schuſt* hane in another world And schortly
 to seye *3ou*, *pei suffren* so grete peynes & so harde
 martyrdomes for loue of here ydole *pat* a cristene man
 4 I trowe durst not taken vpon *him* the tenthe part the
 peyne for loue of oure lord Ihesu crist. And after I seye
 3ou before the chare gon aſt the mynstrelles of the contrey
 withouten nombre *with* dyuerse instrumentes & *pei* maken
 8 aſt the melodye *pat* *pei* cone. And whan *pei* han gon
 aſt aboute the cytee *panne* *pei* retournen agen to the
 mynstre & putten the ydole agen into his place And
panne for the loue & in worschipe of *pat* ydole and for
 12 the reuerence of the feste *pei* slen hem self a .cc. or
 .ccc. persones *with* sharpe knyfes, of the whiche *pei*
bryngen the bodyes before the ydole & *pan* *pei* seyn *pat*
po ben seyntes because *pat* *pei* slown hem self of here
 16 owne gode wille for loue of here ydole. And as men
 here *pat* hadde an holy seynt of his kyn wolde thinke
pat it were to hem an high worschipe, right so hem
 thinketh *pere*, And as men here deuoutly wolde writen
 20 holy seyntes lyfes & here myracles & sewen for here
 canonyzaciouns, right so don *pei* *pere* for hem *pat* slen
 hemself wilfully for loue of here ydole & seyn *pat* *pei*
 ben ¹glorouse martyres & seyntes & putten hem in here
 24 wrytynges & in here letanyes & avaunten hem gretly on
 to a nothier of here holy kynnesmen *pat* so becomen
 seyntes & seyn: I hane mo holy seyntes in my kynrede
pan *pon* in *pin*. And the custome also *pere* is this, *pat*
 28 whan *pei* *pat* han such deuocioun & entent for to sle
 himself for loue of his god, *pei* senden for aſt here
 frendes & han gret plentee of mynstreſt & *pei* gon before
 the ydole ledyng *him* *pat* wil sle himself for such
 32 deuocioun betwene hem *with* gret reuerence. And he
 aſt naked hath a ful sharp knyf in his hond & he
 cutteth a gret pece of his flesh & casteth it in the face
 of his ydole seyenge his orysones, recommendyng *him*
 36 to his god. And *pan* he smyteth himself & maketh grete
 woundes & depe here & *pere* tiſt he falle down ded. And

They suffer
 more for
 their idol
 than Chris-
 tians would
 for Jesus.

Procession
 with music.

Many
 suicides
 in the
 minster.

Their
 families
 are proud
 of them.

Their hves
 are written
 and their
 praises
 sung, like
 those of our
 saints.

[1 fol. 74 a]

The ritual
 for killing
 one's self
 before the
 idol.

The dead
body pre-
sented to
the god.

þan his frendes presenten his body to the ydole t þan þei
seyñ syngynge : holy god behold what thi trewe *seruant*
hath don for þe, he hath forsaken his wif t his children
t his ricchess t aH the godes of the world t his owne lyf 4
for the loue of þe t to make þe sacrificise of his flesch t of
his blode, wherfore holy god putte him among thi beste
belouede seyntes in thi blisse of *paradys*, for he hath
wel disserued it. And þan þei maken a gret fuyre t 8
brennen the body t þanne enerych of his frendes taken
a quantyte of the asches t kepen hem in stede of
relykes t seyñ þat it is holy thing. And þei haue no
drede of no perile whils þei han þo holy assies vpon 12
hem, And putten his name in here letanyes as a seyñt.

The ashes
from its
pyre kept
as relics.

Ch. XXI. OF THE EUYLL CUSTOMS VSED IN THE YLE
OF LAMARY, t HOW THE ERTHE AND THE
SEE BEN OF ROWND FORME AND SCHAPP,
BE PREF OF THE STERRE THAT IS CLEPT
ANTARTYK, þAT IS FIX IN THE SOUTH.

[fol. 74 b]

FRO þat contree go men be the see OCCEAN t be many
dyuerse yles t be many contrees þat were to longe
for to tell of. And a .liij. iorneyes fro this lond þat I haue 16
spoken of þere is another lond þat is fuH gret þat men
clepen LAMARY. In þat lond is fuH gret hete t the custom
þere is such þat men t women gon aH naked. And þei
seemen whan thei seen ony strange folk goynge clothed 20
And þei seyñ þat god made ADAM t EUE aH naked And
þat noman scholde schame him to schewen him such as
god made him, For no thing is foul þat is of kyndely
nature. And þei seyñ þat þei þat ben clothed ben folk of 24
another world or þei ben folk þat trowen not in god.
And þei seyñ þat þei beleueu in god þat formed the
world t þat made ADAM t EUE t aH oþer pinges. t þei
wedden þere no wyfes, for aH the women þere ben 28
comoun t þei forsake noman And þei seyñ þei synnen zif
þei refusen ony man, And so god commanded to ADAM

The
Adamites
of Lamory.

marked

Community
of wives.

t EUE t to aH þat comen of him, whan he seyde : CRESCITE
 ET MULTIPLICAMINI ET REplete TERRAM. And þerfore
 may noman in þat contree seyn : this is my wyf, ne no
 4 woman may seye : this is myn husbonde. And whan
 þei han children þei may ȝeuen hem to what man þei
 wole þat hath companyed with hem. And also aH the
 lond is comoun, for aH þat a man holdeth o ȝeer another
 8 man hath it anoper ȝeer, And enery man taketh what
 part þat him lyketh. And also aH the godes of the lond
 ben comoun, cornes t aH oper þinges, for noþing þere is
 kept in clos ne noþing þere is vndur lok t enery man þere
 12 taketh what he wole withouten any contradiccioun t als
 riche is o man þere as is another. ^[1 fol. 75 a] But in þat contree
 þere is a cursed custom, for þei eten more gladly mannes
 flesch þan any oper flesch And ȝit is þat contree habundant
 16 of flesch, of fissch, of cornes, of gold t syluer t of aH
 oper godes. Þider gon marchauntes t bryngen with hem
 children to selle to hem of the contree t þei byȝen hem And
 ȝif þei ben fatte þei eten hem anon, And ȝif þei ben lene þei
 20 feden hem tiH þei ben fatte t þanne þei eten hem. And
 þei seyn þat it is the best flesch t the swetest of aH the
 world. In þat lond ne in many othere bezonde þat noman
 may see the sterre TRANSMONTANE þat is clept the sterre of
 24 the see, þat is vnmeevabyl t þat is toward the north, þat
 wee clepen the lodesterre. But men seen anoper sterre
 the contrarie to him, þat is toward the south, þat is clept
 ANTARTYK. And right as the schipmen taken here avys
 28 here t gouerne hem be the lodesterre, right so don
 schipmen bezonde þo parties be the sterre of the south,
 the whiche sterre appereth not to vs. And this sterre þat
 is toward the north þat we clepen the lodesterre ne
 32 appereth not to hem. For whiche cause men may wel
 parceyue þat the lond t the see ben of rownde schapp t
 forme, For the partie of the firmament scheweth in o
 contree þat scheweth not in another contree. And men
 36 may wel preuen be experience t sotyle compassement of
 wytt þat ȝif a man fond passages be schippes þat wolde go

The land is
common
property.

[1 fol. 75 a]
Cannibal-
ism.

Little
children
eaten when
fat.

The Polar
star is not
visible
there.

The
Antarctic
star is.

This proves
the earth
to be round.

Circum-
navigation
is possible.

to serchen the world, men myghte go be schippe aH aboute
the world t abouen t benethen, The whiche thing I proue
pus, after þat I haue seyn. For I haue ben toward the
partes of Braban t beholden [in]⁽¹⁾ the ASTROLABRE þat the 4
sterre þat is clept the transmoutayne is .liij. degrees high,
And more forþere in ALMAYNE t BEWME it hath .lviiij.
degrees, And more forth toward the ¹parties SEPTEM-
TRIONELES it is .lxij. degrees of heghite t certeyn mynutes, 8
for I self haue mesured it be the Astrolabre. Now schuH
3e knowe þat a3en þat TRANSMOUTAYNE is the toþer sterre
þat is clept ANTARTYKE as I haue seyð before. And þo
.ij. sterres ne meeven neuere, And be hem turneth aH the 12
firmament right as doth a wheel þat turneth be his axiH
tree, So þat þo sterres beren the firmament in .ij. egaH
parties, so þat it hath als mochel abouen as it hath
benethen. After this I haue gon toward the parties 16
MERIDIONALES, þat is toward the south And I haue founden
þat in lybye men seen first the sterre ANTARTYK. And
so fer I haue gon more forth in þo contrees þat I haue
founde þat sterre more high, so þat toward the high lybye 20
it is .xviiij. degrees of heghite t certeyn mynutes, of the
whiche .lx. mynutes maken a degree. After goynge be
see t be londe toward this contree of þat I haue spoke
t to oþer yles t londes bezonde þat contree I haue founden 24
the sterre ANTARTYK of .xxxiiij. degrees of heghite t mo
mynutes. And 3if I hadde had companye t schippyng
for to go more bezonde I trowe wel in certeyn þat wee
scholde haue com aH the roundness of the firmament aH 28
aboute. For as I haue seyð 3ou befor the half of the
firmament is betwene þo .ij. sterres, The whiche halfondeH
I haue seyn. And of the toþer halfondeH I haue seyn
toward the north vnder the TRANSMOUTANE .lxij. degrees 32
t .x. mynutes, And toward the partie MERIDIONALE I haue
[seyn]⁽²⁾ vnder the antartyk .xxxiiij. degrees t .xvj. mynutes,
And panne the halfondeH of the firmament in aH ne
holdeth not but ^{xx}.ix. degrees. And of þo ^{xx}.ix. I haue seen 36

In Bohemia
and further
to the
North, I
have seen
the Polar
star 62
degrees
high.

[¹ fol. 75 b]

To the
South, I
have seen
the Ant-
arctic star
33 degrees
high.

(¹) Missing, C.

(²) been, C.

.lxij. on þat o part t .xxxiiij. on þat oper part þat ben ^{xx}.iiij. [1 fol. 76 a]
 t .xv. degrees t nygh the halfondeH of a degree. And so
 þere ne fayleth but þat I haue seen aH the firmament saf
 4 ^{xx}.iiij. t .iiij. degrees t þe halfondeH of a degree And þat is
 not the fourthe partie of the firmament, For the .iiij.
 partie of the roundness of the firmament holt ^{xx}.iiij. t .x.
 degrees, So þere fayleth but .v. degrees t an half of the
 8 fourthe partie. And also I haue seen the .iiij. parties
 of aH the roundeness of the firmament t more 3it .v.
 degrees t an half, Be the whiche I seye 3ou certeynly, þat
 men may envirowne aH the erthe of aH þe world as wel
 12 vnder as abouen t turnen a3en to his contre þat hadde
 companye t schippyng t conduyt. And aHweys he
 scholde fynde men londes t yles as wel as in this contree,
 For 3ee wyten weH þat þei þat ben toward the antartyk
 16 þei ben streght feet a3en feet of hem þat dwellen vnder
 the TRANSMONTANE also wel as wee t þei þat dwellyn
 vnder vs ben feet a3enst feet. For aH the parties of
 see t of lond han here appositees habitables or trepass-
 20 ables t [yles]⁽¹⁾ of þis half t beyondhalf. And wyteth
 wel þat after þat þat I may pareeyue t comprehende the
 londes of PRESTRE LOHN Emperour of Ynde ben vnder
 vs. For in goyng from Scotlond or from Englond toward
 24 Ierusalem men gon vpward alweys, For oure lond is in the
 lowe partie of the erthe toward the west And the lond of
 PRESTRE LOHN is the lowe partie of the erthe toward
 the Est and han there the day whan wee haue the nyght;
 28 And also high to the contrarie þei han the nyght whan
 wee han the day. For the erthe t the see ben of round
 forme and schapp as I haue seyd befor And þat þat men
 gon vpward ² to o cost, men gon downward to another
 32 cost. Also 3ee haue herd me seye þat IERUSALEM is in
 the myddes of the world t þat may men preuen t schewen
 þere be a spere þat is right into the erthe vpon the hour of
 mydday whan it is EQUINOXIVM, þat scheweth no schadwe
 36 on no syde. And þat it scholde ben in the myddes of

I have
therefore
seen three-
quarters of
the sky.

Doctrine
of the
Antipodists
def-nded.

Our
Antipodes
are in
Prestre
John's
Empire.

[2 fol. 76 b]

In Jern-
salem, a
spear throws
no shadow
at noon
on the
Equinox.

(1) þei, MS.

The Holy City is as far from the eastern as from the western limit of the earth.

A traveller having searched the world, finally found himself where his own language was spoken.

If he had proceeded further, he would have reached his home, but he went back.

Later on, visiting Norway, he identified the very island.

[¹ fol. 77 a]

The people of our Antipodes need not fall into the sky any more than we do.

the world Dauid wytnesseth it in the psauter where he
seyth: *DEUS OPERATUS EST SALUTEM IN MEDIO TERRE.*
þanne þei þat parten fro þo parties of the west for to
go toward *IERUSALEM*, als many iorneyes as þei gon 4
vpward for to go thider, in als many iorneyes may þei
gon fro *IERUSALEM* vnto oþer confynyes of the super-
ficialtee of the erthe bezonde. And whan men gon
bezonde þo iorneyes toward ynde t to the foreyn yles, 8
aH is envyrnyng the roundnesse of the erthe t of the
see vnder oure contrees on this half. And þerfore hath it
befallen many tymes of o þing þat I haue herl cownted
whan I was 3ong, how a worthi man departed somtyme 12
from oure contrees for to go serche the world, And so
he passed ynde t the yles bezonde ynde where ben mo
þan .v. M. yles. And so longe he wente be see t lond
t so enviound the world be many seisons, þat he fond 16
an yle where he herde speke his owne langage, callynge
on oxen in the plowgh suche wordes as men spoken to
bestes in his owne contree, Where of he hadde gret
meruayle, for he knew not how it myghte be. But I 20
seye þat he had gon so longe be londe t be see, þat he
had envyround aH the erthe, þat he was comen azen
enviournyng þat is to seye goyng aboute vnto his owne
marches. t 3if he wolde haue passed forth, (¹) he had 24
founden his contre ¹ and his owne knowleche. But he
turned azen from þens fro whens he was come fro t so
he loste moche peynefuH labour, as himself seyde a gret
while after þat he was comen hom. For it befel after 28
þat he wente in to Norweye and þere tempest of the see
toke him and he arryued in an yle And whan he was in
þat yle he knew wel þat it was the yle where he had
herl speke his owne langage before, t the callynge of 32
oxen at the plowgh, t þat was possible þinge. But how
it semeth to symple men vulnerd þat men ne mowe not
go vnder the erthe t also þat men scholde falle toward
the henene from vnder. But þat may not be vpon less 36

þan wee mowe falle toward heuene fro the erthie where
 wee ben. For fro what *partie* of the erthie þat man duell
 ouper abouen or benethen it semeth alweys to hem þat
 4 duellen þat þei gon more right þan ony oþer folk And
 right as it semeth to vs þat þei ben vnder vs, right so it
 semeth hem þat wee ben vnder hem. For ȝif a man
 myghte falle fro the erthie vnto the firmament, he grettere
 8 resoun the erthie & the see þat ben so grete & so heny
 scholde fallen to the firmament, but þat may not be And
 þefore seith oure lord god: NON TIMEAS ME QUI SUSPENDI
 TERRAM EX NICHILO. And aH be it þat it be possible
 12 þing þat men may so envyrone aH the world, natheles
 of a .M. persones on ne myghte not happen to returnen
 in to his contree. For, for the gretness of the erthie
 & of the see men may go be a .M. and a .M. other
 16 weyes, þat noman cowde redye him perfetely toward the
 parties þat he cam fro, but ȝif it were be aventure &
 happ or be the grace of god. For the erthie ¹is fuH
 large & fuH gret & holt in roundness & aboute envyroun
 20 be abouen & be benethen .xx. ¹M.CCCC. & .xxv. myles,
 after the opynyoun of olde wise astronomeres. And
 here seyenges I repreue nought, But after my lytyH wytt
 it semeth me, sauynge here reuerence, þat it is more. And
 24 for to haue better vnderstondynge I seye þus: Be per
 ymagyned a figure þat hath a gret compas & aboute the
 poynt of the gret compas þat is clept the centre be made
 another litiH compas. þan after be the gret compas
 28 devised be lynes in manye parties And þat aH the lynes
 meeten at the centre, so þat in as many parties as the
 grete compas schal be departed, in als manye schal he
 departed the litiH þat is aboute the centre, aH be it
 32 þat the spaces ben lesse. Now þanne, be the gret compas
 represented for the firmament And the litiH compas
 represented for the erthie. Now þanne, the firmament is
 deuysed be Astronomeres in .xij. signes and euery signe
 36 is deuysed in .xxx. degrees, þat is .CCC. & .lx. degrees
 þat the firmament hath a bouen. Also be the erthie

Each nation
 imagines
 itself to
 stand
 upright, and
 all others to
 go topsy
 turvy.

The
 difficulty
 in a voyage
 round the
 earth is to
 find one's
 way back.

[fol. 77 b]

The earth's
 circumfer-
 ence is
 20,425 miles.

The celestial
 and terres-
 trial circles
 are divided
 into 360
 degrees.

One terrestrial degree
is 600
furlongs.

The roundness of the
earth is
31,500
miles.

The lands
of the
extreme
West lie
outside the
climates.

[1 fol. 78 a]

deuysed in als many parties as the firmament t lat euery
partye answere to a degree of the firmament. And
wyteth it wel þat after the Auctoures of Astronomye
.DC. furlonges of erthe answeren to a degree of the 4
firmament And þo ben ^{xx}.iij. .vij. Mit. t .iiij. furlonges.
Now be þat here multiplyed be .CCC. sithes t .lx. t þan
þei ben .xxxj. M^t. t .DC. myles, enery of .viij. furlonges,
after myles of oure contree. So moche hath the erthe in 8
roundness t of heghte enviroun after myn opynyoun t
myn vndirstondynge. And 3ee schuH vndirstonde þat after
the opynyoun of olde wise ¹Philosophres t Astronomeres
oure contree ne Ireland ne Wales ne Scotland ne Norweye 12
ne the oþer yles costynge to hem ne ben not in the
superficyalte cownted abonen the erthe, as it schewep
be aH the bokes of Astronomye. For the superficialtee
of the erthe is departed in .vij. parties for the .vij. 16
planetes And þo parties ben clept clymates. And oure
parties be not of the .vij. clymates, for þei ben de-
scendynge toward the west betwene high toward the
roundness of the world, t pere ben the yles of ynde, 20
And þei ben azenst vs þat ben in the lowe contree,
t the .vij. clymates strecchen hem envirounyng the
world.

Ch. XXII. OF THE PALAYS OF THE KYNG OF THE YLE
OF IAU A ; OF THE TREES þAT BEREN MELE,
HONY, WYN t VENYM, t OF OTHERE
MERUAYLLES t CUSTOMS VSED IN THE
YLES MARCHINGE þERE ABOUTEN.

The people
of Cinnabar
are tattooed.

BESYDE þat yle þat I haue spoken of pere is another 24
yle þat is clept SUMOBOR þat is a gret yle t the
kyng þereof is right myghty. The folk of þat yle maken
hem alweys to ben marked in the visage with an hote
yren bothe men and women for gret nobless, for to ben 28

Sumatra

known from *oper* folk, for *pei* holden himself most noble
 & most worthi of aH the world. And *pei han* werre
 aHweys *with* the folk *pat* gon aH naked. And faste besyde
 4 is another yle *pat* is clept *BETEMGA* *pat* is a gode yle & a
 plentyfous. And many *oper* yles *ben* *þere* aboute where
pere *ben* many of dyuerse folk of the whiche it were to
 longe to speke of aH. But fast besyde *pat* yle for to passe
 8 be see is a gret yle & a gret contree *pat* men clepen *IAUA*
 & it is nygh .ij. M. myle in cireuyt. And the kyng of *pat*
 contree is a fuH gret lord & a riche & a myghty And
 hath vnder him .vij. *oper* kynges of .vij. *oper* yles abouten
 12 hym. ¹This yle is fuH wel enhabyted & fuH wel manned,
pere growen aH maner of spicerie more plentyfouslich
 þan in ony *oper* contree, As of gyngeuere, clowegylofres,
 caneH, zedewah, notemuges & maces. And wyteth wel
 16 *pat* the notemuge bereth the maces, For right as the note
 of the haseH hath an husk withouten, *pat* the note is
 closed in til it be ripe & after falleth out, right so it is of
 the notemuge & of the maces. Many *oper* spices & many
 20 *oper* godes growen in *pat* yle, For of aH ping is *pere*
 plentee saf only of wyn. But *pere* is gold & siluer gret
 plentee. And the kyng of *pat* contre hath a paleys fuH
 noble & fuH merueyllous & more riche þan ony in the
 24 world, For aH the degrez to gon vp in to halles & chambres
ben on of gold, an^oper of syluer. And also the paumentes
 of halles & chambres *ben* aH square on of gold & an^oper of
 syluer & alle the walles withinne *ben* couered with gold
 28 & syluer in fyn plates. And in þo plates *ben* stories &
 batayles of knyghtes enleved & the crounes & the cereles
 abouten here hedes *ben* made of precious stones & riche
 perles & grete. And the halles & the chambres of the
 32 palays *ben* aH couered withinne with gold & syluer, so
pat noman wolde trowe the richness of *pat* palays but he
 had seen it. And witeth wel *pat* the kyng of *pat* yle is
 so myghty *pat* he hath many tymes ouercomen the grete
 36 CANE of CATHAY in bataylle, *pat* is the most gret
 Emperour *pat* is vnder the firmament ou^{er} bezonde the

Java is
powerful,

[fol. 78 b]
and rich
in spices.

Mace is the
husk of
nutmeg.

The steps
and floors of
the king's
palace are
gold and
silver.

Figures
embossed
on the walls.

Wars
between the
king of
Java and
the Great
Chan.

see or on this half. For þei han had oftentyne werre
 betwene hem, because þat the grete CANE wolde constrey-
 1¹ nen him to holden his lond of him, but þat oþer at aH
 tymes defendeth him wel azenst him. After þat yle in 4
 goynge be see men fynden another yle gode t gret þat
 men clepen PATHEN, þat is a gret kyngdom fuH of faire
 cytees t fuH of townes. In þat lond grown trees þat
 beren mele wherof men maken gode bred t white t of 8
 gode sauour And it semetli as it were of whete, but it is
 not allynges of such sauour. And þere ben oþer trees
 þat beren hony gode t swete And oþer trees þat beren
 venym azenst the whiche þere is no medicyne but [on] 12
 And þat is to taken here propre leues t stampe hem t
 tempere him with water t þan drynke it And eH he schaff
 dye, for triacle wil not awaylle ne non oþer medicyne.
 Of this venym the Iewes had let sechen of on of here 16
 frendes for to enpoysone aH cristiantee as I haue herd
 hem seye in here confessioun before here dyenge. But
 thanked be aH myghty god þei fayleden of hire purpos
 but aHweys þei maken gret mortalitee of poeple. And 20
 oþer trees þer ben also þat beren wyn of noble sentement.
 And 3if 3ou lyke to here how the mele cometli out of the
 trees I schaff seye 3ou. Men hewen the trees with an
 hachet aH aboute the fote of the tree tiH þat the bark 24
 be perced in many parties t þan cometli out þerof a
 thikke lykour, the whiche þei resceyuen in vesselles t
 dryen it at the hete of the sonne. And þan þei han it to
 a mylle to grynde And it² becometli faire mele t white. 28
 And the hony t the wyn t the venym ben drawn out of
 oþer trees in the same manere t put in vesselles for to
 kepe. In þat yle is a ded see þat is a lake þat hath no
 ground And 3if ony thing falle in to þat lake it schaff 32
 neuere comen vp azen. In þat lake grown reedes þat ben
 cannes þat þei clepen THABY þat ben .xxx. fadme long
 And of peise cannes men maken faire houses. And þer
 ben oþer canes þat ben not so longe þat grown nere the 36
 lond t han so longe rotes þat duren wel a .iiij. quarteres of

[¹ fol. 79 a]

Pathen,
 where flour,
 honey, and
 poison grow
 on trees.

Homeo-
 pathy.

Attempt of
 the Jews to
 poison
 Christ-
 endom.

A gum
 oozes from
 holes in the
 barks, and
 is ground
 into flour.

[² fol. 79 b]

Honey,
 poison and
 wine exude
 in the same
 way.

Long canes.

a furlong ore more. And at the knottes of þo rotes men
 fynden *precious stones* þat han gret vertues And he þat
 berethi any of hem vpon him, yren ne steel ne may not
 4 hurt him ne drawe no blod vpon him And þerfore þei þat
 han þo stones vpon hem fighten fuH hardlyly bothe on see t
 lond For men may not harmen [hem] on no partye. And
 þerfore þei þat knowen the manere t schuH fighte with
 8 hem þei schoten to hem arwes t quarelles withouten yren
 or steel t so þei hurten hem t sleen hem. And also of
 þo cannes þei maken houses and schippes t oper thinges
 as wee han here makynge houses and schippes of oke or of
 12 ony oper trees. And deme noman þat I seye it but for a
 truffuH, for I haue seen of þo cannes with myn owne
 eyzen fuH many tymes lyggynge vpon the Ryuere of þat
 lake, of the whiche .xx. of oure felowes ne myghten not
 16 liften vp ne beren on to the erthe. After this ⁱyle men
 gon be see to anoþer yle þat is clept CALONAK t it is a
 fair lond t a plentifulous of godes. And the kyng of þat
 contrey hath als many wyfes as he wole For he makthi
 20 serche aH the contree to geten him the fairest maydens
 þat may ben founde t makethi hem to ben brought before
 him And he taketh on o nyght t anoþer a noþer nyght t
 so forth contynuelly sewyng, so þat he hathi a .M. wyfes
 24 or mo. And he liggeth neuer but o nyght with on of
 hem t anoþer nyght with a noþer, but zif þat on happene
 to ben more lusty to his plesance þan another. And
 þerfore the kyng geteth fuH many chikdren, sumtyme an
 28 .C. sumtyme an .CC. t sumtyme mo. And he bathi also
 into a .xiiij. Mit Olifauntz or mo, þat he makethi for to
 ben brought vp amonges his vileynes be aH his townes.
 For in cas þat he had ony werre azenst ony oper kyng
 32 aboute him þanne [he] makethi certeyn men of arnes for
 to gon vp in to the castelles of tree made for the werre
 þat craftyly ben sett vpon the Olifantes bakkes, for to
 fyghten azen hire enemyes, t so don oper kynges pere
 36 aboute. For the maner of werre is not pere as it is here

Precious
stones found
on the roots
of canes.

Neither iron
nor steel
can hurt
those that
wear them.

I have seen
giant canes
with my
own eyes.

[1 fol. 80a]

The king of
Calonak has
more than
a thousand
wives.

He has as
many as two
hundred
chikdren,
and 14,000
tame
elephants.

Castles put
on elephants
in war time.

or in *oper* contrees, ne the ordynance of werre nouper.
 And men clepen the Olifantes WARKES. And in þat yle
 þere is a gret meruayle more to speke of þan in ony *oper* 4
partie of the world: For aȝ manere of fissches þat ben
 þere in the see abouten hem comen ones in the ȝeer eche
¹ manere of dyuerse fissches, on maner of kynde after oȝer,
 & þei casten hem self to the see banke of þat yle, so gret
 plentee & multitude þat noman may vnnethe see but fissch 8
 & þere þei abyden .iij. dayes and euery man of the contree
 taketh of hem als many as him lyketh, And after þat
 maner of fissch after the thridde day departeth & goth
 into the see. And after hem comen another multitude of 12
 fysch of anoȝer kynde & don in the same maner as the
 firste diden *oper* .iij. dayes. And after hem anoȝer tiȝt
 aȝ the dyuerse maner of fisshes han ben þere & þat men
 han taken of hem þat hem lyketh. And noman knoweth 16
 the cause wherfore it may ben, But þei of the contree
 seyn þat it is for to do reuerence to here kyng þat is
 the most worthi kyng þat is in the world as þei seyn, be
 cause þat he fulfilleth the commandement þat god bad to 20
 ADAM & EUE whan god seyde: *CRESCE ET MULTIPLI-*
CAMINI ET REPLETE TERRAM. And for because þat he
 multiplieth so the world with children perfore god sendeth
 him so the fissches of dyuerse kyndes of aȝ þat ben in 24
 the see, to taken at his wille for him & aȝ his peple.
 And perfore aȝ þe fissches of the see comen to maken him
 homage as the most noble & excellent kyng of the world
 & þat is best beloued with god als þei seyn. I knowe not 28
 the resoun whi it is but god knoweth. But this me
 semeth ² is the moste merueylle þat euere I saugh, For
 this meruaylle is aȝenst kynde & not with kynde, þat the
 fissches þat han fredom to enviroun aȝ the costes of the 32
 see. at here owne list comen of hire owne wiȝt to profren
 hem to the deȝth withouten constreynge of man. And
 perfore I am syker þat this may not ben withouten a gret
 tokene. þere ben also in þat contree a kynde of SNAYLES 36
 þat ben so grete þat many persones may loggen hem in

Each species
of fish comes
to land
once a year.
[¹ fol. 80 b]

They stay
three days,
till every
man has
plenty.

Each species
of fish does
the same for
three days.

The natives
believe that
the fishes
honour their
king for re-
producing
his kind.

[² fol. 81 a]

This miracle
is against
nature.

- hire schelles, as men wolde don in a lityH hous, And
 oper snayles pere ben þat ben full grete, but not so huge
 as the oper. And of þeise snayles t of gret white
 4 wormes þat han blake hedes þat ben als grete as a mannes
 thigh t somme lesse as grete wormes þat men fynden pere
 in wodes men maken Vyaunde RiaH for the kyng t for
 oper grete lordes. And 3if a man þat is maryed dye in
 8 þat contree, men buryen his wif with him aH quyk, For
 men seyn pere þat it is resoun þat sche make him com-
 panye in þat oper world as sche did in this. From þat
 contree men gon be the see ocecan be an yle þat is clept
 12 CAFFOLOS. Men of þat contree whan here frendes ben
 seke þei hangen hem vpon trees t seyn þat it is better þat
 briddes þat ben Angeles of god eten hem þan the foule
 wormes of the erthe. From þat yle men gon to another
 16 yle where the folk ben of fuH cursed kynde for þei norys-
 schen ¹grete dogges t techen hem to strangle here frendes
 whan þei ben syke, for þei wil nought þat þei dyen of
 kyndely deth, for þei seyn þat þei scholde suffren to
 20 gret peyne 3if þei abyden to dyen be hemself as nature
 wolde. t whan þei ben þus enstrangled þei eten here
 flesh in stede of venysoun. Afterward men gon be
 many yles be see vnto an yle þat men clepen MILKE t
 24 pere is a fuH cursed peple for þei delyten in nothing more
 þan for to fighten and to sle men And þei drynken
 gladlyest mannes blood the whiche þei clepen DIEU, And
 the mo men þat a man may slee, the more worschiþe he
 28 hath amonges hem. And 3if .ij. persones ben at debate
 t perauenture ben accorded be here frendes or be sum of
 here alliance, it behoueth þat euery of hem þat schuH
 ben accorded drynke of operes blood, And eH the accord
 32 ne the alliance is noght worth ne it schalH not be no
 repref to him to breke the alliance t the acord, but
 3if euery of hem drynke of operes blood. t from þat
 yle men gon be see from yle to yle vnto an yle þat is
 36 clept TRACODA, where the folk of þat contree ben as
 bestes t vuresonable t duellen in caves þat þei maken

The shells
of snails are
large enough
to hold
several
people.

Large white
worms
supply meat
for a king.

Widows are
buried alive
with their
dead
husbands.

In Caffo, the
sick are
hanged, as
food for
birds, who
are angels
from
heaven.

Elsewhere,
dogs are
trained to
strangle the
sick, to save
them from
pain.

[¹ fol. 81 b]

In Milke,
human
blood is
drunk.

Treaties are
sanctified
by the
drinking
of blood.

In Tracoda
are cave-
dwellers,
who hiss
like snakes.

in the erthie for þei haue no wytt to maken hem houses.
 And whan þei seen ony men passynge þorgh here contrees
 þei hyden hem in here caves. And þei eten flessch of
 [1 fol. 82 a] serpentes & þei eten but litiH & þei speken noughit ¹ but 4
 þei lissen as serpentes don And þei sette no prys be
 non aveer ne ricchess, but only of a precyous ston þat is
 amonges hem þat is of .lx. coloures; And for the name of
 the yle þei clepen it TRACODOUN. And þei louen more þat 8
 ston þan ony thing eH And ȝit thei knowe not the vertue
 þereof but þei coueyten it & louen it only for the beautee.
 After þat yle men gon be the see ocean be many yles
 vnto an yle þat is clept NACUMERA þat is a gret yle & 12
 good & fayr. And it is in kompas aboute more þan a ¹.M.
 myle & all the men & wommen of þat yle han houndes
 hedes and þei ben clept CANOPHOLOS & þei ben fuH
 resonable & of gode vnderstondynge, saf þat þei wor- 16
 schipen an ox for here god. And also euerych of hem
 bereth an ox of gold or of syluer in his forhed in tokene
 þat þei louen wel here god. And þei gon aH naked
 saf a lityH clout þat þei coueren with here knees & hire 20
 membres. þei ben grete folk & wel fyghtynge & þei han
 a gret targe þat couereth aH the body & a spere in here
 hond to fighte with. And ȝif þei taken ony man in
 bataylle anon þei eten him. The kyng of þat yle is fuH 24
 riche & fuH myghty & right deuout, after his lawe And
 he hathi abouten his nekke .ccc. perles oryent gode &
 grete & knotted as PATER NOSTRES here of Amber. ² And
 in maner as wee seyn oure PATER NOSTRE & oure AVE 28
 MARIA, cowntynge the PATER NOSTRES, right so this kyng
 seythi every day deuoutly .ccc. preyeres to his god or þat
 he ete. And he bereth also aboute his nekke a RUBYE
 oryent noble & fyn þat is a fote of lengthe & fyve fygres 32
 large. And whan þei chesen here kyng þei taken him
 þat rubye to beren in his hond And so þei leden him
 rydynge aH abouten the cytee And fro pens fromward
 þei ben aH obeyssant to him. And þat rubye he schaf 36
 here aHwey aboute his nekke, For ȝif he hadde not þat

The precious
stone Traco-
doun has
40 colours.

In Nacu-
mera live
the Cyno-
cephali.

They
worship
an ox.

Their loin-
cloths
and
weapons.

How their
king tells
his beads.

[2 fol. 82 b]

The royal
ruby a foot
long.

rubye vpon him men wolde not hoken him for kyng.
 The grete CANE of CATHAY hath gretly coueyted þat
 RUBYE but he myglite neuer han it for werre ne for no
 4 maner of godes. This kyng is so rightfuH t of equitytee Robbery
 in his doomes þat men may go sykerlych porghout aH his unknown
 contree t here with him what him list, þat noman schaf there.
 ben hardy to robben him, And 3if he were, the kyng
 8 wolde iustifye[n] anon. Fro this lond men gon to anoþer
 yle þat is clept SILHA t it is weH a .Dece. myles aboute. Silha or
 In þat lond is fuH mocheH wast, for it is fuH of serpentes Ceylon.
 of dragouns t of COKADRILLES þat noman dar duelle
 12 pere. þeise COCODRILLES ben serpentes 3alowe t rayed The
 abouen t han .iiij. feet t schorte thyes t grete nayles as crocodiles.
 clees or talouns. ¹ And pere ben somme þat han .v. fadme [1 fol. 83 a]
 in lengthe t summe of .vj. t of .viiij. t of .x. And
 16 whan þei gon be places þat ben grauelly, it semeth as
 pough men hadde drawn a gret tree porgh the grauelly
 place. And pere ben also many wylde bestes t namelych
 of OLYFAUNTES. In þat yle is a gret mountayne t in
 20 mydd place of the mount is a gret lake in a fuH faire
 pleynd t pere is gret plentee of water. And þei of the
 contree seyn þat ADAM t EVE wepten vpon þat mount The lake
 an .c. 3eer whan þei weren dryuen out of paradys And filled with
 24 þat water þei seyn is of here teres, For so moche water Adam and
 þei wepten þat made the forseyd lake. And in the botme Eve's tears.
 of þat lake men fynden many precious stones t grete
 perles. In þat lake growen many reedes t grete cannes
 28 And pere withjune ben many COCODRILLES t serpentes t
 grete waterleches. And the kyng of þat contree ones
 euery 3eer 3eueth leve to pore men to gon in to the lake
 to gadre hem precyous stones t perles be weye of almess
 32 for the loue of god þat made ADAM. And aH the 3eer
 men fynde ynowe. And for the vermyn þat is withjune
 þei anoynte here armes t here thyes t legges with an
 oynement made of a ping þat is clept LYMONS þat is a
 36 manere of fruyt lych smale pesen, And þanne haue þei

no drede of no Cocodrilles ne of non oper venymous
 [1 fol. 83 b] vermyñ. This water ¹renneth flowynge & ebbynge be a
 syde of the moūntayne & in þat ryuer men fynden
 precious stones & perles gret plentee. And men of þat 4
 yle seyn comounly þat the *serpentes* & the wilde bestes
 of þat contree ne wil not don non harm ne touchen *with*
 enyH no strange man þat entreth in to þat contree, but
 only to men þat ben born of the same contree. In þat 8
 contree & opere þere abouten þere ben wylde gees þat han
 .ij. hedes And þere ben lyouns all white & als grete as
 oxen & many othere dyuerse bestes & foules also þat be
 not seyn amonges vs. And witeth wel þat in þat contree 12
 & in opere yles þere abouten the see is so high þat it
 semeth as pough it henge at the clowdes & þat it wolde
 coneren all the world; And þat is gret meruaylle þat it
 myghte be so, saf only the wiH of god, þat the eyr sus- 16
 teyneth it. And perfore seyth *Dauid* in the psautere:
 MIRABILES ELACIONES MARIS.

Ch. XXIII. HOW MEN KNOWEN BE THE YDOLE, 3IF THE
 SIKE SCHALL DYE OR NON; OF FOLK OF
 DYUERSE SCHAP AND MERUEYLOUSLY DIS-
 FIGURED, AND OF THE MONKES þAT 3EUEH
 HIRE RELEEF TO BABEWYNES, APES & MAR-
 MESETTES & TO OPER BESTES.

FROM þat yle in goynge be see toward the south is
 anoper gret yle þat is clept DONDUN. In þat yle 20
 ben folk of dyuerse kyndes so þat the fader eteth the
 sone, the sone the fader, the husbonde the wif & the wif
 the husbonde. And 3if it so befallē þat the fader or
 moder ²or ony of here frendes ben seke anon the sone 24
 goth to the prest of here lawe & preyeth him to aske the
 ydole 3if his fader or moder or frend schall dye on þat
 enyH or non. And þan the prest & the sone gon togydere

In Dondyn
 one relative
 eats another.

[2 fol. 84 a]

The idols
 are con-
 sulted about
 diseases.

before the ydole t knelen full deuoutly t asken of the
ydole here demande. And 3if the deuyt pat is withinne
answere pat he schalt lyue pei kepen him wel, And 3if
4 he saye pat he schalt dye þan the prest goth with the
sone with the wif of him pat is seek t pei putten here
hondes vpon his mouth t stoppen his breth t so pei sleen
him. And after þat pei choppen all the body in smale
8 peces t preyen all his frendes to comen t eten of him
pat is ded t pei senden for all the mynstrall of the
contree t maken a solempne feste. And whan pei han
eten the flesch pei taken the bones t buryen hem t
12 synge t maken gret melodye. And alle þo þat ben of
his kyn or pretenden hem to ben his frendes, t pei come
not to þat feste pei ben reprened for euere more t schamed
t maken gret doel, for neuere after schult pei ben holden
16 as frendes. And pei seyn also þat men eten here flesch
for to delyueren hem out of payne, For 3if the wormes of
the erthe eten hem the soule scholde suffre gret payne as
pei seyn t namely whan the flesch is tendre t megre
20 1 þanne seyn here frendes pat pei don gret synne to leten
hem haue so long langure to suffre so moche payne
withoute resoun. And whan pei fynde the flessch fatte
þan pei seyn pat it is wel don to senden hem sone to
24 paradys t pat pei haue not suffred him to longe t[o] endure
in payne. The kyng of this yle is a ful gret lord t a
myghty t hath vnder him .liiij. grete yles þat 3euen
tribute to him. And in euerych of theise yles is a kyng
28 crowned t all ben obeysant to þat kyng And he hath in
þo yles many dyuerse folk. In on of peise yles ben folk
of gret stature as geauntes t pei ben hidouse for to loken
vpon t pei han but on eye t þat is in the myddyl of the
32 front t pei eten no ping but raw flesch t raw fyssch.
And in anoper yle toward the south duellen folk of foul
stature t of cursed kynde, þat han non hedes t here eyen
ben in here scholdres And here mouth is croked as an
36 hors schoo t pat is in the myddes of here brest. And in

The funeral
feast.

The human
body should
not feed
worms.

[1 fol. 84b]

One-eyed
giants.

Headless
men with
crooked
mouths;

others with
mouths
behind their
backs.
Noseless
men.

[1 fol. 85 a]

Faces
covered by
the upper
lip.

Dwarfs
that suck
in food
through
pipes.

Ears hang-
ing down
to the
knees.
Horse-
footed
people.

Quadruped
people.

Hermaphro-
dites.

[2 fol. 85 b]

People that
move on
their
knees.

anoper yle also ben folk pat han non hedes t here eyen
t here mouth ben behynde in here schuldres. And in
anoper yle ben folk pat han the face aH platt aH pleyn
withouten nese t withouten month, but pei han .ij. smale 4
holes aH rounde in stede of hire eyen t hire month is
platt also withouten lippes. And in anoper yle ben folk
of foul fasecoun t schapp ¹ pat han the lippe aboue the
mouth so gret pat whan pei slepen in the sonne pei 8
kencren aH the face with pat lippe. And in anoper yle
per ben lityH folk as dwerghes t pei ben to so meche as
the PYGMEYES t pei han no month, but in stede of hire
month pei han a lytyH round hole. And whan pei schuH 12
eten or drynken pei taken þorgh a pipe or a penne or
such a þing and sowken it in, for pei han no tonge
t þefore pei speke not, but pei maken a maner of hiss-
ynge as a nedder doth t pei maken signes on to anoper 16
as monkes don, be the whiche euery of hem vnderstondeth
oper. And in anoper yle ben folk pat han grete eres t
longe, pat hangen down to here knees. And in anoper
yle ben folk pat han hors feet t pei ben stronge t myghty 20
and swift renneres for pei taken wylde bestes with ren-
nyng t eten hem. And in anoper yle ben folk pat gon
vpon hire hondes t on hire feet as bestes t pei ben aH
skynned t fedred t pei wole lepen as lightly into trees t 24
fro tree to tree as it were squyrelles or apes. And in
anoper yle ben folk pat ben botlie man t womman t pei
han kynde of pat on t of fat oper t pei han but o pappe
on the o syde t on pat oper non And pei han membres 28
of generacioun of man t womman t pei vsen bothe whan
hem list ones pat on t anoper tyme pat oper. And pei
geten ² children whan pei vsen the membre of man t pei
bere children whan pei vsen the membre of womman. 32
And in anoper yle ben folk pat gon aH weys vpon here
knees ful meruey[l]ously (¹) t at euery pas pat pei gon it
semeth that pei wolde falle t pei han in euery foot .viij.
toos. Many oper dyuerse folk of dyuerse natures ben pere 36

(¹) merueyslously, C.

- in *oper yles abouten*, of the whiche it were to longe to
 teH t þerfore I passe ouer schortly. From þeise yles in
 passyng be the see ocean toward the est be many
 4 iourneyes men fynden a gret contree t a gret kyngdom
 pat men clepen MANCY t pat is in ynde the more. And
 it is the beste lond t on the fairest pat may ben in aH
 the world t the most delectable t the most plentifulous of
 8 aH godes pat is in power of man. In þat lond dwellen
 many cristene men t sarrazynes, for it is A gode contree
 t a gret And þere ben jme mo þan .ij. M. grete cytees
 t riche withouten oper grete townes. And þere is more
 12 plentee of peple þere þan in any oper partie of ynde for
 the bountee of the contree. In þat contree is no nedly man
 ne non þat goth on beggyng. And þei ben fuH faire
 folk, but þei ben aH pale And the men han thynne
 16 berdes t fewe heres, but þei ben longe; But vnethe hath
 any man passyng .i. heres in his berd t on heer sitt
 here, anoper þere, as the berd of a lyberd or of a catt.
 In þat lond ben many fairere women þan in any oper
 20 contree beyonde the see And þerfore ¹ men clepen þat lond
 ALBANYE because pat the folk ben white. And the chief
 cytee of that contree is clept LATORYN t it is a iourneye
 24 from the see And it is moche more þan PARYS. In þat
 cytee is a gret ryuere berynge schippes pat gon to alle the
 costes in the see. No cytee of the world is so wel stored
 of schippes as is þat And aH þo of the cytee t of the
 contre [worschipen] ⁽¹⁾ ydoles. In þat contree ben double
 28 sithes more [bridles þan] ben here: þere ben white gees
 rede aboute the nekke t þei han a gret crest as a cokkes
 comb vpon hire hedes And þei ben meeche more þere þan
 þei ben here t men hyen hem þere aH quykk right gret
 32 chepe. And þere is gret plentee of neddres of whom
 men maken grete festes t eten hem at grete sollempnytees,
 And he þat maketh þere a feste, be it neuere so costifous
 t he haue no neddres he hath no thank for his tranaylle.

Kingdom of
Mancy.

Sparse hair
and beards
of the
people.

[1 fol. 86 a]

The capital.

White and
crested
geese.

Adders are
a great
delicacy.

(1) Words between brackets here and on p. 136 missing because the parchment is torn.

Many gode cytees *pere* ben in *pat* contree *t* men han gret
 plentee *t* gret chep of aH wyne *t* vitailles. In *pat*
 contree ben manye chirches of religious men *t* of here
 lawe And in po chirches ben ydoles als grete as geauntes 4
 And to theise ydoles *pei* *zeuen* to ete at grete festyfuH
 dayes in this manere: *pei* bryngen before hem mete aH
 soden, als hoot as *pei* comen fro the fuyr *t* *pei* leten the
 smoke gon vp towardes the ydoles And *pan* *pei* seyn *pat* 8
 the ydoles han eten *t* *pan* the religious men eten the
 mete afterwarde. In *pat* contree ¹ben white HENNES
 withouten fetheres, but *pei* beren white wolle as scheep
 don here. In *pat* contree wommen *pat* ben vnmaryed 12
pei han tokenes on hire hedes lych coronales to ben
 knowen for vnmaryed. Also in *pat* contree *per* ben
 bestes taught of men to gon into watres into Ryueres *t*
 into depe stankes for to take fysch, the whiche best is 16
 but lytiH *t* men clepen hem loyres. [*t* whanne] men
 casten hem in to the water, anon [*pei* bringen] gret
 fisslies als manye as men wole. And *zif* men wil haue
 mo *pei* cast hem in azen *t* *pei* bryngen vp als many as 20
 men list to haue. And fro *pat* cytee passynge many
 iourneyes is anoper cytee on the grettest of the world
pat men clepen CASSAY *pat* is to seyne the cytee of
 heuene. *pat* cytee is wel a .l. myle aboute *t* it is 24
 stronglich enhabyted with peple in so moche *pat* in on
 hous men maken .x. housholdes. In *pat* cytee ben .xij.
 princypaH zates and before every zate a .iiij. myle or a
 .iiij. myle in lengthe is a gret toun or a gret cytee. *pat* 28
 cytee sytt vpon a gret lake on the see as doth VENYSE.
 And in *pat* cytee ben mo *pan* .xij. ¹M. BRIGGES *t* vpon
 every brigge ben stronge toures *t* gode in the whiche
 duellen the wardeynes for to kepen the cytee fro the gret 32
 CANE. And on *pat* o part of the cytee renneth a gret
 ryuere aH along the cytee And *pere* duellen cristene men
t many ²marchauntes *t* oper folk of dynerse nacyonns
 because *pat* the lond is so good *t* so plentyfous. And 36

Priests and
 idols.

Idols fed on
 smoke,
 priests on
 meat.

[1 fol. 86 b]

Woolly
 hens.

Tame
 animals
 used for
 fishing.

Cassay or
 Hangchow.

Its lagoon
 and 12,000
 bridges.

[2 fol. 87 a]

pere groweth fulh gode wyn þat men clepen BIGON þat is
 fulh myghty t gentyH in drynkyng. This is a Cytee
 ryah where the kyng of MANCY was wont to dweH t
 4 pere duellen many religious men as it were of the ordre
 of freres, for þei ben mendyfauntes. From þat cytee
 men gon be watre solacyng t disportin[g]e hem tiH þei
 come to an Abbeye of monkes þat is faste by þat ben
 8 gode religious men after here feyth t lawe. In þat
 abbeye is a gret gardyn t a fair where ben many trees of
 dyuerse manere of frutes, And in this gardyn is a lytiH
 hiH fulh of delectable trees; In þat hiH t in þat gardyn
 12 ben many dyuerse bestes, as of Apes, Marmozettes
 Babewynes t many oper dyuerse bestes. And every day
 whan the Couent of this Abbeye hath eten the Awmener
 let bere the releef to the gardyn t he smyteth on the
 16 gardyn 3ate with a clyket of syluer þat he holdeth in his
 hond t anon aH the bestes of þe hiH t of dyuerse places
 of the gardyn comen out a .iiij. .M. or a .iiij. Mit. t þei
 comen in gyse of pore men And men 3euen hem the releef
 20 in faire vesselles of syluer clene ouergylt. And whan þei
 han eten the monk smyteth eftsones on the gardyn 3ate
 with the clyket t þan anon aH the bestes retornen a3en
 to here places þat þei come fro. And þei seyn þat theise
 24 bestes ben soules of worthi men þat resemblen in lykness
 of þo bestes þat ben faire t þerfore [þei 3euen] ⁽¹⁾ hem mete
 for the loue of god. And the oper bestes þat ben foule þei
 seyn ben soules of pore men t of rude comouns; t þus
 28 þei beleuen t noman may putte hem out of þis opynyoun.
 þeise bestes aboneseyd þei let taken whan þei ben 3onge
 t norisschen hem so with almess als manye as þei may
 fynde. And I asked hem 3if it had not ben better to
 32 hane 3ouen þat releef to pore men rathere þan to þo
 bestes And þei answerde me t seyde þat þei hadde no
 pore man amonges hem in þat contree And þough it
 had ben so, þat pore men had ben among hem, 3it were
 36 it gretter Almess to 3euen it to þo soules þat don pere

Good wine
grown
there.

The abbey,
in whose
garden
animals are
kept.

The leavings
are given to
the beasts
in alms.

Human
souls
dwell in
animals.
[1 fol. 87 b]

The poor
are less
deserving
of alms than
the souls
that do
penance.

(1) Missing, MS.

Chilenfo or
Nanking.

Dalay or
Yangtse
Kiang.

The Pyg-
mies' lives
are as short
as their
bodies.

[1 fol. 88 a]

They fight
the cranes.

They
despise men
of normal
height.

Normal
people's
children
are born
as Pygmies
there.

here penance. Manye oper merueylles ben in þat cytee
t in the contree þere aboute, þat were to long to tel
þou. Fro þat cytee go men be the contree a .vj.
iourneyes to anoþer cytee þat men clepen CHILENFO, of
the whiche cytee the walles ben ^{ti}.xx. myle aboute. In
þat cytee ben .lx. brigges of ston so faire þat noman may
see fairere. In þat cytee was the firste sege of the kyng
of MANCY for it is a fair cytee t plentevous of aH
godes. After passe men ouerthwart a gret ryuere þat
men clepen DALAY t þat is the grettest ryuere of fressch
water þat is in the world, For þere as it is most narow
it is more þan .iiij. myle of brede. An þanne entren
men azen in to the lond of the grete CHANE. þat
ryuere goth þorgh the lond of PYGMANS, where þat the
folk ben of lityH stature þat ben but .iiij. span long and
pei ben right faire t gentyH after here quantytees bothe
the men t the wommen. And þei maryen hem whan
they ben half zere of age t geten children. And þei
lyuen not but .vi. zeer or .vij. at the moste And he þat
lyueth .viij. zeer men holden him þere right passynge
old. þeise men ben the beste worcheres of gold, syluer,
coutoun, sylk t of aH suche thinges of any oper þat ben
in the world, And þei han often tymes werre with the
bryddes of the contree þat þei taken t eten. þis lityH
folk nonþer labouren in londes ne in vynes but þei
han grete men amonges hem of oure stature þat tylen
the lond t labouren amonges the vynes for hem. And
of þo men of oure stature han þei als grete skorn t
wonder as we wolde haue among vs of geauntes zif þei
weren amonges vs. þere is a gode cytee amonges opere
where þere is dwellynge gret plentee of þo lytyH folk
And it is a gret cytee t a fair t the men ben grete þat
duellen amonges hem, But whan þei geten ony children
þei ben as lityH as the PYGMEYES, And perfore þei ben
aH for the moste part aH PYGMEYES, for the nature of the
lond is such. The grete CANE let kepe this cytee fuH
wel, for it is his. And aH be it þat the PYGMEYES ben

- lytyH 3it þei ben fuH resonable after here age t conne
 bothen wytt t gode t malice ynow. Fro pat cytee
 gon men be the contree be many cytees t many townes
 4 vnto a cytee þat men clepen IANICHAY t it is a noble Yangchow.
 cytee t a riche t of gret profite to the lord. And þider
 go men to sechen marchandise of aH manere of þing.
 þat cytee ¹is fuH moche worthi 3erly to the lord of the ^[1 fol. 88 b]
 8 contree, For he hathi euery 3er to rente of þat cytee as
 þei of the cyte seyn .i. Mit. CUMANTZ of floreyms of
 gold. For þei cownten þere aH be CUMANZ, And euery
 CUMANT is .x. ¹M. [floreyms] (¹) of gold. Now may men
 12 wel rekene how moche þat it amounteth. The kyng of
 þat contree is fuH myghty t 3it he is vnder the grete
 CANE And the gret CANE hathi vnder him .xij. suche
 prouynces. In þat contree in the gode towns is a gode
 16 custom, For whoso wiH make a feste to ony of his
 frendes þere ben certeyn junes in euery gode town t he
 þat wil make the feste wil sey to the hostellere: Arraye
 for me to morwe a gode dyner for so many folk t tellethi
 20 him the nombre t denysethi him the viaundes. And he
 seyth also: þus moche I wil dispende t nomore. And
 anon the hostellere arrayeth for him so faire t so wel t
 so honestly þat per schaff lakke no thing. And it schaff
 24 be don summere t with lasse cost þan t a man made it
 in his owne hows. And a .v. myle fro þat cytee toward
 the hed of the ryuere of BALAY is anoper cytee þat men
 clepen MENKE. In pat cytee is strong navye of schippes
 28 and aH ben white as snow of the kynde of the trees
 þat þei ben made offe, And þei ben full grete schippes
 t faire and wel ordeyned t made with halles t chambres
 t oper cysementes, as pough it were on the lond. Fro
 32 þens go men be many townes t many cytees þorgh the
 contree vnto a cytee þat men clepen LANTERYNE t it is
 an .viii. iourneyes ²fro þe cytee aboueseyd. This cytee
 sitt vpon a faire ryuere gret t brood þat men clepen
 36 CARAMARON. This ryuere passeth þorgh out CATHAY t Hwang-ho.

Dinner
parties are
given in
hotels.

Menzu,
Ningpo.

Lanching.

[2 fol. 89 a]

it doth often tyme harm & þat fuH gret Whan it is ouer gret.

Ch. XXIV. OF THE GRETE CHANE OF CHATAY; OF THE RIALTEE OF HIS PALAYS & HOW HE SITT AT METE, AND OF THE GRETE NOMBRE OF OFFICERES þAT SERUEN HYM.

Cathay or China.

CHATAY is a grete contree & a fair, noble & riche & fuH of marchauntes; pider gon Marchaundes aH 4
 3eres for to sechen spices & aH manere of marchandises more comounly þan in ony oþer partye. And 3ee schuH vnderstonde þat Marchaundes þat comen fro GENE or fro VENYSE or fro ROMANYE or oþer parties of LOMBARDYE 8
 þei-gon be see & be londe .xj. monethes or .xij. or more sumtyme or þei may come to the yle of CATHAY, þat is the princypaH regyoun of aH partyes bezonde & it is of the grete CANE. Fro CATHAY go men toward the est be 12
 many iorneyes & þan men fynden a gode cytee betwene peise oþere þat men clepen SUGARMAGO. þat cytee is on of the beste stored of sylk & oþer marchandises þat is in the world. After gon men 3it to anoþer old cytee 16
 toward the est & it is in the prouynce of CATHAY, And besyde þat cytee the men of TARTARYE han let make a nothier cytee þat is clept Caydon & it hath .xij. 3ates And betwene the .ij. 3ates þere is aHweys a gret myle. 20
 So þat the .ij. cytees, þat is to seyne the olde & the newe han in cyreuyt more þan .xx. myle. In this cytee is the sege of the grete CANE in ^{ti} a fuH gret palays & the most pas-ynge fair in aH the world, Of the whiche 24
 the walles ben in circuyt more þan .ij. myle, And wíthin the walles it is aH fuH of oþer palays. And in the gardyn of the grete palays þere is a gret hiH vpon the whiche is anoþer palays And it is the most fair & the most riche 28
 þat ony man may deuysen And aH aboute the palays & the hiH ben many trees berynge many dyuerse frutes. And

T'sining-chow.

Peking.

The Tartar City.

The Palace in the Forbidden City.

[1 fol. 89 b]

The Green Hill.

- aH aboute þat hiH ben dyches grete t depe And besyde
hem ben grete vyueres on þat o part t on þat other
And þere is a fuH fair brigge to passen ouer the dyches.
4 And in þeise vyueres ben so many wyld gees t gandres
t wyld dokes t swannes t heirouns þat it is *withouten*
nombre. And aH aboute þeise dyches t vyueres is the
grete gardyn fuH of wyld bestes so þat whan the gret
8 CANE wil haue ony desport ouper to taken ony of the
wyld bestes or of the foules, he wil lete chase hem
t taken hem at the windowes *withouten* goynge out of
his chambre. This palays where his sege is is bothe
12 gret t passynge fair And wíthin the palays in the halle
þere ben .xxiiij. pyleres of fyn gold t aH the walles ben
couered wíthínn of rede skynnes of bestes þat men
clepen PANTERES, þat ben faire bestes t wel smellyng
16 so þat for the swete odour of þo skynnes non euyH ayr
may entre in to the palays. þo skynnes ben als rede as
blode t þei schynen so brighte agen the sonne þat vnethes
noman may beholden hem. And many folk ¹ worschípen
20 þo bestes whan þei meeten hem first at morwe for here
gret vertue t for the gode smeH þat þei han, t þo skynnes
þei preysen more þan þough þei were plate of fyn gold.
And in the myddes of this palays is the mountour for
24 the grete CANE þat is aH wrought of gold t of precyous
stones t grete perles. And at .iiij. corneres of the
mountour ben .iiij. serpentes of gold And aH aboute þer is
ymade large nettes of sylk t gold t grete perles hangynge
28 aH aboute the mountour. And vnder the MOUNTOUR ben
CONDYTES of beuerage þat þei drynken in the Emperours
court And besyde þe condytes ben many vesselles of gold
be the whiche þei þat ben of houshold drynken at the
32 condyt. And the halle of the palays is fuH nobelych
arrayed t fuH meruey[l]eously atyred on aH partyes in
aH thinges þat men apparayle wíth ony halle. And first
at the chief of the halle is the Emperoures throne fuH
36 high where he sytteth at the mete t þat is of fyn

The Great
Can watches
the chase
from his
windows.

The palace
walls hung
with
panther
skins or
russia
leather.

[¹ fol. 90 a]

The Great
Can's
mountour.

The con-
duits for
beverage.

The hall
and throne.

The order
of pre-
cedence at
table.
The
Emperesses.

[1 fol. 90 b]

The head-
dress of
married
women.

The
Emperor's
sons.

The
sovereign's
table.

Single
tables for
members of
the court.

The
secretaries.

preeyouse stones bordured aH aboute with pured gold t
preeyous stones t grete perles, And the grees þat he goth
vp to the table ben of precious stones medled with gold.
And at the left syde of the Emperoures sege is the sege 4
of his firste wif o degree lowere þan the Emperour t it is
of jaspere bordured with gold t precious stones. And the
sege of his seconde wif is also anoþer [degree] more lowere
þan his firste wif t it is also of jaspere bordured with 8
gold as þat oper is. And the sege of the thridde wif is
also more lowe be a degree þan the seconde wif. For he
hath always .iiij. wives with him where þat euere he be t
after his wyfes on the same syde sytten the ladyes of his 12
lynage 3it lowere after þat þei ben of estate. And aH þo
þat ben maryed han a countrefete made lyehe a MANNES
FOOT vpon here hedes cubyte long aH wrought with grete
perles fyne t oryent t abouen made with pecokes fedres 16
t of oper schynyng fedres t þat stont vpon here hedes
lyke a crest, in tokene þat þei ben vnder mannes fote t
vnder subieccioun of man, And þei þat ben vmaryed
han none suchie. And after at the right syde of the 20
Emperour first sytteth his oldest sone þat schaff regne
after him; And he sytteth also o degree lowere þan the
Emperour in suchie manere of seges as don the Emperesses.
And after him sitten oper grete lordes of his lynage, euery 24
of hem a degree lowere þan oper, as þei ben of estate.
And the Emperour hath his table allone be him self þat
is of gold t of precious stones or of cristall bordured with
gold t fuH of precious stones or of Amatystes or of 28
LIGNUM ALOES þat cometh out of paradys or of Inory
bounden t bordured with gold. And euerych of his
wyfes hath also hire table be hireself And his eldest sone
t the oper lordes also t the ladyes t aH þat sitten with 32
the Emperour han tables allone be himself fuH riche.
And pere nys no table but þat it is worth an huge tresour
of gode. And vnder the Emperoures table sitten .iiij.
clerkes þat writen aH þat the Emperour seyth, be it good, 36

- be it euyH. ¹ For aH pat he seyth moste ben holden, for [¹ fol. 91 a]
 he may not chaungen his woord ne revoke it. And [at] (¹)
 grete solempne festes before the Emperoures table men
 4 bryngen grete tables of gold t percon ben Pecoakes of gold
 t many oper maner of dyuerse foules aH of gold t richely
 wrought t enameled t men maken hem dauncen and
 syngen clappyng here wenges to gydere t maken gret
 8 noyse t wheþer it be by craft or be nygromancye I wot nere,
 but it is a gode sight to beholde t a fair, And it is gret
 mervayle how it may be. But I haue the lasse mervaylle
 because pat pei ben the moste sotyle men in all sciences t
 12 in aH craftes pat ben in the world, For of sotyltee t of
 malice t of fer castynge pei passen aH men vnder heuene.
 And perfore pei seyn hem self pat pei seen with .ij. eyen
 t the cristene men see but with on be cause pat pei ben
 16 more sotyH þan pei, For aH oper naciouns pei seyn ben
 but blynde in conynge t worchinge in comparisoun to
 hem. I did gret besyness for to haue lerned pat craft
 but the maistre tolde me pat he had made avow to his god
 20 to teche it to no creature but only to his eldeste sone.
 Also aboue the Emperoures table t the opere tables t
 abouen a gret partie in the halle is a VYNE made of fyn
 gold t it spredeth aH aboute the haH t it hath many
 24 clustres of grapes, somme white, somme grene, summe
 ȝalowe t somme rede t somme blake, aH of precious
 stones. The white ben of CRISTALL t of BERYLLE t of
 JRIS, the ȝalowe ben of TOPAZES, the rede ben of
 28 RUBIES ² t of GRENAZ t of ALABRAUNDYNES, The grene
 ben of Emeraudes of Perydos t of Crisolytes, And the
 blake ben of Onichez t Garantez. And pei ben aH so
 propurlych made pat it semeth a verry vyne berynge
 32 kyndely grapes. And before the Emperoures table
 stonden grete lordes t riche barouns t othere pat seruen
 the Emperour at the mete. But noman is so hardy to
 speke a word but ȝif the Emperour speke to him, But ȝif
 36 it be Mynstrelles pat syngen songes t tellen gestes or oper

The auto-
matic birds.

Cleverness
of the
Chinese.

Their boast
that other
nations are
blind,
Christians
one-eyed,
and that
only them-
selves use
both eyes.

The gold
vine with
the grapes
of precious
stones.

[² fol. 91 b]

Concerts
during
meals.

Precious
vessels.

Silver is
despised.

The guard
of the hall.

I served the
Emperor to
admire the
state of his
court.

[¹ fol. 92 a]

The luxury
at court is
incredible.

The com-
moners'
table
manners
are vile.

But the
sovereign's
household
is splendid.

desportes to solace *with* the Emperour. And all the
vesseH *pat* men *ben* *serued with* in the halle or in
chambres *ben* of *precious* stones And speeyally at grete
tables, ou^{er} of jasp^{re} or of cristaH or of Amatystez or 4
of fyn gold. And the cuppes *ben* of Emeraudez & of
Saphires or of Topazes, of Perydoz and of many o^{per}
precyouse stones. VesseH of syluer is *pere non*, for *pei*
teH no prys *pere* of to make no vesseH offe, But *pei* 8
maken *perof* greenynges & pileres & pawmentes to halles &
chambres. And before the halle dore stonden manye
barounes & knyghtes clene armed to kepe *pat* noman
entre, but *3if* it be the wille or the commandement of the 12
Emperour or but *3if* *pei* *ben* *seruauntes* or mynstraH of
the houshold; And o^{per} non is not so hardy to neighen
ny the haH dore. And *3e* schuH vndirstonde *pat* my
felawes and I *with* oure *3omen* we *serueden* this 16
Emperour & weren his Soudyours .xv. monethes a^{zenst}
the kyng of MANCY *pat* held werre a^{zenst} him. And the
cause was for wee¹ hadden gret lust to see his noblesse &
the estat of his court & all his gouernance, to wite *3if* it 20
were such as we herde seye *pat* it was. And treuly we
fond it more noble and more excellent & ricchere & more
merueyllous *pan* euer we herde speke offe. In so moche
pat we wolde neuer han leved it, had wee not a seen it, 24
For I trowe *pat* noman wolde beleve the noblesse, the
ricchesse ne the multytude of folk *pat* *ben* in his court,
but he had seen it. For it is not *pere* as it is here, For
the lordes here han folk of certeyn nombre als *pei* may 28
suffise, But the grete CHANE hathi euery day folk at his
eostages & expens as *withouten* nombre. But the
ordynance ne the expenses in mete & drink ne the
honestee ne the clenness is not so arrayed *pere* as it is 32
here; for all the comouns *pere* eten *withouten* cloth vpon
here knees & *pei* eten all maner of flessch & lityH of bred,
And after mete *pei* wypen here hondes vpon here skyrtes
& *pei* eten not but ones a day. But the estat of lordes is 36
full gret & riche & noble. And all be it *pat* *sum* men wil

not trow me, but holden it for fable to tellen hem the nobless of his persone t of his estate t of his court t of the gret multytude of folk pat he holt, natheles I schaff
 4 seye 3ou A partye of him t of his folk, after pat I haue seen the manere t the ordynance fuH many a tyme. And whoso pat wole may leue me 3if he wiH, And whoso wiH not may leue also. For I wot wel 3if any man hath
 8 ben in 3o contrees bezonde, pough he haue not ben in the place ¹ where the grete CHANE duelleth, he schaff here speke of him so meche merueylouse ping, pat he schaff not trowe it lightly; And treuly no more did I myself til
 12 I saugh it. And 3o pat han ben in 3o contrees t in the gret CANES houshold knowen wel pat I seye soth And perfore I wiH not spare for hem pat knowe not ne belene not but pat pat pei seen for to telH 3ou a partie of him t
 16 of his estate pat he holt whan he goth from contree to contree t whan he maketh solempne festes.

No one can believe it, unless he sees it.

[1 fol. 92 b]

WHEREFORE HE IS CLEPT THE GRETE CHANE; Ch. XXV.
 OF THE STYLE OF HIS LETTRES, AND OF
 THE SUPERSCRIPCIOUN ABOWTEN HIS GRETE
 SEALL t HIS PRYUEE SEALL.

FIRST I schaff seye 3ou whi he was clept the gret
 CHANE. 3ee schuH vndirstonde pat aH the world
 20 was destroyed be Noes flood saf only Noe t his wif t his children. Noe had .iiij. sones SEM, CHAM t IAPHETH. This CAM was he pat saugh his fadres preuy membres naked whan he slepte t scorned hem t schewed hem with
 24 his fynger to his bretheren in scornynge wise t perfore he was cursed of god, And IAPHETH turned his face away t couered hem. peise .iiij. bretheren had cesoun in aH the lond And this CHAM for his crueltee toke the
 28 gretter t the beste partie toward the est, pat is clept ASYE And SEM toke AFFRYK And IAPHETH toke EUROPE, And perfore is aH the erthe departed in theise .iiij. parties be peise .iiij. bretheren. CHAM was the grettest t the most
 MANDEVILLE.

Cham, the accursed son of Noah, inherited Asia.

Cham was
the ancestor
of Nimrod
and of the
various
monsters
and
heathens.

[1 fol. 93 a]

The Great
Can of Asia
calls himself
after Cham.

Rise of the
Tartar
people.

[2 fol. 93 b]

myghty t of him camen mo generaciouns pan of the
opere And of ¹his sone CHUSE was engendred MEMBROTH
the geaunt pat was the firste kyng pat ener was in the
world t he began the fundacioun of the tour of BABY- 4
LOYNE. And pat tyme the fendes of helle camen many
tymes t leyen with the wommen of his generacioun t
engendred on hem dyuerse folk as MONSTRES t folk dis-
figured, Summe withouten hedes, summe with grete eres, 8
summe with on eye, summe geauntes, sum with hors feet
t many oper of dyuerse schapp azenst kynde. And of
pat generacioun of CHAM ben comen the PAYNEMES t
dyuerse folk pat ben in yles of the see be aH ynde. And 12
for als moche as he was the most myghty t no man
myghte withstonde him he cleped himself the sone of
god t souereyn of aH the world, And for this CHAM this
Emperour clepeth him CHAM t souereyn of aH the world. 16
t of the generacioun of SEM ben comen the Sarrazines,
And of the generacioun of IAPHETH is comen the peple of
Israel And [wee]⁽¹⁾ pough pat wee duellen in EUROPE. this
is the opynyoun pat the SYRYENES t the SAMARITANES han 20
amonges hem t pat pei told me before pat I wente toward
ynde, But I fond it operwise. Natheles the sothe is this,
pat TARTARYNES t pei pat duellen in the grete Asye pei
camen of CHAM, But the Emperour of CHATAY clepeth 24
him not CHAM, bu[t] CAN t I schaH teH you how. It is but
lityH more pan .viij. ^{xx}zeer pat aH TARTARYE was in sub-
iectioun t in seruage to othere nacyouns abouten, for pei
weren but bestyaH folk t diden noping but kepten bestes 28
t lad hem to pastures. But amonges ²hem pei hadden
.viij. princypaH nacyouns pat weren soueraynes of hem
alle, Of the whiche the firste nacyoun or lynage was clept
TARTAR, And pat is the most noble t the moste preysed. 32
The seconde lynage is clept TANGHOT, The pridde EURACH,
The .iiij. VALAIR, The .v. SEMOCH, The .vj. MENGLY, The
.viij. COBOUGH. Now befeh it so, pat of the firste lynage
succeeded an old worthi man pat was not riche, pat hadde 36

(1) wee, missing in C.

- to name CHANGUYS. This man lay vpon a night in his
 bed, & he sawgh in a vision pat pere cam before him a
 knyght Armed aH in white & he satt vpon a white hors
 4 & seyde to him: CAN, slepest þou? the ImmortaH god
 hath sent me to þe & it is his wille pat þou go to the
 .vij. lynages & seye to hem pat þou schalt ben here
 Emperour. For þou schalt conquere the londes & the
 8 contrees pat ben abouten, And þei pat marchen vpon þou
 schuH ben vnder þoure subieccioun, as 3ee han ben vnder
 hires, for pat is goddes wille ImmortaH. And whan he
 cam at morwe CHANGUYS roos & wente to the .vij. lynages
 12 & tolde hem how the white knyght had seyde, And þei
 scorned him & seyden pat he was a fool & so he departed
 fro hem aH aschamed. And the nyght sewynge this
 white knyght cam to the .vij. lynages & commaunded hem
 16 on goddes behalue ImmortaH pat þei scholde make this
 CHANGUYS here Emperour & þei scholde ben out of sub-
 ieccioun & þei scholde holden aH oþer regiounes aboute
 hem in here seruage, as þei had ben to hem befor. And
 20 on the morwe¹ þei chosen him to ben here Emperour And
 þei setten him vpon a blak fertre & after pat þei liften
 him vp with gret solempnytee & þei setten him in a
 chayer of gold & diden hym aH maner of reuerence & þei
 24 cleped him CHAN, as the white knyght called him. And
 whan he was þus chosen he wolde assayen 3if he myghte
 trust in hem or non & wheþer þei wolde ben obeyssant
 to him or non, And þanne he made many statutes &
 28 ordynances, pat þei clepen XSYA CHAN. The firste statute
 was pat þei scholde beleueu & obeyen in god ImmortaH
 pat is aHmyghty, pat wolde easten hem out of seruage &
 at aH tymes clepe to him for help in tyme of nede. The
 32 toþer statute was pat aH maner of men pat myghte beren
 armes scholden ben nombred And to euery .x. scholde
 ben a mayster And to euery .c. a mayster And to euery
 .M. a mayster And to euery .x. M. a mayster. After he
 36 commaunded to the princypales of the .vij. lynages pat
 þei scholde leuen & forsaken aH pat þei hadden in godes

Jenghiz'
 vision of a
 white
 knight.

The knight
 orders
 Jenghiz
 to be elected
 Emperor.

[f fol. 94 a]

He is raised
 on a throne.

He tries
 his new
 subjects.

His
 statutes.

The able-
 bodied
 men
 numbered.

The nobles
 ordered to
 give up
 their
 property,

and to
behead
their eldest
sons.

The war of
conquest
begun.

[1 fol. 94 b]

Jenghiz
thrown
from his
horse.

He hides in
a thick
wood.

He escapes
death
through
an owl.

⁊ heritage ⁊ fro pens forth to holden hem payd of þat þat
 he wolde ȝeue hem of his grace; And þei diden so anon.
 After he commaunded to the princypales of the .vij.
 lynages þat euery of hem scholde brynge his eldest sone 4
 before him ⁊ with here owne handes smyten of here hedes
 withouten taryenge; And anon his commandement was
 performed. And whan the CHANE sagh þat þei made 8
 non obstacle to performen his commandement, panne he
 thoughte wel þat he myghte trusten in hem ¹ ⁊ com-
 maunded hem anon to make hem redy ⁊ to sewen his
 banere. And after this CHANE putt in subiectioun aH
 the londes aboute him. Afterward it befeH vpon a day 12
 þat the CHANE rood with a fewe meynee for to beholde
 the strengthe of the contree þat he had wonnen and so
 befeH þat a gret multytude of his enemyes metten with
 him ⁊ for to ȝeuen gode ensample of hardyness to his 16
 poeple he was the firste þat faught ⁊ in the myddes of
 his ene[myes] ⁽¹⁾ encountred, ⁊ þere he was cast from
 his hors ⁊ his hors slayn. And whan his folk saugh him
 at the erthe þei weren aH abasschit ⁊ wenden he had ben 20
 ded ⁊ slown euerychone ⁊ hire enemyes after ⁊ chaced
 hem, But þei wiste not þat the Emperour was þere.
 And whan the enemyes weren ferr pursuyng the
 chace, the Emperour himself hidde him in a thikke 24
 wode. And whan þei weren comen aȝen fro the chace
 þei wenten ⁊ sough ten the wodes ȝif ony of hem had
 ben hid in the thikke of the wodes ⁊ manye þei
 founden ⁊ slown hem anon. So it happend þat as þei 28
 wenten serching toward the place þat the Emperour was
 þei saugh an OWLE syttyng vpon a tree abouen hym
 And pan þei seyden amonges hem þat þere was noman
 because þat þei saugh þat brid þere. And so þei wenten 32
 hire wey ⁊ þus escaped the Emperour from deth. And
 panne he wente preuylylly aH be nyghte tiH he cam to his
 folk þat weren fuH glad of his comyng ⁊ maden grete
 thankynges to god ImmortaH ⁊ to þat bryd be whom 36

(1) Missing, C.

- here lord ¹ was saued. And þerfore princypally abouten aȝt
 foules of þe world þei worschipen the Owle And whan
 þei han ony of here fedres þei kepen hem full precyously
 4 in stede of relykes & beren hem vpon here hedes with
 gret reuerence & þei holden hem self blessed & saf from
 aȝt periles whil þat þei han hem vpon hem & þerfore þei
 beren here fedres vpon here hedes. After aȝt this the
 8 Chane ordeyned him & assembled his peple & wente vpon
 hem þat hadden assayled hym before & destroyed hem
 & put hem in subieccioun & seruage. And whan he had
 wonnen & putt aȝt the londes & contrees on this half the
 12 mount BELYAN in subieccioun, the whyte knyght cam
 to him aȝen in his sleep & seyde to him: CHAN, the
 wille of god Immortaȝ is þat þou passe the mount BELYAN
 & þou schalt wyne the lond & þou schalt putten many
 16 naeyouns in subieccioun. And for þou schalt fynde no
 gode passage for to go toward þat contree, go [to] the
 mount BELYAN þat is vpon the see & knele þere .ix. tymes
 toward the est in the worschipe of god Immortaȝ & he
 20 schal schewe þe weye to passe by, And the Chane dide so.
 And anon the see þat touched & was fast to the mount
 began to withdraue him & schewed fair weye of .ix. fote
 brede large & so he passed with his folk & wan the lond
 24 of Cathay þat is the grettest kyngdom of the world. And
 for the .ix. knelynges & for the .ix. fote of weye the
 Chane & alle the ²men of TARTARIE han the nombre of
 .ix. in gret reuerence. And þerfore who þat wole make
 28 the CHANE ony present, be it of hors, be it of bryddes
 or of Arwes or bowes or of frute or of ony other thing,
 always he most make it of the nombre of .ix. And so
 þanne ben the presentes of grettere plesance to him &
 32 more benygnely he wil resceyuen hem þan þough he
 were presented with an .C. or .CC. For hym semeth the
 nombre of .ix. so holy, be cause the messenger of god
 jnmortaȝ devised it. Also whan the Chane of CATHAY
 36 hadde wonnen the contree of CATHAY & put in subiec-
 cioun & vnder fote many contrees abouten he feȝt seek.

[1 fol. 95 a]

Since then,
 the Tartars
 worship the
 owl and
 wear its
 feathers.

Jenghiz
 overcomes
 his enemies.

The white
 knight
 orders him
 to pass
 Mount
 Belgian.

The sea
 withdraws
 nine foot
 when
 Jenghiz has
 knelt nine
 times.

[2 fol. 95 b]

The Tartars
 reverence
 the number
 nine, and
 that is the
 number of
 presents
 offered to
 their
 Emperor.

Jenghiz
 conquers
 China.

Apologue of
the bundle
of arrows.

When
divided,
they can be
broken
by the
youngest
son.

[¹ fol. 96 a]

United
families
are power-
ful, divided
ones weak.

Jenghiz
succeeded
by his son
Ogotai.

Kuyuk and
Mangu.

Hulagu
takes
Baghdad.

And whan he felte wel *pat* he scholde dye, he seyde to
his .xij. sones *pat* euerych of hem scholde brynge him
on of his arewes & so *pei* diden anon And *panne* he
commanded *pat* men scholde bynden hem to gedre in 4
.iij. places And *pan* he toke hem to his eldest sone &
bad him breke hem aH togedre; And he enforced him
with aH his myght to breken hem, but he ne myghte not.
And *pan* the CHANE bad his seconde sone to breke hem 8
& so shortly to alle ech after othir, but non of hem
myght breke hem. And *pan* he bad the 3ongest sone
disseuere euerych from othir & breken euerych be him
self & so he dide. And *pan* seyde the CHANE to his 12
eldest sone & to alle the opere: wherfore myght zee not
breke hem? And *pei* answereden *pat* *pei* myght not, be
cause *pat* *pei* weren bounden togyder. ¹ And wherfore,
quod he, hath 3oure lityH 3ongest broper broken hem? 16
Because, *quod* *pei*, *pat* *pei* weren departed ech from othir.
& *panne* seyde the CHANE: My sones, *quod* he, treuly
pus wil it faren be 3ou. For als longe as zee ben
bounden togedere in .iij. places *pat* is to seyne in loue, 20
in trouthe & in gode accord, noman schaff ben of powere
to greue 3ou. But & zee ben disseuered fro *peise* .iij.
places, *pat* 3oure on helpe not 3oure oper, zee schuH be
destroyed & brought to nought. And 3if ech of 3ou loue 24
othir & helpe oper, zee schuH be lordes & souereynes of
aH opere. And whan he hadde made his ordynances he
dyed. And *panne* after hym regned ECCHECHA CANE his
eldest sone, And his othere bretheren wenten to wynnen 28
hem many contrees & kyngdomes, vnto the lond of
Pruysse & of Rossye, & made hem to ben cleped CHANE
but *pei* weren aH obeyssant to hire elder brother, And
perfore was he clept the grete CHANE. After Ecchecha 32
regned Guyo Chane And after him MANGO CHAN *pat*
was a gode cristene man & baptyzed & 3af lettres of per-
petueH pes to aH cristene men & sente his brother halaon
with gret multytude of folk for to wynnen the holy lond 36
& for to put it in to cristene mennes hondes & for to

- destroie Machametes lawe & for to take the CALYPHÉE
 of BALDAK pat was Emperour & lord of aH the Sarazines.
 And whan this CALYPHÉE was taken, men fownden him
 4 of so high worschipe pat in ¹aH the remenant of the world [1 fol. 96 b]
 ne myghte a man fynde a more reuerent man ne highere
 in worschipe. And pan halaon made him come before
 him & seyde to hym: Why, quod he, haddestow not
 8 taken *with* þe mo Sowdyoures & men ynowe for a lytiH
 quantytee of thresour for to defende þe & thi contree pat
 art so habundant of tresore & so high in aH worschipe?
 And the CALYPHÉE answerd him, For he wel trowede
 12 pat he hadde ynowe of his owne propre men. And pan
 seyde halaon: þou were as a god of the sarazines & it is
 conuenyent to a god to ete no mete pat is mortaH & per-
 fore þou schalt not ete but *precious* stones, riche perles
 16 And tresoure pat þou louest so moche. And pan he
 commanded him to *presoun* & aH his tresoure aboute him
 & so he dyed for hunger & threst. And pan after this,
 HALAON wan aH the lond of promysсион & putte it in
 20 to *cristene* mennes hondes. But the grete CHANE his
 broþer dyede & pat was gret sorwe & loss to aH *cristene*
 men. After MANGO CHAN regned COBYLA CHAN pat was
 also a *cristene* man & he regnede .xliij. ȝeere; he founded
 24 the grete cytee of IʒONGE in CATHAY, pat is a gret del
 more pan Rome. The tother gret CHANE pat cam after
 him becam a payneme & aH the oper after him. The
 kyngdom of CATHAY is the grettest Reme of the world
 28 And also the gret CHAN is the most myghty Emperour
 of the world & the grettest lord vnder the firmament. &
 so he clepeth him in his *lettres* right þus: ²CHAN FILIUS
 DEI EXCELSI OMNIUM VNIUERSAM TERRAM COLENCIUM SUM-
 32 MUS IMPERATOR ET DOMINUS OMNIUM DOMINANCIMUM. And
 the lettre of his grete seel writen abouten is this: DEUS
 IN CELO, CHAN SUPER TERRAM EIVS FORTITUDO OMNIUM
 HOMINUM IMPERATORIS SIGILLUM. And the superscrip-
 36 cioun aboute his lityH seel is this: DEI FORTITUDO
 OMNIUM HOMINUM IMPERATORIS SIGILLUM. And aH be it

The captiue
 Caliph is
 asked why
 he did not
 spend his
 treasure on
 warlike
 prepara-
 tions.

He is
 starved
 to death in
 the midst
 of his
 treasure.

Kublai
 Khan.

Peking.

The style of
 the Great
 Can's
 letters.
 [2 fol. 97 a]

Inscriptions
 on the
 seals.

All Tartars
believe in
God.

þat þei be not cristned, 3it natheles the Emperour t aH
the TARTARYENES beleenen in god ImmortaH. And whan
þei wiH manacen ony man, þanne þei seyn : God knoweth
wel þat I schaf do þe such a thing, t telleth his 4
manace. And þus haue 3ee herd whi he is clept the
grete CHANE.

Ch. XXVI. OF THE GOVERNANCE OF THE GRETE CHANES
COURT t WHAN HE MAKETH SOLEMPNE
FESTES; OF HIS PHILOSOPHRES, AND OF HIS
ARRAY WHAN HE RIDETH BE þE CONTRE.

Two
festivals on
the Can's
birhday and
on the
anniversary
of his pre-
sentation in
the temple.

Two on
anniver-
saries of the
idol's en-
thronement
and first
miracle.

[1 fol. 97 b]

Four
thousand
barons rule
those
festival.

Precious
cloths and
jewels.

NOW schaf I tel 3ou the gouernance of the court of
the grete CHANE whan he maketh solempne 8
festes, t þat is princypally .iiij. tymes in the 3eer. The
fiste feste is of his byrthe; þat oþer is of his presen-
tacioun in here temple, þat þei clepen here MOSEACH,
where þei maken a manere of circumcisioun; And the 12
tothier .ij. festes ben of his ydoles. The fiste feste of the
ydole is whan he is first put in to hire temple t throned.
The toþer feste is whan the ydole begyneth first to speke
or to worche myraetes. Mo ben þere not of solempne 16
festes, but 3if he marye ony of his children. Now vnder-
stondeH þat at euery of theise ¹ festes he hath gret multy-
tude of peple wel ordeyned and wel arrayed be thousandes,
be hundredes t be tenthes. And euery man knoweth 20
wel what seruyse he schaf do, And euery man 3eueth so
gode hede t so gode attendance to his seruyse, þat noman
fyndeth no defaute. And þere ben first ordeyned .iiij. .M.
barounes myghty t riche for to gouerne t to make 24
ordynance for the feste t for to serue the Emperour.
And þeise solempne festes ben made withouten in hales t
tentes made of clothes of gold t of tartaries fuH nobely.
And aH po barouns han crownes of gold vpon hire hedes 28
fuH noble t riche, fuH of precious stones and grete perles
oryent, And þei ben aH clothed in clothes of gold or of

tartaries or of camokas, so richely & so perfytylly þat
 noman in the world can amenden it ne better devisen it.
 And aH þo robes ben orfrayed aH abouten & dubbed fuH
 4 of precious stones & of grete oryent perles fuH richely.
 And þei may wel do so, for clothes of gold & of sylk ben
 gretter chep þere a gret del þan ben clothes of wolle [here].
 And peise .iiij. M. barouns ben devised in .iiij. compaynes
 8 And every thousand is clothed in clothes aH of .o. colour
 And þat so wel arrayed & so richely þat it is merueyle to
 beholde. The firste thousand, þat is of Dukes, of Erles,
 of Marquyses & of Amyralles, aH clothed in clothes of
 12 gold with tisseux of grene silk & bordured with gold, fuH
 of precious¹ stones, in maner as I haue seyd before. The
 secounde thousand is aH clothed in clothes dyapred of red
 selk aH wrought with gold & the orfayes sett fuH of gret
 16 perl and precious stones, fuH nobely wrought. The .iiij.
 thousand is clothed in clothes of silk of purple or of ynde
 And the .iiij. thousand is in clothes of zelow. And aH
 hire clothes ben so nobely & so richely wrought with
 20 gold & precious stones & riche perles þat 3if a man of this
 contree hadde but only on of hire robes he myghte wel
 seye þat he scholde neuere be pore. For the gold & the
 precious stones & the grete oryent perles ben of gretter
 24 value on this half the see þan þei ben beyond the see in po
 contrees. And whan þei ben þus apparaylled þei gon
 .ij. & .ij. to gedre fuH ordynatly before the Emperour, with
 outen speche of ony woord saf only enclynyng to him.
 28 And everych of hem bereth a tablett of Iaspere or of
 Iuory or of cristall And the mynstraH goynge before hem
 sownynge here instrumentes of dyuerse melodye. And
 whan the firste thousand is þus passed & hath made his
 32 mostre he withdraweth him on þat o syde. And þan
 entreth þat oper secounde thousand & doth right so in the
 same manere of array & contenance as did the firste & after
 the priddyde & þan the fourthie & non of hem seyth not o
 36 word. And at o syde of the Emperours table sitten

Gold and
silk cloths
cheaper than
wool.

One
thousand in
green, one in
red, one in
blue, one in
yellow.

[1 fol. 98 a]

Each robe
worth a
fortune.

The court
parade of
the four
thousand
barons.

¹ l. 6, here, missing in C.

Various
soothsayers
with their
instruments

[1 fol. 98 b]

They fix
the hours
when the
court should
bow to the
Emperor.

Symbolical
gestures.

[2 fol. 99 a]

Explanation
of them.

The bowing
means
obedience.

The finger
in the ear:
hear no evil
design
without
reporting it.

many PHILOSOFRES *pat ben preued* for wise men in many
dyuerse sciences, as of ¹ ASTRONOMYE, NIGROMANCYE, GEO-
MANCYE, PIROMANCYE, YDROMANCYE, of AUGURYE & of many
oper sciences; And euerych of hem han before hem 4
ASTROLABRES of gold, sum SPERES, summe the Brayn
paine of a ded man, summe vesseles of gold fuH of
grauelh or sond, Summe vesselles of gold fuH of coles
brennyng, summe vesseH of gold fuH of water & of wyn 8
& of oyle, And summe Oriloges of gold mad ful nobely &
richely wrought & many oper maner of Instrumentes after
hire sciences. And at certeyn houres whan hem thinketh
tyme *pei seyn* to certeyn Officeres *pat stonden* before hem 12
ordeynd for the tyme to fulfille hire commaundementes:
MAKETH PEES, And *pau seyn* the Officeres: Now pees,
lysteneth. And after *pat seyth* anoper of the Philoso-
phres: *Euery man* do reuerence & enelyne to the Emperour 16
pat is goddes sone & souerayn lord of aH the world, for
now is tyme; & *panne* euery man boweth his hed toward
the erthe. And *panne* commandeth the same Philosophre
aȝen: STONDETH VP, & *pei don* so. And at another hour 20
seyth anoper Philosophre: Putteth ȝoure litiH fynger in
ȝoure eres, And anon *pei don* so. And at another hour
seyth anoper Philosophre: Putteth ȝoure hond before
ȝoure mowth, And anon *pei don* so. And at anoper hour 24
seyth anoper Philosophre: Putteth ȝoure hond vpon ȝoure
hede, And *pei don* so. And after *pat* he byddeth hem to
don here hond away & *pei don* so. ² And so from hour to
hour *pei comanden* certeyn thinges, And *pei seyn* *pat* 28
tho thinges han dyuerse significaciouns. And I asked
hem *preuily* what po thinges betokened And on of the
maistres told me *pat* the bowyng of the hed at *pat* hour
betokened this: *pat* aH po *pat* boweden here hedes scholden 32
euere more after ben obeyssant & trewe to the Emperour
And neuere for ȝiftes ne for promys in no kynde to ben
fals ne traytour vnto him for gode nor euyl. And the
puttyng of the lityH fynger in the ere betokeneth as *pei* 36
seyn, *pat* none of hem ne schall not here speke no con-

trarious thing to the Emperour, but þat he schall tell it
 anon to his conseil or discouere it to sum man þat wil
 make relacioun to the Emperour, pough he were his fader
 4 or brothier or sone. And so forth of all oþer thinges þat is
 don be the Philosophres þei tolde me the causes of many
 dyuerse thinges. And trusteth right wel in certeyn þat
 noman doth nothing to the Emperour þat belongeth vnto
 8 him, nouþer clothinge ne bred ne wyn ne bath ne non
 oþer thing þat longeth to hym, but at certeyn houres þat
 his Philosophres wil denysen. And ȝif þere falle werre
 in ony syde to the Emperour anon the Philosophres comen
 12 & seyn here avys after here calculaciouns & conseynen the
 Emperour after here avys be here sciences, so þat the
 Emperour doth no thing withouten here conseil. And
 whan the Philosophres han don & perfourmed here
 16 comandementes, þanne the Mynstraß begynnen to don
 here mynstraleye euerych in hire Instrumentes ech after
 oþer, with all the melodye þat þei can deuise. And
 whan þei han don a gode while, on of the Officeres of
 20 the Emperour goth vp on an high stage wrought full
 curiously & cryeth & seyth with lowde voys: Maketh
 pees, And þanne euery man is stille. And þanne
 anon after all the lordes þat ben of the Emperoures
 24 lynage nobely arrayed in riche clothes of gold and
 ryally apparayled on white stedes, als manye as may wel
 sewen hem at þat tyme, ben redy to maken here presentes
 to the Emperour. And þan seyth the Styward of the
 28 court to the lordes be name: N. of N., & nempneth first
 the moste noble & the worthieste be name & seyth: Be ȝee
 redy with such a nombre of white hors for to serue the
 Emperour ȝoure souereyn lord. And to anoþer lord he
 32 seyth: N. of N., be ȝee redy with such a nombre to serue
 ȝoure souereyn lord. And to a nothier right so. And to
 all the lordes of the Emperoures lynage ech after oþer
 as þei ben of estate: And whan þei ben alle eleped þei
 36 entren ech after oþer & presenten the white hors to the
 Emperour & þan gon hire wey. And þan after all the

And so of
other signs.

The
philosophers
regulate the
Emperor's
private life
and public
affairs.

After the
philosophers
havespoken,
the min-
strels givo
their enter-
tainment.

[1 fol. 99 b]

Then
presents
are offered
to the
Emperor.

At the
steward's
command,
white horses
are brought
by the lords.

The barons
and clergy
offer jewels.

oper barouns euery of hem 3euen him presentes or juel
or sum oper þing, after þat þei ben of estate. And þan
after hem aȝ the prelates of hire lawe & religiouse men
& oper & euery man 3eueȝ him sum thing. And whan 4
þat aȝ men han þus presented the Emperour, the grettest
of dignytee of the prelates 3eueȝ him a blessynge seyenge
an orisoun of hire lawe. And þan begynnen the Myn-
streȝ¹ to maken hire mynstralcie in dyuerse Instrumentes 8

[1 fol. 100 a]

The beasts
are made
to do
reverence.

with aȝ the melodye þat þei can denyse. And whan þei
han don hire craft, þan þei bryngen before the Emperour
lyouns, libardes & oper dyuerse bestes And Egles &
ventours & oper dyuerse foules And fissches & serpentes 12
for to don him reuerence. And þan comen JOGULOURES

Enchanters
make
sunlight,
moonlight
and
darkness.

and ENCHAUNTOURES, þat don many meruaylles, For þei
maken to come in the ayr the sonne & the mone be
semynge to euery mannes sight. And after þei maken 16
the nyght so derk þat noman may see no thing, And after
þei maken the day to come aȝen fair & plesant with
briȝt sonne to euery mannes sight. And þan þei

Imaginary
dances,

bryngen in daunces of the faireste damyselles of the 20
world & richest arrayed. And after þei maken to comen

refresh-
ments,

in oper damyselles, bryngynge coupes of gold fuȝ of mylk
of dyuerse bestes & 3euen drynke to lordes & to ladyes And

tourna-
ments

þan þei make knyȝhtes to jousten in armes fuȝ lustyly & 24
þei rennen togidre a gret raundoun & þei frussechen togidere
fuȝ fiercely & þei breken here speres so rudely þat the tron-
chouns flen in sprotes & peces aȝ aboute the halle. And

and hunts.

þan þei make to come in huntynȝ for the hert & for the 28
boor, with houndes rennynge with open mouth. And many
oper thinges þei don be craft hire enchauntementes, þat it
is merueyle for to see. And suȝ pleyes of desport þei
make til the takynge vp of the boordes. This gret 32
CHAN hath fuȝ gret peple for to seruen him, as I hane told

[2 fol. 100 b]

130,000
minstrels.

3ou before, For he hath of myn²stralles the nombre of
.xiiij. Cumantz but þei abyde not aȝweys with hym.
For aȝ the mynstreȝ þat comen before hym of what 36

1. 7-8, mynstreȝ, r added above by rubricator.

naeyoun pat thei ben of, þei ben withholden *with* him as
 of his houshold, & entred in his bokes as for his owne men;
 And after þat, where þat euere þei gon, euere more þei
 4 cley men for mynstraft of the grete CHANE, And vnder þat
 tytle alle kynges and lordes cherisschen hem the more *with*
 giftes & aH ping; And perfore he hathi so gret multytude
 of hem. And he hathi of certeyn men as þough þei were 150,000
 8 ȝomen þat kepen bryddes as OSTRYCCES, GERFACOUNS, yeomen for
 SPAREHAUKES, FAUKONS GENTYLS, LANYERES, SACRES, birds and
 SACRETTES, POPYNGAYES wel spekyng and briddes beasts.
 syngynge. And also of wykde bestes, as of OLIFAUNTZ
 12 tame & othiere, Babewynes, Apes, Marnesettes & opere
 dyuerse bestes, the mountance of .xv. CUMANTZ of ȝomen.
 And of Phisieyus cristene he hathi .cc. And of leches 430
 pat ben cristene he hathi .cc. & .x. And of leches & physicians
 16 Phisieyens pat ben sarrazines .xx. But he trustethi and leches
 more in the cristene leches þan in the Sarazines.
 And his oper comoun houshold is *withouten* nombre,
 And þei aH han aH necessities & aH pat hem nedethi
 20 of the Emperoures court. And he hathi in his
 Court many Barouns as Seruytours pat ben cristene & Many
 conuerted to gode feyth be the preching of Religious Christians
 cristenmen pat dwellen *with* him; But þere ben manye in the
 24 mo þat wil not þat men knowen þat þei ben cristene. This Household.
 Emperour may dispenden als ¹moche as he wile *withouten* [1 fol. 101 a]
 estymacioun, For he not despendethi ne makethi no money
 but of lether emprinted or of papyre. And of pat moneye
 28 is som of gretter prys & som of lasse prys, after the dyuers-
 itee of his statutes. And whan þat money hathi ronne so
 longe þat it begynnethi to waste; þan men beren it to the
 Emperoures tresorye And þan þei taken newe money for
 32 the olde. And þat money goth thorgħ out aH the contree
 & porgħ out aH his prouynces, For þere & bezonde hem þei
 make no money nouper of gold nor of syluer, And perfore
 he may despende ynow & outrageously. And of gold & Precious
 36 syluer þat men beren in his contree he makethi Cylours, metals adorn
 Pyleres & Paumentes in his palays & oper dyuerse things, the Imperial
 Palace.

A large ruby
lights his
chamber.

Xanadu, the
summer
residence.

Cambalec,
the winter
capital.

The court's
marching
order.

[1 fol. 101 b]

500,000 men
in the van.

An equal
number on
either side.

The rear-
guard is
more
numerous.

what him lyketh. This Emperour hath in his chambre
in on of the pyleres of gold a RUBYE t a CHARBONCLE
of half a fote long, þat in the nyght ȝeueth so gret
clartee t schynynge, þat it is als light as day; And he 4
hath many oþer precyous stones t many oþer RUBYES
t CHARBONCLES, but ȝo ben the grettest t the moste
precyous. This Emperour duelleth in somer in a cytee
þat is toward the north, þat is cleped Saduz t þere is cold 8
ynow. And in wynter he duelleth in a cytee þat is
clept Camaalech t þat is an hote contree. But the contree
where he duelleth in most comounly is in Gaydo or in
Jong þat is a gode contree t a tempree, after þat the 12
contree is þere, But to men of this contree it were to
passyng hoot. And whan this Emperour wiþ ryde
from o contree to another ¹he ordeyneth .iiij. hostes
of his folk, of the whiche the firste hoost goth before 16
him a dayes iourney, For þat hoost schaff ben logged
the nyght where the Emperour schaff lygge vpon
the morwe. And þere schaff every man haue aþ
maner of vytaylle t necessaryes þat ben nedefull of the 20
Emperours costages. And in this firste hoost is the
nombre of poeple .l. CUMAUNTZ, what of hors what of fote,
Of the whiche every CUMANTZ amouite .x.m. as I haue told
ȝon before. And another hoost goth in the right syde of 24
the Emperour nygh half a iourney fro him, And another
goth on the left syde of him in the same wise. And in
every hoost is as moche multytude of peple as in the
firste hoost. And þanne after cometh the .iiij. hoost, þat 28
is moche more þan any of the oþere t þat goth behynden
him the mountance of a bowe draught. And every hoost
hath his iourneyes ordeyned in certeyn places where þei
schuþ be logged at nyght, And þere þei schuþ haue aþ 32
þat hem nedeth. And ȝif it befaþ þat any of the hoost
dye, anon þei putten another in his place, so þat the
nombre schaff euere more ben hool. And ȝee schuþ vnder-
stonde þat the Emperour in his propre persone rydeth 36
not as oþere gret lordes don bezonde, but ȝif him liste to

- go preuily *with fewe men* for to ben vnknowen. And
 eH he rytt in a charett *with .iiij. wheles* vpon the whiche
 is made a faire chambre t and it is made of a certyn wode
 4 þat cometh out of *paradys terrestre*, þat men clepen
 LIGNUM ALOES, þat the flodes of *paradys* bryngen out at
 dyuerse cesouns, as I haue told you here befor. And this
 chambre is ¹fuH wel smellynge because of the wode þat it [1 fol. 102 a]
 8 is made offe, And aH this chambre is couered with iune of
 plate of fyn gold dubbed *with precyous stones* t grete perles,
 And .iiij. OLIFAUNTZ and .iiij. grete destreres aH white t
 couered *with riche couertoures* ledynge the chariot. And
 12 .iiij. or .v. or .vj. of the grettest lordes ryden aboute this
 charyot fuH richely arrayed t fuH nobely, so þat noman
 schah neyghe the charyot, but only the lordes, but gif
 þat the Emperour calle ouy man to him þat him list to
 16 speke *with* aH. And aboue the chambre of this chariot
 þat the Emperour sitteth iune ben sett vpon a perche .iiij.
 or .v. or .vj. GERFACOUNS, to þat entent þat whan the
 Emperour seeth ony wylde foul þat he may take it at
 20 his owne list t haue the desport t the pley of the flight,
 First *with* on t after *with* another; And so he taketh his
 desport passynge be the contree. And noman rydeth
 before him of his companye but alle after him. And
 24 noman dar not come nygh the Chariot by a bowe draught
 but þo lordes only þat ben aboute him, t aH the hoost
 cometh fayrely after him in gret multitude. And also
 such anoþer charyot *with* such hoostes ordeynd t arrayed
 28 gon *with* the Emperesse vpon another syde euerych be
 him self *with* .iiij. hoostes right as the Emperour dide, but
 not *with* so gret multytude of peple. And his eldest sone
 goth be anoþer weye in anoþer chariot in the same manere,
 32 so þat pere is betwene hem so gret multitude of folk
 þat it is merueyle to tell it. And sumtyme it happeth
 þat whan he wil not go fer t þat it lyke him to haue the
 36 Emperesse t ²his children *with* him; þan þei gon aH
 togydere And here folk ben aH medled in fere t deuyded

While others
ride, the
Emperor
drives in a
chariot.

His
gerfalcons
are perched
ready at
hand.

Only lords
may
approach
the
sovereign.

The
Emperess
and the
eldest son
travel in
similar
state.

Sometimes
royalty
travel
together.
[2 fol. 102 b]

in .iiij. parties only. And 3ee schuH vnderstonde pat the
 The twelve provinces of the Empire. Empyre of this gret CHANE is deuyded in .xij. prouynces
 And euery prouynce hath mo pan .ij. m. cytees And of
 townes *withouten* nombre. This contree is fuH gret, For 4
 it hath .xij. princypaH kynges in .xij. prouynces And
 euery of þo kynges han many kynges vnder hem, t aH þei
 ben obeyssant to the gret CHANE. And his lond t his
 lordschipe dureth so ferr þat a man may not gon from on 8
 hed to anoper, nouþer be see ne londe, the space of .vij.
 3eer. And þorgh the desertes of his lordschipe þere as
 men may fynde no townes, pere ben jnnes ordeyned be
 euery iorneye to resceyue bothe man t hors, in the whiche 12
 þei schaH fynde plentee of vytaylle t of aH þing þat hem
 nedeth for to go be the contree. And pere is a merueylouse
 custom in þat contree, but it is profitable, þat 3if ony
 contrarious thing þat schokle ben preiudice or grenance 16
 to the Emperour in ony kynde, [be herd in þe contree] ⁽¹⁾
 anon the Emperour hath tydynges pereof t fuH knowleche
 in a day, þough it be .iiij. or .iiij. iourneys fro him or
 more. For his ambessedours taken here dromedaries or 20
 hire hors t þei priken in aH þat euere þei may toward on
 of the junes. And whan þei comen pere anon þei blowen
 an horne, t anon þei of the jn knowen wel ynow þat þere
 ben tydynges to warnen the Emperour of sum rebellyoun 24
 a3enst him. And þanne anon þei maken oper men redy
 in aH haste þat þei may ¹ to beren *lettres* and pryken in aH
 þat euere þei may, tiH þei come to the oper jnnes with
 here *lettres*. And þanne þei maken fressch men redy to 28
 pryke forth with the *lettres* toward the Emperour, whiH
 þat the laste bryngere reste him t bayte his dromedarie
 or his hors, And so fro jn to jn till it come to the
 Emperour. And þus Anon hath he hasty tydynges of 32
 ony thing þat bereth charge be his corrours þat rennen so
 hastyly thorghout aH the contree. And also whan the
 Emperour sendeth his Corrours hastyly þorghout his lond,
 euerych of hem hath a large thong fuH of smale belles 36

The twelve
provinces of
the Empire.

The
caravan-
serais.

The postal
service.

The
dispatch-
riders.

[¹ fol. 103 a]

The baiting
places.

(¹) Missing in C.

- And whan þei neyghen nere to the Innes of oþer Corroures, Each rider warns the other with his bells.
 pat ben also ordeyned be the iorneyes, þei ryngen here belles And anon the oþer Corroures maken hem redy t
 4 remmen here weye vnto another In t þus renneth on to oþer fuH spedily t swyftly, tiH the Emperours entent be serued in aH haste. And theise Curroures ben clept CHYDYDO after here langage, þat is to seye a messagere.
 8 Also whan the Emperour goth from o contree to another as I haue told þou here before t he passe þorgh cytees t townes, euery man maketh a fuyr before his dore t putteth pere june poudre of gode gommes pat ben swete
 12 smellynge, for to make gode sauour to the Emperour. And aH the peple kneleth down azenst him t don him gret reuerence, And pere where religyouse cristene men dwellen, as þei don in many cytees in the lond, þei gon
 16 before him with processiouun with cros t holy water t þei syngen: VENI CREATOR SPIRITUS with an high voys t gon towardes him. And whan he hereth hem he commaundeth to his lordes to ryde besyde him, pat the
 20 Religious men may come to him. And whan þei ben nygh him with the cros, þanne he doth adown his GALAOTH þat syt vpon his hede in manere of a chapelet, pat is made of gold t precieuse stones t grete perles And
 24 it is so ryche pat men preysen it to the value of a Roialme in þat contre. And þan he kneleth to the cros And þan the prelate of the Religyouse men seyth before him certeyn orisouns t zeueth him a blessyng with the
 28 cros, And he enclyneth to the blessyng fuH deuoutely. And þanne the prelate zeueth him sum maner frute to the nombre or .ix. in a plater of syluer with peres or Apples or oþer manere frute, And he taketh on t þan men zeuen
 32 to the oþere lordes pat ben aboute him. For the custum is such, pat no straungere schaff come before him but 3if he zeue hym sum manere thing, after the olde lawe pat seyth: NEMO ACCEDAT IN CONSPECTU MEO VACUUS. And
 36 þanne the Emperour seyth to the Religious men pat þei withdrawe hem azen, pat þei ne be not hurt ne harmed of

Odoriferous gums burnt when the sovereign passes a town.

The clergy meet him with the cross.

[1 fol. 103 b]

He doffs his hat,

and kneels to receive a blessing.

They present him with fruit.

Similar
homage is
paid to the
Emperesses
and to the
eldest son.

[¹ fol. 104 a]

There are
250,000
people
constantly
at court,
without
minstrels
and yeomen.

What a pity
that this
great prince
should not
be a
Christian!

Matrimonial
usages.

[² fol. 104 b]

the gret multytude of hors *pat comen behynde him*. And
also in the same maner don the religious men *pat dwellen*
pere to the Emperesses *pat passen by hem* And to his
eldest sone *† to enery of hem* *pei presenten frute*. And 4
3ee schuH vnderstonde *pat the poeple pat he hath so many*
hostes offe abouten hym *† aboute his wyfes † his sone* *pei*
dwellen not contynuelly with him, but aHweys whan him
lyketh *pei ben sent¹ fore*, And after whan *pei han don* *pei* 8
retournen to hire owne housholdes, saf only *pei pat ben*
dwellunge with hym in houshold for to *seruen him † his*
wyfes *† his sones* for to *gouernen his houshold*. And
aH be it *pat the othere ben departed fro him* after *pat* *pei* 12
han perfourmed hire seruyse, zit *pere abydeH contynuelly*
with him in court .I. miH. men at horse And .CC. MiH.
men a fote *withouten mynstrelles † fo pat kepen wylde*
bestes *† dyuerse briddes*, of þe *whiche I haue tolde you* 16
the nombre before. Vnder the firmament is not so gret
a lord ne so myghty ne so riche as is the grete CHANE,
Nought PRESTRE IOHAN *pat is Emperour of the high*
Ynde ne the Sowdan of Babyloyne ne the Emperour of 20
Persye. AH þeise ne ben not in comparisoun to the grete
CHANE nouþer of myght ne of noblesse ne of ryaltee ne of
ricchesse. For in aH þeise he passeth aH erthely princes
Wherefore it is gret harm *pat he beleueth not feithfully in* 24
god. And natheles he wil gladly here speke of god And
he suffreth wel *pat cristene men dwell in his lordschipe †*
pat men of his feith ben made cristene men, zit *pei wile*,
porgHout aH his contree, For he defendeth noman to 28
holde no lawe othier þan him lyketh. In *pat contree sum*
man hath an .C. wyfes, summe .lx., summe mo, summe
lesse. And *pei taken the nexte of hire kyn to hire wyfes*,
saf only *pat* *pei out taken hire modres, hire doughtres †* 32
hire sustres of the moder syde. But hire sustres on the
fadir syde of another womman *pei may wel take*, And
hire ² bretheres wyfes also after here deth And here Step-
modres also in the same wyse.

OF THE LAWE & THE CUSTOMS OF THE
TARTARIENES, DUELLYNGE IN CHATAY, &
HOW þAT MEN DON WHAN THE EMPEROUR
SCHAL DYE, & HOW HE SCHAL BE CHOSEN.

CH. XXVII.

THE folk of þat contree vsen aȝ longe clothes *with-*
outen furroures. And þei ben clothed *with*
precious clothes of TARTARYE & of clothes of gold,

Costumes of
the Tartars.

4 And here clothes ben slytt at the syde & þei ben festned
with laces of silk And þei clothien hem also *with* pylches
& the hyde *with* outen. And þei vsen nouȝer cappe ne

8 gon, so þat noman may vnethe knowe the men fro the
wommen, saf only þo women þat ben maryed, þat beren
the tokne vpon hire hedes of a mannes foot, in signe þat
þei ben vnder mannes fote & vnder subiectioun of man.

Sign of
married
state.

12 And hire wyfes ne dweȝt not to gydre, but euery of hem
be hireself And the husbonde may ligge *with* whom of
hem þat him lyketh. Euerych hath his hous, bothe man
& womman; And here houses ben made rounde of staves

Movable
tents of the
Tartars.

16 & it hath a round wyndowe abouen þat zeueth hem light
And also þat serueth for delyuerance of smoke. And the
helynge of here houses & the woves & the dores ben aȝ

20 of wode. And whan þei gon to werre þei leden hire
houses *with* hem vpon chariottes as men don tentes or
pauylliouns. And þei maken hire fuyr in the myddes of
hire houses. And þei han gret multytude of aȝ maner
of bestes, saf only of swyn, for þei bryngen non forth.

24 And they ¹ beleueen wel o god þat made & formede aȝ
thinges, And natheles zit han þei ydoles of gold & syluer
& of tree & of cloth, And to þo ydoles þei offren aȝ weys
hire first mylk of hire bestes & also of hire metes & of

They believe
in the God
of nature.[¹ fol. 105 a]

28 hire drynkes before þei eten, And þei offren often tymes
hors & bestes. And þei clepen the god of kynde yroga.

And hire Emperour also what name þat euere he haue
þei putten euermore þerto CHANE, And when I was þere

Names of
the Imperial
family.

32 hire Emperour had to name THIAUT, so þat he was clept

Tartar
super-
stitions.

[1 fol. 105 b]

Fines are
paid as
penance for
sins.

Purification
by fire.

Death
penalty for
adultery and
theft.

THIAUT CHANE, And his eldeste sone was clept TESSUE And
whan he schaff ben Emperour he schaff ben clept TESSUE
CHANE. And at þat tyme the Emperour hadde .xij. sones
withouten þo, þat were named CUNCY, ORDIJ, CHAHADAY, 4
BURYN, NEGU, NOCAB, CADU, CICTEN, BALACY, BABYLAN
t GAREGAN t of his .iij. wifes the firste t the principall
þat was Prestre Jolines doughter hadde to name SERIOCH 8
CHAN, And the tother BORAK CHAN t the toþer KARANKE 8
CHAN. The folk of þat contree begynnen aȝ hire
thinges in the newe mone And þei worschipen moche the
mone t the sonne t often tyme knelen aȝenst hem. And
alle the folk of the contree ryden comounly withouten 12
spores, but þei beren aȝ weys a lytiȝ whippe in hire
hondes for to chacen with hire hors. And þei han gret
conscience t holden it for a gret synne to casten a knyf
in the fuyre t for to drawe flesch out of a pot with a knyf 16
t for to smyte an hors with the handiȝ of a whippe, ¹ or
to smyte an hors with a brydiȝ or to breke o bon with
another or for to caste mylk or ony lykour þat men may
drynke vpon the erȝie or for to take t sle lytil children. 20
And the moste synne þat ony man may do is to pissen
in hire houses þat þei dwellen in And whoso þat may be
foun den with þat synne sykerly þei slen hym. And of
eueryȝh of peise synnes it behoueth hem to ben schryuen 24
of hire prestes t to paye gret somme of siluer for hire
penance. And it behoueth also þat the place þat men han
pissed in be haledwed aȝen t elles dar noman entren pere-
june. And whan þei han payed hire penance men make 28
hem passen þorgh a fuyr or þorgh .ij. for to clensen hem
of hire synnes. And also whan ony messangere cometh
t bryngeth lettres or ony present to the Emperour it
behoueth him þat he with the thing þat he bryngeth 32
passe þorgh .ij. brennyng fuyres for to purgen hem, þat
he brynge no poysoun ne venym ne no wykked þing þat
myȝht be greuance to the lord. And also ȝif ony man
or womman be taken in avouterie or fornicacioun anon 36
þei slen him. And who þat steleth ony thing anon þei

sle him. Men of *pat* contree ben aH gode archeres t schooten right weel bothie men t wommen, als wel on

All are good archers.

4 maken aH pinges t aH maner mysteres t craftes as of clothes, botes t o^{per} thinges t *pei* drynen cartes, plowes t waynes t chariottes. And *pei* maken houses t aH

Women practise most trades.

8 *pat* men maken. ¹ And aH the wommen weren breech as wel as men. AH the folk of *pat* contree ben fuH obeysant

[1 fol. 106 a]

to hire souereynes ne *pei* fighten not ne chiden not on with another. And *pere* ben nou^{per} thefes ne robboures

They are peaceful and honest.

12 in *pat* contree t euery man worschipeth o^{per}, but noman *pere* doth no reuerence to no straungeres, but 3if *pei* ben grete princes. And *pei* eten HOUNDES, LYOUNS, LYBERDES,

Their food.

MARES t FOLEs, ASSES, RATTES t MEES t aH maner of

16 bestes, grete t smale, saf only swyn t bestes *pat* weren defended by the olde lawe. And *pei* eten aH the bestes withouten t withjune, withouten castynge away of ony thing saf only the filthe. And *pei* eten but litiH bred,

20 but 3if it be in courtes of grete lordes. And *pei* haue not in many places nou^{per} pesen ne benes ne non o^{per} potages, but pe broth of the flessch. For litiH ete *pei* ony thing but flessch t the broth. And whan *pei* han eten *pei*

Their dirty habits.

24 wypen hire hondes vpon hire skirtes, for *pei* vse non naperye ne towaylles, but 3if it be before grete lordes, but the comoun peple hath none. And whan *pei* han eten *pei* putten hire disches vnwasschen into the pot

28 or cawdroun with remenant of the flessch and of the broth, til *pei* wole eten agen. And the riche men drynken mylk of MARES or of CAMAYLLES or of ASSES or of o^{per} bestes. And *pei* wil ben lightly

Intoxicating liquors.

32 dronken of mylk t of another drynk *pat* is made of hony t of water soden togidre, For in *pat* contree is nou^{per} wyn ne ale. *pei* lyuen fuH wrecchedlich, t *pei* eten but ones in the day t *pat* but lytiH, nouthir

36 ² in courtes ne in other places. And in sooth o man allone in this contree wil ete more in a day pan on of

[2 fol. 106 b]

Military
spirit and
armament.

Walled cities
and castles
taken by
false
promises.

They know
they shall
one day be
overcome.

They love
the natural
nakedness of
the body.
[1 fol. 107 a]

In their
retreat they
shoot
backwards.

hem wil ete in .iiij. dayes, And 3if ony straunge messenger
come pere to a lord, men maken him to ete but ones a
day t þat fuH litiH. And whan þei werren þei werren
fuH wisely t aHweys don here besynes to destroyen hire 4
enemies. Enery man pere bereth .ij. bowes or .iiij. t of arwes
grete plentee t a gret ax. And the gentyles han schorte
speres t large t fuH trenchant on þat o syde, And þei han
plates t helmes made of guyrboylle t hire hors couertoures 8
of the same. And who so fleeth fro the bataylle þei sle
him. And whan þei holden ony sege abouten casteH or toun
þat is walled t defensable þei behoten to hem þat ben
withjune to don aH the profite and gode, þat it is 12
merueylle to here t þei graunten also to hem þat ben
withjune aH þat þei wiH asken hem. And after þat þei
ben 3olden anon þei sleen hem alle t kutten of hire eres
t sowcen hem in vynegre t pere of þei maken gret seruyse 16
for lordes. AH here lust t aH hire ymaginacioun is for
to putten aH londes vnder hire subieccioun And þei seyn
þat þei knowen wel be hire propheeyes þat þei schuH ben
ouercomen by archieres t be strengthe of hem, but þei 20
knowe not of what nacioun ne of what lawe þei schuH
ben offe þat schuH overcomen hem. And þerfore þei
suffren þat folk of aH lawes may peysibely dwellen
amonges hem. Also whan þei wiH maken hire ydoles 24
or an ymage of ony of hire frendes for to haue remem-
brance of hym ¹ þei maken aH weys the ymage aH naked
withouten ony maner of clothinge. For þei seyn þat in
gode loue scholde be no couerynge, þat man scholde not 28
loue for the faire clothinge ne for the riche aray, but
only for the body such as god hath made it t for the
gode vertues þat the body is endowed with of nature,
Nought only for fair clothinge þat is not of kyndely 32
nature. And 3ee schuH vnderstonde þat it is gret drede
for to pursuen the TARTARYNES 3if þei fleen in bataylle,
For in fleyng þei schooten behynden hem t sleen bothe
men t hors. And whan þei wil fighte þei wiH schokken 36
hem to gidre in a plomp, þat 3if pere ben .xx. M. men,

men schuH not wenen þat þere be seant .x. MiH. And
 þei cone wel wynnen lond of straungeres but þei cone not
 kepen it, For þei han gretter lust to lye in tentes with-
 4 outen þan for to lye in casteH or in townes; And þei
 preysen nothing the wytt of oper naciouns. And amonges
 hem oyle of OLYVE is fuH dere, for þei holden it for fuH
 noble medecyne. And aH the Tartarienes han smale eyen
 8 t litiH of berd t not thikke hered, but schiere. And þei
 ben false t traytours And þei lasten noght þat þei be-
 hoten. þei ben fuH harde folk t moche peyne t wo
 mow suffren t disese, more þan ony oper folk for þei ben
 12 tauglit þerto in hire owne contree of zouthie; And þerfore
 þei spenden as who seyth right nough. And whan ony
 man schaf dye, men setten a spere besyde him And
 whan he draweth towardes the deth enery¹ man fleeth out
 16 of the hous tiH he be ded t after þat þei buryen him in
 the feldes. And whan the Emperour dyeth, men setten
 him in a chayere in myddes the place of his tent And men
 setten a table before him clene couered with a cloth t
 20 þere vpon flesch t dyerse vyaundes And a cuppe fuH of
 mares mylk. And men putten a mare besyde him with
 hire fole t an hors saclede t brydelede t þei leyn vpon
 the hors gold t siluer gret quantytee, And þei putten
 24 abouten him gret plentee of stree. And þan men maken
 a gret pytt t a large And with the tent t aH þeise oper
 thinges þei putten him in erthe. And þei seyn þat whan
 he schaf come in to anoper world he schaf not ben with-
 28 outen an hows ne withouten hors ne withouten gold t
 syluer; And the mare schaf zeuen him mylk t bryngen
 him forth mo hors tiH he be wel stored in the toper
 world. For þei trowen þat after hire deth þei schuH ben
 32 etynge t drynkyng in þat oper world t solacynge hem
 with hire wives as þei diden here. And after tyme þat
 the Emperour is pus entered noman schaf be so hardy
 to speke of him before his frendes. And 3it natheles
 36 somtyme falleth of manye þat thei maken hem to ben
 entered prenylly be nyghte in wylde places t putten azen

Their small
 eyes and
 sparse hair
 and beard.

Funeral
 customs.
 [1 fol. 107 b]

Emperors
 are buried
 in their
 tents with
 provisions
 and
 treasure.

The next
 world they
 imagine like
 the present.

Secret
 burials in
 wild places

the grass ouer the pytt for to growe, Or eH men coueren
the pytt *with* graueH t sond, þat noman schaff perceyue
where ne knowe where the pytt is, to þat entent þat
neuer after none of his frendes schuH han mynde ne 4
remembrance of him. And þanne þei seyn þat he is
ravissht in to anoper world, where he is a gretter lord
þan he was here. ¹ And þanne after deth of the Em-
perour the .vij. lynages assemblen hem togidere t chesen 8
his eldest sone or the nexte after him of his blood And
þus þei seye to him: Wee wolen t wec preyen t ordeynen
þat zee ben oure lord t oure Emperour. And þanne he
answereth: 3if zee wile þat I regne ouer zou as lord, do 12
euerych of zou þat I schaff commanden him, ouper to
abyde or to go. And whom so euer þat I commaunde to
ben slayn, þat anon he be slayn. And þei answeren aH
with o voys: What so euere zee commanden, it schaff 16
be don. þanne seyth the Emperour: Now vndirstondeth
wel þat my woord from hens forth is scharp t bytynge as
a swerd. After men setten him vpon a blak stede t so
Coronation. men bryngen him to a chayere fuH richely arrayed t þere 20
þei crownen hym. And þanne aH the cytees t gode
townes senden hym riche presentes, so þat at þat iourneye
he schaff haue more þan .lx. chariottes charged *with* gold
t syluer, *withouten* jewelles of gold t preceyouse stones 24
þat lordes zenen him, þat ben *withouten* estymacioun;
And *withouten* hors t clothes of gold t of Camakaas t
tartarynes þat ben *withouten* nombre.

[¹ fol. 108 a]Election of
new
emperors.Obedience
promised to
him.

OF THE ROIALME OF THARSE & THE LONDES Ch. XXVIII.
& KYNGDOMS TOWARDES THE SEPTENTRI-
ONAL PARTIES IN COMYNGE DOWN FROM
THE LOND OF CHATHAY.

THIS lond of CATHAY is in ASYE the depe, And after Tarsa or Tarshish.
on this half is Asye the more. The kyngdom of
CATHAY marcheth toward the west vnto the kyngdom of
4 THARSE the whiche was on of the kynges þat cam to
presente oure lord in BETHLEEM; And þei þat ben of the
lynage of þat kyng arn somme cristene. In THARSE þei
eten no flesch ¹ne þei drynken no wyn. And on this [1 fol. 108 b]
8 half towardes the WEST is the kyngdom of TURQUESTEN Turkestan.
þat streccheth him toward the WEST to the kyngdom of
PERSIE And toward the SEPTENTRIONALL to the kyng-
dom of CHORASME. In the contre of Turquesten ben but
12 fewe gode cytees But the beste cytee of þat lond highite
OCTORAR. þere ben grete pastures but fewe coornes, And
þefore for the most partie þei ben all herdemen And þei
lyzn in tentes & þei drynken a maner Ale made of hony.
16 And after on this half is the kyngdom of CHORASME þat Khwarezm.
is a gode lond & a plenteuous, withouten wyn. And it
hath a desert toward the EST þat lasteth more þan an .c.
iourneyes. And the beste cytee of þat contree is clept
20 CHORASME And of þat cytée bereth the contree his name.
The folk of þat contree ben hardy werryoures. And on
þis half is the kyngdom of COMANYE where of the COMAYNS Cumania.
þat dwelleden in GRECE somtyme weren chased out. This
24 is on of the grettest kyngdomes of the world But it is
not all enhabyted, For at on of the parties þere is so
gret cold þat noman may dwell þere And in a noþer
partie þere is so gret hete þat noman may endure it.
28 And also þere ben so many flyes þat noman may knowe
on what syde he may turne him. In þat contree is but
lytiþ Arberye ne trees þat beren frute ne opere. þei
lyzn in tentes And þei brennen the dong of bestes for
32 defaute of wode. This kyngdom descendeth on this half

toward vs t toward PRUYSSIE t toward ROSSIE. And
 The Volga, borgh þat contree renneth the Ryuere of ETHIEL þat is
 on of the grettest ryueres of the world And it freseth
 [1 fol. 109 a] 1 so strongly aH 3eres þat many tymes men han foughten 4
 Battles on vpon the Ise with grete hostes bothe parties on fote t
 the ice, hire hors voyded for the tyme. And, what on horse t
 on fote, mo þan .CC. .Ml. persones on enery syde. And
 The Black betwene þat Ryuere t the grete see OCCEAN þat þei clepen 8
 Sea. the see MAURE ly3n aH theise roialmes. And toward
 Caucasus, the hede benethie in þat roialme is the mount CHO[c]AZ (1)
 þat is the hiest mount of the world, And it is betwene
 the see MAURE t the see CASPY. þere is fuH streyt t 12
 daungerous passage for to go toward ynde And þerfore
 kyng ALISANDRE leet make þere a strong cytee þat men
 clepen ALIZANDRE for to kepe the contree, þat noman
 scholde passe withouten his leue, And now men clepen 16
 þat cytee the 3ate of helle And the princypaH cytee of
 COMANYE is clept SARAK. þat is on of the .iiij. weyes
 for to go in to ynde, But he þat weye ne may not passe
 no gret multytude of peple, but 3if it be in wynter; And 20
 þat passage men clepen the DERBENT. The tother weye
 is for to go fro the cytee of Turquesten be PERSIE And
 he þat weye ben manye iourneyes be desert. And the
 pridde weye is þat cometh fro COMANYE t þan to go be 24
 the grete see t be the kyngdom of ABCHAZ. And 3ee
 schuH vndirstonde þat aH þeise kyngdomes t aH þeise
 londes abouenseyd vnto PRUYSSIE t to ROSSIE ben aH
 obeyssant to the grete CHANE of CATHAY t many opere 28
 contrees þat marchen to oper costes; Wherefore his
 powere t his lordschipe is fuH gret t fuH myghty.

(1) Chotaz, C.

OF THE EMPEROUR OF PERSYE AND OF THE LOND OF DERKNESSE, ¹AND OF OTHER KYNGDOMES þAT BELONGEN TO THE GRETE CANE OF CATHAY, AND OTHER LONDES OF HIS, VNTO THE SEE OF GRECE.

Ch. XXIX.

[¹ fol. 109 b]

NOW sith I haue deuysed 3ou the londes & the kyngdoms toward the parties SEPTEMTRIONALES in comynge down from the lond of CATHAY vnto the londes of the cristene towardes PRUYSSIE & ROSSYE, now schaH I deuise 3ou of oþer londes & kyngdomes comynge down be oþer costes toward the right syde vnto the see of GRECE toward the lond of cristene men. And þefore þat after 8 ynde & after CATHAY the Emperour of PERSIE is the gretteste lord, þefore I schaH telH 3ou of the kyngdom of PERSIE First, where he hath .ij. kyngdomes. The firste kyngdom begynneth toward the EST toward the kyngdom 12 of TURQUESTEN And it streceth (¹) toward the WEST vnto the ryuere of PHISON þat is on of the .iiij. ryueres þat comen out of Paradys. And on anoþer syde it streceth toward the SEPTEMTRION vnto the see of CASPYE And also toward 16 the SOUTH vnto the desert of ynde. And this contree is gode & pleyne & full of peple And þere ben manye gode cytees, But the .ij. princypaH cytees ben peise: BOYTURRA & SEORNERGANT þat summen clepen SORMAGANT. þe 20 tothier kyngdom of PERSIE streceth toward the ryuere of PHISON & the parties of the WEST vnto the kyngdom of Mede [And] (²) the grete ARMENYE & toward the SEPTEMTRION to the see of CASPIE & toward the SOUTH to 24 the lond of ynde. þat is also a gode lond & a plentiful and it hath .iiij. grete principaH cytees: NESSABOR SAPHON & SARMASSANE. And þanne after is ARMENYE in the whiche weren wont to ben .iiij. kyngdomes. þat is 28 a noble cuntree & full of godes And ²it begynneth at PERSIE & streceth toward the west in lengthe vnto TURKYE And in largeness it dureth [fro] (³) the cytee of

Persia divided.

Eastern Persia.

Bokhara and Samarkand.

Western Persia.

Nishapur, Ispahan. Armenia.

[² fol. 110](¹) streceth, C.(²) fro, C.(³) to, MS.

ALIZANDRE pat now is clept the ȝate of helle pat I spak
 offe beforn vn[to] ⁽¹⁾ the kyngdom of MEDE. In this
 Tabriz. Armenye ben fuH manye gode cytees, But TAURIZO is
 Media. most of name. After pis is the kyngdom of MEDE pat is 4
 fuH long but it is not fuH large, pat begynneth toward
 the EST to the lond of PERSIE t to ynde the lesse. And
 it streccheth toward the WEST toward the kyngdom of
 CALDEE t toward the septemtrion descendynge toward the 8
 litiH ARMENYE. In pat kyngdom of Medee pere ben
 many grete hilles t litiH of pleyn erthe. pere dwellen
 Sarazines t anoþer maner of folk pat men clepen COR-
 Shiraz and Kirman, Georgia. DYNES. The beste .ij. cytees of pat kyngdom ben SARRAS 12
 t KAREMEN. After pat is the kyngdom of GEORGE pat
 begynneth toward the EST to a gret mountayne pat is clept
 Monnt Elbruz, Alania. ABZOR Where pat dwellen many dyuerse folk of dyuerse
 naciouns And men clepen the contree ALAMO. This 16
 kyngdom streccheth him towardes TURKYE t toward the
 grete see And toward the SOUTH it marcheth to the grete
 ARMENYE. And pere ben .ij. kyngdomes in pat contree.
 Georgia proper, opposed to Abkhasia. pat on is the kyngdom of GEORGIE t pat oper is the kyng- 20
 dom of ABCAZ. And aHweys in pat contree ben .ij.
 kynges t þei ben bothe cristene, But the kyng of GEORGIE
 is in subieccioun of the grete CHANE And the kyng of
 ABCAZ hath the more strong contree. And he aHweys 24
 vigerously defendeth his contree aȝenst aH þo pat assayllen
 him, so pat noman may make him in subieccioun to no
 man. In pat kyngdom of ABCHAZ is a gret meruaylle,
 [1 fol. 110 b] For a ¹ prouynce of the contree pat hath wel in cirenyt 28
 The land of darkness. .ij. iorneyes pat men clepen HAUYSON is aH couered with
 derkness withouten any brightness or light, so pat noman
 may see ne here ne noman dar entren in to hem. And
 natheles þei of the contree seyn pat somtyme men heren 32
 voys of folk t hors nyȝenge t cokkes crowynge And men
 witen wel pat men dwellen pere, but þei knowe not what
 men. And þei seyn pat the derkness befeH be myracle of
 god, For a cursed Emperour of PERSIE pat highite SAURES 36

The
 persecutor,
 Shapur II.

(1) vnder, C.

pursuede all cristene men to destroye hem & to compell
 hem to make sacrifice to his ydoles And rood with grete
 host in all pat euer he myghte for to confounde the
 4 cristene men. And panne in pat contree dwelleden
 manye gode cristene men, the whiche pat laften hire godes
 And wolde han fled in to GRECE. And whan pei weren
 in a playn pat highte MEGON And this cursd Emperour
 8 mett with hem with his hoost for to haue slayn hem & an
 hewen hem to peces And anon the cristene men kneleden
 to the grounde & made hire preyeres to god to sokoure
 hem, And anon a gret thikke clowde cam & couered the
 12 Emperour & all his hoost. And so pei enduren in pat
 manere pat pei ne mowe not gon out on no syde & so
 schuld pei euermore abyden in pat derkness til the day of
 dome be the myracle of god. And panne the cristene
 16 men wenten where hem lykede best at hire owne plesance
 withouten lettynge of ony creature & hire enemyes en-
 closed & confounded in derkness withouten ony strok.
 Wherefore we may wel seye with dauid: A DOMINO
 20 FACTUM EST ISTUD & EST MIRABILE IN OCVLIS NOSTRIS. And
 pat was a gret myracle pat god made for hem. Wherefore
 me thinketh pat cristene men scholden ben more deuoute
 to seruen oure lord god pan ony oper men of ony oper
 24 secte, For withouten ony drede ne were cursdness &
 synne of cristen men, pei scholden ben lordes of all the
 world, For the banere of Thesu crist is allweys displayed
 and redy on all sydes to the help of his trewe lounge
 28 seruantes, In so moche pat o gode cristene man in gode
 beleewe scholde ouercomen & outhacen a .M^t. cursd mys
 beleeuynge men, As Dauid seith in the PSAUTERE: QUO-
 NIAM PERSEQUEBATUR VNUS MILLE & DUO FUGARENT DECEM
 32 MILIA. ET CADENT A LATERE TUO MILLE, DECEM MILIA A
 DEXTRIS TUIS. And how pat it myghte be pat on scholde
 chacen a .M^t. Dauid him self seyth folewyng: QUIA MANUS
 DOMINI FECIT HEC OMNIA. And oure lord him self seyth
 36 be the prophetes mouth: SI IN VIJS MEIS AMBULAUERITIS
 SUPER TRIBULANTES VOS MISISSEM MANUM MEAM. So pat

The
 Christians
 were saved
 from
 Shapur by
 sudden
 darkness,
 which has
 since kept
 him
 enclosed.

[1 fol. 111 a]

If Christians
 would only
 be good, the
 Lord would
 make them
 irresistible.

This is
 proved by
 Scripture.

The
Georgians
and
Armenians
are
Christians.

Western
Christians
do not take
the
sacrament
often
enough.

Turkey,
Cappadocia,
Isauria,
Phrygia,
Bithynia.

[fol. 111 b]

Satalia.

Mosul.

Rohais or
Edessa.

we may seen apertely þat ȝif wee wil be gode men non enemye ne may not enduren aȝenst vs. Also ȝee schuſt vndirstonde þat out of þat lond of derkness goth out a gret Ryuere þat scheweth wel þat pere ben folk dwell- 4 ynge be many redy tokenes, but noman dar not entre into it. And wyteth wel þat in the kyngdoms of GEORGIE, of ABCHAZ t of the litiſh ARMENYE ben gode cristen men t deuoute For þei schryuen hem t howselen hem euermore 8 ones or twyes in the woke And pere ben manye of hem þat howselen hem euery day. And so do wee not on this half aſt be it þat seynt Poul commandeth it seyenge: OMNIBUS DIEBUS DOMINICIS AD COMMUNICANDUM HORTOR. 12 þei kepen þat commandement but wee ne kepen it not. Also after on this half is TURKIE ¹þat marcheth to the grete ARMENYE And pere ben manye prouyncees as CAPADOCHE, SAURE, BRIQUE, QUESITON, PYTAN t GEMETH 16 And in euerych of þeise ben many gode cytees. þis TURKYE streccheth vnto the cytee of SACHALA þat sitteth vpon the see of GRECE And so it marcheth to SYRIE. SYRIE is a gret contree t a gode as I haue told ȝou before 20 And also it hath abouen toward ynde the kyngdom of CALDEE þat streccheth fro the mountaynes of CALDE toward the Est vnto the cytee of NYNYUEE þat sitteth vpon the ryuere of TYGRE. And in largeness it begynneth 24 toward the NORTH to the cytee of MARAGA And it streceth toward the SOUTH vnto the see OCCEAN. In CALDEE is a pleyn contree t fewe hilles t fewe ryueres. After is the kyngdom of MESOPOTAYME þat begynneth 28 toward the est to the flom of TYGRE vnto a cytee þat is elept MOSELL And it streccheth toward the west to the flom of EUFRATE vnto a cytee þat is elept ROIAUZ And in lengthe it goth [fro] ⁽¹⁾the mount of ARMENYE vnto the 32 desert of YNDE the lesse. þis is a gode contree t a pleyn but it hath fewe ryueres; It hath but .ij. mountaynes in þat contree Of the whiche on highte SYMAR t þat oſer LYSON; And this lond marcheth to the kyngdom of 36

(¹) to, C.

Caldee. * 3it pere is toward the parties MERIDIONALES African
 many contrees t many regions As the lond of ETHIOPE geography.
 þat marcheth toward the EST to the grete desertes, toward
 4 the WEST [to] ⁽¹⁾ the kyngdom of NUBYE, toward the SOUTH
 to the kyngdom of MORETANE And toward the north
 to the rede see. After is MORETANE þat dureth fro the
 mountaynes ¹ of ETHIOPE vnto lybie the hize, And þat ^[1 fol. 112 a]
 8 contree ly3th along fro the see OCEAN toward the SOUTH,
 And toward the NORTH it marcheth to NUBYE t to the
 high LYBYE; Theise men of NUBYE ben cristene; And it
 marcheth [to] ⁽²⁾ the londes aboueseyd to the desertes of
 12 EGYPT And þat is the EGYPT þat I haue spoken of before
 And after LIBYE the hye t LYBYE the lowe þat descendeth
 down lowe toward the grete see of Spayne, In the whiche
 contree ben many kyngdomes t many dyuerse folk. Now
 16 I haue denyed 3ou many contrees on this half the
 kyngdom of CATHAY, of the whiche manye ben obeyssant
 to the grete CHANE.

OF THE CONTREES t YLES þAT BEN BE3ONDE Ch. XXX.
 THE LOND OF CATHAY t OF THE FRUTES
 þERE t OF XXII. KYNGES ENCLOSED WITHJN
 THE MOUNTAYNES.

20 **N**OW schall I seye 3ou sewyngly of contrees t yles
 þa then bezonde the contrees þat I haue spoken
 of. wherfore I seye 3ou, in passynge be the lond of
 CATHAYE toward the high ynde t toward BACHARYE, men
 24 passen be a kyngdom þat men clepen CALDILUE, þat is a
 full fair contre. And pere groweth a maner of fruyt
 as þough it weren COWRDES, And whan þei ben ripe men
 28 kутten hem a to t men fynden withjune a lytyh best in
 flesch, in bon t blode, as þough it were a lytih lomb
 withouten wolle. And men eten bothe the frut t the
 best, And þat is a gret merueylle. Of þat frute I haue
 eten all þough it were wonderfuH but þat I knowe wel

The
 vegetable
 lamb.

(1) t, C.

(2) fro, C.

The barnacle
goose.
[¹ fol. 112 b]

Other rare
plants,
apples,
spices and
vines.

Alexander
tried to
enclose the
ten tribes in
the Scythian
mountains.

The God of
nature
finished his
work.

Those Jews
cannot
escape by
water,
because
the Caspian
is a lake.

[² fol. 113 a]

pat god is merneyllous in his werkes. And natheles
I tolde hem of als gret a merueyle to hem pat is a monges
vs And pat was of the BERNAKES. For I tolde hem pat
in oure contree weren trees pat baren a fruyt pat becomen 4
briddes fleeynge. And po pat fellen in ¹the water lyuen,
And pei pat fallen on the erthe dyen anon; and pei ben
right gode to mannes mete. And here of had pei als
gret mernaylle pat summe of hem trowed it were an 8
jupossible thing to be. In pat contre ben longe apples
of gode sauour, Where of ben mo pan an .C. in a clustre
t als manye in a nofer. And pei han grete longe leues
t large of .ij. fote long or more And in pat contree t in 12
oper contrees pere abouten growen many trees pat beren
clowe gylofres And notemuges t grete notes of ynde t of
CANELL t of many oper spices. And pere ben vynes
pat beren so grete grapes pat a strong man scholde haue 16
ynow to done for to bere o clustre with aH the grapes.
In pat same regioun ben the mountaynes of CASPYE pat
men clepen VBER in the contree. Betwene po mountaynes
the Iewes of .x. lynages ben enclosed pat men clepen 20
GOTH t MAGOTH And pei mowe not gon out on no syde.
pere weren enclosed .xxij. kynges with hire peple, pat
dwelleden betwene the mountaynes of SYCHYE. pere
kyng ALISANDRE chacede hem betwene po mountaynes 24
And pere he thoughte for to enclose hem porgh werk
of his men. But whan he saugh pat he myghte not don
it ne bryng it to an ende, he preyed to god of nature pat
he wolde parforme pat pat he had begonne And aH were 28
it so pat he was a payneme t not worthi to ben herd, 3it
god of his grace closed the mountaynes togydre, so pat
pei dwellen pere aH faste ylokked t enclosed with high
mountaynes alle aboute, saf only on o syde, And on pat 32
syde is the see of CASPYE. Now may sum men asken:
Sith pat the see is (¹) on pat o syde, Wherfore go pei not
out on the see syde for to go where pat hem lyketh?
But to this questioun I schal ²answere: pat see of CASPYE 36

(¹) is, repeated, C.

goth out be londe vnder the mountaynes & renneth be
 the desert at o syde of the contree & after it streccheth
 vnto the endes of PERSIE And alþough it be clept a see,
 4 it is no see ne it toucheth to non oþer see, But it is a
 lake, the grettest of the world. And þough þei wolden
 putten hem in to þat see, þei ne wysten neuer where þat
 þei scholde arryuen. And also þei conen no langage but
 8 only hire owne þat noman knoweth but þei, And þerfore
 mowe þei not gon out. And also ȝee schuH vnderstonde
 þat the Iewes han no propre lond of hire owne for to
 dwellen june in aH the world, but only þat lond betwene
 12 the mountaynes, And ȝit þei ȝelden tribute for þat lond to
 the queen of AMAZOINE the whiche þat maketh hem to
 ben kept in cloos fuH diligently þat þei schuH not gon
 out on no syde but be the cost of hire lond, For hire lond
 16 marcheth to þo mountaynes. And often it hath befallen
 þat ⁽¹⁾ summe of the Iewes han gon vp the mountaynes
 And aualed down to the valeyes, But gret nombre of folk
 ne may not do so For the mountaynes ben so hye & so
 20 streght vp, þat þei moste abyde þere maugree hire myght,
 For þei mowe not gon out but be a litiH issue þat was
 made be strengthe of men; And it lasteth wel a .iiij.
 grete myle. And after is þere ȝit a lond aH desert, where
 24 men may fynde no water ne for dyggyng ne for non
 other þing, Wherfore men may not dwellen in þat place
 so is it fuH of dragounes, of serpentis & of oþer venymous
 bestes þat noman dar not passe but ȝif it be be strong
 28 wynter. And þat streyt passage men clepen in þat
 contree CLYRON, And þat is the passage þat the queen of
 AMAZOINE maketh to ben kept. And þogh ¹ it happene
 sum of hem be fortune to gon out, þei conen no maner of
 32 langage but EBREW, so þat þei can not speke to the
 peple. And ȝit natheles men seyn þei schuH gon out
 in the tyme of ANTECRIST And þat þei schuH maken
 gret slaughter of cristene men, And þerfore aH the
 36 Iewes pat dwellen in aH londes lernen aH weys to speken

Also because
they know
no foreign
language.

They pay
tribute to
the queen of
Amazonia.

A few have
escaped.

But the
road is
impractic-
able for
large
numbers.

[1 fol. 113 b]

In the tyme
of Antichrist
they shall
escape
and destroy
Christians.

(1) þat, repeated, C.

A fox shall
burrow
through to
the ten
tribes,

and they
shall escape
by following
him under-
ground.

[1 fol. 114 a]

In Bactria
are cotton
trees.

Hippopota-
mus.

Griffins.

EBREW, in hope þat whan the oper Iewes schuH gon
out, þat þei may vnderstonden hire speche t to leden
hem in to cristendom for to destroye the cristene peple.
For the Iewes seyn þat þei knowen wel be hire pro- 4
phceyes þat þei of CASPYE schuH gon out t spreden
pogh out aH the world And þat the cristene men
schuH ben vnder hire subieccioun als longe as þei han
ben in subieccioun of hem. And 3if þat 3ee wil wyte 8
how þat þei schuH fynden hire weye, after þat I haue
herd seye I schaf tēH 3on. In the tyme of ANTECRIST a
FOX schaf make pere his trayne t mynen an hole where
kyng ALISANDRE leet make the 3ates And so longe he 12
schaf mynen t percen the erthe til þat he schaf passe
pogh towards þat folk. And whan þei seen the fox
they schuH haue gret merueylle of him be cause þat þei
saugh neuer such a best, For of aH opere bestes þei han 16
enclosed amonges hem, saf only the Fox. And þanne
þei schullen chacen him t pursuen him so streyte, tiH þat
he come to the same place þat he cam fro. And þanne
þei schullen dyggen t mynen so strongly, tiH þat þei 20
fynden the 3ates þat kyng ALISANDRE leet make of grete
stones t passynge huge, wel symented t made stronge for
the maystrie. And þo 3ates þei schuH breken t so gon
out be fyndynge of þat issue. Fro þat lond gon men 24
to1ward the lond of BACHARIE, where ben fuH yuele folk
t fuH crueH. In þat lond ben trees þat beren wolle as
pogh it were of scheep, where of men maken clothes t
aH þing þat may ben made of wolle: In þat contree 28
ben many YPOTAYNES þat dwellen somtyme in the water
t somtyme on the lond And þei ben half man t half hors
as I haue seyd before, And þei eten men whan þei may
take nem. And pere ben ryueres t watres þat ben fuH 32
byttere, pree sithes more þan is the water of the sec. In
þat contre ben many GRIFFOUNES more plentee þan in
ony other contree Summen seyn þat þei han the body
vpward as an EGLE And benethe as a LYOUN And treuly 36
þei seyn soth þat þei ben of þat schapp. But o

GRIFFOUN hath the body more gret & is more strong
 panne .viij. LYOUNS, of suche lyouns as ben o this half,
 And more gret & strongere þan an .C. Egles suche as
 4 we han amonges vs. For o GRIFFOUN þere wil bere
 fleynge to his nest a gret hors ȝif he may fynde him at
 the poynt or .ij. oxen ȝoked togidere as þei gon at the
 plowgh. For he hath his talouns so longe & so large
 8 & grete vpon his feet as þough þei weren hornes of grete
 oxen or of bugles or of kyȝn, so þat men maken cuppes of
 hem to drynken of. And of hire ribbes and of the
 pennes of hire wenges men maken bowes fuȝ stronge to
 12 schote with Arwes & quareȝ. From þens gon men be
 many iourneyes þorgh the lond of Prestre Ioȝn the grete
 Emperour of YNDE, And men clepen his roialme the yle
 of PENTEXOIRE.

One griffin
 will fly up
 carrying a
 horse or a
 yoke of
 oxen.

OF THE RYALL ESTATE OF PRESTRE IOHN Ch. XXXI.
 & OF A RICHE MAN þAT MADE A MER'UEYLOUS [1 fol. 114]
 CASTELL AND CLEPED IT PARADYS & OF HIS
 SOTYLTEE.

16 **T**HIS Emperour Prestre Ioȝn holt fuȝ gret lond And
 hath many fuȝ noble cytees & gode townes in
 his Royalme and many grete dyuerse yles & large. For
 aȝ the contree of ynde is deuysed in yles for the grete
 20 flodes þat comen from PARADYS þat departen aȝ the lond
 in many parties. And also in the see he hath fuȝ manye
 yles. And the beste cytee in the yle of PENTEXOIRE is
 NYSE þat is a fuȝ ryȝ cytee & a noble and fuȝ riche
 24 This Prestre Ioȝn hath vnder him many kynges & many
 yles & many dyuerse folk of dyuerse condiciouns And this
 lond is fuȝ gode & ryche, but not so riche as is the lond
 of the grete CHANE. For the marchauntes comen not
 28 thider so comounly for to bye marchandises as þei don in
 the lond of the gret CHANE, for it is to fer to trauaylle to.
 And on þat other partie, in the yle of CATHAY men
 fynden aȝ maner thing þat is nede to man clothes of

Prestre
 John's
 Empire.

Sailors fear the Adamant rocks, which attract all ships with iron in them.

Vegetation grows out of the wrecks.

[1 fol. 115 a]

Hormuz.

Popinjays.

The usual food.

gold of silk of spycerye & aH maner auere de poys, And
 þerfore, aH be it þat men han gretter chep in the yle of
 Prestre Iohn, natheless men dreden the longe weye & the
 grete periles in the see in þo partyes. For in many 4
 places of the see ben grete roches of stones of the
 ADAMANT, þat of his propre nature draweth IREN to him,
 And þerfore þere passen no schippes þat han ouþer bondes
 or nayles of IREN within hem, And 3if þer do anon the 8
 roches of the ADAMANTES drawen hem to hem, þat neuer
 þei may go pens. I myself haue seen o ferrom in þat see
 as þough it hadde ben a gret yle fuH of trees & buseayHe
 fuH of thornes & breres gret plentee, And the schipmen 12
 tolde vs þat aH þat was of schippes þat weren drawen
 thider be the ADAMAUNTES for the IREN ¹ þat was in hem.
 And of the roteness & oþer thing þat was within the
 schippes grewen such buseaylle & thornes & breres & grene 16
 grass & such maner of thing, And of the mastes & the
 seyH 3erdes it semed a grete wode or a groue. And suehe
 roches ben in many places þere abouten And þerfore dur
 not the marchantes passen þere but 3if þei knowen wel 20
 the passages or eH þat þei han gode lodesmen. And also
 þei dreden the longe weye & þerfore thei gon to CATHAY
 for it is more nygh. And 3it is it not so nygh but þat
 men moste ben traauyllynge be see & lond .xj. monethes 24
 or .xij. from GENE or from VENYSE or he come to CATHAY.
 And 3it is the lond of Prestre Iohn more ferr be many
 dredfuH iourneyes And the marchantes passen be the
 kyngdom of PEKSIE & gon to a cytee þat is clept HERMES 28
 for HERMES the PHILOSOPHRE founded it, And after þat
 þei passen an arm of the see & þanne þei gon to another
 cytee þat is clept GOLBACH & þere þei fynden marchandises &
 of POPENGAYES as gret plentee as men fynden here of gees. 32
 And 3if þei wil passen ferthere þei may gon sykerly jnow.
 In þat contree is but lytyH whete or barly & þerfore þei
 eten Ry3s & hony & mylk & chese & frute. This
 Emperour Prestre Iohn taketh aHweys to his wif the 36
 doughter of the grete CHANE And the grete CHANE also

in the same wise the doughter of Prestre Iohn, For þeise
 .ij. ben the grettest lordes vudir the firmament. In the
 lond of Prestre Iohn ben many dyuerse thinges ⁊ manye
 4 þe precious stones so grete ⁊ so large þat men maken of hem
 vesseH As plateres, disselies ⁊ cuppes ⁊ many oþer
 merueyles ben pere þat it were to combrons ¹and to long
 to putten it in scripture of bokes. But of the principaH
 8 yles ⁊ of his estate and of his lawe I schaf telle þou
 som partye. This Emperour Prestre Iohn is cristene
 And a gret partie of his contree also, But ȝit þei haue not
 aH the Articles of oure feyth as wee hauen. þei beleuen
 12 wel in the fader, in the sone and in the holy gost And þei
 ben fuH deuoute ⁊ right trewe on to a nother And þei
 sette not be no barettes ne by cawteles ne of no disceytes.
 And he hath vnder him .lxxij. prouynces And in euery
 16 prouynce is a kyng And þeise kynges han kynges vnder
 hem, ⁊ alle ben tributaries to Prestre Iohn. And he
 hath in his lordschipes many grete merueyles, For in
 his contree is the see þat men clepen the GRAUELY SEE
 20 þat is aH graueH and sond withouten any drope of water.
 And it ebbeth ⁊ floweth in grete wawes as oþer sees don.
 And it is neuer stille ne in pes in no maner cesoun And
 noman may passe þat see be navye ne be no maner
 24 of craft ⁊ þerfore may no man knowe what lond is
 beyond þat see. And aH be it þat ⁽¹⁾it haue no water
 ȝit men fynden pere in ⁊ on the bankes fuH gode fisch
 of oþer maner of kynde ⁊ schapp þanne men fynden in
 28 any other see ⁊ þei ben of right goode tast ⁊ delicious
 to mannes mete. And a .iiij. iourneys long fro þat
 see ben grete mountaynes out of the whiche goth out
 a gret flood þat cometh out of PARADYS ⁊ it is fuH
 32 of precious stones withouten any drope of water
 ⁊ it renneth þorgh the desert on þat o syde, so þat it
 maketh the see grauely And it bereth into þat see ⁊ pere
 it endeth. And þat flomme renneth also .iiij. dayes in the
 36 woke ⁊ bryngeth with him grete stones ⁊ the roches ²also

Vessels
 made of
 precious
 stones.
 [1 fol. 115 b]

Prester
 John's
 religion.

His
 government.

The Grauelly
 Sea.

Its fish.

The river of
 precious
 stones.

It flows
 three days
 in the week.
 [2 fol. 116 a]

(1) þat, repeated, C.

perewith and þat gret plente, And anon as þei ben entred
in to the grauely see þei ben seyn nomore, but lost for
euere more. And in þo .iiij. dayes þat that ryuere renneth
noman dar entren in to it, But in the oper dayes men dar 4
entren wel ynow.

Also bezonde þat flomme, more
vpward to the desertes is a gret pleyn all grauelly betwene
the mountaynes. And in þat playn euery day at the sonne
risynge begynnen to growe smale trees & þei growen til 8
mydday berynge frute. But noman dar taken of þat
frute for it is a thing of FAYRYE. And after MIDDAY þei
discrecen & entren azen in to the erthe, so þat at the
goynge down of the sonne þei apperen no more & so þei 12
don euery day & þat is a gret mervaylle.

Grunting,
horned men.

In þat desert
ben many wylde men þat ben hidouse to loken on for þei
ben horned And þei speken nought but þei gronten as
pygges. And þere is also gret plente^[e](¹) of wylde houndes, 16
And þere ben manye POPEGAYES þat þei elepen PSITAKES
in hire langage And þei speken of hire propre nature &
saluen men þat gon þorgh the desertes & speken to hem
als appertely as þough it were a man. And þei þat speken 20
wel han a large tonge & han .v. toos vpon a fote. And
þere ben also of oper manere, þat han but .iiij. toos vpon a
fote And þei speken not or but litiH for þei cone not but
cryen. This Emperour Prestre Iohn whan he goth into 24

Speaking
parrots.

Crosses are
carried
before
Prester John
instead of
banners.

bataylle azenst ony other lord, he hath no baneres born
before him But he hath .iiij. crosses of gold fyn grete &
hye, full of precious stones. And euery of þo. cross ben
sett in a chariot full richely arrayed. And for to kepen 28

[¹ fol. 116 b]

euery cros ben ordeyned .x. MiH. ¹men of armes & mo þan
an .C.Mⁱ. men on fote in maner as men wolde kepe a
standard in oure contrees Whan þat wee ben in lond of
werre. And this nombre of folk is withouten the princy- 32
palH hoost & withouten wenges ordeynd for the bataylle.
And whan he hath no werre, but rideth with a pryuy
meynee þanne he hath bore before him but o cros of
tree withouten peynture & withouten gold or siluer or 36

In peace
time, one
plain
wooden
cross
precedes
him

(¹) plente, C.

- precious stones in remembrance *pat* Ihesu crist suffred
deth vpon a cros of tree. And he hath born before him
also a plater of gold full of erthe in tokene *pat* his nobless
4 *þ* his myght *þ* his flessch schaff turnen to erthe. And he
hath born before him also a vesseH of siluer full of noble
jewelles of gold full riche *þ* of precious stones in tokene
of his lordschipe *þ* of his nobless *þ* of his myght. He
8 duelleth comounly in the cytee of SUSE *þ* pere is his
principaH palays *pat* is so riche *þ* so noble *pat* noman wil
trowe it by estimacioun but he had seen it. And abouen
the chief tour of the palays ben .ij. rounde pomeles of
12 gold And in euerych of hem ben .ij. charboncles grete *þ*
large *pat* schynen full brighte vpon the nyght And the
principaH gates of his palays ben of a precious ston *pat*
men clepen SARDOYNE And the bordure *þ* the barres ben
16 of IUORYE And the wyndowes of the halles *þ* chambres
ben of CRISTAEL And the tables whereon men eten somme
ben of EMERAUDES, somme of AMATYST *þ* somme of GOLD
full of precious stones And the pileres *pat* beren vp the
20 tables ben of the same precious stones And the degrees to
gon vp to his throne where he sitteth at pe mete on is of
ONICHE, Anoper is of CRISTAEL *þ* anoper of IASPRE grene,
Anoper of amatyst, Anoper of SARDYNE, Anoper of
24 CORNELINE. And the .vij. *pat* he setteth onne his feet
is of ¹CRISOLYTE. And aH peise degrees ben bordured
with fyn gold with the tothere precyous stones sett with
grete perles oryent. And the sydes of the sege of his
28 throne ben of EMERAUDES *þ* bordured with gold full
nobely And dubbed with oper precious stones and grete
perles. And aH the pileres in his chambre ben of fyne
gold with precious stones *þ* with manye CHARBONCLES *pat*
32 zeuen gret lyght vpon the nyght to aH peple. And aH be it
pat the CHARBONCLE zeue lyght right ynow, natheles at alle
tymes brenneth a vesseH of CRISTAEL full of BAWME for
to zeuen gode smeH *þ* odour to the Emperour *þ* to voyden
36 away aH wykkede eyres *þ* corrupeiouns. And the forme
of his bedd is of fyne saphires bended with gold for to

Two vessels,
one full of
earth, the
other of
jewels.
carried
before him.

Gorgeous-
ness of his
palace in
Susa.

The steps to
the throne.

[¹ fol. 117 a]

The throne.

His chamber
lighted with
carbuncles,
and scented
with balm.

His bed.

make him slepen wel t to refreynen him from lechrye.
 For he wil^l not lyze with his wyfes but .iiij. sithes in the
 3er after the .iiij. cesouns, And þat is only for to engendre
 children. He hath also a full fayr palays t a noble at 4
 the cytee of NYSE where þat he duelleth whan him best
 lyketh. But the Ayr is not so attempree as it is at the
 cytee of SUSE. And 3ee schu^l vnderstonde þat in a^ll his
 contree ne in the contrees pere a^ll aboute men eten noght 8
 but ones in the day, but 3if þat men maken hem in the
 court of the grete CHANE. And so þei eten enery day in
 his court mo þanne .xxx. ^{ti} ^{mi} persones, withouten goeres
 t comeres. But the .xxx. .m.⁺ persones of his contree ne 12
 of the contree of the grete CHANE ne spenden nought so
 moche gode as don .xij. .M.^l of oure contree. This Emperour
 Prestre Io^hn hath eueremore .vij. kynges with him to
 seruen him And þei departen hire service be certeyn 16
 monethes And with þeise kynges seruen a^ll weys .lxxij.
 Dukes And .ccc. t .lx. Erles. And a^ll the dayes of the 3er
 pere eten ¹ in his houshold t in his Court .xij. Erche-
 bysshoppes t .xx. Bisshoppes. And the Patriark of seynt 20
 Thomas is pere as is the POPE here And the Erchebis-
 shoppes t the Bisshoppes t the abbottes in þat contree
 ben alle kynges. And euerych of þeise grete lordes
 knowen vel ynow the Attendance of hire seruyee. The 24
 on is mayster of his houshold, Anoper is his chambirleyn,
 Anoper serueth him of a dyssech, Anoper of the cuppe,
 Anoper is Styward, Anoper is Marescha^l, Anoper is
 Prynce of his Armes; And þus is he full nobely t 28
 ryally serued. And his lond dureth in verry brede .iiij.
 monethes iorneyes And in lengthe out of mesure, þat is
 to seyne a^ll the yles vnder erthe þat wee supposen to ben
 vnder vs. Besyde the yle of PENTEXOIRE þat is the lond 32
 of Prestre Io^hn is a gret yle long t brode þat men clepen
 MILSTORAK t it is in the lordschipe of Prestre Io^hn. In
 þat yle is gret plentee of godes. þere was dwellynge
 somtyme a riche man t it is not longe sithie t men clept 36
 him GATHOLONABES t he was full of canteles t of soty^h

Nyse, his
other
capital.

His
household.

Kings and
earls serve
him.

[¹ fol. 117 b]

The Lords
spiritual.

The officers
of the court.

Melazgerd.

The Old
Man of the
Mountain.

disceytes. And he hadde a fuH fair casteH t a strong in
 a mountayne, so strong t so noble pat noman cowde
 devise a fairere ne a strengere. And he had let muren aH
 4 the mountayne aboute with a strong waH t a fair And
 withinne po walles he had the fairest gardyn pat ony man
 myghte beholde t perein were trees berynge aH maner of
 frutes pat ony man cowde deuyse. And perein were
 8 also aH maner vertuous herbes of gode smeH and
 aH oper herbes also pat beren faire flourres. And he
 had also in pat gardyn many faire welles, And beside
 po welles he had lete make faire halles t 1 faire
 12 chambres depeynted aH with gold t azure. And pere
 weren in pat place many a dyuerse thinges And manye
 dyuerse storyes. And of bestes t of bryddes pat songen
 fuH delectably t meveden be craft, pat it semede pat pei
 16 weren quyke. And he had also in his gardyn aH maner
 of foules t of bestes pat ony man myghte thenke on for
 to haue pley or desport to beholde hem. And he had
 also in pat place the faireste damyseles pat myghte ben
 20 founde vnder the age of .xv. 3eer And the faireste 3onge
 striplynges pat men myghte gete of pat same age; And
 aH pei weren clothed in clothes of gold fuH richely And
 he seyde pat po weren aungeles. And he had also let
 24 make .iiij. welles faire t noble t aH envyround with ston
 of jaspere, of cristall, dyapred with gold t sett with
 precious stones t grete orient perles. And he had made
 a conduyt vnder ertlie so pat the .iiij. welles at his list on
 28 scholde renne mylk, Anoper wyn t anoper hony; And
 pat place he clept paradys. And whan pat ony gode
 knyght pat was hardy t noble cam to see this rialtee,
 he wolde lede him in to his paradys t schewen him peise
 32 wonderfuH thinges to his desport t the merueyllous t
 delicious song of dyuerse briddes t the faire damyseles
 t the faire welles of mylk of wyn t of hony plentevous
 remynge. And he wolde let make dyuerse jnstrumentes
 36 of Musik to sownen in an high tour so merily pat it was
 ioye for to here t noman scholde see the craft pere of.

His garden
of delights.

*Seven hundred
years
jewel*

[1 fol. 118a]

His live
hours.

The conduit
running
with milk,
wine and
honey.

Bold young
men were
brought in.

He told
them this
was
paradise,

and intoxi-
cated them
with
hashish,

[¹ fol. 118b]

He thus
persuaded
them to die
for him.

They became
assassins.

The Old
Man's castle
and garden
lately
destroyed.

And þo he seyde weren aungeles of god & þat place was
paradys þat god had behight to his frendes seyenge : DABO
VOBIS TERRAM FLUENTEM LACTE & MELLE. And þanne
wolde he maken hem to drynken of a certeyn drynk 4
whereof anon þei scholden ¹ be drunken And þanne wolde
hem thinken gretter delyt þan þei hadden before. And
þan wolde he seye to hem þat zif they wolde dyen for
him & for his loue þat after hire deth þei scholde come 8
to his paradys & þei scholden ben of the age of þo
damyselles & þei scholde pleyen with hem & zit ben
maydenes. And after þat zit scholde he putten hem in
a fayrere paradys, where þat þei scholde see god of 12
nature visibely in his magestee and in his blisse. And
þan wolde he schewe hem his entent And seye hem þat zif
þei wolde go sle such a lord or such a man þat was his
enemye or contrarious to his list, þat þei scholde not 16
drede to don it & for to be slayn þerfore hem self, for
after hire deth he wolde putten hem in to anoper paradys,
þat was an .C. fold fairere þan ony of the tothere & þere
scholde þei dwellen with the most fairest damyselles þat 20
myghte be & pley with hem eueremore. And þus wenten
many dyuerse lusty Bacheleres for to sle grete lordes
in dyuerse contrees þat weren his enemyes & made
hemsêlf to ben slayn in hope to haue þat paradys. And 24
þus often tyme he was revenged of his enemyes be his
sotyH disceytes & false cawteles. And whan the worthi
men of the contree hadden perceyued this sotyH falshod
of this GATHOLONABES, þei assembled hem with force & 28
assayleden his casteH & slown him & destroyeden aH
the faire places & aH the nobletees of þat paradys. The
place of the welles & of the walles & of many oper thinges
ben zit apertly sene, but the ricchesse is voyded clene ; 32
And it is not longes gon sith þat place was destroyed.

OF THE DEUELES HEDE IN THE VALEYE Ch. XXXII.
 PERILOUS, AND OF THE CUSTOMS OF FOLK
 IN DYUERSE YLES þAT BEN ABOUTEN IN
 THE LORDSCHIPE OF PRESTRE IOHN.

BESYDE þat yle of Mistorak vpon the left syde
 nygh to the ryuere of Pnison is a merueylous
 thing. þere is ¹a vale betwene the mountaynes þat The Vale
Perilous.
[1 fol. 119a.]
 4 dureth nygh a .iiij. myle And summen clepen it the
 vale enchaunted, Somme clepen it the vale of deueles
 t somme clepen it þe vale perilous. In þat vale heren
 men often tyme grete tempestes and thondres t grete
 8 murmures t noyses aH dayes t nyghtes And gret noyse
 as it were sown of tabours and of nakeres t of trompes,
 as þough it were of a gret feste. This vale is aH fuH
 of deueles t hath ben aHweys. And men seyn þere þat
 12 it is on of the entrees of helle. In þat vale is gret
 plentee of gold t syluer, Wherefore many mysbeleuyng
 men t manye cristene men also gon in oftentyme for to
 haue of the thresoure þat þere is, But fewe comen azen
 16 t namely of the mysbeleuyng men, ne of the cristene
 men nouþer, for anon þei ben strangled of deueles. And
 in mydd place of þat vale vnder a roche is an hed t It is full of
treasure.
 the visage of a deuyl bodyliche, fuH horrible t dredfuH
 20 to se. And it scheweth not, but the hed to the schuldres,
 But þere is noman in the world so hardy, cristene man
 ne oþer, but þat he wolde ben adrad for to beholde it
 t þat it wolde semen him to dye for drede, so is it
 24 hidouse for to beholde. For he beholdeth euery man so
 scharly with dredfuH eyen þat ben eueremore mevyng
 t sparklyng as fuyre t chaungeth t stereth so often
 in dyuerse manere with so horrible contenance, þat noman
 28 dar not neighen towards him. And fro him cometh out
 smoke t stynkande fuyr t so moche abhomynacioun, þat
 vnetlie noman may þere endure. But the gode cristene
 men þat ben stable in the feyth entren weH withouten
 32 perile, For þei wil first schryuen hem t marken hem The Devil's
Head.
Good Chris-
tians safe
from danger.

with the tokene of the holy cros, so þat the fendes ne
 [1 fol. 119 b] han ¹ no power ouer hem. But aȝ be it þat þei ben
 withouten perile ȝit natheles ne ben þei not withouten
 drede whan þat þei seen the deuēles visibely and bodyly 4
 aȝ aboute hem, þat maken fuȝ many dyuerse assautes
 t manaces in eyr t in erthe t agasten hem with strokes
 of thonder blastes and of tempestes, and the moste drede
 is, þat god wole taken vengeance þanne of þat þat men 8
 han mysdon aȝen his wille. And ȝee schuȝ vnderstonde
 þat whan my felowes and I weren in þat vale wee weren
 in gret thought wheþer þat we dursten putten oure bodies
 in aventure to gon in or non, in the protectioun of god. 12
 And somme of oure felowes accordeden to entre t somme
 noght. So þere weren with vs .ij. worthi men Frere
 Menoures, þat weren of lombardye þat seyden þat ȝif
 ony man wolde entren, þei wolde gon in with vs. And 16
 whan þei hadden seyde so vpon the gracyous trust of
 god t of hem wee leet synge masse t made euery man
 to ben schryuen t houseld. And þanne wee entreden
 .xiiij. persones, But at oure goyng out wee weren but 20
 .ix. And so wee wisten neuere wheþer þat oure felowes
 weren lost or eȝ turned aȝen for drede, But wee ne saugh
 hem neuer after; And þo weren .ij. men of GRECE t
 .iiij. of SPAYNE. And oure oþer felowes þat wolden not 24
 gon in with vs þei wenten by another coste to ben before
 vs t so þei were. And þus wee passeden þat perilouse
 vale t founden þerinne gold t syluer t precious stones
 t riche jewelles gret plentee, bothe here t þere as vs 28
 semed. But wheþer þat it was as vs semede, I wot nere
 for I touched none, be cause þat the deuēles ben so subtyl
 to make a thing to seme otherwise þan it is for to disceyne
 mankynde t þerfore I towched none And also because 32
 þat I wolde not ben put out of my ² deuocioun, for I was
 more deuout þanne þan euere I was before or after, And
 aȝ for the drede of fendes þat I saugh in dyuerse figures
 And also for the gret multytude of dede bodies þat I 36
 saugh þere liggyng be the weye be aȝ the vale as

Some of my
party agreed
to enter.

Two friars
promised to
join us.

Fourteen
went in,
nue came
back.

We found
much
treasure
there, but I
touched
none of it.

[2 fol. 120 a]

Many dead
bodies lay
by the way.

- þongh þere had ben a bataylle betwene .ij. kynges
 ⁊ the myghtyest of the contree, ⁊ þat the gretter partye
 had ben discomfyted ⁊ slayn. And I trowe þat vnethē
 4 scholde ony contree haue so moche peple *within him* as
 lay slayn in *pat vale*, as vs thoughte, the whiche was an
 hidouse sight to seen. And I merueylled moche þat þere
 weren so manye ⁊ the bodyes aH hole *withouten* rotynge,
 8 But I trowe þat fendes made hem semen to ben so hole
withouten rotynge. But þat myghte not ben to myn
 avys þat so manye scholde haue entred so newly ne so
 manye newly slayn *withouten* stynkyng ⁊ rotyng.
 12 And manye of hem weren in habite of cristene men, But
 I trowe wel þat it weren of suche þat wenten in for
 couetyse of the thresoure þat was þere ⁊ hadden ouer-
 moche feblenesse in the feith, so þat hire hertes ne myghte
 16 not endure in the beleve for drede; And þefore weren
 wee the more deuout a gret del. And ȝit wee weren cast
 down ⁊ beten down many tymes to the hard erthe be
 wyndes and thondres ⁊ tempestes, But eueremore god of
 20 his grace halp vs, And so wee passed *pat perilous vale*
withouten perile ⁊ *withouten* encombrance, thanked be aH
 myghty godd. After this bezonde þat vale is a gret yle
 Where the folk ben grete GEAUNTES of .xxviij. fote longe
 24 or of .xxx. fote long And þei han no clothinge but of
 skynnes of bestes þat þei hangen vpon hem And þei
 eten no breed, But aH raw flesch ⁊ þei drynken mylk of
 bestes, for þei han plentee of aH bestaylle; And þei haue
 28 none houses to lyen ¹june. And þei eten more gladly
 mannes flesch þanne ony oper flesch. In to *pat yle* dar
 noman gladly entren, And ȝif þei seen a schipp ⁊ men
 þereȝinne, Anon þei entren in to the see for to take hem.
 32 And men seyden vs þat in an yle bezonde þat weren
 GEANTES of grettere stature, summe of .xlv. fote or of .l.
 fote long And as sommemen seyn, summe of .l. eubytes
 long. But I sagh none of þo, for I hadde no lust to go
 36 to þo parties, because þat noman cometh nouper into *pat*
yle ne into *pat oper*, but ȝif he be deuoured anon. And

There was
no sign of
decay.

Many wore
Christian
dress.

We were
knocked
down, but
not hurt.

Giants.

(¹ fol. 120b)

They devour
travellers.

Women that
kill with a
look.

The fools of
despair.

[¹ fol. 121 a]

among þo geauntes ben scheep als grete as oxen here t þei
beren gret wolles t rough; Of þo scheep I haue seyn many
tymes. And men han seen many tymes þo GEAUNTES
taken men in the see out of hire schippes t broughte 4
hem to londe .ij. in on hond t .ij. in anoþer, etynge hem
goynge aH raw t aH quyk. Anoþer yle is pere toward
the north in the see OCCEAN, where þat ben fuH cruele t
ful euele wommen of nature t þei han precious stones in 8
hire eyen. And þei ben of þat kynde, þat 3if þei beholden
ony man with wratthe þei slen him anon with the be-
holdynge, as doth the BASILISK. Anoþer yle is pere fuH
fair t gode t gret t fuH of peple Where the custom is 12
such, þat the firste nyght þat þei ben maryed þei maken
anoþer man to lye be hire wifes for to haue hire mayden-
hode, t þerfore þei taken gret huyre t gret thank. And
þer ben certeyn men in enery town þat seruen of non 16
oþer thing And þei clepen hem CADEBERIZ, þat is to
seyne: the foles of wanhope. For þei of the contree
holden it so gret a thing t so perilous for to haue the
maydenhode of a womman, þat hem semeth þat þei þat 20
hauen first ¹ the maydenhode putteth him in auenture of
his lif. And 3if the husbonde fynde his wif mayden that
oper next nyght after þat sche scholde haue ben leyn by
of the man þat is assigned þerfore, peraunter for dron- 24
keness or for sum other cause, the husbonde schaff pleyne
vpon him þat he hath not don his deueer in such crueH
wise as pough the officere wolde haue slayn him. But
after the firste nyght þat þei ben leyn by þei kepen hem 28
so streytely þat þei ben not so hardy to speke with no
man. And I asked hem the cause whi þat þei helden
such custom t þei seyden me þat of olde tyme men hadden
ben dede for deflourynge of maydenes þat hadden serpentes 32
in hire bodyes þat stongen men vpon hire 3erdes, þat
þei dyeden anon. And þerfore þei helden þat custom to
make oper men ordeynd þerfore, to lye be hire wyfes for
drede of deth t to assaye the passage be another [rather] (¹) 36

(¹) rather, missing in C.

- pan for to putte hem in pat aventure. After pat is
 anoper yle where pat wommen maken gret sorwe whan
 hire children ben yborn And whan þei dyen þei maken
 4 gret feste t gret ioye t reueH t þanne þei casten hem into
 a gret fuyr brennynge. And þo pat louen wel hire hus-
 bondes, 3if hire husbondes ben dede, þei casten hem also
 in the fuyr with hire children t brennen hem. And þei
 8 seyn þat the fuyr schaff clensen hem of aH filthies t of aH
 vices And þei schuH gon pured t clene into anoper world
 to hire husbondes, t þei schuH leden hire children with
 hem. And the cause whi þat þei wepen whan hire chil-
 12 dren ben born is þis: for whan þei comen into this world,
 þei comen to ¹labour, sorwe and heynness. And whi þei
 maken ioye and gladnesse at hire dyenge is because pat
 as þei seyn þanne þei gon to paradys, where the ryueres
 16 rennen mylk t hony, where þat men seen hem in ioye t in
 habundance of godes, withouten sorwe t labour. In pat
 yle men maken hire kyng eueremore be electioun And
 þey ne chesen him nought for no noblesse ne for no
 20 ricchess, but such on as is of gode maneres t of gode
 condiciouns, t þerewithaH rightfuH; And also pat he be
 of gret Age t pat he haue no children. In pat yle men
 ben fuH rightfuH and þei don rightfuH Iuggementes in
 24 euery cause, bothe of riche t pore, smale and grete, after
 the quantytee of the trespas þat is mysdon. And the kyng
 may nought deme noman to deth withouten assent of his
 barouns t operwyse men of conseiH t pat aH the court
 28 acorde þerto. And 3if the kyng himself do ony homy-
 cydie or ony cryme, as to sle a man or ony such cas,
 he schaff dye þefore, but he schaff not be slayn as
 another man, But men schuH defende in peyne of deth
 32 þat noman be so hardy to make him companye, ne to
 speke with hym, ne pat noman 3eue him ne selle him ne
 serue him nouthur of mete ne of drynk; And so schaff
 he dye in myschef. þei spare noman pat hath trespassed
 36 nouþer for loue ne for fauour ne for ricchess ne for
 nobless, but þat he schaff haue after pat he hath don.

Birth causes
mourning,
death raises
joy.

Stuttee: fire
purities.

This world
is full of
sorrows.
[¹ fol. 121 b]

Kings are
elected.

Old and
childless
men only
become
kings.

Criminal
kings
boycotted.

Bezonde þat yle is another yle where is gret multytude of
 Hares and poultry kept as pets, not to be eaten. folk t þei wole not for noþing eten flesch of hares ne of
 hennes ne of gees; And 3it þei bryngen forth ynowe for
 to seen hem t to beholden hem only. But þei eten 4
 flessch of aH oper bestes t drynken mylk. In pat contree
 [1 fol. 122 a] þei t taken hire doughtres t hire sustres to here wyfes t
 hire opere kynneswommen, And 3if pere ben .x. men or
 Community of wives. .xij. men or mo dwellynge in an hows, the wif of euerych 8
 of hem schaff ben comoun to hem alle pat duellen in pat
 hows, So pat euery man may ligen with whom he wole
 of hem on o nyght t with another Another nyght. And
 Children are fathered on anybody. 3if sche haue ony child sche may 3eue it to what man 12
 pat sche list pat hath companyed with hire, so pat noman
 knoweth pere Wheþer the child be his or anoþeres. And 3if
 ony man seye to hem þat þei norisschen oper mennes
 children, þei answeren pat so don oper men hires. In 16
 Crocodiles. þat contree t be aH ynde ben gret plentee of COKÓDRILLES,
 þat is a maner of a long serpent as I haue seyð before.
 And in the nyght þei dwellen in the water t on the day
 vpon the lond in roches t in CAUES. And þei ete no 20
 mete in aH the wynter, but þei ly3n as in a drem, as
 don the serpentes. þeise serpentes slen men t þei eten
 hem wepynge. And whan þei eten þei meven the ouer-
 jowe t nought the nether iowe t þei haue no tonge. In 24
 þat contree t in many opere bezonde þat t also in manye
 on this half, men putten in werke the sede of cotoun
 And þei sowen it euery 3eer t þan groweth it in smale
 How cotton grows. trees pat beren cotoun. And so don men euery 3ere, so 28
 pat pere is plentee of cotoun at aH tymes. Item in this
 yle t in many opere pere is a maner of wode hard t
 Wood that burns a year; incombustible and hard woods. strong, Whoso couereth the coles of þat wode vnder the
 assehes pereoffe, the coles wil duellen t abyden aH quyk 32
 a 3ere or more. And þat tre hath many leues as the
 GYNYPRE hath. t pere ben also many trees þat of nature
 þei wole neuer brenne ne rote in no manere. And pere
 ben note trees þat beren notes als grete as a mannes hed. 36
 The giraffe. pere also be many bestes pat ben clept ORAFLES, In

- ARABYE *pei ben clept GERFAUNTZ*, ¹ *pat* is a best pomelee or [1 fol. 122 b]
 spotted, *pat* [is] ⁽¹⁾ but a lityH more high *pan* is a stede, But
 he hath the necke a .xx. cubytes long, And his croupe t
 4 his tayl is as of an hert And he may loken ouer a gret
 high hous. And *pere ben* also in *pat* contree manye
 CAMLES, *pat* is a lytiH best as a GOOT *pat* is wyld t he The
 lyneth be the eyr and eteth nought ne drynketh nought chamaleon.
 8 at no tyme. And he chaungeth his colour oftentyme,
 For men seen him often sitthes now in o colour t now
 in anoper colour, And he may chaunge him in to aH
 maner coloures *pat* him list, saf only in to red t white.
 12 *pere ben* also in *pat* contree passynge grete *serpentes*,
 Summe of .vj. fote long t *pei ben* of dyuerse coloures as Many-
 rayed rede, grene t 3alowe, blewe t blake t aH spekelede. coloured
 t *pere ben* opere *pat* han crestes vpon hire hedes t *pei gon* snakes.
 16 [vpon] ⁽²⁾ hire feet vpright And *pei ben* wel a .iiij. fadme
 gret or more. And *pei* duellen aHwey in roches or in
 mountaynes ⁽³⁾ And *pei* han aHwey the throte open, of
 whens *pei* droppen venym aHweys. And *pere ben* also
 20 wyld swyn of many coloures als grete as *ben* oxen in Boars,
 oure contree t *pei ben* aH spotted as *ben* 3onge fownes. hedgehogs,
 And *pere ben* also VRCHOUNES als grete as wyld swyn lions.
 here, Wee clepen hem PORCZ DE SPYNE. And *pere ben*
 24 lyouns aH white gret t myghty. And *pere ben* also of
 oper bestes als grete t more gretter *pan* is a destrere,
 And men clepen hem LOERANCZ And summen clepen hem
 ODENTHOS And *pei* han a blak hed t .iiij. longe hornes Odonto-
 28 trenchant in the front scharpe as a swerd t the body is tyranus.
 sclendre; And he is a fuH felonous best And he chaceth
 t sleeth the ² OLIFANT. *pere ben* also manye opere bestes [2 fol. 123 a]
 fuH wykked t crueH *pat* ben not mocheles more *pan* a Nameless
 32 bere And *pei* han the hede lych a BORE t *pei* han .vj. monsters.
 feet And on euery foote .ij. large clawes trenchant And
 the body is lych a BERE, t the tayl as a lyoun. And
pere ben also myse als grete as houndes t 3alowe myse
 36 als grete as RABENES. And *pere ben* GEES aH rede pre

(1) is, missing, C.

(2) vpo, C.

(3) mount taynes, C.

sithes more gret þan oure here t þei han the hed, the
 necke t the brest aH blak. And many oper dyuerse
 bestes ben in þo contrees t eHwhere pere abouten t
 manye dyuerse briddes also, of the whiche it were to longe 4
 for to tell þou t þefore I passe ouer at this tyme.

Ch. XXXIII. OF THE GODENESS OF THE FOLK OF THE
 YLE OF BRAGMAN; OF KYNG ALISANDRE,
 AND WHEREFORE THE EMPEROUR OF YNDE
 IS CLEPT PRESTRE IOHN.

The isle of
 Brahmins.

Their
 virtues.

They obey
 the ten
 command-
 ments.

[1 fol. 123 b]

Their
 climate is as
 good as they
 are.

AND bezonde þat yle is anoper yle gret t gode and
 plentifulous where þat ben gode folk t trewe and
 of gode lynyuge after hire beleve and of gode feyth. 8
 And aH be it þat þei ben not cristned ne haue no perfytt
 lawe, 3it natheles of kyndely lawe þei ben fuH of aH
 vertue t þei eschewen aH vices t aH malices t aH synnes.
 For þei ben not proude ne coueytous ne envyous ne 12
 wrathfuH ne glotouns ne leccherous Ne þei don to no
 man oper wise þan þei wolde þat oper men diden to hem.
 And in this poynt þei fuHfillen the .x. commandementes
 of god, And 3if no charge of aveer ne of ricchess And þei 16
 lye not ne þei swere not for non occasioun, but þei seyn
 symply 3E and NAY, For þei seyn he þat swereth wil
 disceyue his neyghbore; And þefore aH þat þei don þei
 don it withonten othi. And men clepen þat yle the yle 20
 of BRAGMAN, And somme men clepen it the lond of feyth.
 1 And þorgH þat lond rennetH a gret ryuere þat is clept
 THEBE. And in generaH aH the men of þo yles t of aH
 the marches pereabouten ben more trewe þan in ony 24
 othere contrees pereabouten t more rightfuH þan opere
 in aH thinges. In þat yle is no thef ne mordrere ne
 comoun womman ne pore beggere ne neuere was man
 slayn in þat contree. And þei ben so chast t leden so 28
 gode lif as þat þei weren religious men, And þei fasten
 aH dayes. And because þei ben so trewe t so rightfuH
 t so fuH of aH gode condiciouns þei weren neuere greued

- with* tempestes ne *with* thonder ne *with* leyt ne *with*
 hayl ne *with* pestylence ne *with* werre ne *with* hunger
 ne [with] ⁽¹⁾ non *oper* tribulacioun, as wee ben many tymes
 4 amonges vs for oure synnes. Wherefore it semeth wel *pat*
 god loueth hem & is plesed *with* hire creance for hire gode
 dedes. *pei* beleven wel in god *pat* made aH thinges &
 him *pei* worschipen. And *pei* preysen non erthely
 8 ricchess, And so *pei* ben aH rightfuH And *pei* lyuen fuH
 ordynatly & so sobrelly in mete & drynk, *pat* *pei* lyuen
 right longe. And the most part of hem dyen withouten
 sykness whan nature fayleth hem for ekle. And it
 12 befeH in kyng ALISANDRES tyme *pat* he purposed him
 to conquare *pat* yle & to maken hem to holden of him.
 And whan *pei* of the contre herden it *pei* senten
 Messangeres to him *with* lettres *pat* seyden thus: *What*
 16 *may* ben ynow to *pat* man to whom aH the world is
 insuffisant? *þou* schalt fynde no thing in vs *pat* *may*
 cause *pe* to werren azenst vs. For wee haue no ricchess
 ne none wee coueyten, And aH the godes of oure contree
 20 ben in comoun. Oure mete *pat* wee susteyne *with* aH
 oure bodies is oure ricchess, And in¹stede of tresour of
 gold & syluer wee maken oure tresoure of accord & pees
 & for to loue euery man *oper*. And for to apparaylle
 24 *with* oure bodies wee vsen a sely lityH clout for to
 wrappen in oure careynes. Oure wyfes ne ben not
 arrayed for to make no man plesance, but only
 counable array for to eschewe folye. Whan men peynen
 28 hem to arraye the body for to make it semen fayrere þan
 god made it, *pei* don gret synne, For man schold not
 devise ne Aske gretter beantee þan god hath ordeyned
 man to ben at his birthie. The erthie mynystreth to vs
 32 .ij. thinges: Oure liflode *pat* cometh of the erthie *pat* wee
 lyue by & oure sepulture after oure deth. Wee haue ben in
 perpetueH pees tiH now *pat* *þou* come to disherite vs. And
 also wee hane a kyng nought only for to do Iustice to
 36 euery man, for he schal fynde no forfeite among vs, but

God loves
them.

Their
message to
King
Alexander.

We are
poor.

[1 fol. 124a]

The earth
provides us
with food
and with
graves.

(1) wit, C.

We need
neither law
courts nor
punish-
ments.

Alexander
confirms
their peace.

Oxydraces
or Gymno-
sophists.

[1 fol. 124 b]

Alexander
offers to
grant them
any request.

They ask
for im-
mortality.

They
reprove him
for his
pride.
He must
leave all his
earthly
goods.

for to kepe nobless & for to schewe pat we ben obeysant
wee haue a kyng. For Iustice ne hath not among vs no
place, for wee don to noman oper wise pan we desiren
pat men don to vs, so pat rightwisness ne vengeance han 4
nought to don amonges vs; so pat no thing pou may take
fro vs but oure gode pes pat aH weys hath dured among
vs. And whan kyng ALISANDRE had rad peise lettres he
thoughte pat he scholde do gret synne for to trouble hem 8
And panne he sente hem surteez pat pei scholde not ben
aferd of him & pat pei scholde kepen hire gode maneres
& hire gode pees as pei hadden vsed before of custom &
so he let hem allone. Anoper yle pere is pat men clepen 12
OXIDRATE & anoper yle pat men clepen GYNOSOPHE
Where pere is also gode folk & full of gode feyth. And
pei holden for the moste partye the gode condicions
and customs & gode maneres as men of the contree abone- 16
seyd, but pei gon aH naked. Into pat yle entred kyng
ALISANDRE to see the manere, And whan he saugh hire
gret feyth & hire trouthe pat was amonges hem, he seyde
pat he wolde not greuen hem And bad hem aske of hym 20
what pat pei wolde haue of him, riechess or ony thing
elles & pei scholde haue it with gode wille. And pei
answerden pat he was rieche ynow pat hadde mete &
drynke to susteyne the body with, For the riechess of 24
this world pat is transitorie is not worth. But 3if it were
in his powere to make hem jnmortall, pereof wolde pei
preyen him & thanken him. And Alisandre answerde
hem pat it was not in his powere to don it, because he 28
was mortell as pei were. And panne pei asked him whi
he was so proud & so fierce & so besy for to putten aH the
world vnder his subiectioun, right as pou were a god & hast
no terme of thi lif, neiper day ne hour, And wyluest to 32
haue aH the world at thi commandement, pat schall leue pe
withouten fayle or pou leue it. And right as it hath ben
to oper men before pe, right so it schall ben to opere after pe
And from hens schaltow here no thyng, But as pou were 36
born naked, right so aH naked schall pi body ben turned

- into erthe þat þou were made of. Wherfore þou scholdest
 thenke & jmpresse it in thi mynde þat no þing is jumortall
 but only god þat made aH þing. Be the whiche answe
 4 ALISANDRE was gretly astoneyed & abayst & aH confuse
 departed from hem. And aH be it þat theyse folk han
 not the articles of oure feyth as wee han, natheles for
 hire gode feyth natureH & for hire gode entent I trowe fully
 8 þat god loueth hem & þat god [taketh] ⁽¹⁾ hire seruyse to
 gree, right as he did of Iob þat was a paynem & held ¹him
 for his trewe servant. And þerfore aH be it þat pere ben
 many dyuerse lawes in the world, zit I trowe þat god
 12 loueth alweys hem þat louen him & seruen him mekely in
 trouthe And namely hem þat dispysen the veyn glorie
 of this world, as þis folk don & as job did also. And
 þerfore seyde oure lord be the mouth of OZEE the
 16 prophete: PONAM EIS MULTIPLES LEGES MEAS. And also
 in another place: QUI TOTUM ORBEM SUBDIT SUIS LEGIBUS.
 And also oure lord seyth in the gospeH: ALIAS OUES
 HABEO, QUE NON SUNT EX HOC OVILI. þat is to seyne þat
 20 he hadde othere seruantes þan þo þat ben vnder cristene
 lawe. And to þat acordeth the avisioun þat seynt PETER
 saugh at IAFF, How the aungel cam from heuene &
 broughte before him dyuerse bestes as serpentes & oper
 24 crepyng bestes of the erthe & of oper also gret plentee, and
 bad him take & etc. And seynt PETER answerde: I ete
 neuer, quod he, of vnclene bestes. And þanne seyde the
 aungeH: NON DICAS INMUNDA QUE DEUS MUNDAUIT. And
 28 þat was in tokene þat noman scholde haue in despite non
 erthely man for here dyuerse lawes, For wee knowe not
 whom god loueth ne whom god hateth. And for þat
 ensample whan men seyn DE PROFUNDIS: þei seyn it in
 32 comoun & in generall, with the cristene: PRO ANIMABUS
 OMNIUM DEFUNCTORUM PRO QUIBUS SIT ORANDUM. And
 þerfore seye I of this folk þat ben so trewe & so feythfull,
 þat god loueth hem, For he hath amonges hem many of
 36 the prophetes & aHwey hath had. And in þo yles þei

God loves
natural faith
in heathens.

[1 fol. 125 a]

Differences
of religion
do not
matter.

Holy Writ
allows of a
variety of
religions.

Vision of
St. Peter
in Joppa.

God loves
the Brag-
mans.

propheeyed the JNCARNACIOUN of oure lord IHESU CRIST ;
How he scholde *ben* born of a mayden .iij. MiH 3eer or
more or oure lord was born of the virgyne MARIE. And
pei beleeven wel in the JNCARNACIOUN t *pat* fuH perfitelý, 4
but *pei* knowe not the manere how he suffred, his
passioun and detH for vs. And bezonde *peise* yles *pere*
is another yle *pat* is clept PYTAN. The folk of *pat*
[¹ fol. 125 b] contree ¹ ne tyle not ne laboure not the ertHe, for *pei* eten 8
no manere thing. And *pei* *ben* of gode colour t of faire
schap after hire gretness, But the smale *ben* as DWERGHES,
but not so lityH as *ben* the PIGMEYES. *peise* men *lynen*
be the smeH of wylde APPLES And whan *pei* gon ony fer 12
weye *pei* *beren* the APPLES *with* *hem*, For 3if *pei* hadden
lost the sauour of the APPLES *pei* scholde *dýen* anon. *pei*
ne *ben* not fuH resonable but *pei* *ben* symple t bestyaf.
After *pat* is another yle where the folk *ben* aH skynned 16
roughi heer as a roughi best, saf only the face t the pawme
of the hond. *peise* folk gon als wel vnder the water of
the see as *pei* don aboue the lond aH drye And *pei* eten
bope flessch t fissch aH roughi. In this yle is a gret 20
Ryuere *pat* is wel a .ij. myle t an half of brede *pat* is
clept BUEMARE. And fro *pat* Ryuere a .xv. iorneyes in
lengthe goynge *be* the desertes of the tothier syde of the
Ryuere Whoso myght gon it, for I was not *pere*, But it 24
was told vs of *hem* of the contree, *pat* *withjune* po
desertes weren the trees of the SONNE t of the MONE, *pat*
spaken to kyng ALISANDRE And warned him of his detH.
And men seyn *pat* the folk *pat* kepen po trees t eten of the 28
frute t of the bawme *pat* groweth *pere* *lynen* wel .eccc.
3eer or .D. 3eere *be* vertue of the frut t of the
bawme. For men seyn *pat* bawme groweth *pere* in gret
plentee t nowhere elles, saf only at Babyloyne, as I haue 32
told 3ou before. Wee wolden han gon toward tho trees
fuH gladly, 3if wee had myght, But I trowe *pat* an .C.
MiH men of Armes myghten not passen po desertes
safly, for the gret multytude of wylde bestes t of grete 36
dragouns t of grete serpentes *pat* *pere* *ben*, *pat* *slen* t

Dwarfs
feeding
on the smell
of wild
apples.

Hairy,
amphibious
folk.

The trees
of the Sun
and Moon.

No army
can fight
the beasts
of the
desert.

- deuouren aH þat comen aneyntes hem. In þat contre
 1 þen manye white OLIFANTES *withouten* nombre t of vny- ^[1 fol. 126 a]
 cornes t of lyouns of many maneres And many of suchie
 4 bestes þat I haue told before t of many oþer hydouse
 bestes *withouten* nombre. Manye othere yles pere ben in
 the lond of Prestre Iohn t manye grete merueyles þat
 weren to long to tellen aH, bothe of his richesse t of his
 8 nobless And of the gret plentee also of precious stones
 þat he hath. I trowe þat 3ee knowe wel ynow t haue
 herd seye wherfore this Emperour is clept Prestre Iohn,
 But natheles for hem þat knowen not I schal seye 3ou
 12 the cause. It was somtyme an Emperour pere, þat was a
 worthi t a fuH noble Prynce, þat hadde cristene knyghtes
 in his companye, as he hath þat is now. So it befeH
 þat he hadde gret list for to see the *seruise* in the chirche
 16 among cristene men. And þan dured cristendom bezonde
 the see aH TURKYE, SURRYE, TARTARIE, IERUSALEM,
 PALESTYNE, ARABYE, HALAPPEE t aH the lond of
 EGYPT. So it befeH þat this Emperour cam *with* a
 20 cristene knyght *with him* in to a chirche in EGYPT And
 it was the Saterday in wyttsonwoke And the Bisshopp
 made ordres. And he beheld t listend the *seruyse* fuH
 tentyfly And he asked the cristene knyght what men of
 24 degree þei scholden ben þat the prelate had before him.
 And the knyght answerde t seyde þat þei scholde ben
 prestes. And þan the Emperour seyde þat he wolde
 no lenger ben clept kyng ne Emperour, but Preest And
 28 þat he wolde haue the name of the firste preest þat wente
 out of the chirche. And his name was IOHN. And so
 eueremore sithens he is clept Prestre Iohn. In his lond
 ben manye cristene men of gode feyth t of gode lawe t
 32 namely of hem of the same contree t han comoun²ly hire
 prestes þat syngen the messe t maken the sacrament of
 the awtier of bred right as the GREKES don. But þei
 seye not so manye thinges at the messe as men don here,
 36 For þei seye not but only þat þat the APOSTLES seyden,
 as oure lord taughte hem, Right as Seynt PETER t seynt

The origin
of Prester
John's
name.

An
Emperor
attended
Christian
ordination
service in
Egypt.

He was so
impressed
that he
decided to
be called
priest,
and named
himself
John after a
priest.

[2 fol. 126 b]

His subjects
consecrate
the host like
the Greeks,
and sing
mass
without the
additions
made by the
Popes.

THOMAS t the oþer APOSTLES songen the mess, seyenge
the PATER NOSTER t the wordes of the sacrement. But
wee haue many mo Addiciouns þat dyuerse POPES han
made þat þei ne knowe not offe.

4

Ch. XXXIV. OF THE HILLES OF GOLD þAT PISSEMYRES
KEPEN, AND OF THE .IIIIJ. FLODES þAT
COMEN FROM PARADYS TERRESTRE.

The fruitful
isle of
Taprobane.

TOWARD the Est partye of Prestre Iohnes lond is
an yle gode t gret þat men clepen TAPROBANE þat
is fuH noble t fuH fructuous And the kyng pereof is fuH
riche t is under the obeysance of Prestre Iohn. And 8
aHweys pere þei make hire kyng be eleccoun. In þat
yle ben .ij. SOMERES t .ij. WYNTRES t men hervesten the
corn twyes a 3eer. And in aH the cesouns of the 3eer
ben the gardynes florisschit. þere dwellen gode folk t 12
resonable t manye cristene men amonges hem þat ben so
riche þat þei wyte not what to done with hire godes. Of
olde tyme whan men passed from the lond of Prestre
Iohn vnto þat yle men maden ordynance for to passe by 16
schippe .xxij. dayes or more, But now men passen by
schippe in .vij. dayes; And men may see the botme of
the see in many places, for it is not fuH depe. Besyde
þat yle toward the Est ben .ij. oþer yles And men clepen 20
þat on ORILLE t þat oþer ARGYTE, of the whiche aH the
lond is MYNE of gold t syluer. And þo yles ben right
where þat the REDE SEE ¹departeth fro the see OCCEAN,
And in þo yles men seen þer no sterres so clere as in 24
oþer places, For pere apperen no sterres but only o clere
sterre þat men clepen CANAPOS. And þere is not the
mone seyn in aH the LUNACIOUN saf only the seconde
quarteroun. In the yle also of þis TAPROBANE ben grete 28
hilles of gold þat PISSEMYRES kepen fuH diligently, And
þei fynen the pured gold t casten a wey the vnþured.
And þeise PISSEMYRES ben grete as houndes so þat noman
dar come to þo hilles, for the PISSEMYRES wolde assayllen 32

The sea
voyage.

Chryse and
Argyre, the
gold and
silver isles.
[¹ fol. 127 *a*]

The gold is
watched by
giant ants.

hem t denouren hem anon, so þat noman may gete of þat
gold but be gret sleighte. And þerfore whan it is gret
hete the pissemýres resten hem in the erthe from pryme
4 of the day in to noon And þan the folk of the contree
taken CAMAYLES, DROMEDARIES t HORS t oþer bestes t gon
thider t chargen hem in aH haste þat þei may. And
after þat þei fleen away in aH þat the bestes may go or the
8 pissemýres comen out of the erthe. And in oþer tymes
whan it is not so hote t þat the pissemýres ne resten hem
not in the erthe, þan þei geten gold be this sotyltee. þei
taken mares þat han 3onge coltes or foles t leyn vpon the
12 mares voyde vesselles made þerfore t þei ben aH open
abouen t hangynge lowe to the erthe. And þanne þei
sende forth þo mares for to pasturen aboute þo hilles t
withholden the foles with hem at home. And whan the
16 pissemýres sen þo vesselles, þei lepen in anon, And þei
han this kynde, þat þei lete no thing ben empty among
hem, but anon þei fillen it, be it what maner of ping þat
it be, ¹ t so þei fillen þo vesselles with gold. And whan
20 þat the folk supposen þat the vesseH ben fulle, þei putten
forth Anon the 3onge foles t maken hem to nyzen after
hire dames t þan Anon the mares retournen towards hire
foles with hire charges of gold t þan men dischargen hem
24 t geten gold ynow be this sotyltee, For the PISSEMYRES
wole suffren bestes to gon and pasturen amonges hem,
but no man in no wyse. And bezonde the lond t the
yles t the desertes of Prestre Iohanes lordschipe in goynge
28 streight towards the est, men fynde no ping but
montaynes t roches fuH grete. And pere is the derke
Regyoun Where no man may see nouþer be day ne be
nyghte as þei of the contree seyn. And þat desert t þat
32 place of derknesse duren fro this cost vnto paradys
terrestre, where þat Adam oure formest fader t Eue weren
putt þat dwelleden pere but lytyH while, And þat is
towards the Est at the begynnynge of the erthe. But
36 þat is not þat Est þat we clepe oure Est on this half,
where the sonne riseth to vs, for whanne the sonne is Est in

In hot
weather, the
natives take
advantage
of the ants'
stay inside
the earth.

In colder
weather,
mares are
driven in
with empty
baskets
which the
ants fill.

[1 fol. 127 b]

Then the
mares return
to their
foals.

The Land
of Darkness.

The sun
rises there
when it is
midnight
here.

Before
Noah's
Flood, the
earth was an
exact globe.

I was not in
Paradise.
[1 fol. 128 a]

Its altitude.

The
enclosure.

The spring
of the four
rivers.

Ganges.

The Nile.

Tigris.

Euphrates.

þo partyes toward paradys terrestre, it is þanne mydnyght
in oure parties o this half for the roundeness of the erthe,
of the whiche I haue towched to 3ou of before. For oure
lord god made the erthe aH rownd, in the mydde place of 4
the firmament, And pere as mountaynes t hilles ben t
valeyys þat is not but only of Noes flode þat wasted the
softe ground t the tendre t feH down into valeyys. And
the harle erthe t the roche abyden mountaynes, Whan 8
the soft erthe t tendre wax nessche porgh the water t
feH and ¹becamen valeyys. Of paradys ne can I not
speken propurly for I was not pere; it is fer bezonde t
þat forthinketh me. And also I was not worthi. But as 12
I haue herd seye of wyse men bezonde, I schaff telle 3ou
with gode wiH. Paradys terrestre, as wise men seyn is
the highest place of erthe þat is in aH the world And it
is so high þat it toucheth nygh to the cerele of the mone, 16
pere as the mone maketh hire torn. For sche is so high
þat the flode of Noe ne myght not come to hire þat wolde
haue couered aH þe erthe of the world aH abowte t
abouen t benethen, saf paradys only allone And this 20
paradys is enclosed aH aboute with a waH t men wyte
not wherof it is, For the walles ben couered aH ouer
with mosse, as it semeth. And it semeth not þat the
waH is ston of nature ne of non oper thing þat the waH is. 24
And þat waH streccheth fro the SOUTH to the north And
it hath not but on entree þat is closed with fyre
brennynge, so þat noman þat is mortall ne dar not entren.
And in the most high place of paradys, euene in the 28
myddel place, is a welle þat casteth out the .iiij. flodes
þat rennen be dyuerse londes. Of the whiche the firste
is clept PHISON or GANGES, þat is aH on, and it renneth
porghout YNDE or EMLAK, In the whiche Ryuere ben manye 32
precieuse stones And mochel of LIGNUM ALOES And moche
graueH of gold. And þat oper Ryuere is clept NILUS or
GYSON, þat goth be ETHIOPE t after be EGYPT. And þat
oper is clept TIGRIS, þat renneth be ASSIRYE t be ARMENYE 36
the grete. And þat other is clept EUPRATE þat renneth also

- be MEDEE & be AR¹MONYE and be PERSYE. And men pere [1 R.4. 123 b]
 bezonde seyn þat alle the swete watres of the world
 abouen & benethen taken hire begynnyng of þat welle of
 4 Paradys And out of þat welle aȝ watres comen & gon.
 The firste Ryuere is clept PHISON, þat is to seyne in hire
 langage ASSEMBLEE, For manye opere Ryueres meten
 hem pere & gon into þat Ryuere. And summen clepen it
 8 GANGES for a kyng þat was in YNDE þat highte GANGERES & Etymologies
 þat it ran porghout his lond. And þat water [is] ⁽¹⁾ in sum of those
 place clere & in sum place trouble, In sum place hoot & in names.
 sum place cold. The seconde Ryuere is clept NILUS or Ganges.
 12 GYSON, for it is aȝwey trouble And GYSON in the langage
 of ETHIOPE is to seye trouble. And in the langage of
 EGIPT also. The thridde Ryuere þat is clept TIGRIS is as Nile.
 moche for to seye as faste rennyng For he renneth more
 16 faste þan ony of the toper And also pere [is] ⁽¹⁾ a best þat
 is cleped TIGRIS þat is faste rennyng. The fourthe Ryuere
 is clept EUFRATES, þat is to seyne wel beryng for pere
 growen many godes vpon þat Ryuere as cornes, frutes & Euphrates.
 20 opere godes ynowe plentee. And ȝee schuȝ vnderstonde
 þat noman þat is morteȝ ne may not approchen to þat
 paradys. For he londe noman may go for wylde bestes
 þat ben in the desertes & for the high mountaynes & grete
 24 huge Roches þat noman may passe by, for the derke
 places þat ben pere & þat manye. And be the Ryueres
 may noman go, for the water renneth so rudely & so
 sharply because þat it cometh down so outrageously
 28 ² from the high places abouen, þat it renneth in so grete
 wawes þat no schipp may not rowe ne seyle azenes it.
 And the water roreth so & maketh so huge noyse & so gret
 tempest þat noman may here oper in the schipp, þough
 32 he cryede with aȝ the craft þat he cowde in the hieste
 voys þat he myȝhte. Many grete lordes han assayed with
 gret wille many tymes for to passen be þo ryneres toward
 paradys with ful grete companyes, But þei myȝhte not
 36 speden in hire viage. And manye dyeden for weryness of
 Many have tried.

⁽¹⁾ is, missing, C.

Some were
tired to
death.

ome
became
blind and
deaf.

Some were
drowned.

rowynge aȝenst þo stronge wawes, And many of hem
becamen blynde And many deve for the noyse of the
water. And summe weren perisschit t loste withjnnue the
wawes, so þat no mortell man may approche to þat place 4
withouten speeyaH grace of god, so þat of þat place I can
sey ȝou nomore And perfore I schaff holde me stille And
retornen to þat þat I haue seen.

Ch. XXXV.

OF THE CUSTOMS OF KYNGES t OþERE þAT
DWELLEN IN THE YLES COSTYNGE TO
PRESTRE IOHNES LOND, AND OF THE WOR-
SCHIBE þAT THE SONE DOTH TO THE FADER
WHAN HE IS DEDE.

From the
Antipodes
travellers
turn back,
instead of
proceeding
round the
world.

FROM po yles þat I haue spoken of before in the lond 8
of Prestre Iohn, þat ben vnder erthe as to vs þat
ben o this half And of oper yles þat ben more further
beȝonde, Whoso wil pursuen hem for to comen aȝen right
to the parties þat he cam fro t so enviroune aH erthe. 12
but what for the yles, what for the see t what for strong
rowynge fewe folk assayen for to passen þat passage, aH
be it þat men myȝhte don it wel þat myȝht¹ ben of power
to dresse him þereto as I haue seyd ȝou before. And 16
perfore men returnen from po yles aboueseyd be oper yles
costynge fro the lond of Prestre Iohn And þanne comen
men in returnynge to an yle þat is clept CASSON And þat
yle hath wel .lx. iorneyes in lengthe t more þan .l. in 20
brede. This is the beste yle t the beste kyngdom þat is
in aH þo parties outtaken CATHAY. And ȝif the mar-
chauntes vseden als moche þat contre as þei don CATHAY,
it wolde ben better þan CATHAY in a schort while. This 24
contree is full wel enhabyted t so full of cytees t of gode
townes t enhabyted with peple, þat whan a man goth out
of o cytee men seen another cytee euene before hem.
And þat is what partye þat a man go in aH þat contree. 28
In þat yle is gret plentee of aH godes for to lyue with t
of aH manere of spices And þere ben grete forestes of

[1 fol. 129b]

Kan-sou.

Dersity of
its
population.

A wealthy
and
powerful
province.

CHESTEYNES. The kyng of *pat yle* is fuH riche t fuH myghty And natheles he holt his lond of the grete CHANE t is obeyssant to him, For it is on of the .xij. prounces
4 *pat* the gret CHANE hathi vnder him withouten his propre lond t withouten *oper* lesse yles *pat* he hathi, for he hathi fuH manye. From *pat* kyngdom comen men in returnyng to ano*per* yle *pat* is clept RYBOTH t it is also Tibet. /
8 vnder the grete CHANE *pat* is a fuH gode contree t fuH plentefous of aH godes t of wynes t frut t aH *oper* ricchess. And the folk of *pat* contree han none houses but *pei* dwellen t lyggen aH vnder tentes made of blak
12 ferne by aH the contree. And the princypaH cytee t the most royaH is aH walled with blak ston t white,¹ And [1 fol. 130 a] aH the stretes also ben pathied of the same stones. In *pat* cytee is noman so hardy to schede blode of noman ne of
16 no best for the reuerence of an ydole *pat* is worschipt *pere*. And in *pat* yle dwelleth the POPE of hire lawe *pat* The Grand Lama.
pei clepen lobassy. This LOBASSY zenethi aH the benefices t alle *oper* dignytees t aH *oper* thinges *pat* belongen to
20 the ydole And alle *po pat* holden onything of hire chirches, Religious t *opere* obeyen to him as men don here to the POPE OF ROME. In *pat* yle *pei* han a custom be aH the contree *pat* whan the fader is ded of ony man t the sone Funeral rites.
24 list to do gret worschipe to his fader, he sendeth to aH his frendes t to aH his kyn t for religious men t prestes t for mynstraH also gret plentee. And *panne* men beren the dede body vnto a gret hiH with gret ioye t solempnyte
28 And whan *pei* han broughte it thider the chief prelate smytethi of the hede And leythi it vpon a gret plater of gold or of syluer, zif [he] (¹) be so ryche a man. And The dead body is cut to pieces.
pan he takethi the hede to the sone And *panne* the sone t
32 his *oper* kyn syngen t seyn manye orisouns. And *panne* the prestes t the Religious men smyten aH the body of the dede man in peeces And *panne* *pei* seyn certeyn orisouns. And the foules of raveyne of aH the contree The birds of the air eat it.
36 abowten knowen the custom of long tyme before [t] comen

(¹) he, missing, C.

The funeral
service.
[1 fol. 130 b]

The family
are
honoured if
many birds
partake.

The head is
eaten by the
best friends.

The skull is
made into a
cup.

[2 fol. 131 a]

fleenge abouen in the eyr as EGLES, GLEDES, RAUENES t
opere foules of raveyne pat eten flesch. And þan the
preestes casten the gobettes of the flesch t þan the foules
ecche of hem taketh pat he may t goth a litiH þens t 4
eteth it, And so þei don whils ony pece lasteth of the
dede body. And after þat, as preestes amonges vs syngen
for the dede: ¹ SUBUENITE SANCTI DEI t CETERA, right so
þo prestes syngen with high voys in hire langage: Be- 8
holdeth how so worthi a man t how gode a man this was,
pat the Aungeles of god comen for to sechen him t for to
bryngen him in to paradys. And þanne semeth it to the
sone þat he is highliche worschipt whan þat manye briddes 12
t foules of raveyne comen t eten his fader, And he þat
hath most nombre of foules is most worschiped. And
þanne the sone bryngeth hoom with him aH his kyn t
his frendes t aH the opere to his hows t maketh hem a 16
gret feste, And þanne aH his frendes maken hire avaunt t
hire dalyance how the foules comen pider, here .v. here
.vj. here .x. t pere^{ti} .xx. t so forth t þei reioyssen hem
hugely for to speke pere of. And whan þei ben at mete, 20
the sone let brynge forth the hede of his fader t pere of
he zeueth of the flesch to his most specyaH frendes in
stede of entremess or a sukkarke. And of the brayn
þanne he leteth make a cuppe t pere of drynketh he t 24
his oper frendes also, with gret deuocioun in remem-
brance of the holy man þat the Aungeles of god han
eten. And pat cuppe the sone schaf kepe to drynken
of aH his lif tyme in remembrance of his fadir. From 28
þat lond in returnyng be .x. iorneyes porgh out
the lond of the grete CHANE is anoþer gode yle t a
gret kyngdom where the kyng is fuH riche t myghty.
And amonges the riche men of his contree is a passyng 32
riche man pat is no PRYNCE ne DUK ne ERL, But
he hath mo þat holden of him londes t oper lord-
schipes, for he is more riche, for he hath enery 36
annueH rente .CCC. MiH. ² hors charged with corn of
dyuerse greynes t of ryzs. And so he ledeth a fuH noble

- lif & a delycate after the custome of the contree. For he
 hath every day .i. faire damyseles aH maydenes þat seruen
 him euere more at his mete & for to lye be hem o nyght &
 4 for to do with hem þat is to his plesance. And whan he
 is at the table þei bryngen him hys mete at every tyme
 .v. and .v. togedre And in bryngyng hire seruyse þei
 syngen a song And after þat þei kутten his mete & putten
 8 it in his mouth, for he towcheth nothing ne handleth
 nought, but holdeth euere more his hondes before him vpon
 the table. For he hath so longe nayles þat he may take
 no thing ne handle no thing. For the noblesse of þat
 12 contree is to haue longe nayles & to make hem growen aH
 weys to ben als longe as men may, And þere ben manye
 in þat contree þat han hire nayles so longe þat þei
 envyroune aH the hond, And þat is a gret noblesse. And
 16 the nobless of the wommen is for to haue smale feet &
 litiH, And perfore anon as þei ben born, þey lete hynde
 hire feet so streyte þat þei may not growen half as nature
 wolde. And this [is]⁽¹⁾ the nobleye of the wommen þere
 20 to haue smale feet & lityH. And aHweys þeise damyseles
 þat I spak of befor syngen aH the tyme þat this riche
 man eteth. And whan þat he eteth no more of his firste
 cours panne oper .v. & .v. of faire damyseles bryngen him
 24 his seconde cours aH weys syngyng as þei dide befor.
 And so þei don contynuelly every day to the ende of his
 mete & in this manere ¹ he ledeth his lif And so dide þei
 before him þat weren his Auncestres & so schuH þei þat
 28 comen after him, withouten doynge of ony dedes of
 Armes, but lyuen euere more þus in ese as a swyn þat is
 fedd in sty for to ben made fatte. He hath a fuH fair
 palays & fuH riche, where þat he dwelleth june, of the
 32 whiche the walles ben in cyrcuyt .ij. myle. And he hath
 withjune many faire gardynes And many faure halles &
 chambres And the pawment of his halles & chambres ben
 of gold & syluer. And in the myd place of on of hys
 36 gardynes is a lytyH mounlayne Where þere is a lityH

The rich
man with
the fifty
maidens.

His nails
are so long
that they
must feed
him.

Women's
feet are
bound.

The maidens
sing as they
bring in the
courses of
the rich
man's
dinner.

[1 fol. 131 b]

He never
fights, but
lives like a
pig.

His palace
and gardens.

(1) is, missing, C.

His
sumn er-
house.

The
adherents of
all creeds
accept some
points of
the true
faith.

They
believe in
the God of
Nature.

[¹ fol. 132 a]

They know
parts of the
Old
Testament.

They
worship
idols as
Christians
the images
of saints.

medewe And in þat medewe is a lityH toothiH with toures
 ⁊ pynacles aH of gold And in þat lityH toothiH wole he
 sytten often tyme for to taken the ayr ⁊ to desporten
 hym. For þat place is made for no þing elles but only 4
 for his desport. Fro þat contree men comen be the lond
 of the grete CHANE also þat I haue spoken of before.
 And 3ee schuH vndirstoude þat of aH þeise contrees ⁊ of
 aH þeise yles ⁊ of aH the dyuerse folk þat I haue spoken 8
 of before ⁊ of dyuerse lawes ⁊ of dyuerse beleeves þat
 þei han, 3it is þere non of hem alle but þat þei han sum
 resoun within hem ⁊ understandynge, but 3if it be the
 fewere, ⁊ þat han certeyn Articles of oure feith ⁊ summe 12
 gode poyntes of oure beleewe. And þat þei beleeven in
 god þat formede aH þing ⁊ made the world And clepen him
 god of nature, after þat the prophete seyth : ET METUENT
 EUM OMNES FINES TERRE, And also in anoþer place : OMNES 16
 GENTES SERUIENT EI, þat is to seyne : Alle folk schul
 seruen him. But 3it þei cone not speken perfytly, for
 pere is no ¹man to techen hem, but only þat þei cone
 deuyse be hire natureH wytt. For þei han no know- 20
 leche of the sone ne of the holy gost. But þei cone
 aH speken of the BIBLE ⁊ namely of GENESIS, of the
 prophetes sawes And of the bokes of Moyses. And þei
 seyn wel þat the creatures þat worschipen hem ne ben 24
 no goddes, but þei worschipen hem for the vertue þat is
 in hem þat may not be but only be the grace of god.
 And of SIMULACRES ⁊ of YDOLES þei seyn þat þere ben
 no folk but þat þei han SIMULACRES And þat þei seyn 28
 for wee cristen men han ymages, as of oure lady ⁊ of
 opere seyntes þat wee worschipen, Noght the ymages of
 tree or of ston, but the seyntes in whoos name þei ben
 made after. For right as the bokes ⁊ the scripture of 32
 hem techen the clerkes how ⁊ in what manere þei schuH
 beleeven, right so the ymages ⁊ the peyntynges techen
 the lewed folk to worschipen the seyntes ⁊ to haue
 hem in hire mynde in whoos name þat pe ymages ben 36
 made after. þei seyn also þat the aungeles of god

spoken to hem in þo ydoles & þat þei don manye grete
 myracles, And þei seyn soth þat þere is an aungeH *within*
 hem, For þere ben .ij. maner of aungeles, a gode & an
 4 eneH, as the GREKES seyn: CACHO and CALO. This
 CACHO is the wykked aungeH And CALO is the gode
 aungeH. But the toper is not the gode aungeH, but
 the wykked aungeH, þat is *withinne* the ydoles for to
 8 disceyuen hem & for to meynntenen hem in hire errour.
 þere ben manye oper dynerse contrees and manye oper
 merueyles bezonde þat I haue not seen, Wherefore of hem
 I can not speke *propurly* to tell þou the manere of hem.
 12 ¹And also in the contrees where I haue ben ben manye
 mo dynersitees of many wondirfuH thinges þanne I make
 menciuon of, For it were to longe thing to deuysel þou
 the manere. And þerfore þat þat I haue deuysed þou of
 16 certeyn contrees þat I haue spoken of before, I beseche
 þoure worthi and excellent noblesse þat [it] ⁽¹⁾ suffise to þou
 at this tyme, For ȝif þat I deuysed þou aH þat is bezonde
 the see, another man *peraunter* þat wolde peynen him
 20 & trauaylle his body for to go into þo marches for to
 encerche þo contrees myghte ben blamed be my wordes
 in rehercyng manye straunge thinges. For he myghte
 not seye no thing of newe, in the whiche the hereres
 24 myghten haue ouþer solace or desport or lust or lykyng
 in the herynge. For men seyn aH weys þat newe thinges
 & newe tydynges ben plesant to here. Wherefore I wole
 holde me stille *withouten* any more rehercyng of dyuer-
 28 siteez or of meruaylles þat ben bezonde, to þat entent &
 ende þat whoso wil gon into þo contrees he schal fynde
 ynowe to speke of, þat I haue not touched of in no wyse.
 And ȝee schul vndirstonde ȝif it lyke þou þat at myn
 32 hom comynge I cam to ROME & schewed my lif to oure
 holy fadir the POPE & was assoylled of aH þat lay in my
 conscience of many a dyuerse [greuous] ⁽²⁾ poynt, as men
 mosten nedes þat ben in company dwellyng among so
 36 many a dyuerse folk of dyuerse secte & of beleewe as I

The angels
that speak
through the
idols are
evil angels.

I can speak
neither of
what I have
not seen,
nor of all
that I have
seen.

[1 fol. 132 b]

Something
must be left
for other
travellers to
tell.

I confessed
to the Pope
of Rome.

⁽¹⁾ is, C.

⁽²⁾ grouous, C.

haue ben. And amonges aH I schewed hym this tretys
 [1 fol. 133 a] þat I had made after informacioun of men ¹þat knewen
 of thinges þat I had not seen my self, And also of mer-
 ueyles and customes þat I hadde seen my self, as fer as god 4
 wolde ȝeue me grace, And besoughite his holy fadirhode,
 My book
 was ap-
 proved by
 his council.
 þat my boke myghite ben examyned and corrected be
 avys of his wyse t discret conseil. And oure holy
 fader of his special grace remytted my boke to ben 8
 examyned t preued be the Avys of his seyd conseil,
 Be the whiche my boke was preened for trewe jn so
 moche þat þei schewed me a boke þat my boke was
 examynde by, þat comprehended fuH moche more be an 12
 hundred part, be the whiche the MAPPA MUNDI was made
 after. And so my boke, aH be it þat many men ne list
 not to ȝeue credence to no þing but to þat þat þei seen
 with hire eye, ne be the Auctour ne the persone neuer so 16
 trewe, is affermed t preued be oure holy fader in maner
 t forme as I haue seyd.

I started in
 1322.
 Now I am
 resting at
 home.
 [2 fol. 133 b]
 I wrote this
 in 1356.
 Let my
 readers
 pray for u.e.
 AND I Iohn MaundevyH knyght aboneseyd, aH poughi
 I be vnworthi, þat departed from oure contrees 20
 t passed the see the ȝeer of grace a .MiH .ccc. t .xxij.
 þat haue passed many londes t manye yles t contrees
 t cerched manye fuH strange places, And haue ben in
 many a fuH gode honourable companye t at many a faire 24
 dede of armes, aH be it þat I dide none myself for myn
 vnable ȝnsuffisance; And now I am comen hom mawgree
 myself to reste for gowtes Artetykes þat me distreynen;
 þat deffynen the ende of my labour, aȝenst my wiH god 28
 knoweth. And þus takynge solace in my wrech²ched
 reste recordynge the tyme passed I haue fulfilled þeise
 thinges t putte hem wryten in this boke, as it wolde
 come into my mynde, the ȝeer of grace a .MiH .ccc. t .lvj. 32
 in the .xxxiiij. ȝeer þat I departede from oure contrees.
 Wherefore I preye to aH the rederes t hereres of this
 boke ȝif it plesse hem þat þei wolde preyen to god for me
 nd I schall preye for hem. And alle þo þat seyn for 36

me a *PATER NOSTER* with an *AUE MARIA* þat god forzene
 me my synnes I make hem *parteneres* ⁊ graunte hem part
 of aH [þe] ⁽¹⁾ gode pilgrimages ⁊ of aH the gode dedes þat
 4 I haue don, 3if ony ben to his plesance. And neght only
 of þo, but of aH þat euere I schaf do vnto my lyfes ende.*
 And I beseche almyghty god fro whom aH godeness ⁊ ^{I pray for}
 grace cometh fro, þat he vouchesaf of his excellent mercy ^{them.}
 8 ⁊ habundant grace to fuffylle hire soules with inspira-
 cioun of the holy gost in makynge defence of aH hire
 gostly enemyes here in erthe, to hire saluacioun bothe
 of body ⁊ soule to worschipe ⁊ thankyng of him þat is
 12 pree ⁊ on *withouten* begynnynge ⁊ *withouten* endyng
 þat is *withouten* qualitee good, *withouten* quantytee gret
 þat in alle places is *present* and aH thinges conteynynge
 the whiche þat no goodness may amende ne non euell
 16 empeyre, þat in *perfyte* Trynytee lyneth ⁊ regneth god be
 alle worldes ⁊ be aH tymes. Amen. Amen. Amen.

(1) þe, blotted out in C.

APPENDIX.

[From MS. Egerton 1982 we reprint the passage missing in Chapter XV, p. 82.]

Miraculous
oil.

Neuerpeles þat table euermare dreppez oel as it ware of
oliue, And þar es a vesseH of marble vnder þe table to
ressayne þe oel. þaroff þai giffe to pilgrimes for it heles of
many sekeness. And men saise þat if it be keped wele 4
seuen ȝere efterwardes it turnes in to flesch and blud.
Fra Sardenak men comez thurgh þe vale of Bochar þe
whilk es a faire vale *and* a plentifous of aH maner of
fruyte and it es amanges hilles and þer er þarin fair 8
ryners and grete medews and noble pasture for bestez.

Lebanon.

[¹ fol. 51 a]

And men gas by þe mountes of libane whilk lastez fra
Ermony þe mare to wardes þe north vnto Dan þe whilk
es þe end of þe ¹land of repromissionn to ward þe north 12
as I said before. þir hilles er rȝt fruytful And þare er
many faire welles and cedres *and* cipressez and many
oper tresse of diuerse kyndes; þare er also many gude
tounes to ward þe heued of þir hilles full of folk. 16

Sabbath
river.

Betwene þe citee of arkez and þe citee of Raphane es
a riuer þat es called Sabatory for on þe seterday it
rynnez fast and aH þe woke elles it standes stiH and
rynnez noȝt or elles bot fairely. Betwene þe forsaid hilles 20
also es anoþer water þat on nyghtes fresez hard and on
days es na frost sene þeron. And as men comez agayne
fra pase hilles es a hiH hier þan any of þe oþer and þai
caH it þare þe hegh hiH pare es a grete citee and a faire 24

Tripoli.

þe whilk es called Tryple In þe whilk er many gude
cristen men ȝemand þe same rytes *and* customes þat we

Beyrout.

vse. Fra þeine men comez by a citee þat es called Berueh
whare sayne george slew þe dragonn and it es a gude 28

toune *and* a faire casteH perin And it es .iij. iournez fra
 pe forsaid citee of Sardenak. At pe ta syde of Bernch
 .xvj. myle to come hiderward es pe citee of Sydon. At
 4 Bernch entres pilgrimes in to pe see pat wiH com to Cipre
 and pai aryfe at pe porte of Surry or of Tyere and so pai Tyre.
 com to Cipre in a lytiH space Or men may com fra pe
 porte of Tyre and com nozt at Cipre and aryfe at sum
 8 hauen of greece and so come to pise partyse as I said
 before.

- 1 I hafe talde 3ow now of pe ways by whilk men gase The longer
 ferrest and longest to ierusalem as by babilon *and* [1 fol. 51 b]
 12 mount synay and many oþer placez whilk 3e herd me teH
 off and also by whilk ways men schah turne agayne to pe
 land of reþmissioun, now wiH I teH 3ow pe rightest
 way and pe schortest to ierusalem. For sum men wiH The shorter
 16 nozt ga pe toþer, sum for pai hafe nozt spending ynogh, way.
 sum for pai hafe na gude cumpny and sum for pai may
 nozt endure pe lang trauail, sum for pai drede þam of
 many perils of desertes sum for pai wiH haste þam hame-
 20 ward desirand to see þare wifes and þare childer or for
 sum oþer resonable cause pat pai hafe to turne sone hame.
 And perfore I wiH schew how men may passe tittest *and*
 in schortest tyme make paire pilgrimage to ierusalem.
 24 A man þat comes fra pe landes of pe west he gas thurgh
 frannee burgoyne and lumbardy and so to venice or geen
 or sum oþer hauen and schippes þare and wendez by see
 to pe Ile of greff þe whilk pertenez to pe Ianuenes, And Corfu.
 28 seyne he aryuez in greece at porte *Mirro* or at *Valon* or Valona.
 at *Duras* or at sum oþer hauen of þat cuntree and risteþ Durazzo.
 him þare and byez him vitales and schippeþ agayne and
 sailez to *Cipre* and aryuez þare at *Famagost* *and* comeþ Cyprus.
 32 nozt at pe Ile of *Rodes*. *Famagost* es pe chieff hauen
 of *Cipre* And þare he refreschez him and puruay's him of
 vitales *and* þan he gase to schippe *and* comeþ na mare on
 land 2if he wiH before he come at porte Iaffe *pat* es pe Jaffa.
 36 next hauen to ierusalem for it es bot a day iournee [2 fol. 52 a]

and a half fra ierusalem *pat* es to say .xxxvj. myle. Fra
 Ramleh. þe porte Iaffe men gase to þe citee of *Rames* þe whilk es
 bot a lytill þeine and it es a faire citee and a gude
 and mykiH folk *perin*. And *withouten* *pat* citee toward 4
 þe south is a kirk of oure lady where oure lord schewed
 him tiH hir in three clondes þe whilk betakned þe
 trinitee And a lytiH þeine es ane *oper* citee *pat* men
 Lidda. callez *Dispolis* bot it hight sum tyme *Lidda* a faire citee 8
 and a wele inhabited. þare es a kirk of sayne george
 where he was heuedid. Fra þeine men gase to þe casteH
 Mountjoy. of Emaus And so to þe mount ioi þare may pilgrimes
 first see to ierusalem At mount ioi liggez Samuel þe 12
 prophete. Fra þeine men gase to ierusalem. Beside þir
 ways es þe citee of *Ramatha* and þe mount *Modyn* And
 þeroff was Matathias Iudas Machabeus fader And þare er
 þe graues of þe Machabeez. Bezond Ramatha es þe 16
 Tekoah. towne of Teehue wharoff Amos þe prophete was And þare
 es his grafe.

Another
route.

I hafe talde 3ow before of þe haly placez *pat* er at
 ierusalem and aboute it and *perfore* I wiH speke 20
 namare of þam at þis tyme, Bot I wiH turne agayne and
 schewe 3ow *oper* ways a man may passe mare by land
 and namely for þaim *pat* may nozt suffer þe sauour of þe
 see bot es leuer to ga by land if aH it be þe mare payne. 24
 Fra a man be entred in to þe see he schaff passe tiH ane
 of þe hanens of lumbarly For þare þare es þe best making
 [1 fol. 52 b] of purneaunee ¹ of vitailles or he may passe to Ieen or
 Venice or sum *oper* And he saH passe by see into grece 28
 to þe porte Mirrok or to Valon or to Duras or sum *oper*
 hauen of *pat* emtree And fra þeine he saH ga by land to
 Constantinople And he saH passe þe water *pat* es called
 Arm of St. George. Brace sayne george þe whilk es ane arme of þe see. And 32
 fra þeine he saH by land ga to *Ruffynett* where a gude
 casteH es and a strang And fra þeine he saH ga to
 Sinope. *Pulucral* and seyne to þe casteH of Synople and fra þeine

to *Capadoce* *pat* es a grete cuntree whare er many grete
 hilles And he saH ga thurgh *Turky* to þe porte of
Chiutok and to þe citee of Nyke whilk es þot .vij. myle Civitot,
Nicaa,
 4 þeine. *pat* citee wanne þe Turkes fra þe *emperour* of
 Constantinople and it es a faire citee and wele walled on
 þe ta syde And on þe toper syde es a grete lake and a
 grete riuer þe whilk es called Lay. Fra þeine men gase
 8 by þe hilles of Nairmont and by þe vales of Mailbrins
 and straite felles And by þe toune of *Ormanx* or by þe
 townes *pat* er on *Riclay and Scanton* þe whilk er grete Heraclaea,
Iconium,
 waters and noble And so to Antioche þe lesse whilk es
 12 sett on þe ryuer of Riclay and þare aboutes er many gude
 hilles *and* faire and many faire wodes and grete plentee
 of wykde bestes forto hunt at.

16 **A**Nd he *pat* wiH ga anoper way he schaf ga by þe
 playnes of Romany costayand þe romayn see.
 On *pat* coste es a faire casteH *pat* men callez Florach and
 it es right a strang place And vppermare amang þe
 mountaynes es a faire citee *pat* es called Toursont ¹ and Tarsus.
 20 þe citee of *Longemaath* and þe citee of *Assere* and þe cite [fol. 53 a]
 of *Marmistre*. And when a man es passed pase moun- Mopsuestia,
 taynes and pase felles he gase by þe citee of *Marioch* Chalechidia
and by Artoise whare es a grete brigg apon þe riuer of
 24 *ferne* *pat* es called *Farfar* and it es a grete riuer berand Pharpar
or Orontes.
 schippes and it rynnes rizi fast oute of þe mountaines to
 þe cite of *Damasc* And besyde þe citee of *Damasc* es
 anoper grete riuer *pat* comes fra þe hilles of liban whilk
 28 men callez *Abbana*. At þe passing of pis riuer saynt Abana.
 Enstace *pat* sum tyme was called Placidus lost his wyf
 and his twa childer. þis riuer rynnes thurgh þe playne
 of Archades and so to þe reed see. Fra þeine men gase
 32 to þe cite of *Phenice* whare er hate welles and hate bathez
 And þan men gase to þe cite of *Ferne* and betwene
 Phenice and Ferne er .x. myle. And þare er many faire
 woddes. And þan men comez til *Anthioche* whilk es Antioch

- .x. myle peine And it es a faire citee and wele walled
aboute *with* many faire toures And it es a grete cite bot
it was sum tyme gretter pan it esn owe For it was sum
tyme twa myle on lenth and on brede oper half myle 4
And thurgh þe myddes of *pat* citee ranne þe water of
Farphar and a grete brigg ower it and þare ware sum
tyme in þe walles aboute þis citee .ccc. and fyfty toures
and at ilk a piler of þe brigg was a toure. þis es þe 8
cheeffe cite of þe kyngdom of Surry And ten myle fra þis
cite es þe porte of *Saynt Symeon* and þare gase þe water
off Farphar in to þe see. Fra Antioche men gase to a
Laodicea. cite þat es called *Lacuth* and pan to *Gebel* and pan to 12
Tortosa. *Tortouse* and þare nere es þe land of *Channel* ¹ and þare
[1 fol. 53 b] es a strang casteH þat es called Maubek. Fra tortouse
Tripoli. passez men to Tryple by see or elles by land thurgh þe
strayt of mountaynes and felles and þare es a citee þat es 16
called *Gibilet*. Fra Triple gase men til *Aceres* And fra
peine er twa ways to ierusalem þe tane on þe left half
and þe toper on þe riht half. By þe left way men gase
by *damasc* and by þe flum Iordan, By þe riht way men 20
gase by *Maryn* and by þe land of *Flagramy*. And nere
Haifa. þe mountaynes vnto þe cite of *Cayphas* þat sum men
callez þe casteH of Pilgrimes And fra þeine to ierusalem
er .iiij. day iournez In þe whilk men schaff ga thurgh 24
Caesarea. *Cesaria Philippi* and so to *Iaffe* and *Rames* and þe
casteH of *Emaus* and so to ierusalem. Now hafe I talde
30w sum ways by land and by water þat men may ga by
to þe haly land after þe cuntrees þat þay com fra neuer- 28
peles pai com aH til ane ende.
- The land
journey. } Yt es þare anoþer way to ierusalem aH by land and
passe nozt þe see fra fraunce or flaundes bot þat
way es fuH lang and perlious and of grete trauaile and 32
perfore few gase þat way. He þat schaff ga þat way he
schaff ga thurgh *Almayne* and *Pruyss* and so to *Tartary*.
Prussia,
Tartary. þis tartary es halden of þe grete Caan of Cathay of

wham I think to speke efterward. þis es a full ih land
and sandy *and* lytiH fruyt berand For þare growes na
come ne wyne ne beenes ne peese ne nanoper fruyt
4 conable to man forto liffe *with*. Bot þare er bestez in
grete plentee And þerfore þai ete bot flesch *withouten*
breed *and* soupez þe broo And þai drink mylke of aH
maner of bestez.

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY
RICHARD CLAY & SONS, LIMITED,
BRUNSWICK ST., STAMFORD ST., S.E. 1,
AND LUNGAY SUFFOLK.

Mandeville's Travels

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, No. 154.

1923 (for 1916).

Price 15s.

Mandeville's Travels,

Translated from the French of Jean d'Outremeuse.

EDITED FROM
MS. COTTON TITUS c.XVI,
IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM.

BY

P. HAMELIUS,

PROFESSOR OF ENGLISH LITERATURE IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LIÉGE.

VOL. II.: INTRODUCTION AND NOTES.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

AMEN CORNER, E.C. 4.

1923

Original Series, 154.

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY RICHARD CLAY & SONS, LIMITED,
BUNGAY, SUFFOLK.

It is with deepest regret that this volume, completing the edition of *Mandeville's Travels*, is given to the world as the orphaned heir of its scholarly editor. Some months before the great war, Professor Hamelius, of the University of Liège, called on me and expressed his wish to undertake some piece of work for the Society, if a suitable text could be suggested. I bethought me of *Mandeville's Travels* as the most noteworthy link between English literature and Liège, and proposed that he should consider whether he would undertake the task. I heard nothing from him for a time, and during the perilous days of the siege of Liège he was often in my mind. Shortly after, having done his duty manfully, he reported himself as being safe and sound, and working hard at Mandeville in the British Museum. It was not only, however, this Middle English text that claimed his devotion. He wrote an account of the siege in which he had borne his part, and did much to enlighten English readers on Belgian literature and on matters of common interest between his own and this country. He gave some striking lectures to University and other audiences, and became recognised here as almost an unofficial representative of the intellectual life of Belgium. He was keenly alert, open-minded, and most painstaking, and soon gained the affectionate regard of those who knew the tender sensitiveness of the seemingly severe scholar. Throughout the whole period of the war he was constantly at work on what had become his absorbing interest, this edition of *Mandeville's Travels*. Great was his joy when in 1919 Vol. I, the text, was issued by the Society, fittingly dedicated to General Leman, the defender of Liège. The gallant General has passed away; and now, alas, the patriot editor has not lived to witness the publication of the completion of his

labours. For long years to come, this edition of Mandeville will remain as the best memorial of his devotion to learning, and as a touching testimony of the intellectual and cordial relationship between Belgian and British scholars in the midst of calamitous years of stress and strain. By all of us who knew him, Paul Hamelius will be remembered as one too early lost to English learning. We pay a fraternal tribute to his memory.

I. G.

March 6th, 1923.

PREFACE

It is a pleasant duty to thank all those who have kindly helped or advised the editor in his task of trying to put the book of Mandeville and its author in their proper places, somewhere near the outskirts of limbo.

Sir George Warner, who cleared the ground with his masterly Roxburghe Club edition, encouraged one who, as an unknown student, had no claim whatever on his attention, with the utmost liberality. Sir I. Gollancz, Director of Editions of the Early English Text Society, first suggested the work and followed it with constant interest and valuable suggestions. To other friends I have tried to do justice in my notes, but the learning, courtesy and hospitality of the staff of the Library of the British Museum are beyond praise.

As for the shortcomings of the present work, I beg leave to repeat humbly after Ronsard :

Quand les petits bergers font aux champs une faute,
Petite, elle ne tire un repentir après.

P. H.

CONTENTS

PAGE

INTRODUCTION—

I. SIR JOHN MANDEVILLE	1
II. JEAN D'OUTREMEUSE	8
III. POLITICAL SIGNIFICANCE OF THE TRAVELS	13
IV. THE TEXTS	16
V. THE SOURCES	19
VI. THE ALPHABETS	21
NOTES	23
INDEX	152

Mandeville's Travels

INTRODUCTION

THE principal authorities are :

Sir G. Warner, in his edition : *The Buke of Maundevil* (Roxburgh Club, 1889).

Albert Bovenschen : *Untersuchungen über Johann von Mandeville und die Quellen seiner Reisebeschreibung* (Zeitschrift der Gesellschaft für Erdkunde. Berlin, Reimer, 1888).

Johann Vogels : *Handschriftliche Untersuchungen über die englische Version Mandeville's* (Crefeld, 1891).

Godefroi Kurth : *Étude critique sur Jean d'Outremeuse* (Memoirs of the Academy of Brussels. Hayez, 1910).

L. Pannier : *Les lapidaires français*, 1882.

I

SIR JOHN MANDEVILLE

THE book of *Mandeville's Travels* is so unreliable that it must appear last, if at all, among evidence for its authorship. That an English knight, a physician and traveller, has been buried in Liège in 1372 is attested by his epitaph, transcribed in the fifteenth, sixteenth and eighteenth centuries. The tomb and the church of the Guillemins containing it were destroyed at the time of the French Revolution. Püterich von Reichertshausen (born about 1400) was first in publishing the epitaph in a letter to an Archduchess of Austria, dated 1462: Hic iacet nobilis Dominus Joannes de Montevilla Miles, alias dictus ad Barbam, Dominus de Compredi, natus de Anglia, medicinae professor et devotissimus orator et bonorum suorum largissimus pauperibus erogator qui totum orbem peragravit in stratu Leodii diem vitae suae clausit extremum. Anno Dni millesimo trecentesimo septuagesimo secundo mensis Februarij septimo.¹

¹ *Zeitschrift für deutsches Altertum*, VI, pp. 31-59 st. 131-135.—Raim. Duellius : *Excerptorum genealogico-historicorum*, libri duo, 1725, pp. 281-282.

About a century later, the Belgian geographer Ortelius copied it again, differing from Püterich in five points: instead of Montevilla he reads Mandeville; instead of Comprédi, Campdi; instead of de Anglia, in Anglia; after bonorum he omits suorum; instead of qui totum . . . stratu, he reads: qui toto quasi urbe lustrato; instead of 1372, he makes the date 1371. Püterich's stratu makes no sense, and must be wrong. Camperdi, with a crossed p, may well stand for champ perdu, which the late Prof. V. Chauvin told me was an old name for one of the islands in the river Meuse, near Liége.¹

From those two versions, the epitaph can be reconstructed and interpreted as follows:

Hic jacet nobilis Dominus Joannes de [Mandeville] miles, alias dictus ad Barbam, Dominus de [Camperdi], natus [in] Anglia, medicinae professor et devotissimus orator et bonorum [suorum] largissimus pauperibus erogator, qui [toto quasi orbe lustrato] Leodii diem vitae suae clausit extremum anno [Domini] millesimo trecentesimo septuagesimo secundo mensis Februarij septimo.

The Latin *professor* may mean one who practises a profession, and *orator* one who prays. If so, we may translate: Here lies the gentle Sir John of Mandeville, knight, otherwise named with the Beard, lord of Champ-perdu, born in England, practitioner of medicine and very pious in his prayers and very liberal in giving of his property to the poor. After viewing nearly all the world, he ended the last day of his life at Liége in the year of Our Lord one thousand three hundred and seventy-two on February seventh.

The epitaph was again copied in the seventeenth century by an English priest of Liége called Edmund Leukner (identified by Sir G. Warner with the name of Lewknor) and printed in Pitseus (John Pits): *Relationes historicae de rebus anglicis*, 1619, p. 511. John Weever, who is reported to have visited Liége, prints it in his *Ancient Funeral Monuments*, 1631, p. 567. It was again transcribed and published by Pierre Lambinet: *Recherches . . . sur l'origine de l'imprimerie*, Brussels, 1799, p. 302. One more eye-witness claims to have seen it: the Rev. Charles Ellis, in a letter dated 1699 (*Philosophical Transactions*, XXIII., 1703, p. 1418).

The authority of the epitaph, while quite convincing in itself, is still strengthened by two documents referring to real property and its holders in the city of Liége. The earlier, dated 1386, about

¹ Ortelius: *Itinerarium Gallo-Brabanticum*, Leiden, 1630, p. 212.

fourteen years after the English doctor's death, describes him as a former inmate of a house under the name of "Mestre Johan ale Barbe." In 1459, the same house is again mentioned as the one "la Mandavele ly chevalier d'Engleterre qui avoit esteit par universe monde solloit demoreir, qui gist a Willmins," *i. e.* where Mandavele (*sic*) the knight of England, who had been through all the world, used to dwell, who now lies in [the church of the] Guillemins.¹ No better confirmation could be desired. Those three early and authentic documents agree in omitting the name John of Burgoyne, often accepted as the doctor's real name, and in making no mention of his ever being an author.

After this evidence, the reports of chroniclers are of small importance, as they chiefly repeat what they knew from the epitaph. An early example is Raoul de Rivo, who died in 1403, and may therefore have known Mandeville personally. In his continuation of Hoeseem's chronicle, he writes: Hoc anno [1367] Joannes Mandevilius natione Anglus vir ingenio et arte medendi eminens qui toto fere terrarum orbe peragrato tribus linguis peregrinationem suam doctissime conscripsit, in alium orbem nullis finibus clausum, longeque hoc quietiorem et beatiorem migravit 17 Novembris. Sepultus in ecclesia Wilhelmitarum non procul ab moenibus civitatis Leodiensis.² Rivo's dates are wrong. Moreover, his statement is open to two objections: it repeats what may be read in the epitaph and in the mendacious book of Travels; it maintains what is demonstrably untrue: for the three versions (French, Latin and English) cannot be by the same hand, as the English contains many mistranslations from the French. The later chroniclers adduced by Bovenschen and Sir G. Warner are equally worthless as witnesses. The references are:

Cornelius Zantfliet: *Chronicon*, printed in Martène et Durand: *Amplissima collectio*, 1729, t. V., p. 299.

Hartmann Schedel: *Chronik* (Koberger, Nuremberg, 1493, fol. ccxxvii.).

Werner Rolevink: *Fasciculus temporum*, printed in Pistorius: *Scriptt. Germanici*, II., p. 564.

John Bale: *Scriptorum illustrium maioris Britanniae catalogus*, 1557, II., p. 478.

¹ Both documents are printed in Gobert: *Les rues de Liège*, 1901, Vol. IV., pp. 201-203. His misprint *mort*, instead of *avoit*, has been kindly pointed out by M. Lahaye, archivist.

² Chapeville: *Gesta pontificum leodiensium*, Vol. III., p. 17.

Anton. Meyer: *Commentarii sire annales rerum flandricarum*. Antwerp, 1561, lib. XIII., p. 165.

Hadrian Barlandus: *Rerum gestarum a Brabantiae ducibus historia*. Cologne, 1603, pp. 138-139.

Leland: *Commentarii de Scriptt. Britannicis*, 1709, t. II., p. 366.

Bergeron: *Voyages faits principalement en Asie*, 1735.

C. Schönborn: *Bibliographische Untersuchungen über die Reisebeschreibung des Sir John Mandeville*. Festschrift, Breslau, 1840.

Franc. Zambrini: *I viaggi di G. da Mandavilla*, Bologna, 1872.

Lorenzen: *Mandevilles Reise*. 1882.

Sir G. Warner's *Life of Mandeville in the Dictionary of National Biography*.

A Christian name, John, a surname, de Mandeville, and a descriptive nickname, With the Beard, might be deemed sufficient for one man. Nevertheless, a fourth and fifth name, de Bourgogne and de Bordeaux (de Burdegalia), are found connected with the other three in writings of doubtful authority. First in a passage of the lost fourth book of the arch-romancer d'Outremeuse's *Mirror of Histories*, next in d'Outremeuse's French *Trésorier de Philosophie naturelle* (Bibl. Nat. Fonds français 12326), last in a Treatise of the Plague, extant in Latin, French and English (L. Delisle, *Cat. des MSS. Libri et Barrois*, 1888, p. 252). On the significance and value of those two additional names no one appears to have shed any light. That a book of medicine, such as the above treatise of the plague, and one of natural philosophy, such as the lapidary, should be the work of a man described in his epitaph as "medicinae professor" is not improbable.¹

We can now take leave of Sir John Mandeville, having made ourselves acquainted with his nationality, his profession, his character as a traveller and the date of his death. The origin of the two scientific books ascribed to him and of his multifarious surnames we leave for historians of medicine to discuss. As to his connection with the fictitious book of Travels, there may possibly be a clue to it in the Latin vulgate version, which opposes the physician Master John with the Beard to the knight Sir John

¹ Is. del Sotto: *Le lapidaire du XIV^{me} siècle*, d'après le traité du chevalier Jean de Mandeville. Vienne, 1862.

Mandeville, thus splitting into two doubles the names of one individual. In Chapter VII. of this version Sir John writes of his stay at Cairo: Porro ego in curia manens vidi circa soldanum unum venerabilem et expertum medicum de nostris partibus oriendum. Solet namque circa se retinere diversarum medicos nationum, quos renominande audierit esse fame. Nos autem raro invicem convenimus ad colloquium, eo quod meum servitium cum suo modicum congruebat. Longo autem postea tempore et ab illo loco remote, viz. in Leodij civitate composui hortatu et adiutorio eiusdem venerabilis viri hunc tractatum, sicut in fine huius tocius operis plenius enarrabo.—While I stayed at court I saw about the soudan a venerable and able physician hailing from our country. For he uses to keep about him physicians of various nationalities, whose reputation has reached his ears. We two had but few opportunities for conversation, as my duties were widely different from his. A long time after, and a long distance away, viz. in the city of Liège, I by the advice and with the assistance of the same worshipful man composed the present treatise, as I shall more fully tell at the close of the whole book.

The sequel of the tale is given in Chapter L.: Itaque anno a nativitate Domini Jesu Christi m.ccc.lv. in repatriando cum ad nobilem Legie seu Leodii civitate[m] permansissem et pre gravitate ac artetieis guttis illue decumberem in vico qui dicitur basse sauenyr, consului causa convalescendi aliquos medicos civitatis et accidit Dei nutu unum intrare phisicum super alios etate simul et canicie venerandum ac in sua arte evidenter expertum qui ibi dicebatur magister Iohannes ad Barbam. Is ergo cum pariter colloqueremur interseruit dietis aliqua per que tam nostra invicem renovabatur antiqua noticia quam quondam habueramus in Cayr egipti apud Calahelieh soldani prout supra tetigi .vij. ea[pitulo huius] libri. Qui cum in me experientiam artis sue excellenter monstrasset adhortabatur ac precabatur instanter ut de his que videram tempore peregrinationis mee per mundum aliqua digererem in scriptis ad legendum et audiendum pro utilitate posteris. Sic quoque tandem illius monitiis et adiutorio compositus est iste tractatus de quo certe nihil scribere proposueram donec saltem ad partes proprias in anglia pervenissem. Et credo premissa circa me per providentiam et gratiam dei contigisse. Quum a tempore quo recessi duo reges nostri anglie et francie non cessaverunt invicem exercere prelia, destructiones depredationes insidias et interfectiones

inter quas nisi a Domino custoditus non transissem sine morte vel mortis periculo et sine criminum grandi cumulo. Et nunc ecce anno egressionis mee xxxiiij. constitutus in leodiensi civitate que a mari anglie distat solum per duas dietas audio dictas dominorum inimicitias per gratiam Dei compositas. Quapropter et spero ac propono de reliquo secundum maturiorem etatem me posse in proprijs intendere corporis quieti animeque saluti. Hic itaque finis sit scripti, etc.¹

In the year 1355 after the birth of Our Lord Jesus Christ, while I was travelling home, I stayed near the noble city of Liège and was there laid up by disease and arthritic gout in the ward called Basse Sauvenière. For my recovery I consulted some doctors of the town, and by God's will it happened that one physician came in who was more venerable than the rest through his age and hoary hair and evidently expert in his art. He was there called Master John with the Beard. Now as we were conversing together he dropped some remarks by which we renewed our mutual acquaintance which we had at Cairo in Egypt in the soudan's castle, and which I touched upon in Chapter VII. of the present book. While displaying his knowledge of his art to my benefit, he admonished and prayed me instantly that I should reduce to writing something of what I had seen while roaming through the world, that it might be read and heard for the use of posterity. So at last, through his advice and with his assistance, the present treatise was composed, of which I intended to write nothing until I finally reached my own country in England. And I believe that the above adventures happened to me by God's providence and grace. For from the time when I started travelling, our two kings of England and France did not cease to wage mutual war, destruction, depredation, ambushes and killing which I could not, but for divine protection, have passed without death or peril of death, or without great accumulation of evils. While now, thirty-three years after my departure, dwelling in the city of Liège, which lies only two days' journey from the English sea, I learn that through the grace of God the abovesaid enmity of those lords has been settled. Therefore I hope and intend, for the rest of my riper years to be able to attend to the rest of my body and to the salvation of my soul at home. Here then is the end of my writing, etc.

¹ Mandeville, *Itinerarius*, black letter, no date. British Museum press mark : G 6700.

Can a grain of truth be discerned under this story, which contradicts our English version (p. 210)? As the fictitious journey ends in 1356, it was some years before the peace of Brétigny (1360) between Edward III. and John the Good of France. Probably the book was actually written after the peace, as the *Itinerarius* hints. Perhaps the English doctor and traveller, when settled at Liège, advised and helped the younger Jean d'Outremeuse in the composition of a work dealing with Eastern geography and intended to serve certain political interests in England. So much we may venture to guess, but cannot hope to demonstrate.

It may help further research to point out that a surgeon named Henri de Mondeville lived in the early fourteenth century and attended the French armies in Flanders in 1301, and that the name Mandeville occurs again in the annals of the medical profession to the north of Liège, in the Dutch province of Guelders in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. At Dordrecht in the west of Holland was born about 1670 another medical man connected with English literature and with the progress of freethought, Bernard Mandeville, the author of the *Fable of the Bees*. Whether those worthies belong to the same stock we have not examined.

What the French and English versions of the book of Travels tell about its authorship is hardly worth considering. No doubt a convicted liar may occasionally speak the truth, only in such a case he would not openly contradict himself. Now the book reports that it was shown to the pope in Rome when there was no pope in Rome (p. 210, l. 1), and that it was afterwards written (p. 210, l. 31), as the French has it, in Liège. This is as incredible as the Latin quoted above. All that can be admitted is that d'Outremeuse (born 1338) may have known Mandeville (died 1372), and as there is in Paris a French MS. of the Travels dated 1371, that the traveller and doctor may have winked at the use of his name in a fictitious itinerary. The question why a book made by one man should have circulated under the name of another, who was alive to disown it, is difficult to solve. Strange instances of hoaxes perpetrated in d'Outremeuse's *Mirror of Histories* have been adduced by Prof. Kurth, but for fathering the book of Travels on the Englishman he may have had a practical and sensible reason. Its bold attacks on the dogmas and discipline of the Church might arouse the resentment of the ecclesiastical authorities. By concealing himself

behind the mask of an assumed name he could shelter himself from possible persecution.

To be complete, we translate from a quotation by S. Bormans the strange fable of Mandeville's death and identity preserved from the lost 4th part of d'Outremeuse's *Mirror*:

In 1372 died at Liège on the twelfth of November a man who was greatly distinguished for his birth. He was content to be known by the name of John of Burgundy, called With the Beard. He, however, opened his heart on his death-bed to Jean d'Outremeuse, his gossip, whom he appointed his executor. In truth, he entitled himself, in the deed of his last will, Sir John Mandeville, knight, Earl of Montfort in England and lord of the isle of campdi and of the castle Pérouse.¹ Having, however, had the misfortune of killing in his country an earl whom he does not name, he bound himself to travel through the three parts of the world. Came to Liège in 1343. Issued as he was from very high nobility, he loved to keep himself hidden. He was, moreover, a great naturalist, a profound philosopher and astrologer, especially adding a very singular knowledge of physics, rarely making mistakes when he told his opinion about a patient, whether he would recover or not. When dead at last, he was buried with the brethren Willhelmites, in the suburb of Avroy, as you have been able to see more fully above.²

II

JEAN D'OUTREMEUSE

JEAN D'OUTREMEUSE, in all probability the real author of the *Travels*, has been stripped of many borrowed plumes by modern criticism. He had no right to the aristocratic name and pedigree of Des Pres. "Né le 2 janvier 1338, il entra dans la cléricature, c.à.d. qu'il fut tonsuré et porta le costume ecclésiastique, sans d'ailleurs jamais recevoir les ordres. Mari de Catherine Martial, qui lui survécut, il en eut un fils qui devint 'chanoine de Liège' "—that is, not of the Cathedral chapter, which had a share in the Government of the Episcopal Principality, but of some one of the seven collegiate churches. "Lui-même se dit 'clerc liégeois, notaire

¹ The late Prof. Chauvin thought of Pierrense, an old and erewhile respectable street of Liège.

² Bormans's *Introduction to the Mirror of Histories*, 1887, p. cxxxiii.

public, audiencier et comte palatin"—a non-aristocratic title, belonging to legal officers in certain Bishops' Palaces. "Il remplissait auprès de la cour de l'officiel des fonctions qui . . . devaient présenter une certaine analogie avec celle de greffier."¹ He died November 25, 1400; his obit, dated on the next day, has been printed by Bormans (*Bulletin*, etc.).

Our reasons for ascribing the *Travels* to him do not amount to absolute proof, and rest merely on strong circumstantial and internal evidence. Similarity of contents, tone and spirit between two books may go a long way towards proving common authorship, and the *Travels* have many passages and features in common with the authentic *Mirror of Histories*.

The contents of Friar Odoric de Pordenone's *Travels in the Far East* have been conveyed wholesale into both works, being attributed to Sir John Mandeville in one case and to Ogier the Dane in the other (Vol. III., pp. 56-67 of the *Mirror*). Minute coincidences have been pointed out in our notes, such as the blunder of letting the four different kinds of wood in the True Cross grow from three seeds (note to p. 7, l. 24). It is hardly possible that such a mistake has been committed independently by two writers. Large as is the number of examples mentioned in the notes, it might be increased by a systematic search.

Another argument has been reached separately by Prof. Gustave Charlier, of the University of Brussels, and by myself. In Vol. IV. p. 587 of the *Mirror*, d'Outremense writes that he will not tarry to describe Tartary, because he has fully discussed that country elsewhere. S. Bormans (p. xc of his *Introduction*, 1887) remarks that the *Trésorier de Philosophie naturelle* contains no such account. Now the *Mandeville* does, especially in Chapter XXV., which narrates the foundation by Jenghiz Khan of the Tartar empire. In so far as a statement by d'Outremense is worth any notice, this would amount to an indirect avowal of authorship.

Taken singly, each of the above arguments is inconclusive. Put together, they become very strong. It is hardly becoming for an editor to boast of having copied a French and an English MS. of *Mandeville* with his own hand, and devoted years to collecting and considering the evidence, yet the impression gained by him as the

¹ Kurth, as above, following Bormans, *Introduction to d'Outremense*, pp. vi seq., and *Bulletin de la Commission Royale d'Histoire*, 5^e série, t. I., pp. 282 seq., 1891.

result of such work may claim a scientific value, unless he has grown biased by focusing his attention on one point. With this proviso, I may state that to me d'Outremense appears as the only possible author of *Mandeville*: his attacks on the Papacy (in the *Mirror*, Vol. V., p. 165, the pope and cardinals are accused of taking bribes from John Lackland) evince Wycliffite tendencies in agreement with the dedication of the *Travels* to Edward III. His indecencies betray a coarse mind fed on Medieval fabliaux. The mockery of the heroic conventions of the romances, especially of the Alexandrian and Crusading epics, shows a memory conversant with wonderful adventures in the Near and in the Far East and a satirical contempt for their religious enthusiasm. Now such characteristics are not uncommon in the fourteenth century: if it were permissible to name Chaucer in the same breath with the author of *Mandeville*, their mental attitudes might in some respects be compared.

But where d'Outremense cannot be matched is in his capacity for mixing and confusing truth and untruth. His spirit is too grovelling for high fiction, for the creation of a fair imaginary world. All the elements of his romancing are prosaic and vulgar. But he puts them together with brazen audacity, disfigures or invents proper names, alters numbers and circumstances, to the despair of those honest commentators who have traced him to his sources. No plagiarist has pilfered more unscrupulously, and yet he always reasserts his fickle originality by his knack of distorting the texts from which he borrows.✕ This was partly deliberate deceit, but it might also spring from carelessness in copying, from trusting a slippery memory, or even from a peculiar notion of an author's rights and duties. Whether his motives were purely mercenary, or whether he obeyed an original impulse, his chief aim was to entertain while pretending to impart solid historical or geographical information. Dry facts he collected in abundance from Boldensele's pilgrimage to the Holy Land, from Odoric's two accounts of his travels in Palestine and in the Far East, from Haiton of Armenia's *Flower of Histories*. But he spiced them by means of fabulous details drawn from the romances of Eastern adventure which deal with Alexander the Great's expeditions to Persia and India, and with the experiences of Godfrey of Bouillon and his companions among the Saracens. The influence of the Medieval epic is felt in the manner as well as in the matter of the

Mandeville. It has been pointed out to me by an English poet of distinction that its prose style is rhythmical and balanced, and that it somewhat retains the movement of poetry. Prof. Kurth, the principal authority on Jean d'Outremeuse, finds him a faithful imitator of the mannerisms and conventions of the minstrels.

This brings us to a hitherto unsolved riddle in the work of the notary of Liège. It is denied by no one that he composed epics and romances in verse, as he writes himself: "Toute les giestes et histoires que je ay fait, je les fis et formay anchois que je translataste et metisse en chesc ches miens croniques, car je n'avoie nulle pensée de translateir, por xx. années près; si que je fis mes histoires toutes plaines" (*Miroir des Histoires*, Vol. III., p. 402).

Although the meaning of the last word is open to dispute, the general sense is clear: All the gestes and histories that I have made I made and shaped before transferring and putting them into these my present chronicles, for I had no thought of transferring for wellnigh twenty years; so that I made my histories all plain. From this statement it has been rightly concluded that the *Mirror of Histories*, a huge chronicle in prose, is the work of his later years, and that during his first twenty years of authorship he wrote historical works in rhyme, dealing in part with the same matter as the *Mirror*. One such poem, the *Geste de Liège*, is extant and has been printed along with the prose. Where are the others?

The liar himself declares, speaking of Ogier the Dane: "Toutes ses chouses sont declareis en la nouvelle gieste que nous meisme avons fait sour Ogier" (*Mirror*, Vol. III., 1873, p. 111). All these things are set forth in the new geste that we have ourselves made on Ogier. No trace of this has been discovered, although a graduate of Liège University, M. Edgar Renard, in a manuscript dissertation, has done his best to search for it. But Ogier appears in some French and Latin versions of the *Mandeville* as a conqueror of India and as protector of Christianity there. In the *Mirror*, Ogier is put in the place of Odorie as a traveller in the Far East. Here we have one more point of contact between d'Outremeuse and the *Mandeville*. Elsewhere in the *Mirror*, d'Outremeuse writes that he will not tell the full story of the Crusades, because it is contained in the gestes or romances. The Crusade happened "ensi que li romans qui son fais de Godefroit de Buillon deviseit, qui s'accordent asseis as croniques; et partant de eel histor je l'envoie à romans de Godefrois, excepteis

aliquant fais dont je parleray quant temps serait" (*Mirror*, Vol. IV., 1877, p. 290). The Crusade took place as the romances which have been made about Godfrey of Bouillon relate, which agree well with the chronicles. And therefore I send [the reader] from this history to the romances of Godfrey, excepting some events that I shall discuss when the time comes.

Now two romances of Godfrey are known, one printed in fragments by Paulin Paris and by Hippeau, under the titles of *La Chanson d'Antioche*, *Le Roman du Chevalier au Cygne et de Godefroid de Bouillon*, and *La Chanson de Jérusalem*. This may be put out of court. The other is a lengthy *rifacimento* of the late fourteenth century printed by de Reiffenberg and fully discussed by Paulin Paris in Vol. XXV., pp. 507, etc., of the *Histoire littéraire de la France*, along with its two sequels, the *Baudouin de Sebourg* printed by Bocca and the *Bâtard de Bouillon* printed by Scheler. We accept the conclusion of Paulin Paris, that the latter three, forming a monstrous whole of many thousands of lines, are by one hand, and that this hand is that of an author of Liège, who wrote in the second half of the fourteenth century. Here, then, is a huge body of pseudo-historical verse about the fabulous East, composed in Liège by an author not yet identified. On the other hand, we miss the unidentified verse of Jean d'Outremense, supposed to deal with Ogier the Dane, the conqueror of the fabulous East, and one of the characters in the second part of *Manderille's Travels* (Latin and French). What stands in the way of giving the unwieldy trilogy, *Godfrey of Bouillon*, *Baldwin of Sebourg*, and the *Bastard of Bouillon*, to d'Outremense himself? The lack of direct evidence, for while claiming to have made many gestes and histories, he does not expressly state that he dealt with the cycle of the Crusades:

As for the internal evidence, without overrating its value, it must be confessed that it points to single authorship of the trilogy, the *Mirror* and the *Travels*. What Paulin Paris writes of his anonymous minstrel of Liège, and Prof. Kurth of the chronicler, d'Outremense applies equally to our book of *Travels*. The opinions and idiosyncrasies found in them, their anti-clericalism, their cynicism and licentiousness, their relentless mockery of courtly love and religious enthusiasm, joined to a boundless admiration for physical strength and for impossible feats of arms, their cringing reverence for high rank, for wealth and sounding titles,

in fact, all their characteristics, mark them as the work of one man. The three seem to be by a single plagiarist who had read extensively in historical and geographical lore, who indulged in fantastic descriptions of the Holy Land, of Persia, India and Tartary, who adorned them with accounts of monstrous men and beasts drawn from Vincent de Beauvais' *Mirror of Nature*, and who mixed and disguised his borrowings with shameless audacity. It is beyond doubt that they were composed at Liège during the same period. Is it at all likely that two literary twin-brothers and forgers were busy side by side in that small Episcopal city? One argument against single authorship is the great aggregate bulk of those writings, which may be thought to lie beyond the power of a man who had to attend to his duties as an officer of the law courts. But the very uniformity of his sources and of his matter made it possible to use the same materials over and over again. A glance at the notes in the present volume will show how often one passage in the *Maunderille* duplicates another. On perusing the trilogy, and the *Mirror of Histories*, numberless cases of such duplication will occur. Let us single out two, which bear on d'Outremeuse's attitude to science and religion. On p. 122 of the *Travels*, a voyage of circumnavigation is described in which a man reaches his own country after going all round the world. Similarly, in the fourteenth-century Crusading epic, a party starting from Jerusalem reaches another forest of Ardennes and another castle of Bouillon at the other end of the earth (see note).

The almsgiving to beasts of p. 137 of the *Travels* is also alluded to in the epic. Here the Christians are blamed by a Saracen for giving to the poor the remnants of food that ought to be kept for dogs, and the abbot Gerard of St. Trond justifies the Christian practice.

Such examples show that, in many respects, the epic, the *Travels* and the *Mirror* are one, and we cannot but believe them to be by one hand.

III

POLITICAL SIGNIFICANCE OF THE 'TRAVELS

THE dedication of the *Travels* to Edward III. does not occur in any English text or in all the French ones. We print it from

Warner, p. xxix. It is also to be found in the *editio princeps* of the *Travels* (1725), p. 385, and in Halliwell's reprint of 1866, p. xi: Principi excellentissimo, pre cunctis mortalibus precipue venerando Domino Edwardo, Divina Providentia Francorum et Anglorum regi serenissimo, Hibernie Domino, Aquitanie Duci, Mari ac ejus insulis occidentalibus dominanti, christianorum eufamie et ornatui, universorumque arma gerentium tutori, ac probitatis et strenuitatis exemplo; principi quoque invicto, mirabilis Alexandri sequaci, ac universo orbi tremendo; cum reverentia, non qua decet (cum ad talem et tantam reverentiam minus sufficientes exstiterint) sed qua parvitas et possibilitas mittentis et offerentis se extendunt, contenta tradantur.—To the most excellent prince, to be chiefly revered above all mortals, to the Lord Edward, by Divine Providence most serene king of France and England, lord of Ireland, Duke of Aquitaine, ruler of the sea and of its Western Islands, credit and ornament of Christendom, patron of all men at arms and pattern of probity and strength, also to the unconquered prince, follower of the wonderful Alexander, to be feared by the universe, the contents of this book are offered, not with fit reverence, for they would prove inadequate for such a great and noble object, but so far as the insignificance and power of the sender and dedicator extend.

Sir G. Warner regards this as an interpolation, because it does not appear in the best manuscripts. To us it seems genuine, implicitly putting the King above his enemy the Pope ("above all mortals"), praising the world-conqueror Alexander, often mentioned in the *Travels*, and admitting the frivolous character of the book itself. It should be noted that the writer does not claim to have travelled or to be a subject of the English or French crown. Liège was an Imperial fief. If d'Outremeuse wrote this, he was no doubt paid for it.

The date when the *Mandeville* was finished cannot be later than 1371, as a manuscript bearing that date is said to be extant in Paris. If we accept the dedication as genuine, the year 1366, when King Edward repudiated the Pope's supremacy over the realm, is a probable one. It comes soon after 1362, for which see note to p. 146, l. 26. The reference to the peace of Brétigny (1360) in the *Itinerarius* would put it still further back. In 1366, Jean d'Outremeuse was twenty-eight years old, and Sir John Mandeville still had six years to live. If the *Travels* were part

of an anti-Papal campaign of popular agitation, they would be turned into English almost at once, for the Wycliffites knew the importance of addressing the people in their mother tongue. The choice of an English name for the imaginary protagonist of the *Travels*, and even the choice of an author of Liège for supporting the English policy against the Pontifical See, would be easily accounted for. Was not Jean le Bel, the chronicler and servant of Edward in his wars, a native of the Principality of Liège, and was he not one of the models and sources for d'Outremeuse's, as for Froissart's chronicles?

Our theory, first put forward in the *Quarterly Review* (April 1917), that the *Travels* are an anti-Papal pamphlet in disguise, rests primarily upon the allusions to the Papacy, eleven in number, contained in the text. Some of these do not allow of any definite conclusions, such as the four comparisons between the Pontifical dignity and various heads of other churches, the Patriarch of Constantinople (p. 11, l. 25), the Caliph of Muhammadans (p. 27, l. 10), the Patriarch of St. Thomas in India (p. 184, l. 21), and the Lobassy or Grand Lama of Tibet (p. 205, l. 17). Others hint, without open blame, that the popes have altered the rites of the Early Church: auricular confession is described as an invention of the Holy Fathers (p. 80, l. 16 and note), and they are said to have added to the text of the mass (p. 200, l. 3). The report that Athanasius was put in prison by a pope for composing his creed (p. 96, l. 27) can hardly be interpreted as complimentary to the Roman See. Much more aggressive than this is the passage about the quarrel between Pope John the XXIInd and the Greeks (pp. 11-12). Accusations of pride and avarice are levelled against John, and the letter of defiance addressed to him is worthy of the Wycliffites. An open charge of simony is levelled at the Pontiff himself in the sentence: For now is Simon king crowned in Holy Church (p. 12, ll. 21-22, and see note). Slyer, though no less impudent, is the claim that the mendacious *Travels* have been "affirmed and proved" by Our Holy Father (p. 210, l. 17). The eleventh and last instance is open to dispute and a matter of hypothesis. A prophet is credited with the pronouncement that "Out of Babylon shall come a worm that shall devour all the world" (p. 73, l. 20). As no such sentence has been traced in the prophetic books of the Bible, we may suspect a Wycliffite war-cry against the world-power of the New Babylon or Rome.

Other allusions to religious matters, to the various sects of Christianity, to the beliefs of Jews, Muhammadans and heathens of various lands, must be read in the light of the statements discussed above, always remembering that the propagandist prefers innuendo to direct statements, and that it was a dangerous thing to defy the power of the Church barefaced. It is not impossible that the account of Buddhist almsgiving to beasts (p. 137, ll. 5-36, and note) hides a satire on the doctrine of Purgatory and on the sale of indulgences. That certain savages delight to drink human blood and call it *dieu* (*i. e.* god, p. 129, l. 26) may or may not be a satire against the dogma of transubstantiation. Many similar cases are discussed in the notes. On the whole, they bear out the interpretation of the book as a more or less veiled libel against the Roman Church.

IV

THE TEXTS

A FULL enumeration of the manuscripts of the French original text of the *Travels*, listed by J. Vogels, will be found in Roehricht's *Bibliotheca Geographica Palaestinae*, 1890. No critical edition is in existence. A reprint from two MSS. in the British Museum (Harley 4383 and Royal 20 B. x), with variants from others, is accessible in the Roxburgh Club edition. A modernised French text, cut down to about one-fifth of the original, is to be found in Bergeron: *Recueil des Voyages*, The Hague, 1735.

Dr. Vogels has proved the existence of two independent English translations of the *Travels*, testifying to their wide popularity in the country of John Wycliffe. Of these translations one, preserved in two MSS. (E. Museo 116 and Rawlinson D. 99 in the Bodleian), is called by him E.L. = *Englisch Lateinisch* or *Anglo-Latin*, as it is from a Latin version, and the other, E.F. = *Anglo-French*, is from the French original. The variations between several copies of the latter are so striking that they were long believed to be by several Englishers. But the method applied by Dr. Vogels seems incontrovertible. He assumes that no man is likely to mistranslate what has already been correctly interpreted. One convincing example occurs on p. 56, ll. 27-28. D'Outremeuse there describes the signs of the Zodiac as "*signes du ciel*," signs of the sky. The

Englischer misread "cygnes," swans, and wrote "Swannes of heuene." That this blunder arose from the French is undeniable. No reviser or corrector could possibly have introduced it. It not only bears the stamp of an original translator, but of one who distinguished himself by his ignorance and stupidity. Another example is that on p. 72, l. 3. D'Outremeuse wrote about *nonains cordelières*, i.e. Franciscan nuns. The Englischer misread the c. as the numeral 100 and wrote "Nonnes of an hundred ordres." By these two examples the capacity of the original Englischer may be gauged. It is not surprising that his blunders should have invited emendation, and that more sensible and more cultivated scribes should have confronted his work with one of the many French copies and removed the worst faults. But the modern editor does not go to the *Mandeville* for accurate information; he wants the text as it came from the earliest translator's hand, testifying to the state of mind of the anonymous individual who first turned it into English, and to the wants and shortcomings of his fourteenth-century readers. Therefore he prefers the imperfect Cotton Titus c. XVI. version to the more correct Egerton 1982 printed by Sir G. Warner. For *signes du ciel*, the Egerton has: *signez of þe firmament*; the *nonains cordelières* it simply omits.

Sir G. Warner chose the Egerton MS. for three reasons:—1. the Egerton was still unprinted, while the Cotton was accessible in the 1725 edition and in several reprints from that, *e.g.* Halliwell's (London. F. S. Ellis, 1866). 2. It is in a more Northern dialect, and therefore interesting to the philologist. 3. Its mistakes are fewer.—The former two reasons have lost their importance, since Sir G. Warner's edition is in print. The last is not convincing after Dr. Vogels has proved that the Egerton version is a composite one, accepting the main body of the text from Cotton, with minor variations, and filling a large gap (corresponding to p. 22, l. 3 to p. 41, l. 21 of the present edition) from the Anglo-Latin version discovered by Vogels. Cotton, then, although it has lost a few pages (our pp. 212–217), remains the only practically complete and consistent, as well as the most original text. An earlier pedigree of the various English texts, constructed by Dr. Nicholson and accepted by Sir G. Warner, is thus proved to have no foundation in fact.

We are then compelled to agree to the strange principle that the test of authenticity lies not in the correctness but in the very

excess of the blundering, for a demonstrably and intentionally misleading French original by the arch-romancer d'Outremeuse has been Englished by an ignorant and careless translator. Wherever the present editor felt tempted to correct the Cotton manuscript, he either found, on comparing with the two Brussels manuscripts and with the printed Harley text, that d'Outremeuse himself was responsible for the misstatement, or that the translator had erred through incompetence. Very few errors, pointed out in the notes, may be due to the copyist or copyists who intervened between the original and the Cotton MS. Even here, there can be no certainty, as the Englisher was quite capable of any lapse of spelling and grammar, in addition to the many fantastic mistranslations that are undoubtedly his own. A difficult problem is raised by the cases of words correctly rendered in one passage and misinterpreted in another. Can we believe that the same man knew the meaning of a French word one day and forgot it on the morrow? Other explanations are more probable. 1. His French manuscript might be faulty, as in the confusion of *signes* with *cygnes* or in that of *cordelieres* and *c. ordres*. 2. The context might help in one case, and hinder in another. 3. His slovenliness is so obvious, that it suffices to account for doubtful examples. For all these reasons, the task of the would-be improver is a hopeless one, and we had to confine ourselves to honestly supplying readers with the original data and to banish the fruits of our own wisdom to the notes. In this we took warning by the example of the learned Scheler, who closes his commentary on the *Bâtard de Bouillon* with a sigh of regret at having too much normalised his text. No variants could be printed in the footnotes because the difference between the English MSS. is too great. The list of those MSS. has twice been printed by Dr. Vogels: once in his paper of 1891, and once in Roehricht. I have only seen those in London, Oxford and Cambridge.

As the first duty of a student who undertakes to edit a translation is to master its original, and as only a diplomatic reprint of the Anglo-French Harley 4383, supplemented by Royal XX B.x, with variants from Sloane 1464 and Grenville XXXIX., is accessible in print, I have copied Brussels 10420-5, a text recommended by Vogels as among the best, but full of crabbed abbreviations, and I have checked it with Brussels 11141, which is inferior, but in a plain hand. The Cotton version I have found faithful to the

Anglo-French Harley text, when the Englisher did not fall a victim to his peculiar weaknesses. The mistranslations are interesting in showing how slavishly, and with what complete disregard of both the French and the English idiom, the work has been done.

In Sir G. Warner's description of the Cotton MS. we have nothing to alter: "It is a small quarto measuring $8\frac{1}{2}$ by 6 inches, with 132 leaves. The text is written in a neat, well-formed hand, varying somewhat in parts (more especially at folio 119) but not enough to make it certain that more than one scribe was employed. The ornamentation is very simple. There is a large initial in gold, on a red and blue ground, at the beginning, and the other initials are in blue, filled in and flourished with lines in red. The text is divided into chapters by rubricated titles, without numeration." The date conjecturally assigned to it is 1410-1420. Although not a word is illegible, some letters are so much alike as to be practically identical: so *c* and *t*, *n* and *u* (mendingant may be read mendiant, cf. mendif). Even *e* and *o* are sometimes hard to distinguish. A curl after final *r* often means nothing: *clere* = *clere*. The question has been raised whether a crossed *H* should be read *ll* or *lle*. We agree with Prof. Kern that the crossing in this case is of no phonetic or grammatical importance. It might have been altogether disregarded in copying.

V

THE SOURCES

THE sources of the *Mandeville* have been traced by Sir G. Warner and Dr. Bovenschen, until all but a few pages have been proved to be stolen from some older book, and until all probability of the author having seen with his own eyes and described from his own experience has disappeared. It seems, then, as if nothing were left for following commentators to do but to repeat what has been said before them. This is not so. In their zeal for unmasking the plagiarist and in the fulness of their learning those two scholars have not been content to measure the extent of their author's reading. They have pursued many of the traditions collected by him to their remote origins in classical and Jewish antiquity, thus attributing to him a wider and more solid erudition than he

possessed. On the other hand, they have taken too little account of his familiarity with romances in the vernacular, especially those about the Crusades and about Alexander the Great. Finally, they have insufficiently stressed the use made by him of Vincent of Beauvais's encyclopaedia, both of natural philosophy (*Speculum Naturale*) and of history (*Speculum Historiale*). None of the three principal sources of the Travels, William of Boldensele's pilgrimage to the Holy Land, Friar Odoric de Pordenone's travels to Palestine and to the Far East, William of Tripoli's account of the Saracens (*De Statu Saracenorum*), is included in Vincent, but most of the other books, historical and scientific, plundered for the *Manderille*, have been excerpted by him. Where the commentators refer to Pliny, to Solinus, to Isidor of Seville, to Honorius' *Imago Mundi*, it is certain that d'Outremeuse never went beyond what he learned at school or could read in his encyclopaedia. If we fail to identify the exact wording of the passage in Vincent, we may assume that d'Outremeuse took liberties with his model or that he used a copy somewhat different from our present printed editions. The names of Vincent's authorities he found carefully noted in each chapter. The fabulous history of Alexander, *e. g.*, is told in the *Mirror Historial*, Book IV. The *Historia Alexandri*, Justinus, Valerius, Quintus Curtius, Martianus, Orosius, the *Epistle of Alexander*, Seneca, the correspondence between Alexander and Didimus, are quoted in turn. This enabled d'Outremeuse to refer glibly to them all.

It is no less certain that, as a reader and writer of Gestes or romances, he knew some verse epics in Middle French, probably the *Alexander* edited by Michelant. It is nearly impossible for a modern commentator, provided with recent printed editions, to ascertain what particular versions of the legend, vernacular or Latin, in verse or in prose, d'Outremeuse may have followed besides his Vincent. When he departs from all known authorities, Dr. Bovenschen is inclined to surmise "oral tradition," and Sir G. Warner hesitates between lost sources and the author's invention. Now that we are acquainted with d'Outremeuse's vagaries, there is little doubt that the latter view is the correct one. Lost authorities are very unlikely to have escaped the minute and protracted search of a number of competent students. As for oral tradition, which is gradually losing its hold on the faith of scholars, there is no reason to postulate it at all. Judging from d'Outremeuse's known

methods, we must suppose the written sources as few as possible. Eugesippus-Fretellus's description of the Holy Places (*De Locis Sanctis*), John de Plano-Carpino on the Tartars (Book XXXI. of the *Mirror Historial*), are incorporated in Vincent. Extracts from other works must have been obtained in the Latin original. As has already been pointed out by Sir G. Warner (p. xl of his Introduction), all the sources of the *Travels*, except Boldensele and Odoric, occur in the list of authorities for d'Oultremeuse's *Mirror of Histories* (p. xcix of the Introduction to it).

VI

THE ALPHABETS

OUR Cotton MS. contains four alphabets: one at the close of Chap. III., called Greek (p. 13); another at the close of Chap. VII., called Egyptian (p. 34); a third at the close of Chap. XIII. called Jewish (p. 73); and a fourth at the close of Chap. XVI., called Saracen (p. 92). A so-called Persian alphabet, missing in the Cotton MS. (p. 100), is inserted in the corresponding place in the Egerton MS. Facing p. 442 of Cordier's edition of Odoric is the facsimile of an "alphabet fantaisiste de la langue de Pen-thexoire," from a *Mandeville*, whether printed or manuscript, French or Latin, M. Cordier does not say.

Sir G. Warner's comments are that (1) the Greek alphabet offers peculiar forms; (2) the so-called Egyptian is corrupt past recognition; (3) the so-called Hebrew is also corrupt; (4) the so-called Saracen is not Arabic, but has strong affinities with the Slavonic alphabet known as the Glagolitic, and is found in the *Cosmographia* of Aethicus. (References to: H. Wuttke, *Die Kosmographie des Istrier Aithicos*, etc., Leipzig, 1854, p. 85; Pertz, *De Cosmographia Ethici libri tres*, Berlin, 1853, pp. 150-184, and plate, p. 199.) (5) The so-called Persian cannot be identified, but is given by J. G. Eccard, *De origine Germanorum libri duo*, 1750, pl. IV., p. 192, from an unspecified MS. at Ratisbon. It there professes to be Chaldaic. This MS. contains six other alphabets, including the so-called Egyptian of *Mandeville*.—So far Sir G. Warner.

The whole problem is one that cannot be solved without comparing and classifying many facsimiles and photographs, an enterprise not easily achieved in the year of Our Lord 1920. Therefore

we here confine ourselves to stating its existence, and to asking some questions. Had d'Outremeuse any reason for collecting and reproducing all these alphabets? Why did the copyists and buyers of the *Travels* go to the trouble and expense of drawing and purchasing them? Was it on account of the connection between the Glagolitic alphabet, *e.g.*, and the Medieval heresies popularly traced to the East, and especially to the Bulgarians? Was it because the legend of Prester John of Pentexoire, as stated by Cordier (p. 440), served as a vehicle for allusions to contemporary politics and religion, as in the pamphlet from which a facsimile is reproduced in his *Odoric* (p. 441)? In brief, have the alphabets any bearing on the anti-Papal character of the *Mandeville*? One practical object of keeping half a dozen of them bound together in one volume might be to facilitate secret correspondence, as a common form of cypher in the Middle Ages was the mixing of various alphabets in the same text (Al. Meister, *Anfänge der modernen diplomatischen Geheimschrift*, 1902, p. 18). The objection to this hypothesis is that, if such documents had been in use, at least a few of them ought to have survived, to come under the notice of keepers of records and manuscripts. So far nothing seems to have been heard about them. Still the question remains, whether sympathisers with the *Mandeville's* heterodox views did not use its alphabets for secret intercourse.

NOTES

p. 1, l. 21.—The philosopher Aristotle (*Nic. Eth.* II. 7) and Cicero (*De Offic.* I. 25) praise the mean way. Pseudo-Methodius, ed. Sackur, 1898, p. 77 : “in medio terrae vivificans confixa et consolidata est . . . crux.” He means Calvary, not, as others do, the Compass or the Sepulchre. Ps. lxxiv. 12 : “For God is my King of old, working salvation in the midst of the earth.”

p. 2, l. 30. *hath whereof*.—Gallicism : has the wherewithal, the means, *a de quoi*.

p. 3, l. 8. *wolde god*.—The Anglo-French Harleian text 4383 (H.) has a cut at the Papacy, writing “Mes sil plesoit a nostre seint pere lapostolle,” *i. e.* if it pleased our Holy Father the Pope, “gar a Dieu plerroit-il bien,” for it would well please God, that the lords were in agreement, etc.

p. 3, l. 14.—A general passage is a Crusade.

p. 3, l. 26. *Inde the lasse t the more*.—H. also mentions middle India, *la moiene*.

p. 4, l. 1. *I haue*.—H. : ieusse cest escript mis en latyn, *i. e.* “I should have written this book in Latin in order to be briefer. But, as many understand French better than Latin, I wrote it in French.” That the original text is the French we may accept as true. The Englisher probably did not understand the meaning of the conditional. He also altered the sense to suit his purpose. Hence the later belief that the same author wrote the same book in three different languages !

p. 4, l. 10. *mynde of man ne may not ben comprehended*.—Mistranslation. H. rightly has : “memorie de homme ne puet mye tot retenir ne comprendre.” Man’s memory cannot remember or understand everything.

p. 4, l. 12.—Apart from the hit at the Papacy, the prologue is a string of commonplaces from the literature of the Crusades, utterly hollow, and perhaps ironical. The land of promise was a common theme for parody. See Pöschel, *Das Schlaraffenland*, P.B.B. 1878, p. 420.

p. 4, l. 14. *ouer the see*.—The text is corrupt, through a gap. H. : par plusours chemyns il puet aler, par meer et par terre, solonc les parties dont il mouera, dont luy plusours tournent tot a un fyn.

Halliwell, 1867 : to go to the City of Jerusalem, he may go by many Weyes, bothe on See and Lande, aftre the Countree that he cometh fro : manye of hem comen to on ende.

p. 4, l. 20. *3if a man come from the west*.—Si quis ab occidentilibus partibus. The *incipit* of the Pilgrim's Text known as *Innominatus*, published by Tobler, 1865. See Comte Riant, *Itinéraires à Jérusalem*, pub. Société de l'Orient Latin, série géographique, III. 1882.

p. 4, l. 23. *hungarye*.—The route followed by Peter the Hermit and by the First Crusade, as described in Albert d'Aix, in William of Tyre and in the Crusading epics, one of which, the *Chanson de Godefroi de Bouillon*, is the work of a *trouvère* of Liège, living in the late fourteenth century, perhaps Jean d'Outremeuse himself. See preface, p. 12.

p. 4, l. 29. *Bougiers*.—H. : des Bougres, the Medieval French name of the Bulgarians.

Ibid. *Roussye*.—Interpreted by Sir G. Warner as Red Russia, *i. e.* Halicz or Galicia, long in dispute between Hungary and Poland.

p. 4, l. 31. *Niflan*, Livonia.

p. 4, l. 33. *Cypron* : in Hungarian Soprony, in German Ödenburg.

Ibid. *Neiseburgh*.—Warner : "The place is no doubt the 'praesidium Meseburch' of Albert of Aix, I. 23 (p. 290), and the 'Meeszburg' of William of Tyre, I. 29 (*Recueil*, I. p. 67). This was situated on the Lintax or Leytha, and is now known as Wieselburg (Moszon, Hungarian). . . . Its position north-east of Ödenburg, and so out of the road to Belgrade, is additional evidence that Mandeville had no personal acquaintance with the route."

p. 4, l. 33. *euyll town*.—An entertaining translation of the French name of Maleville, Latin Malavilla, *i. e.* Semlin, opposite Belgrade. Sir G. Warner refers to *Alb. Ag.* I. 6 (p. 274) and II. 6 (p. 303). Walter the Pennyless crossed the Save at Malavilla, not the Danube, as Mandeville suggests on p. 5, l. 2.

p. 5, l. 3. *goth in to Almayne*.—H. : naist en Alemaigne, rises in Germany, which is correct. Vogels (1886), p. 13, has traced this mistranslation to a misreading of *u* for *n* : vaist (vait, vadit, va) for naist.

p. 5, l. 11. *Marrok*.—C. J. Jirecek, *Die Heerstrasse*, etc., 1877, p. 99, states that the stone bridge crossing the river Marica at Cirmen is one of the few facts correctly mentioned by Mandeville,

the master of lies ! Warner : " This reads like a confused reminiscence of *Alb. Ag.* I. 8 (p. 278), from which it appears that the 'lapideus pons' was not over the Morava, the right bank of which was reached by the Crusaders in boats, but over its tributary the Nissava, in front of the city of Nizh (the Ny of the French text and C.), now Nish."

p. 5, l. 18. *covered with gold*.—MS. Brussels, 10420-5 : de coyvre doreis, *i. e.* of copper gilt. Boldensele : de aere . . . tota deaurata (1855, p. 30). The mistranslation is ingenious. On the statue, which stood from 543 to 1550, Sir G. Warner refers to Zonaras (XIV. 6), to Procopius (*De Aedificiis*, I. 2), to Nicephorus Gregoras (*Hist. Byzant.* VII. 12, 4). The cross on the orb was blown down in 1317. Boldensele and Bondelmonti (*Liber insularum Archipelagi*, ed. 1824, p. 122) saw the apple in its place. John of Hildesheim, 1878, p. 24, also describes the statue as holding its orb and threatening the Saracens in the East with its right hand. According to Ward, *Cat. of Rom.* I. 1883, p. 581, Turpin's chronicle describes a gigantic idol of bronze or copper (*auricalco operata*) erected by Mahomet upon a seaside rock at Cadiz. In its right hand it holds a key, which will slip out of it whenever the king shall be born in France who is destined to restore Christianity throughout Spain. Mandeville's account is evidently coloured by romances of that type.

p. 5, l. 20. *appell of gold*.—B. 10420-5 : doreis, *i. e.* gilt, a word obviously beyond the Englisher's linguistic capacity.

p. 5, l. 27. *toul he holt*.—B. 10420-25 : le paijs qui se tient, *i. e.* the dependencies of Greece. Mistranslation.

p. 6, l. 2. *Tunica*.—Boldensele, 1855, p. 31 : " In hac sacra urbe vidi ex mandato domini imperatoris magnam partem crucis dominicæ, tunicam Domini inconsutilem, item spongiam, calamum et unum clavum Domini corpusque beati Johannis Crisostomi et plures alias sanctorum reliquias venerandas." Mandeville omits the saints and adds the crown and spear-head dear to the romances.

p. 6, l. 7. *Cypres*.—Boldensele (p. 33) saw the relic in Cyprus.

p. 6, l. 14. *In cruce jñt palma*.—Isaiah lx. 13 : " The glory of Lebanon shall come unto thee, the fir tree, the pine tree, and the box together, to beautify the place of my sanctuary ; and I will make the place of my feet glorious." Sir G. Warner : " In the Septuagint, however, they are the cypress, the pine and the cedar (S. Jerome, *Comm. in Isaiam* ; Migne, *Patr. Lat.* XXIV. 594).

. . . Bede adds box as the wood on which the title was written, the main upright being of cypress, the crossbeam of cedar, and the upright above it of pine (Migne, *Patr. Lat.* XCIV. 555). Mandeville's enumeration agrees with that of Jac. de Voragine (*Legenda Aurea*, 1846, p. 303), who quotes the monostich 'Ligna crucis palma, cedrus, cupressus, oliva;' and his distribution of the materials follows the traditional lines (Gretser, *De Cruce*, 1734, I. p. 7) :

'Quatnor ex lignis Domini crux dicitur esse.
Pes crucis est cedrus; corpus tenet alta cupressus;
Palma manus retinet; titulo laetatur oliva.'

The palm-branch was carried as a sign of victory by winners in the Olympic games, but it appears as a piece of Christian symbolism in a Palm Sunday sermon in the *Blickling Homilies*: "þa baeron hie him [*i. e.* to Christ] tozeanes blowende palmtwizu; forþon þe hit waes Iudisc þeaw, þonne heora eininȝas haefdon siȝe ȝeworht on heora feondum, t hie waeron eft ham hweorfende, þonne eodan hie him tozeanes mid blowendum palmtwizum, heora siȝes to wyorþmyndum" (quoted by A. V. Vincenti, on *Solomon and Saturn*, 1904, p. 59). Vincent de Beauvais, *Spec. Nat.* 1624, l. 13, c. 31, col. 968, refers to the Song of Songs, vii. 8: "I said, I will go up to the palm tree, I will take hold of the boughs thereof."

p. 6, l. 25. *as the cros*.—H.: tant come le corps purroit durer. Mistranslation.

p. 6, l. 33. *on was ouercomen*.—H.: ascun auoit victorie, which means the opposite.

p. 7, l. 7. *discord t strif*.—H.: descord only.

p. 7, l. 9. *ȝnaylled on the cros lyggȝyng*.—Mistranslation through omission. H.: Et sachez qe nostre Seignur fuist atachez a la croiz en gisant par terre et puis fuist dressez onesque la croiz et ensi en dressant il soffry la pluis grande peine.

p. 7, l. 14. *seyth þat Adam was seek*.—Mistranslation. H.: Et dit cest escript qe quant Adam estoit malades, il dit a son filz Seth, etc.

p. 7, l. 23. *vnder his tonge t graue him*.—H.: en la bouche son pierre et, quant l'arbre cresseroit et porteroit fruit, adonques serroit son pierre garry, *i. e.* the angel told Seth to put the seeds in his father's mouth, and that, when the tree would grow and bear fruit, then his father would be cured. The Englisher misinterprets the grammar and misses the point of the story.

p. 7, l. 24. *.iij. greynes.*—Three seeds then produce four trees. This characteristic pièce of levity also occurs in Jean d'Outremeuse's *Mirror of Histories*, I. 1864, p. 320, where the story-teller clumsily attempts to mend his blunder by pretending that pine is otherwise called olive. Bovenschen (p. 213) traces Mandeville's version to two sources: the 68th chapter of the *Golden Legend*, for the four kinds of wood; another legend, printed by Wilhelm Meyer (*Abhandlungen der phil.-hist. Klasse der Kgl. bayr. Akad. d. Wissensch.*, Vol. XVI., 2nd part), for the three seeds. D'Outremeuse's *Mirror of Histories* darkly hints at an esoteric doctrine of an antediluvian book of Seth: "doctrine sens libre de l'escripture Seth de son doit" (I. 1864, p. 321). The spot in the middle of the earth where Adam's skull lies buried, with the trees growing out of his mouth is Golgotha, called τὸ κρατίον by the Byzantines (E. Sackur: *Sibyllinische Texte und Forschungen*, 1898, p. 43). The romance of the Saint Graal, summarised by P. Paris in *Les Romans de la Table Ronde*, I. (1868), pp. 228–236, says that a slip from the Tree of Knowledge, planted by Eve, was white before the conception of Abel, then green, and turned red after the killing of Abel. Three trees survive: the Tree of Death, the Tree of Life, the Tree of Help and Comfort. They bleed when cut with carpenters' axes. For the whole Legend of the Cross, Sir G. Warner refers to A. Mussafia, *Legenda del legno della croce*, in *Sitzungsber. Kaiserl. Akad. Wiens* (Vol. LXIII. 1870, p. 165), and to R. Morris, *Legends of the Holy Rood*, 1871. Wilhelm Meyer, *Abhandlungen*, as above, Vols. XIV. and XVI., is the principal authority.

p. 8, l. 4. *t gat . . . of Englonde.*—Missing in the French original.

p. 8, l. 8. *crowne of oure lord.*—The Brussels MS. 10420–5 says that part of the crown, one nail and the spear-head are at Constantinople, while other relics are in France in the King's Chapel. Mandeville therefore confused the relics seen by Boldensele in the East (nail) with those of the Crusading epics. According to L. Gautier, *Les Épopées françaises*, 2nd ed., Vol. III. (1880), pp. 308–315, Charlemagne on his passage to Jerusalem is reported to have obtained the crown, the nail, the chalice of the Last Supper, and drops of Our Lady's Milk, which he took to the altar of St. Denis. The Tunie and Spear Head appear in the version of the *Chevalier au Cygne*, published by Reiffenberg (P. Paris in Vol. XXV. of *Histoire Littéraire*). The Spear Head holds an

important place in the *Chanson d'Antioche*, ed. P. Paris, 1848, p. 165, etc. It is carried before the host to secure victory. Fierabras begins with a description of the relics of the Passion. In the *Chanson de Roland*, the Spear Head is described as set in the hilt of Joyeuse, Charlemagne's sword (Bédier, *Légendes épiques*, I. (1908), p. 63). A piece of the True Cross is given to William of Orange (*ibid.*, p. 113). A relic of the Cross worn round the neck by Charlemagne is now the property of the Cathedral of Reims (*Le Temps*, Oct. 2, 1920).

p. 8, l. 11. *kynges Chapell*.—The romances took the relics to the Imperial church in Aix la Chapelle. Mandeville cheerfully confuses this with the Sainte-Chapelle still extant in Paris, built from 1245 by King Saint Louis to hold the Cross and Crown sent to him from Constantinople by Jean de Brienne and by his successor Baldwin.

p. 8, l. 13. *Jewes*.—Brussels MS. : genevois, *i. e.* Genoese. St. Louis redeemed the relics from the Venetians and Templars, who held them in pawn, not from the Genoese, still less from the Jews, whose name comes in through a characteristic blunder of the Englisher. Sir G. Warner refers to Count Riant's *Exuviae sacrae Constant.*, 1877-8.

p. 8, l. 14. *for a gret summe of syluer*.—II. : pur grant boisoigne d'argent, *i. e.* because he was very short of money. Three mistranslations in four words.

p. 8, l. 16. *jonkes of the see*.—Sir G. Warner quotes Durandus (*ob.* 1333), "Et scias quod corona fuit de juncis marinis, sicut eam vidimus in thesauris regis Francorum, quorum acies non minus spinis durae sunt et acutae" (*Rationale*, VI. 77, ed. 1565, f. 344 b.). As no source is given for the three kinds of thorn used in the Passion, we may suspect that the author of *Mandeville* invented them in imitation of the three or four kinds of wood in the Cross.

p. 8, l. 24. *zouen to me*.—A brazen lie : neither d'Oultremeuse nor Mandeville is likely ever to have owned such a valuable possession.

p. 8, l. 37. *ne in the hous pat it is jinne*.—Double mistranslation. II. : Qar, qī porte vne branche sur luy, il nad garde de foudre ne de tonnoire ne de tempeste, ne la maison ou il est dedeins. Nul malueis esprit ne puet approcher en lieu ou il soit, *i. e.* : For whoever wears a twig about him need fear neither lightning nor thunder nor storm, nor the house that he is in. No evil spirit

may come near the spot where he is. On this superstition Sir G. Warner quotes Ovid (*Fæsti*, VI. 129) :

“Sic fatus, spinam, qua tristes pellere posset
A foribus noxas (haec erat alba), dedit.”

p. 9, l. 7. *Barbarynes* : barberry.—Sir G. Warner refers to Folkard (*Plant-lore*, 1884, p. 243) for the statement that in Italy the Crown was believed to be barberry, the spines of which grows in sets of three.

p. 9, l. 8. *vertues*.—Brussels adds : et si faitomz de bon vergus dez fuillhes, *i. e.* and good verjuice is made from the leaves, a typical piece of cynicism.

p. 9, l. 20. *Emperour of Almayne*.—Elster (*Kritik des Lohengrin*, P. B. B. Vol. X., 1885, p. 91) refers to Rückert's *Lohengrin* for the tradition that the Spear was obtained from the King of Burgundy by the Emperor Henry.

p. 9, l. 24.—The beginning of ch. iii. is from Boldensele ; the mention of the transfer of St. Anna introduced from another passage of Boldensele. See duplicate, p. 58, l. 25.

p. 9, l. 31. *Eyndros*.—Vincent de Beauvais, *Spec. Nat.* (1624), l. 8, c. 70, quotes Isidor : the stone eyndros sweats out so much water that a fountain seems hidden in it. The sober Boldensele knew how moisture will ooze out of certain porous stones under the influence of the temperature ; Mandeville suppresses his scientific and sensible explanation and prefers the incredible. According to Mousket, the stone ran with oil, which is still better :

“Alucques si est li vasciaus
Mervillous et rices et biaux
Que nous apiclons ydria.
Et saciés de fit qu'il i a
D'olie d'olive adies assés
Ia tant n'en prendra on son sés
En cel vasciel l'Arcedeclin
Fist Dieux servir d'aige fait vin.”

(*Itinéraires à Jérusalem*, 1882, p. 119.)

See Raym. Beazley, *The Dawn of Modern Geography*, Vol. II., 1901, p. 138.

p. 9, l. 33. *take fro withjune*.—II : sanz ceo qe lem mette riens dedeins, *i. e.* without any more water being added inside. Mis-translation.

p. 10, l. 14. *Turcople*, etc.—Alb. Aqu. 1879, l. 4, c. 40, p. 417,

Turcopoli, Pincenarii, Comanitae figure in the Greek Emperor's army.

p. 10, l. 19. *grete festes*.—The Aristotelia, mentioned by the biographer Ammonius.

p. 10, l. 28.—*Athos*, placed in the isle of Lemnos in line 11, now reappears on the Continent. What Mandeville here reports about Mount Athos is referred to Olympus in his source Vincent de Beauvais (1524, l. VI., c. xxi., col. 383): "Isidor.—Athos mons Macedoniae, et ipse altior nubibus: tantoque sublimis, ut in Lemno umbram eius pertendat, quae ab eo septuaginta sex milibus separatur. . . . Comestor.—Olympus usquead liquidum aera evadit, super quem literae inscriptae in pulvere per annum inventae sunt illaesae, et stetisse immobiles, ubi prae nimia aeris raritate nec etiam aves vivere possunt nec philosophi ascendentes absque spongiis plenis aqua aliquantum ibi manere poterunt, quas naribus apponentes erassiorem inde aerem attrahebant."—Mandeville's concrete, individual narrative is a great improvement on Vincent.

p. 10, l. 34. *for to haue eyr*.—H: aier moiste, *i. e.* wet air.

p. 11, l. 5. *place for justynges*: the Hippodrome or Atmeidan.

p. 11, l. 21. *hermogene*.—The French original rightly reads Hermes, *i. e.* Hermes Trismegistus, a legendary sage, after whom the Hermetic or magical philosophy has been named. Roger Bacon, *Metaphysica* (ed. R. Steele, p. 8), states that from primeval times he prophesied the Virgin birth of Jesus. The legend of the discovery of the prophecy occurs in the *Golden Legend*, *Historia lombardica*, and in the *Metaphysica*: "In historiis legimus quod sub Hirene et Constantino Imperatoribus effossum fuit cadaver cum scriptura ista: Credo in Christum, sub Hirene et Constantino iterum me videbit sol" (ed. Steele, pp. 41–42). That the name of Hermes was in the Middle Ages connected with the heretical view that various religions or laws were equally legitimate appears from Guillaume de Tignonville's *Dits d'Aristote*, which belong, like Mandeville, to the fourteenth century: "Hermès . . . né en Égypte . . . devant le grand déluge . . . établit à tout le peuple de chacun climat loi pertinente et convenable à leurs opinions . . . les contrainst à garder la loi de Dieu, à dire vérité, à dépriser le monde, à garder justice et à acquérir leur sauvement en l'autre monde" (p. xx. of Leroux de Liney's *Proverbes français*, Vol. I., 1859). That some pagans might foresee the coming of Christ was supported with Matt. xx. 30: they heard that Jesus passed by.

p. 11, l. 28. *Pope John the xxij*.—A Pope of Avignon, who

greatly increased the treasury of the Church. Edward III., to whom the *Travels of Mandeville* are dedicated, protected the Wycliffites, who leaned on the example of the Greek Church in their repudiation of the claims of Rome. The fictitious Greek letter of defiance is similar to epistles exchanged between Alexander and Darius in Valerius (ed. Kübler, 1888, pp. 47-48), and to fictitious correspondence published by Wattenbach: "Fausse correspondance du sultan avec Clément V." (*Archives de l'Orient latin*, t. II., 1884, p. 297). It reappears in the anti-Romish *Beehive* of Marnix de Ste Aldegonde (p. 4 b of G. Gilpin's English translation, 1636). See our own note on p. 3, l. 8. Sir G. Warner: "Much of what is here said of the religious tenets and usages of the Greeks is to be found in J. de Vitry, *Hist. Hierosol.* (ed. Bongars, *Gesta Dei per Francos*, 1611, pp. 1089-1091)." John XXII. was the Pope in the explorer Odoric's time.

p. 12, l. 6. *therf bred*.—Unleavened bread. Mistranslation: the French text states that the Greeks use fermented bread for the sacrament.

p. 12, l. 11. *on vncionn*.—H.: Et si ne font qe vne envnction en baptisme, et ne font point darrein vncionn as malades.

p. 12, l. 22. *Simonye*.—H.: Qar au iour de huy est Simon roi coronnez en seinte esglise. The Englisher wipes out the satirical allusion to the Pope, here identified with Simon Magus himself. Simonia, being feminine, would be queen, not king!

p. 12, l. 26. *but it be cristemass euen*.—Agrees with H. Brussels has the opposite: et fuist la vigiel, even it were Christmas or Easter eve.

p. 12, l. 34. *of oure lord*.—H. adds: et eils qi les font raser le font pur estre pluis pleisantz a monde et as femmes, a touch characteristic of d'Outremeuse.

p. 13, l. 2. *dayes before Asschewednesday*.—H.: le sismaigne de quarresme carnem pernant, i.e. the first week in Lent, including carnival time and Ash Wednesday.

p. 13, l. 12.—D'Outremeuse's zeal for collecting rare bits of knowledge may account for his inserting four alphabets into the Mandeville. But if he wanted to propagate heterodox views they might be used as cyphers among the initiated. The insertion of Greek letters into Latin alphabets was a common device for secret correspondence in the Middle Ages (Aloys Meister: *Anfänge der modernen diplomatischen Geheimschrift*, Paderborn, 1902). Fac-similes of Eastern alphabets used by heretics are to be found in

M. Gaster's Ilchester Lectures on *Greeko-Slavonic Literature and its relation to the folklore of Europe during the Middle Ages* (1887). Chaldaean writings and words occur in connection with occult lore in Arthurian romances (P. Paris: *Romans de la Table Ronde*, I., 1868, pp. 222, 345). Mr. R. Flower, of the MSS. department of the British Museum, kindly told me that no documents in the Mandeville cyphers were known to him.

p. 13, l. 18. *on this half*.—H.: nostre pais de cea. Les pays de par deça was a common name of the Netherlands.

p. 13, l. 24. *Nike*, Nicaea.—Chienetout, Civitot, Lat. Cibotus is mentioned in Crusading literature:

"Passent le bras saint Jorge a petite navie
Le pui de Civetot qui vers le ciel ombrie,
Qui defors Nique siet plus de line et demie."

(*Chanson d'Antioche*, ed. Paris, 1848, I., p. 22.)

Spruner identifies it with Hersek.

p. 13, l. 29. *Sylo*.—Boldensele: "Veni ad insulam Syo [*i. e.* Scios] ubi mastix crescit, et, ut, dicunt, nusquam alibi. Gummi est fluens de arboribus parvulis, punctura certi instrumenti in cortice apertis tempore oportuno" (p. 32). Mastic is used for making cordials.

p. 14, l. 1. *Pathmos*.—Boldensele is followed, except as to St. John's age, the manna in his tomb, and the stirring of the earth (Sir G. Warner). See *Golden Legend*, c. 9.

p. 14, l. 12. *translated in to paradys*.—That the saint's body should at the same time be in heaven and shake the earth above his grave is an inconsistency thoroughly worthy of d'Outremeuse.

p. 14, l. 22. *Paterane*.—Boldensele: "Inde procedens, multis insulis hinc inde lustratis . . . perveni in ipsa minori Asia prope maris litus ad urbem Pataram, unde beatus Nicolaus traxit originem, et post ad Myram civitatem, ubi divino nutu postmodum fuit in episcopum ordinatus" (p. 33). For Myra, H. reads Marrea, hence C.'s Martha.

p. 14, l. 24. *wyn*.—Sir G. Warner thinks of the murrhina potio, *i. e.* drink out of precious cups of Pliny (*Nat. Hist.* XIV., 99). Poculum murrheum (Sen. E. 119).

p. 14, l. 27. *Colcos*.—Colos is given by Halliwell and Warner as the Cotton reading. The author thought of the Colossus of Rhodes and of the Colossians of St. Paul (see p. 16, ll. 17–20). Brussels rightly gives Cos, the birthplace of Hippocrates, later

called Lango. The French original makes two islands of one, on account of the two names. Sir G. Warner: "This story of the daughter of Hippocrates, the physician of Cos, may possibly have been influenced not only by the prominence of the serpent in the cult of Asclepius, of which the island was a noted centre, but by the fact that Hippocrates had a son or grandson Draco." The redeeming of an enchanted damsel by a kiss is known to Arthurian romance as *le fier baiser*, *i. e.* the hardy kiss :

"Certes, molt avroit grant honnor
Ieil qui de mal l'estordroit,
Et qui le fier baissier feroit."

(*Li Biaus Disconceils*, ed. G. P. Williams, 1915, p. 6.)

The hero here is Guinglain, son of Gawain. Hartland, *The Science of Fairy Tales*, 1891, pp. 238-239, discusses stories of this type under the name of the Enchanted Princess. Kittredge, *Gawain and the Green Knight*, 1916, p. 210. Child, *English Ballads*, I., 1882, p. 306, on Kemp Owyne. In the continuation by Martin Juan de Galba of Martorell's *Tirant lo Blanch*, ch. ccccx. in the 1904 facsimile of the edition of 1490, Mandeville's tale of the Lady of Lango is faithfully translated (Martínez y Martínez: *Martin Juan de Galba, coautor de Tirant lo Blanch*, Valencia, 1916.—J. Givanel Mas: *Estudio critico de Tirant lo Blanch*, 1912, p. 117). As a possible source one may suggest the story of Perseus, who beheaded Medusa, killed a sea-monster and won a king's daughter as his reward. Hartland refers to Keats's *Lamia*, the source of which is in the *Anatomy of Melancholy*.

p. 15, l. 10. *whan the knyght*.—H: quant le chival le veoit si hideux, il fuy sa voie et porta le chivaler maugree luy sur un roche, et de celle roche il sailly en la meer, et ensi fuist perduz le chivaler.—Mistranslation; the Englisher mistook the horse, cheval, for a knight, chevalier, and thought that the knight was cast into the sea by the lady, instead of by the horse.

p. 15, l. 22. *schadewe of him in the myrroure*.—Perseus saw the reflection of the Medusa's face in a mirror.

p. 16, l. 14.—If the tale of the Lady of Lango points a moral, it is against celibacy, and in agreement with p. 12, ll. 15-16.

p. 16, l. 22. *wynes*.—Boldensele, p. 33.

p. 16, l. 25. *be a place*.—H: delez la goulf, *i. e.* beside the gulf.

p. 16, l. 26. *Cathaillye*.—Satalia in the Middle Ages, originally Attalia, now Adalia.

p. 17, l. 6. *Eddere*.—H: teste, probably right; the head of

Medusa. Brussels, 10420-5 : bieste, possibly the origin of Cotton's adder or snake. Sir G. Warner has identified the story with the classic myth of the Gorgon's head. It is the Arthurian episode of the Laide Semblance, discussed by O. Sommer in *The Structure of the Livre d'Artus*, 1914, p. 19 : King Riom of Ireland, who holds all the earth down to the Terre des Pastures [Iceland ?] says that no man can pass beyond the latter country until the Laide Semblance is removed from the stream where it was set by Judas Maccabeus, to show that he had conquered the earth so far. . . . He who removes it will have to carry it to the Gulf of Sathenie, so that it may never be seen. For its kind is such that all who see it with their eyes must be in peril.—In the Vulgate version of the *Livre d'Artus*, ed. by O. Sommer, Vol. VIII. (1913), p. 150, a fair lady asks Artus for a knight to remove the Laide Semblance "ce est uns cors formez petit aus[s]i come uns enfes de trois anz, qui fu engendrez dun cheualier en une femme morte quil amoit par amors, et est en semblance de fame" (p. 158). Grex brings the Laide Semblance in a barrel to his lady, who has barrel and figure locked in a box of oakwood. Tempests never stop, and Arthur asks the advice of his clerks. Helias declares that the figure must be thrown back into the sea that surrounds the earth, in a place known to Merlin only. Merlin gets the box from the lady and throws it into the "go[u]ffre de Satellie." There it still lies. When it emerges and beholds ships, they all are in danger of shipwreck.—Other versions have been listed : Benedict of Peterborough (ed. Stubbs, II. 195), Roger Hoveden (ed. Stubbs, III. 158), Walter Map (ed. T. Wright, p. 176), where it is named Henno cum Dentibus (Hartland, *Science of Faïry Tales*, 1891, p. 342). A summary is found in P. Paris, *Romans de la Table Ronde*, II., 1868, p. 193. The connection with the myth of Medusa is obvious in Map : "Gorgoneum praetendit ostentum, obrigeseunt miseri, vident instar Medusae malitiam." Quoted by Runeberg (*Études sur la Geste Rainouart*, 1905, p. 90), who also instances the Bataille Loquifer (tête de Desramé), and Stricker's Daniel vom blüenden Tal. (*Hist. Litt. Fr.* XXX. 136). Runeberg holds that the legend was brought from the East by the Crusaders, and passed through various stages.—E. Freymond : Beiträge zur Kenntnis der altfranzösischen Artusromane in *Prosa. Zs. f. fr. Sprache, Abhandl.*, Vol. XVII., 1895.—J. Kohler : *Der Ursprung der Melusinsage*, 1895. The fairy Melusine was the ancestress of the house of Lusignan, the royal house of Cyprus.

p. 17, l. 6. *fleigh aboute*.—Both Brussels MSS. : remira[t] la citeit, *i. e.* viewed the city and the country. H. : remua, shook. The Brussels reading seems correct, Cotton mistranslates.

p. 17, l. 7. *sank down*.—C. follows H. Brussels MSS. : la . . . bieste . . . fondit en abeemez, the Laide Semblance sank into the deep.

p. 17, l. 13. *.iiij. othere bysschoppes*.—French MSS. *iiij.*

p. 17, l. 16. *hill of the holy cros*.—Stavro Vouni, near Larnaca (Sir G. Warner).

p. 17, l. 21. *seynt zenomyne*.—Sir G. Warner thinks of one Sozomenus, Bishop of Potamia, S.W. of Nicosia, mentioned in the chronicle of Machaeras (p. 43).

p. 17, l. 23. *castell of amoure*.—Bovenschen and Sir G. Warner identify this with chateau du dieu d'amour, ancient Didymus, where St. Hilarion died.

p. 17, l. 26. *with Papyouns*.—Boldensele : "in venatione cum canibus et maxime domesticis leopardis" (p. 34). In the Chétifs, an episode of the epic of *Godfrey of Bouillon*, edited by Hippeau in 1877, the wolf Papion is a beast haunting the hills of Turkey and Persia. He carries away a nephew of the Saracen king Corbaran. He also figures in the *Conquête de Jérusalem* (ed. Hippeau, 1868, Introd. p. xvii). Sir G. Warner quotes J. de Vitry (p. 1101) : "Sunt ibi papiones, quos canes silvestres appellat, lupis aciores, continuis clamoribus de nocte ululantes," and refers to the hunting-leopard or cheetah.

p. 17, l. 30. *all opere men*.—H. : vadlet, *i. e.* varlets.

p. 17, l. 33. *syften pere*.—H. adds : Et puis homme mette la mape del autre couste sur le pavement, *i. e.* and the cloth is laid on the other side, on the pavement. Jacques de Vitry reports that guilty Templars were sentenced "ad terram absque mappa cibum tenuem sumere" (*Hist. Orient.* 1597, p. 118). The statement in Mandeville may well be derived from this, as a joke characteristic of d'Outremeuse.

p. 18, l. 11. *Fons Ortorum*, etc.—Solomon's Song, iv. 15 : A fountain of gardens, a well of living waters and streams from Lebanon. The reservoirs now called Râs el'Ain were traditionally connected with Solomon and with the above verse. Boldensele : "Perveniens in Syriam . . . applicui ad portum Tyri, quae nunc Sur vulgariter appellatur. Est autem Tyrus antiquissima civitas. Nobilissima et fortissima quondam fuit, nunc vero quasi destructa est. Portum vero ejus Sarraeeni custodiunt diligenter. . .

Prope Tyrum est fons hortorum et puteus aquarum viventium. . . . Locus etiam ibidem ostenditur, ubi Dominus fidei Cananaeae misertus est, et prope, eo loquente ad turbas, sibi dictum est: Beatus venter, qui te portavit."—*I. e.* Blessed is the womb that bare thee, and the paps which thou hast sucked (Luke xi. 27).

p. 18, l. 21. *And viij. myle.*—Eugesippus, *De distantiiis locorum terrae sanctae* (ed. Allatius, 1653, p. 106): "Octo milliaria a Tyro contra orientem supra mare Sarphen, quae est Sarepta Sydoniorum. In qua quondam habitavit Helias propheta; in qua et resuscitavit filium viduae, Jonam scilicet: quem prius ipsa hospitio receperat et caritative foverat et paverat. Sex milliaria a Sarphen Sidon, civitas egregia, ex qua Dido, quae Carthaginem construxit in Africa. Sexdecim milliaria a Sidone Berytus, opulentissima civitas."—Mandeville is more likely to have had this from Vincent de Beauvais, where it is reproduced.

p. 18, l. 22. *in sarept.*—Brussels, 10420-25: sarphon ou sarepte, correct. H.: Serphen en Sarepte, which the Englisher slavishly follows.

p. 18, l. 24. *Jonas the wydwes sone.*—Jonah was traditionally identified with the widow's son revived by Elijah in 1 Kings xvii.

p. 18, l. 28. *Sayete.*—Sagitta in Vincent, the Middle French name of Sidon. Eneas and Dido would interest d'Outremeuse as heroes of romances.

p. 18, l. 36. *Joppe.*—Boldensele: ". . . urbem Joppensem vetustissimam, quam Jafet filius Noe creditur condidisse" (p. 36).

p. 19, l. 3. *Andromade.*—The fair Andromeda is here confused with the sea-monster from which Perseus saved her, through a careless reading of Vincent de Beauvais' chapter de monstribus marinis: "Bestiae cui dicebatur exposita fuisse Andromeda, ossa Romae asportata se oppido Judaeae Joppe ostendit inter reliqua miracula in aedilitate sua M. Scaurus, longitudine pedum 40, altitudine costarum Indicos elephantes excedente, spinae crassitudine sexquipedali" (*Spec. Nat.* 1624, l. XVII., c. c., col. 1300).

p. 19, l. 9. *Dacoun.*—H. cite Dacoun, the preposition de having become incorporated in the noun Acoun. Boldensele: "De Tyro in una die veni per terram in Accon, quae Acri vulgariter dicitur. Haec famosa civitas in pulchra planitie situata est supra mare; quae quondam Christianorum fuit et antiquitus Ptolomaida dicebatur. . . . Per Sarracenos destructa est" (p. 35).

p. 19, l. 15. *besyde the cytee of Akoun.*—Boldensele: ". . . prope Accon vix ad quatuor miliaria supra mare a dextris est mons

Carmeli, non multum altus, . . . habitatio sancti Heliae, ubi et ordo Carmelitarum sumpsit exordium, . . . In hujus montis pede civitas erat quondam Christianorum, Caïphas nomine, nunc destructa" (p. 35).

p. 19, l. 21. *Cayphas*.—Albert d'Aix (V. 41, p. 460) is said by Sir G. Warner to have the same absurd derivation.

p. 19, l. 23. *Saffre*.—Boldensele: "Non multum a monte Carmeli a sinistris est villa Safaram in quodam monte, ubi beati Jacobus et Johannes nati dicuntur; et in loco nativitatis ipsorum pulchra fuit ecclesia constructa" (p. 36).

p. 19, l. 27. *Scala Tyrriorum*.—1 Mace. xi. 59: "from the place called the ladder of Tyrus unto the borders of Egypt." ll. 27-28 missing in Cotton, supplied from Egerton and French original.

p. 19, l. 29. *Foss of Memnon*.—Vincent de Beauvais quotes Pliny, who reports that glass was discovered accidentally by sailors near Ptolemais at the mouth of the River Belus (*Spec. Nat.* l. VII., c. lxxvii., col. 474). Sir G. Warner notices that Josephus alludes to the monument of Memnon near the river, and to a concave spot, that yields vitreous sand (*B. J.* II. 10, 2). D'Oultremuse seems to have added the allusion to the Gravelly Sea, which reappears on p. 181, ll. 19-29. In his *Mirror of Histories*, he writes: "En une terreur d'Aere at une sablon dont ons faite voire eleire et bon avec aighe de mere" (vol. I., ed. 1864, p. 294), *i. e.* in a territory near Aere there is a kind of sand from which clear and good glass is made with sea water.

p. 20, l. 5. *swelogh*.—Brussels 11141: souspiral; H.: espiral, *i. e.* spiracle or vent-hole.

p. 20, l. 8. *Gaza*.—H.: ceo est a dire cite riche. This derivation is from Isidore, *Etym.* (in Lindemann's *Gram. Lat.*, v. III., p. 462): Vocata autem Gaza, eo quod ibi Cambyzes rex Persarum thesauros suos posuit, cum bellum Aegyptiis intulisset. Persarum enim lingua thesaurus Gaza nominatur (l. XV., c. i., § 16). The passage follows Boldensele, with additions from the Old Testament.

p. 20, l. 12. *of the beste*.—H.: des meillours. G.: milliers, agreeing with Boldensele and with Judges, xvi. 27.

p. 20, l. 17. *Cesaïre*: Caesarea.—Sir G. Warner notices that Mandeville misunderstands Boldensele and reverses the positions of the towns along the coast. The order from south to north really is: Gaza, Ascalon, Jaffa, Caesarea, Athlit or Castellum Peregrinorum.

p. 20, l. 20. *Babyloyne* : i. e. Babylon the little, near Cairo.

p. 20, l. 24. *Daire*.—Latin Darium, now Deir el Belah, south of Gaza. Here Haiton of Armenia begins to appear as a source, along with Boldensele.

p. 20, l. 29. *Achellek*.—Sir G. Warner derives this from Et-Tih, the name of the desert between Syria and Egypt, with a Turkish termination *lik*, which also appears in Calahelyk, p. 21, l. 15.

p. 20, l. 31. *Canopat*. Connected by Sir G. Warner with the town of Canopus and the Canopic branch of the Nile. See A. Ausfeld's note to his translation of the romance of Alexander, 1907, p. 138.

p. 20, l. 32. *Morsyn* "represents Mizraim, the Hebrew name for Egypt, in Arabic Misr, Mesryn" (Sir G. W.).

p. 20, l. 33. *Beleth*.—Boldensele : "Et primo procedens versus Babyloniam veni ad villam famosam et magnam, quae Belbeis nominatur" (p. 37). This town lies on the Ismailiyeh Canal, not near the kingdom of Halappee [Aleppo]. Mandeville might confound it with Baalbak, 35 miles north of Damascus (Sir G. W.).

p. 21, l. 1. *faire chirche*.—Boldensele : "ecclesia beatae Virginis in Babylonia, ubi ipsa cum Christo Jesu et Joseph, quando in Aegyptum de Judaea metu Herodis fugerat, aliquamdiu dicitur habitasse. Item alia ecclesia beatae Barbarae virginis, in qua corpus ipsius in parvo monumento marmoreo conservatur" (p. 39).

p. 21, l. 6. *aij. children in to the forneys*.—Daniel, i. 7 : "Unto whom the prince of the eunuchs gave names : for he gave unto Daniel the name of Belteshazzar ; and to Hananiah, of Shadrach ; and to Mishael, of Meshach ; and to Azariah, of Abed-nego."

p. 21, l. 15. *fayr castell*.—"ubi est sedes Soldani in uno castro pulcherimo prope Kadrum. Hoc castrum in monte est non alto, sed petroso ; largum est et valde pulchris palatiis decoratum. Dicitur quod continue, pro diversis ipsius Soldani servitiis et custodia ejus, in ipso castro commorentur circa sex milia personarum, quibus quotidie de curia victualia ministrantur" (p. 37). The citadel is El-Kalah. "Sunt autem Kadrum et Babylonia duae civitates multum magnae, parum distantes et quasi contiguae. . . . Babylonia vero sita est super ipsum fluvium sine medio" (*ibid*).

p. 21, l. 20. *I duelled with him*.—Pure fiction : that the loves of Saracen princesses were offered to Christian warriors is a

commonplace of the romances, occurring in the *Chétifs*, etc. In Lucian's *Vera Historia*, the traveller refuses to marry the daughter of the King of the Moon.

p. 21, l. 25. *lord of .r. kyngdomes*.—William of Tripoli, *De statu Saracenorum*, cap. 19 [Melec elvahet Bondogar]: "sibi quinque subiugavit regna, in quibus solus dominatur et regnat, regnum Egyptorum, regnum Jherosolimitarum, olim David et Salomonis, regnum Syrie, cuius caput est Damascus, regnum Alapie in terra Emach" [Math, p. 21, l. 31, the Hamath of the Bible, now Hamah, 100 miles N. by E. of Damascus], "et regnum Arabum, olim Moab et filiorum Ammon."

p. 22, l. 3. *he holdeth Calyffes*.—H.: Et ousqe eco il est Califfes. The Englisher mistakes the Caliph's dignity, here equalled to a king's, for a realm or territory. Well-informed medieval writers compared the Caliph to the Pope and the Sultans to the Kings of the West. See note to p. 27, l. 10.

p. 22, l. 6. *firste soudan*.—The first part (*i. e.* 14 out of the list of 16) has been traced to its source in Hayton's *Liber de Tartaris* (c. 52, 53) by Bovenschen and Sir G. Warner. The last two, Melechmader (p. 23, l. 19) and Melechmadabron (p. 23, l. 21), do not appear in Hayton and cannot be identified. They may very well be fictitious. We borrow Sir G. Warner's list: 1. Zarocon (Siraconus in *Will. of Tyre*, XIX. 5) is Sheerkooch, *d.* 1169.—2. His nephew (not son) Saladin, the hero of the Crusading poems, and especially of the *Pas Saladin*, a rhymed account of a tournament (p. 22, l. 11: the passage pat Sahaladyn ne myghte not passen), *d.* 1193.—3. Boradyn (noradin in Brussels 10420–5), Saladin's son, El-'Afdal Noor-ed-deen, never reigned in Egypt.—4. nevwewe, possibly Melik-el-Kamil.—5. Melechsalan, Melik-es-Salih, *d.* 1249.—6. Tympieman (Tinqueman, Brussels 10420–5), Hayton's Turquimannus, a Tureoman, and emir of Mamelouks, named El-Mo'izz Eybek.—7. Cachas, named Kutuz, wrongly described as Meleemees by Hayton.—8. Bendochlare, known to the West as Beybars or Bibars, defeated St. Louis, *d.* 1277.—9. Meleschsach, *i. e.* Melik-es-Sa'eed was his son.—10. Elphy is Melik-el-Mansoor Kaláoon.—11. Mellethasseraf, Melik-el-Ashraf Khaleel.—12. Melechmasser, Melik-el-Nasir Mohammad.—13. Guytoga (Hayton's Guiboga) Melik-el-'Ádil Ketbooghá, identical with Melechheadell.—14. lachyn, Melik-el-Mansoor Lageen, identical with Melechmanser.

p. 22, l. 14. *Comayuz*.—Slaves from Cumania are said by

Hayton to have been the first mameluks of Egypt. The Egerton MS. calls them "pe comoun pople."

p. 23, l. 17. *Mountrirall*.—Scribal error for Montroyal, also called Karak.

p. 23, l. 22. *po contrees*.—Here Dr. J. Vogels (Mand. 1886, p. 15) edits an interpolated Latin letter, supposed to be from Melechmandabron's son to the then Pope, from two French MSS. (Bibl. Reg. 20 B.X and Sloan 560), and from two Latin ones (V. 96, Eg. 672). The text is corrupt and the translation doubtful.

Cuius (*viz.* Melechmandabron's) filius senior, Melechmas-ser nomine, scripsit litteras summo pontifici, tenorem qui sequitur continentes:

"Balthazarday, illustris regis filius, soldani Babiloniorum, Assyriorum, Egyptiorum, Amaricanorum, Medorum, Alexandrinorum, Parthorum, et Ethyopum, Constantinus de Jerico, prepositus terrestris paradisi custosque sepulture crucifixi, rex Jerosolimitanus, Affrice et Asie, dominus Barbarie, ab oriente usque ad occidentem, rex regum et princeps principum, nepos deorum; standardus Machometi, dominus ab arida arbore usque ad flumen paradisi et ad montem magnum Ararath, timor et angustia inimicorum, interfector christianorum, consolatio paganorum, transfixio loricarum—magno sacerdoti Romanorum gratiam, quam palpitat queritando et salutem, quam visitando meretur. Orthodoxi fundamentum fidei christianorum, robur discretorum, fortitudo prudentium; hoc omnia in capitis tui cellula quasi thesaurus requiescunt; memoria vero tua strepit, incipiens vacillat, obedescit stulticia. Qui pater diceris, et filiis tam inaudita mala machinaris! Tu enim et philippus francorum rex, et alii reguli in baculo arundinis confiditis, spem vobis ponentes, que velut stупpa incensa evanescit et uno flatu consumitur. Nam quicquid contra nos moliendo poteritis cogitare, totum animi matura deliberacione pervidimus, non timemus. Qualis enim pater es tu, qui filios non morte naturali, sed subita perire compellis? An putas, quod sagittis et pharetris careamus, in quas filios tuos mittere non formidas, ut eas in se recondant et vivaces animas sic morti tradant? A quo subversa est preciosissima civitas Jerusalem? A quo funditus destructa est civitas Achon potentissima? A quo desolata et deleta est Tripolis famosissima? Nonne CCCLV. civitates nobis subiecimus, quas famuli olim crucifixi rexerant? Tu filios in mare procellissimum, ubi flumina furiant, ire compellis; sed tu ipse non sequeris, in arido stas et stultos pauperes in flumine mergis. Vere simplices seducis, sed ipse non

anteecedis. Pater quidem nomine, sed non re nuncuparis. Sufficiat ergo tibi te sic more Turcorum conducere. Attamen si terram nostram desideras, ecce Achon et Tripolim filiis tuis aperimus et reparare concedimus taliter, ut sint nobis perpetui censuales. Consulimus itaque, ut dominum tuum, si potes, primo invoces, ut per nos numerus martirum impleatur, et ut iuvenes renascantur, qui patrum cruorem vindicantes ad nos properent penam consimilem recepturi. Nichil enim aliud quam sanguinem christianorum querimus, quem sitimus. Consule igitur tibi ipsi, qui prudens diceris, et salva iam morti expositos—alioquin occisor eris et seductor simplicium—quod ipse nature a te demon graviter requirit. Quem nobis posse rebellare credis, eum tota gens tua respectu nostre multitudinis sit quasi gutta maris?

“Datum babilonie anno nativitatis nostre XXXIX°, regni vero nostri XX°.”

Melechmandabron's elder son, named Melechmasser, wrote a letter to the Sovereign Pontiff, the import of which is as follows:

“Balthazarday, son of the illustrious king, the souden of the Babylonians, Assyrians, Egyptians, Amaricans, Medes, Alexandrinians, Parthians and Ethiopians, Constantine of Jericho [?] provost of the Earthly Paradise and guardian of the Sepulchre of the Crucified, king of Jerusalem, of Africa and Asia, lord of Barbary from East to West, king of kings and prince of princes, offspring of the gods, standard of Mohamet, lord from the Dry Tree to the river of Paradise and to the high hill of Ararath, terror and threat to the enemies, killer of Christians, comfort of paynim, piercer of harnesses,—to the High Priest of the Romans sends such grace as he trembles to beseech and such greeting as he deserves on a visit. The foundation of the true faith of Christians, the strength of the cautious, the bravery of the discreet, all these repose, like a treasure, within the hollow of thy head. Yet thy memory resounds, it begins to shake, stupidity devours thee. Father art thou called, and for thy children thou preparest such unheard-of evils! For thou and king Philip of France and other kinglets put your trust in a staff of reed, raising to yourselves a hope that vanishes like burning tow and is consumed with one breath. For whatever you may scheme and imagine against us, we perceive it all in the clear thoughts of our mind, nor do we fear. What kind of father indeed art thou, to drive thy sons to a sudden, unnatural death? Believest thou us to be short of arrows and quivers, that thou shrinkest not from sending thy sons against them, to hide them in their bodies and so

deliver their living souls to death? By whom has the most precious city of Jerusalem been overthrown? By whom has the powerful city of Acre been razed to its foundations? By whom has far-famed Tripoli been laid waste and ruined? Have not we subjected three hundred and fifty-five towns, formerly built by the servants of the Crucified? Thou forcest thy sons into a stormy sea, where streams are raging, but dost not follow thyself; thou stayest on dry land, and drownest poor fools in the stream. Truly thou misleadest the simple, but dost not go first. Father art thou called in name, but not in deed. Let it suffice thee therefore so to behave in the manner of the Turks. If however thou desirest our land, lo, we shall open Acre and Tripolis to thy children and allow them to restore them, provided they are our tenants for ever. We accordingly advise thee first to call on thy Lord, if thou canst, that the number of martyrs may be increased by us, and that young men may rise again and, in revenge for the killing of their fathers, hurry towards us to receive similar punishment. For we want nothing more than the blood of Christians, and we thirst for it. Be advised, therefore, thou that art called wise and save those now in danger of death, otherwise thou wilt be a murderer and seducer of simple folk, even the spirit of nature earnestly entreats thee to it. Who dost thou think can resist us, as all thy people, compared to our multitude, are as a drop in the sea?

“Given at Babylon [Cairo] on the 39th year of our birth, and on the 20th of our reign.”

The Philip of this mock-heroic epistle can only be Philippe Auguste, who fought Saladin in the third Crusade.

p. 23, l. 23. *mo þan .xx. Mill.*—This military information is from ch. 50 and 51 of Hayton; only Hayton gives the number of men under each amiratus, or emir, as one to two hundred. Mandeville boldly doubles the figure!

p. 23, l. 26. *beu all weys at him.*—H.: sunt totdis a luy. Gallicism, meaning: they always belong to him.

p. 23, l. 30. *be the cytees & be townes.*—H.: par les cites et par les villes, meaning: about the cities and towns.

p. 23, l. 31. *.iiij.*—Scribal error for *iiij*^c.

p. 23, l. 32. *.x.*—Scribal error for *v*^c.

p. 23, l. 33. *als many taketh.*—H.: Et atant prent luy admiral, and as much (pay) takes the emir, etc.

p. 24, l. 2. *.iiij. wyfes.*—Will. of Tripoli, c. 21: [Bondogar]: “Coniugium laudat, quatuor habens uxores, quarum quarta est

christiana iuvenula Antiochena, quam semper secum circumducit " (ed. Prutz, p. 588).

p. 24, l. 7. *paramours*.—The substance of this passage, down to l. 18, has been traced by V. Chauvin to ch. ii. of the Book of Esther (*Le prétendu séjour de Manderille en Égypte*, Wallonia, 1902, pp. 237–242). Bovenschen was greatly impressed by the air of truthfulness of these indecent jokes!

p. 24, l. 19. *tartarie*, tartaire; *camaka*, camocas, rich medieval cloths of silk.

p. 24, l. 28. *here armes lift vp*.—This dramatic scene is from the Crusading epics, but I have mislaid the reference.

p. 24, l. 31. *but pat he*.—II.: Et auxint nul estrange vient deuant luy, qī luy fasce aucune requeste, qīl nel otroie, pur quoi qīl soit resonable et ne deuient contre sa loi. The reading of the two Brussels MSS., although so corrupt that I have to modernise it, is more grammatical: Aussi un étrange messenger ne vient deuant lui qui lui fasse requête qu'il ne lui oetroie, pourtant qu'elle soit raisonnable, etc.; *i. e.* No messenger from abroad appears before him to make a request without it being granted, provided it is sensible and not opposed to his law. The Cotton version makes no sense.

p. 24, l. 34. *seyn pat noman*.—Brussels 10420-5: Car ilh dient que nus ne doit venir deuant princez qui nen valle myel et doit estre plus lyes au departir de sa presence que al venir deuant ly. For they say that none ought to come before the prince without being better off, and [that people] ought to be gladder on leaving his presence than on appearing before him. Cotton makes no sense.

p. 25, l. 1. *Babyloyne*.—After Boldensele, p. 38–39: "Turris Babel a filiis Noë incepta in loco propinquo asseritur, ubi humanum labium confusum est. Locus autem desertus dicitur et quasi inaccessibilis propter ferarum crudelium et venenosorum animalium ibidem commorantium multitudinem numerosam." The desolation of Babylon, announced in Isaiah xiii. 19–22, was turned by heretics against the Church of Rome. Adso (*De ortu et tempore Antichristi*, ed. Sackur, 1898, p. 107) prophesies that Antichrist shall be born in Babylon. See p. 73, l. 19.

p. 25, l. 23. *the ydoles t the symulacres*.—A covert attack on the worship of images of saints.

p. 25, l. 27. *cc. cubytes*.—Honorius Augustodun., *Imago Mundi* (Migne, v. 172, col. 125, l. 1., c. xv.): "Cuius muri latitudo est 50 cubitorum, altitudo ducentorum cubitorum, ambitus civitatis quadringentorum octoginta stadiorum."

p. 25, l. 31. *he departed þat Ryquere*.—Sir G. Warner traces this story to Herodotus (I. 189), who tells it of the Gyndes, while Sanudo (p. 55) transfers it to the Ganges.

p. 26, l. 2. *not the grete Babiloyne*.—Boldensele is again followed and padded out with geographical commonplaces.

p. 26, l. 14. *Methon*.—Brussels 10420-5 adds: *ly payens lapellent Jathrib*, which Bovenschen spells *Jathreb* and describes as an earlier name of Medina. The form *Methone* (*Mothona*) is from the Alexandrian romances (see Ausfeld: *Alexanderroman*, 1907, p. 132, fn.).

p. 26, l. 17. *Musketh*.—Boldensele: “. . . corpusque ipsius perditissimi p̄eustis [Greek for liar, a compliment carefully omitted by Mandeville, the friend of Infidels] sub soldani diligentissima custodia in civitate, quae Meca dicitur [the Middle Ages believed Mahomet’s shrine to be at Mecca], sita in deserto Arabiae de Babylonia circa 25 diaetas in pulchra ipsorum ecclesia quam musquet vulgariter dicunt” (p. 38). *Mezchita* (*meschita*) occurs as the Latin for mosque (Bédier, *Légendes épiques*, III., 1912, p. 314). Mandeville elsewhere has the form *Moseach* (on p. 152, l. 11).

p. 26, l. 31. *Botron*.—Sir G. Warner quotes Eugesippus: “Arabia jungitur Idumeae in confinibus Bostron” (p. 993), and places this at Bostra, now Bosrah, about eighty miles south of Damascus.

p. 27, l. 4. *Theophilus*.—The hero of the miracle of Our Lady. Will. of Trip.: “. . . Mesopotamiam . . . in qua civitas metropolis Zaram, quam habitabat Abraham, quoniam dictum est ei a Domino, Gen. XII^o: Egredere e terra et de cognatione tua et de domo patris tui, de qua civitate fuit gloriosus doctor Effrem et etiam Theophilus, quem virgo Maria de manu inimici liberavit” (ed. Prutz, 582). Ephrem Syrus lived in the fourth century.

p. 27, l. 10. *Calyffez*.—This word, which was a stumbling-block to the Englisher on p. 22, l. 3, is rightly interpreted as successor of Mahomet by Will. of Tripoli (p. 581 of Prutz’s ed.), and was in the Middle Ages applied to the pope of Infidels:

“ . . . parlement
La ou li apostoles Califes les atent.”

(*Chanson d’Antioche*, 1848, II., p. 61.)

“ Califes lor sermone, qui bien fu escolés ;
C’est li maistre apostoles de lor actorités.”

(*Chevalier au Cygne*, éd. Hippeau, II., 1877, p. 79.)

p. 27, l. 13. *Baldak*.—Will. of Trip.: “Transit hostis [Hebbis =

Abdallah Abu l'Abbas (750-54)] ultra fluvium ad terram, que olim fuit regnum Caldeorum, nulloque resistente bellatore ad regum civitatem Baldach, que Suzis olim nominata est, quam edificavit Nabucodonosor, pervenitur ibique dictus princeps."—"Baldach, in qua regnavit Assuerus et regina Ester et sanctus Daniel vidit revelationes miras et divinas" (ed. Prutz, p. 582). Sir G. Warner identifies Susis with Shushan.

p. 27, l. 17. *iiij. Calyffeez*.—Will. of Trip.: "tres calife, unus in Baldach, alius in Marroch, tercius vero in civitate prefata [*i. e.* Carre = Cairo]" (ed. Prutz, p. 583). II: "Il soleit auoir en temps passez iii. Califfes. Cis Darrabiens et de Caldiens demorroit en la cite de Baldak desuisdit; et a Cair delez Babiloigne demorroit le Califfe des Egipcien; et au Marrok sur la meer doccident demorroit le Califfe des Barbariens et de Affricaux."—The error is the scribe's. Read: The caliph of Arabia and Chaldea dwelled in Baldach; at Cairo dwelled the Caliph of Egypt; in Morocco on the Western Ocean dwelled the Caliph of Barbaresques and Africans.

p. 27, l. 23. *Sahala/lyn*.—Will. Trip.: "ipsum suum calife, qui auctoritate Macometi videbatur esse maior, peremit et sedem calife in Egypto evertit" (ed. Prutz, c. xiv.). Mandeville goes beyond his authority, a common practice with d'Outremeuse.

p. 27, l. 29. *Gyson sontyque clept Nyle*.—Medieval geography believed that the Euphrates, one of the four springs of Paradise, ran under the Red Sea and reappeared in Egypt as the Nile. A. Ausfeld, *Alexanderromm*, traces this to Pausanias (II. 5. 2) and to Philostratos (*Vit. Apoll.* I. 20. 2) (p. 156 of Ausfeld). Boldensele repeats it (p. 39). Bovenschen quotes Honorius Augustodunensis, *Imago Mundi*: "Geon qui et Nilus iuxta montem Athlantem [Mandeville's Aloth] surgens, mox a terra absorbetur, per quam occulto meatu currens, in littore rubri maris denuo funditur, Aethiopiam circumiens per Aegyptum labitur, in septem ostia divisus, magnum mare iuxta Alexandriam ingreditur" (Migne, *Patrol.* 172).

p. 27, l. 31. *signe of Cancer*.—The four dates for the Flood, Cancer, Leo, Libra and Virgo, are given in Pliny, 5. 57, 5. 90, 18. 167, quoted by Bovenschen.

p. 28, l. 7. *pei entren betweue thoise ryueres*.—Nonsense. Pliny: "revocatur intra ripas in libra" (5. 57). H.: adonques elles entre dedeins ces riueres. Meaning: when the sun is in Libra, the river shrinks back into its banks.

p. 28, l. 15. *Morekane*.—Mauritania. Mandeville sends the Euphrates all the way to Morocco before letting it merge in the Nile!

p. 28, l. 18. *Sikonyes*.—H.: sigoignes.

p. 28, l. 19. *Egypt is a long contree*.—Boldensele: "Et sciendum quod Aegyptus oblonga patria est et in aliquibus partibus constricta propter desertum siccum latera ipsius ambiens et comprimens, de cujus natura etiam ipsa Aegyptus est, nisi quod in quantum exuberante fluvio vel naturaliter vel artificialiter conducto visibiliter fertilis efficitur. . . . Rarum pluit in ea" (p. 39). The other source is Hayton, c. 54.

p. 28, l. 24. *large of lengthe*.—H.: tant est ly pais largez. The whole sentence means: Egypt is no wider than the stretch which the floods of Nile serve to fertilise, or than the waters can spread over the land.

p. 29, l. 6. *heghte . . . loweness*.—H.: la haute qest vers Ethiope, et la basse qest vers Arabe. Cotton's nouns make no sense.

p. 29, l. 12. *Coston*.—Sir G. Warner guesses at Kus on the east bank of the Nile, a little below Luxor and at Kosseir, the port opposite to it on the Red Sea.

p. 29, l. 13. *cytee of lybye*.—H.: terre de Libie. Probably the scribe's mistake. Read: contree of lybye.

p. 29, l. 18. *more þan two so moche*.—H.: puis de ii tant desert. Meaning: more than twice so much of desert?

p. 29, l. 20. *it hath wel*.—H.: y ad bien, meaning: there is about twelve days' travelling in the desert. Gallicism.

p. 29, l. 22. *blake as the Moures*.—Egerton adds: and þat þai hald a grete bewtee, and ay þe blakker þai er þe fairer þam think þam. And þai say þat, and þai schuld paynt ane aungell and a fende, þai wald paynt þe aungell black and þe fende qwhit. And, if þaim think þam noȝt black ynough whan þai er borne, þai vse certayne medecynes for to make þam black withall.—Although this passage is wholly in d'Outremeuse's manner, it does not occur in the French texts known to the editor. The medicine to blacken the complexion is used by Maugis the enchanter in the *Four Sons of Aymon*. In the Alexander romance, the dark queen Candace writes to the Macedonian that the minds of her people are lighter than the brightest among the Greeks (ed. Ausfeld, 1907, p. 97). Jacques de Vitry: "nos autem nigros Aethiopes turpes reputamus, inter ipsos autem qui nigrior est, pulchrior ab ipsis judicatur"

(*Hist. or.*, ed. 1597, p. 215). John of Hildesheim writes of the black Nestorian heretics: "Et in ecclesiis suis depingunt Christum et matrem eius et beatum Thomam nigros et diabolos albos in despectum alborum" [text: aliorum], ed. 1878, p. 25.

p. 30, l. 1. *Nota*, etc.—This seems to have been interpolated from the margin, as it occurs neither in Brussels nor in II.

p. 30, l. 3. *holy heremyte*.—Sir. G. Warner: "St. Antony, whose encounter with a satyr is described by St. Jerome in his *Vita S. Pauli*" (Migne, 23. 23)." *The Golden Legend*; Mapes, *Nug. cur.* 2. 15; Gervas Tilb., *Ot. Imp.*, l. 18, are also given as possible sources. The salvation of this monster is a parallel to that of Hermogenes on p. 11, l. 16, and to that of Job the paynim on p. 197, l. 9.

p. 30, l. 4. *pat is to seyne*, etc.—This explanation is missing in the original, and may have been inserted by the Englisher. The monster is called a satyr and faun in Vincent de Beauvais, *Spec. Nat.*, l. XXXI., c. cxxvii.

p. 30, l. 17. *And ȝit is the hede*.—This seems a bold invention, after the manner of d'Outremeuse.

p. 30, l. 23. *Fenir*.—The source of this legend is in Pliny (X. 3); it became known to the Middle Ages through the *Physiologus*.

p. 31, l. 6. *And the tayll is ȝelow & red*, etc.—H.: et la cove reget [roietz, S.] de trauers de iaune et de rouge. Meaning: and his tail is striped across, yellow and red. The Englisher probably read *royé*, *rayé* as *rejeté*, and translated it as cast again!

p. 31, l. 11. *Emerandes*.—Boldensele: In superioribus Aegypti est vena smaragdina, unde ibidem smaragdi melius et in meliori forma habentur, quam in alia mundi parte (p. 41 of 1855 ed.).

p. 31, l. 14. *mysz*.—Halliwell, 1866, reads Myrs; Pollard, 1900, mires. H.: sozez = mice. Sir G. Warner traces this to Pliny (IX. 179): quippe detegente illo musculi reperiuntur.

p. 31, l. 20. *coueren hem*.—Brussels, 10420-5: couent, *i. e.* hatch them. H.: les coeuerent, followed by Cotton.

p. 31, l. 34. *in a bascat*.—Brussels, 10420-5: en une trocke. Brussels, 11141: tresque. Egerton: on a clustre. Godefroy explains troche as "assemblage, faisceau, masse, troupe, quantité."

p. 31, l. 37. *the appull tree of Adam*.—While the slave-market and incubator are from Boldensele, the information regarding the miraculous fruits rests on a confusion with Jacques de Vitry,

Hist. Hier. c. lxxxvi. : Sunt ibi aliae arbores poma pulcherrima et citrina ex se producentes, in quibus quasi morsus hominis cum dentibus manifeste apparet; ed idcirco poma Adam ab omnibus appellantur. . . . Sunt ibi praeter ficus communes quaedam singulares ficorum species, fructus in ipsis truncis absque ramis et foliis facientes, non inter folia vel ramos superiores, sicut fit in aliis arboribus, sed ipsi trunco adhaerentes: has autem ficus Pharaonis appellant.

p. 32, l. 4. *the feld where Baume groweth*.—Boldensele visited the garden of El-Matariyeh, near Cairo. His account is supplemented by Mandeville from Vincent de Beauvais (*Spec. Nat.* l. XIII., c. xcix., col. 1008 of 1524 edition; c. lxxxiv., col. 1000). Sir G. Warner and Bovenschen mention many more sources, most of them quoted in the *Speculum Naturale*.

p. 32, l. 8. *with on of his feet*.—H.: vii fontaignes, dont nostre Seignur Ihesu Crist en fist vn de ses piez; *i. e.* seven wells, one of which made with his feet by Our Lord. Mistranslation.

p. 32, l. 16. *ne falle nought*.—H.: ne flectrissent point, *i. e.* do not wither. Mistranslation.

p. 32, ll. 21–23. *Enochbalse, Abebissam, Guybalse*.—These Saracen names are unexplained. They may have been in use among pharmacists, or d'Outremeuse may have invented them. In the romance of Balan, Fierabras takes two barrels of balm in Rome (G. Paris: *Histoire poétique de Charlemagne*, 1905, p. 251).

p. 32, l. 29. *I have not seen it*.—The usual joke of the arch liar. He had not seen the speaking trees!

p. 32, l. 32. *take gode kepe for to bye*.—H.: qil se fait bien garder dachater baume, *i. e.* people had better abstain from buying balm.

p. 33, l. 1. *wax in oyle*.—H.: Et ascuns mettent cuire en oile de boys del fruit de baume, *i. e.* And some put fruit of balm to boil in wood oil. The Englisher read cuire = wax instead of cuire = boil; his sentence is sheer nonsense.

p. 33, l. 24. *it wole take t beclippe the mylk*. H.: tantost ly lait acoillera et prendra, *i. e.* the milk will curdle [mod. French: se cailler] at once.

p. 34, l. 2. *Gerneres of Joseph*.—Boldensele sensibly writes: "Dicunt simplices haec maxima monumenta fuisse granaria Pharaonis, et sic ea appellant. Sed nullo modo est, quod nec ad imponendum, nec ad extrahendum, nec ad conservandum annonam aut frumentum locus in ipsis pyramidibus aptus deprehenditur,

maxime quod a summo usque deorsum plenae sunt maximis lapidibus, invicem bene junctis, nisi quod porta parvula a terra bene elevata remansit et via stricta ac tenebrosa, per quam ascenditur per certum spatium in eisdem, nulla in ipsis reperta latitudine spatiosa (p. 44 of 1855 ed.). Mandeville's petulant advocacy of the wrong view is thoroughly characteristic.

p. 35, l. 5. *because put*.—H.: come bien qe le plus pres soit ly plus digne, *i.e.* although the nearer way is the worthier. Mistranslation.

p. 35, l. 24. *hilles*.—H.: islez de Itaille, viz. the islands of Corsica, Sardinia and Sicily. Cotton's slip may be a scribal blunder.

p. 35, l. 36. *bastardz or none*.—H.: bastardz ou de loial mariage. Cotton's *or none* is redundant.—E. S. Hartland quotes this in a discussion on changelings (*Science of Fairy Tales*, 1891, p. 111, fn. 1). A horse is said to strive to kick a changeling and to lick human children.—Chapter xc. of the *Golden Legend*, itself founded on Acts xxviii., says: Dicitur quoque, quod omnes qui de progenie illius hominis, qui Paulum de hospitio excepit, nascuntur, a venenosis ulla tenus laeduntur, unde cum pueri nati sunt, in cunis eorum patres serpentes ponunt, ut probent, si veri eorum filii sunt. This is placed in Melita, but is transferred to Sicily in a letter *De statu Apuliae et operibus vel artibus Virgilii*, mentioned by Bovenschen as inserted in the chronicle of Arnold of Lübeck (l. V. xix., p. 193–196). According to Sir G. Warner, Pliny (VII. xiii.) reports the same of the Psylli, a tribe of North Africa. Jean d'Outremeuse's *Mirror of History* writes that women take their children to be tried by a snake in Africa (Vol. I., 1864, p. 298).

p. 36, l. 7. *.vij. places*.—H.: vij lieux. The English translation is correct, but the author mixed his description of Aetna with an echo of Pliny (III. 92–94) describing the seven Lipari islands. According to the *Grande Encyclopédie*, a saint has shut the devils in an extinct volcano in Lipari.

p. 36, l. 13. *weyes of helle*.—H.: chymenes denfern, *i.e.* chimneys of hell. This is a mistranslation, unless the Englisher's French original already had chemins for cheminées.

p. 36, l. 16. *Greef*.—Brussels, 10420–5: Cret. Egerton: Greff. H.: Gref. Sir G. Warner notices that Corfu did not belong to the Genoese, and therefore thinks of Corsica, but Mandeville would not be so particular.

p. 36, l. 17. *at Gene.* H.: as Janeweis, *i. e.* that belongs to the Genoese. Gallicism.

p. 36, l. 18. *Myrok*, explained by Sir George as Hiericho (Spruner, pl. 84), or Mavrovo in Albania.

p. 36, l. 19. *t pere is a Duk at Duras.*—H.: a la cite de Duras qest a Duc de Duras. D'Outremense would remember that the name of Duras was borne by a Belgian family. The Englisher slightly alters the meaning.

p. 36, l. 31. *the Emperour Leoun*, etc.—The *Golden Legend* (c. lix.) relates how Mark's bones came to Venice.

p. 37, l. 6. *lignum aloes.*—Boldensele: Inveniturque in eo et circa ipsum lignum aloë et diversi coloris lapides carneoli (p. 39).

p. 37, l. 12. *Babiloyne.*—Chapter viii. is mainly composed of the commonplaces of Crusading geography. The beginning of ch. ix. follows Boldensele again.

p. 37, l. 17. *welle pat Moyses made with his hond.*—Exod. xvii. 5: . . . and thy rod, wherewith thou smotest the river, take in thine hand, and go.

p. 37, l. 20. *welle of Marach.*—Exod. xv. 23–25.

p. 37, l. 23. *Elyn.*—Boldensele: Deinde veni in Helym locum valde delectabilem in deserto, ubi sunt 12 fontes at 70 palmae et una de stationibus Israël, ut in Exodo reperitur (p. 46 of 1855 ed.). The author of *Mandeville* adds two palm trees, as his way is (Exod. xv. 27; Numb. xxxiii. 9).

p. 38, l. 1. *largeness in lengthe.* H.: Elle poet bien auoir vii. lieues de large. The two meanings of the word large, the English one and the French one, are confusing to the Englisher.

p. 38, l. 9. *no man may go on horsbak.*—A deliberate fraud. Boldensele, his source, writes: De Kadro et Babylonia recedens partibusque Aegypti in Arabiam properavi, venique ad montem Synai eques in decem diebus (p. 44 of 1855 ed.). The “.xij. gode iourneyes” of l. 16 are also a falsification.

p. 38, l. 20. *into tyme . . . langage.*—H.: iusques atant qe homme sache la langage, *i. e.* until the time when one knows the language.

p. 39, l. 6. *of the Bayes or of Olyue.*—H.: des ramis ou de raies de oliue. Brussels, 10420–5: de rains ou des branchez de oliue. My French texts are corrupt; a possible reading may be: des rains ou des baies d'olivier, *i. e.* twigs or berries of the olive tree. The Englisher would then have repeated the French baies instead of translating it.—Boldensele has no birds and oil story. Its source is Vincent de Beauvais: De corpore vero eius [Sanctae

Catharinae] pro sanguine lac emanavit, ipsumque corpus ab angelis mox assumptum est, et ab illo loco [Alexandria] in montem Sina 20 diebus itineris transportatum, atque ibidem in magna miraenorum gloria requiescit. Nam et ex tumba eius oleum manat, et cuncta debilium membra sanat (*Spec. Hist.*, l. XIII., c. viii., p. 509, ed. 1524). The birds may be an invention of d'Oultremeuse's, or a reminiscence of Ezek. xxxix. 17 : . . . birds of every sort . . . assemble yourselves, etc. Sir G. Warner refers to Thietmar's *Peregrinatio* (1217), where the Virgin promises the monks an inexhaustible supply of oil, if they will stay in their convent (ed. Laurent, 1857, p. 46). *Les Pèlerinaiges pour aler en Jherusalem* (ed. 1882, in *Itinéraires* etc.), report that many wild beasts on the hills get their living merely by licking the tomb of Our Lady St. Catherine (p. 98). Bovenschen refers to Petrus Comestor, *Lib. Erocl.*, c. xxix.

p. 39, l. 22. *Instrument of syluer*.—This occurs in Boldensele, p. 47, and is transferred to the relics of the Three Kings by John of Hildesheim, 1878: the more the arms of the Three Kings are rubbed with an instrument of silver, the more a sweet perfume spreads throughout the church (p. 33). As is commonly the case with d'Oultremeuse's duplications, the fictitious account precedes the second, which is more or less faithfully borrowed from a source.

p. 39, l. 25. *swete of smell*. H.: noirastre, *i. e.* blackish, a word probably incomprehensible to the Englisher.

p. 39, l. 31. *scheuen the bussch*.—Boldensele does not claim to have been shown the actual bush!

p. 39, l. 37. *his lampe schal lighte*.—In the *Chanson de Jérusalem*, the election of Godfrey of Bouillon to be king takes place in the same way: the taper in his hand lights of itself, while the other candidates' do not burn. Once it is lighted by a dove:

Es vos i blanc colon, volant de randonée
Qui li a devant lui sa candeille alumée.

(Ed. 1868, canto vii., p. 279.)

Another time, the Lord sends a flame:

Voient le chierge au duc jeter grant embrasée
Que Dex i envoia par bone destinée.

(*Ib.*, canto v., p. 190.)

On ever-burning lights in romances see Faral: *Recherches sur les sources latines des contes et romans courtois*, 1913, pp. 176–177.

p. 40, l. 3. *whan ony of hem schall dye*.—That every man may

foresee the time of his death by viewing his lamp or taper of life is an allegory, still current to-day. Bovenschen refers to Reinfrid von Braunschweig, fol. 208a, and to W. Grimm, *Altdeutsche Wälder*, II., 185 ff., ed. K. Bartsch, II. 26998 ff.

p. 40, l. 8. *fynde vpon the aurtier the name.* In the fourteenth century romance of the Knight of the Swan and Godfrey of Bouillon, the barons who leave Godfrey are recalled by a dove laying a parchment letter on the altar (Borgnet in t. III. of *Chevalier au Cygne*, 1854, p. lxix).

p. 40, l. 17. *Mirabilia.*—Perhaps adapted from Ps. lxxi. 17 : O God, thou hast taught me from my youth : and hitherto have I declared thy wondrous work. Jacques de Vitry, describing the Holy Land as the country of wonders, has a chapter on wonderful occurrences in the Holy Land, on earthquakes, thunderstrokes, showers and snowfalls (*Hist. or.* 1597, c. lxxxiv., p. 165).

p. 40, l. 20. *bothe on and oper how it befell.*—H. : Et lors ils me disoient qe lun et lautre estoit auenuz plusours foitz, *i. e.* Then they told me that either miracle had often occurred.

p. 40, l. 22. *flye ne todes.*—H. : En celle abbeye ny entrent musches, ne muscherons, ne puices, ne autre tiel ordure, *i. e.* In that abbey enter neither flies, nor gnats, nor fleas nor other such vermin. The Englishier expands, perhaps because he knew no equivalent for moucheron. The source is Boldensele, p. 47. D'Outremeuse dramatises as is his wont. Von Dobschütz, article : "Charms and Amulets," in Hastings's *Encyclopaedia*, p. 422, recalls that flies are types of the demons (*Mart. S. Viti. Act. Sanct. June*, III., 503). Virgil expelled every fly from Naples by setting up a brazen fly on the city gates (Gervasius of Tilbury, III., 16 ff., Liebrecht's notes).

p. 40, l. 30. *before the gate.*—Boldensele : In hoc monasterio est aqua, quam percussione virgae praecepto Dei jussit Moyses emanare (p. 47). D'Outremeuse carries the well from inside to the space outside the gate !

p. 41, l. 6. *Reisins of Staphis.*—As Sir G. Warner has found no other mention of St. John's vine in this neighbourhood, we may assume d'Outremeuse's invention as the source.

p. 41, l. 16. *no man knoweth where he was buried.*—In the Arthurian romances, a traitor called Moses disappears in an abyss. His body will be claimed. Lancelot is to open the abyss (P. Paris : *Romans de la Table Ronde*, I., 1868, pp. 145-146).

p. 41, l. 29. *the Collect of seynte kateryne.*—Sir G. Warner

quotes from the Roman Breviary, 25 Nov. : Deus qui dedisti legem Moyse in summitate montis Sinai et in eodem loco per sanctos angelos tuos corpus beatae Catherinae virginis et martyris tue mirabiliter collocasti, etc.

p. 42, l. 7. *Bedoynes*.—Besides Boldensele, Jacques de Vitry (p. 1062) and Odoric, *De Terra Sancta* are followed. The romances contain similar accounts.

p. 42, l. 18. *pei eten no bred*.—Alexandre, ed. 1846 :

La gent de sa contree manjuent peu de pain
Lait boivent de camel et a soir et au main.

(p. 114, ll. 27-28.)

p. 42, l. 21. *hote stones*.—Vincent : Ichthyophagi . . . in littore maris rubri super petras solis calore ferventes assant pisces (*Spec. Hist.*, I., c. lxxxvi., p. 32, ed. 1624).

p. 43, l. 8. *Bersabee the wif*.—This lovely etymology is worthy of d'Outremeuse's inventiveness and of his love of indelicate stories.

p. 43, l. 14. *an .c. 3eer*.—Pseudo-Methodius : fecerunt planctum super eum Adam quoque et Eva annis C. (Ed. Sackur, 1898, pp. 60-61).

p. 43, l. 18. *Sacerdotall*.—H. : Et si fuist la cite sacerdotale de tribu Iuda. Et estoit si franche qe homme rescenoit la totes futifs dautre lieu pour lour malfaites. Bovenschen quotes Eugesippus, p. 103, as the source.

p. 43, l. 23. *kyng David*.—Source, according to Bovenschen, 2 Kings v. 5.

p. 43, l. 27. *t of Lya*.—Egerton adds : and pai er in pe hingand of pe hill. And ower pain es a rȳt faire kirke wele bretist aboute, as it ware a castell, pe whilk Sarzenes kepez rȳt wele. H : . . . Lie, en le declin de la montaigne. Et dessus eaux y ad vne bele esglise, kernele [*i. e.* crénelée = battlemented] en guise dun chaustel, la quelle ly Sarazins gardent mult curiousement. This was probably omitted by the copyist of Cotton. It is translated from Boldensele, p. 50.

p. 43, l. 30. *cristene man*.—Egerton adds : ne Iews, following French.

p. 43, l. 36. *Karicarba*, Kirjath-Arba, Joshua xiv. 15. The source for this page is in the guide-books, such as Eugesippus, who is quoted in Vincent de Beauvais, and Odoric, *De Terra Sancta*.

p. 44, l. 6. *And of po same*.—H. : La, mesme lieu. Brussels 10420-5 : la mesmes, *i. e.* in that very place. This seems sheer

carelessness of the Englisher. Boldensele: In hac sancta valle Hebron locus est, ubi Abraham in ostio sui tabernaculi sedens in ipso fervore diei tres vidit et unum adoravit. . . . In hoc loco etiam ipse vir sanctus angelos Dei hospitio recepit (p. 50 of 1855 ed.).

p. 44, l. 10. *Adam formed*.—Burchardus, *De Terra Sancta*: De spelunca duplici contra occidentem, quantum jacere potest arcus, est ager damascenus, in quo loco plasmatus fuit Adam. Ager iste in rei veritate valde rubeam habet terram, quae omnino flexibilis sicut cera. De qua tuli in magna quantitate. Similiter faciunt peregrini alii et Christiani visitantes loca ista. Saraceni insuper terram istam portant camelis in Aegyptum et Aethiopiam et Yndiam et ad alia loca, pro speciebus valde caris vendentes eam. Et tamen modica apparet fossio illo in loco. Dicitur enim, quod anno revoluto, quantumcumque magna sit fossio, semper miraculose repletur. Sed oblitus fui quaerere rei veritatem; hoc tamen dico, quod modica fuit fossio, cum essem ibi, ita quod vix quatuor viri sedissent in ea; nec erat profundior, quam usque scapulas meas. Dicitur tamen, quod, quicumque terram istam secum portat, animal eum non offendit. Hominem insuper dicitur a casu conservare (ed. 1864, p. 81). This guarded statement is turned by our text into a bold tale of wonders.

p. 44, l. 23. *Canbyll*.—Sir G. Warner has traced this word to the *Pandectae Medicinae* of Matthaeus Silvaticus (circ. 1317), who defines it as “terra rubea minuta, quae affertur de Mecha” (ed. Lugduni, 1641, fol. xiii.). Arabic canbîl, kinbîl. D’Outremeuse may have learned it from the English doctor John de Mandeville. Ducange, *Gloss. Graec.*, s.v. *καμβύλ*. It is not earth, but a dust-like powder obtained from a shrub. Modern name: Kamala.

p. 44, l. 29. *broper* [sone].—The last word dropped in Cotton. H.: filz au frere Abraham.

p. 44, l. 30. *Mambre*.—Odoric, *De Terra Sancta*: A Ebron incipit vallis Mambre, quae protenditur fere usque Jerusalem. Non remote ab Ebron est mons Mambre, et in ipso monte stat arbor, scilicet quercus arida, quae ab antiquitate sua speciale sibi nomen meruit habere in universo mundo, et vocatur arbor sicca. Saraceni dicunt eam dirp. Haec creditur stetisse a tempore Abrahae, et quidem ab initio mundi, virens, donec passionis Christi tempore siccaretur (p. 154 of 1864 edition).

p. 44, l. 33. *drye tree*.—Sir G. Warner states that only Odoric and Mandeville identify the oak of Mamre with the Dry Tree of

medieval romance, placed somewhere at the confines of the world in the Far East. Jeanroy, *Poésie lyrique*, 1904, quotes from the *Jeu du Pèlerin* :

Bien a trente et chieus ans que jo n'ai aresté,
S'ai esté au Sec Arbre et duse'à Dur Esté.

(from Monmerqué et Michel, *Théâtre français au Moyen Âge*, p. 97 ; p. 251 of Jeanroy). In Cordier's edition of Odoric, 1891, the Biblical passages given as the source of the romance are : Mark xi. § 2, 12-14 ; Matt. xxi. 18-22 ; Luke xviii. 6-9 ; Ezek. xvii. 24. An alternative name for the Dry Tree is l'Arbre seul, the sole Arabian tree of the *Phoenix and the Turtle*. In *Bawlonin de Sebourg*, the Dry Tree is connected with the wood of the Cross (*Hist. Litt.*, Vol. XXV., p. 574.)

p. 45, l. 1. *in the world*.—II. : ou ils dessecheheront, ou ly coers fendi et purissoit, et sunt demorez touz voidez et tot creuez par dedeins, dont il y ad vnqore mointez parmy le monde, *i.e.* either they dried, or their hearts split and rotted within, and they have ever since remained empty and hollow within, of which there are still many about the world.

p. 45, l. 4. *prophecies*.—Among works ascribed to the Venerable Bede is a *Sibyllinorum verborum interpretatio*, printed in Migne, Vol. XC., col. 1181-1186 : exsurget rex nomine H animo constans . . . Judaei convertentur (col. 1185). R. Taylor, *Political Prophecies* (1911) : "The Last-King-of-Rome story, relating to the successful Crusade of an English king and his death in the Holy Land, was used in prophecies from the thirteenth century on, and was applied to Edward II., Edward III., etc." (p. 109).

p. 45, l. 7. *schall wexen grene*.—Adso, *De ortu et tempore Antichristi*, ed. 1898 by Sackur, *Sibyllinische Texte und Forschungen* : [Antichristus] Faciet ignem de coelo terribiliter venire, arbores subito florere et areocere. D'Outremeuse would be familiar with prophecies occurring in Arthurian romances, and connected with the name of Merlin. Taylor, p. 141. A Biblical source is Ezek. vii. 10 : Behold the day, behold it, it is come : the morning is gone forth ; the rod hath blossomed, pride hath budded. Hartland, *The Science of Fairy Tales*, discusses second advent theories on pp. 204-220. On their connection with Nero see Ebert, *Literatur des Mittelalters*, 1874, I., p. 92. Ovid, *Metamorphoses*, l. XV., v. 560 :

“Utque Palatinis haerentem collibus olim
 Quum subito vidit frondescere Romulus hastam
 Quae radice nova, non ferro stabat adacto,
 Et jam non telum, sed lenti viminis arbor
 Non expectatas dabat admirantibus umbras.”

Cf. Numb. xvii. 5 : And it shall come to pass, that the man's rod, whom I shall choose, shall blossom.

p. 45, l. 13. *the fallynge ewyll*.—Sir G. Warner notices that Eugesippus does not mention this curative virtue of the Dry Tree, but only its power to protect a horseman from a fall. Von Dobschütz, article on “Charms and Amulets” (Hastings's *Encycl.*, p. 418), says that the falling sickness is cured by wearing the names of the Three Kings who fell in worship before the Infant Christ.

p. 45, l. 14. *his hors schall not ben afoundred*.—Vineent de Beauvais, *Spec. Hist.*, l. XXXI., c. lix. : Mambre . . . quereus . . . incolis cara et medicinalis. Nam si quis eam siccam portet, non infunditur bestia cui insidet.

p. 45, l. 18. *a lityll cytee*.—Boldensele : Est autem Bethleem civitas parvula quantitate loci, licet non virtute mysterii, oblonga est et stricta a lateribus suis, profundis vallibus bene naturaliter communita.

p. 45, l. 21. *audiuimus eum*.—Ps. cxxxi. 6 has *eam*, correctly repeated in French texts, wrongly altered to *eum* in English.

p. 45, l. 24. *corneres*.—H. : kerneux. Modern French : créneaux, battlements. Mistranslation. Egerton : kinnelles.

p. 45, l. 28. *feld florissched*.—Sir G. Warner notices that the “champ flori” of the French *Itinéraires* is elsewhere (éd. Michelant et Raynaud, 1882).

p. 45, l. 29. *blamed with wrong*.—H. : encoulpez a tort, *i. e.* unjustly accused. Mistranslation repeated in Egerton.

p. 46, l. 4. *the first Roseres*.—Mr. Robin Flower, of the British Museum, has pointed out the source of this in a manuscript described in Mr. James's Catalogue of MSS. in the Fitzwilliam Museum, 1895, p. 31. In a *Life of the Virgin* it is related that Abraham's daughter became pregnant through the smell of a flower on the Tree of the Cross. Being suspected, she has to enter a fire, which God turns to roses, lilies and eglantines. The sparks and flames become singing birds. The girl's son Phanuias (Phanuel) gives birth to Anne through his thigh.—The MS. is dated 1323. Mr. James refers to Leroux de Lincy, *Livre des Légendes*, 1836, pp. 24–29. and to *Histoire littéraire de la France*,

t. XVIII., pp. 833–837. E. Montégut, *Heures de lecture d'un critique*, 1891, p. 278 fn., refers to the legend as Arabic.

p. 46, l. 14. *place where the sterre fell*.—Vincent de Beauvais, *Spec. Hist.*, l. VI., c. xci.: quidam tradunt Bedam voluisse, quod in puteum Bethlehem illico ceciderit [stella] (p. 205). John of Hildesheim, 1878: stella stetit immobilis et infra muros lapideos et fictiles per modicum intervallum stella cum tanta et tali claritate et fulgore se demersit, sic quod omnia in tugurio et spelunca fuerunt illuminata (p. 15). Odoric, *De Terra Sancta*: puteus, ubi videtur stella, quae duxit tres reges ad Christum in praeseptio (ed. 1864, p. 153).

p. 46, l. 14. *the .xij. kyuges*.—The names are from Petrus Comestor, *Hist. evang.*, c. viii.

p. 46, l. 21. *Cassak*.—This localisation in India is from friar Odoric, *Descriptio orientalium partium*, c. iii.

p. 46, ll. 27–29. *charnell of the Innocentes . . . segyt Ierome*. From Odoric.

p. 46, l. 37. *traces may 3it ben sene*.—John of Hildesheim 1878: Et in illa capella videtur adhuc lapis, super quem beata virgo sedendo filium lactare consuevit. Et quadam vice modicum lactis de sua mamilla super lapidem cecidit. Cuius lactis species usque in praesentem diem super ipsum lapidem permansit, et quanto plus abraditur quanto plus crescit (p. 17).

p. 47, l. 4. *pat the cristene men han don let make*.—H.: qe ly Cristiens font faire, *i. e.* that the Christians get made.

p. 47, l. 7. *Alkaron*.—The three names are from William of Tripoli, *De statu Saracenorum*, ed. in Prutz, *Kulturgeschichte der Kreuzzüge*, 1883, p. 590.

p. 47, l. 20. *holde[n] hem alle acursed*.—H.: Et tignent mout a desesperez touz ceaux qi ent mangent. Brussels 11141: moult a despit. Perhaps this is the right reading: all those that eat pork they hold in great despite.

p. 47, l. 24. *for it is forbode*.—H.: non pas qe lour soit defenduz, mes par ceo qil en ont poi, *i. e.* not because it is forbidden, but because they own but few. Mistranslation.

p. 48, l. 5. The close of the chapter is from Boldensele and from Odoric, *De Terra Sancta*, 1864, p. 153.

p. 48, l. 11. *cleped Iebus*.—Guérin, *La Terre Sainte* (1897), quotes St. Jerome, *Epitaphium Paulae*: “. . . ingressa est [Paula] Jerosolymam urbem trinominem, Jebus, Salem, Jerusalem, quae ab Aelio postea Hadriano, de ruinis et cineribus civitatis in Aeliam

suscitata est" (p. 95). Odoric, *De T. S.* 1864, p. 148, has a still larger number of names. Bovenschen refers to Isidor, *Etym.* XV. 1, 5; to Honorius: *Imago Mundi*, I. 16; to Jacques de Vitry, c. lv., p. 93; to Albericus Tr. Font., MGSS. XXIII., p. 811, 7.

p. 48, l. 25. *Abowten Ierusalem*.—Both Bovenschen and Sir G. Warner notice that the distances from Jerusalem to the surrounding cities vary from those given by geographical authorities. The blame may be laid either on d'Outremeuse or on his translator, or on the scribes.

p. 48, l. 30. *seynt karitot*.—The authorities given for this are Eugesippus, Burchard (X. 30, p. 82), etc.

p. 49, l. 2. *in moornynge*.—H.: en peinture, in painting; so the two Brussels MSS. Mistranslation. Sir G. Warner quotes Comestor, *Evang.* 178: et adhuc compaginati videntur. Did d'Outremeuse connect the word compago, skeleton, with the radical of pictura? Here the two blunderers, French and English, are seen at work on the same expression.

p. 49, l. 15. *.xl. 3ere*.—Saladin took Jerusalem in 1187. If the *Mandeville* had been written forty years later, we should have to place it about 1227, an impossible date. If the date of 1356, given at the close (p. 210, l. 32) was correct, the distance would be 169 years. The author of the *Travels* did not trouble to lie consistently, and he may have blindly copied an earlier writer, as Sir G. Warner suggests. He may also have put in a figure hap-hazard. Both Brussels MSS. have: vij^{xx} et xiiij ans. This would make the date of composition 1341, five years after Boldensele wrote.

p. 49, l. 18. *holy Sepulcre*.—Boldensele, 57–59, is followed.

p. 49, l. 32. *to breke the ston*.—H.: de prendre de la pierre ou piece ou poudre, *i. e.* to take away a fragment or some dust from the stone.

p. 50, l. 6. *it lightez agayne by it self*.—This annual miracle of the Holy Fire is traced by Sir G. Warner to the Crusading historians: Albert d'Aix, XII. 33; Baudri de Dol, I. 4; Foucher de Chartres, II. 8. It should be compared to the miracle by which Godfrey of Bouillon was elected king, p. 39, l. 37, and to the allegory of the lamp of life on p. 40, l. 3.

p. 50, l. 11. *set in a morteyes*.—H.: Celle roche est fendue et celle fendure homme appelle Galgatha, *i. e.* this rock is cracked and the crack is called Golgotha. The Englisher could not translate

the verb fendre, and therefore fell back on the word mortise from c. II., p. 6, l. 19.

p. 50, l. 12. *dropped the woundes*.—Odoric, *De Terra Sancta*, c. XV.: Mons autem Calvariae, in quo crucifixus erat Dominus, ubi sanguis de latere eius fluens in lapidem sub monte, in parte illa, quae Golgata dicitur, ubi inventum est caput Adae, etc., p. 149 of edition of 1864.

p. 50, l. 21. *Otheos*, etc., from Comestor, *Hist. Schol. Evang.* 179, Migne, cxcviii. 1634: ὁ θεὸς βασιλεὺς ἡμῶν πρὸ αἰῶνος εἰργάσατο σωτηρίαν ἐν μέσῳ τῆς γῆς. Ps. lxxiv. 12: For God is my King of old, working salvation in the midst of the earth.

p. 50, l. 28. *Cyos myst*, etc.—Sir G. Warner prints this, after Tobler, as: πέτρα ἣν ὁρᾷς ἐστὶ βάσις τῶν πιστέων τοῦ κόσμου. The stone which thou seest is the foundation of the world's faith.

p. 50, l. 31. *of all the world t*.—Mistranslation, as appears from the above.

p. 51, l. 2. *pei ben bothe trewe*. Sir G. Warner credits the author of *Mandeville* himself with this piece of sophistry, and Dr. Bovenschen remarks that it shows great ignorance. It may be added that it throws ridicule on the prophecies and on the people who believe in and comment on them. In a year of ten months, each month must needs be longer than in a year of twelve.

p. 51, l. 4. *Gayus*.—H.: Gaius Ceser, Brussels 10420-5: Julius Cesar.

p. 51, l. 15. *allweys droppen water*.—Boldensele: Circa hunc locum sunt quaedam columnae marmoreae aquam continue distillant; et simplices dicunt quod defleant et plangent mortem Christi (pp. 60-61). D'Outremeuse omits the reference to simple-minded people. The romances of Charlemagne relate that the stone on which the Emperor sat after the disaster of Roncevaux is still wet with his hot tears (Bédier, *Légendes épiques*, III. 1912, p. 326). Burchard, *De Terra Sancta*, 1864, similarly writes of white stone marked with red spots: color sanguinis Domini nostri Jesu Christi apparet hodie in ipsa scissione petrae (p. 71). And again, of the pillar of scourging: Est autem de lapide porfirifico subnigro, habens maculas rubeas naturaliter, quas credit vulgus tincturas esse sanguinis Christi (p. 71). Stories of statues or images sweating blood, tears or milk belong to the common stock of romances, especially those of Alexander. The vessel of Enydros at Constantinople is connected by d'Outremeuse with the same class of fables (see p. 9, l. 31).

p. 51, l. 18. *the holy croys was founden*.—The *Golden Legend*, c. lxviii., is the source for the legend of the Holy Cross.

p. 51, l. 27. *a bryllill*, etc.—H.: Et del vn des claus fist lempereour Constantin vn frein pur son cheual pur porter en bataille, *i. e.* And of one of the nails the Emperor Constantine made a bit for his horse to wear in battle. Mistranslation.

p. 52, l. 2. *be cristen men*.—H.: par la pruesse de eaux, *i. e.* through their bravery.

p. 52, l. 7. *the myddes of the world*.—Sir G. Warner points out an inconsistency: the centre of the world, here placed on the spot where the wounds were washed after the Descent from the Cross by that hero of the Graal romances, Joseph of Arimathia, is elsewhere located in the place where the True Cross revived a dead body (p. 51, l. 22). A lance pitched here at midday on the Equinox would cast no shadow (p. 121, l. 35). Sensible people in the Middle Ages disbelieved such stories.

p. 52, l. 24. *prestes yndyenes*. The sect of the Indian Christians, founded by St. Thomas, is often mentioned by d'Outremeuse.

p. 52, l. 29. *many popes*.—This reference to the Papacy is not openly hostile; still the popes are said to have altered the rites of the Early Church, and the Oriental dissenters are described as devout.

p. 53, l. 21. For the close of this chapter, each particular has been traced to one or more sources by Sir G. Warner and Dr. Bovenschen. The distance of two hundred paces (l. 10) and the number of pillars (ll. 13 and 15) seem an invention of our author's.

p. 53, l. 25. *wel paved*.—H.: . . . couerte de plum. Et ad grande place entour sanz nulle maison; et est la place bien paucee par tot de marbre blanc. Egerton, like Cotton, omits the reference to the place or square.

p. 53, l. 29. *I hadde lettres*.—Boldensele: Soldanus namque Babyloniae fecit mihi singularem gratiam, Dei mediante favore, dans mihi literas, quibus me omnibus subditis recommendabat, ut me ad loca sancta per totum ejus dominium libere ire permitterent sine omni tributo, exactione, teloneo, et me, meos ac mea salvarent, honorarent, ab omni offensa et injuria quorumcunque custodirent. Multi iverunt ultra mare, magni et parvi, nobiles et ignobiles, sed hujus temporis nullus hoc modo, quod reputo singularem gratiam et donum gratuitum Salvatoris. Quocumque perveni et illis, quorum intererat, literas soldani monstravi, statim se

levabant, literas osculabantur, super caput ponebant, me honorabant, aliquoties victualia gratis praesentabant, et se mihi ad beneplacita benevolos exhibebant (ed. 1855, p. 45). Mandeville, pretending to write as an eye-witness, proves a mere plagiarist.

p. 54, l. 1. *grete seel . . . signett*.—This clause is missing in my French texts and in Boldensele. Nevertheless, it may be original: from his notarial practice, d'Outremense would be familiar with the distinction between a seal and a signet.

p. 54, l. 9. *suche as han serued him*.—Brussels 10420-5: quilli nont pont seruit, *i. e.* who have not served him. Mandeville had pretended (p. 21, l. 20) that he served the soldan as a soldier, and thus earned his privileges. The truthful Boldensele, who really enjoyed advantages, makes no such claims. The Englisher or the Cotton copyist omits the negative.

p. 54, l. 14. *grettere reuerence to his lettres*.—Here the opposition no longer lies between the seal and the signet, but between the letters and the seal or signet, as in Boldensele. Corpus Domini is the host, ceremoniously worshipped by believers in the real presence. Still, we need not see here an allusion to the doctrine of transubstantiation.

p. 54, l. 25. *to Parys*.—H.: a Ayes la Chapelle. Brussels 10420-25: a Ays la chappelle a vij liwes de Liège, *i. e.* to Aix-la-Chapelle, which lies seven leagues from Liège. This passage yields one of the arguments for believing the *Mandeville* to have been written in Liège. The distance is correctly stated.

p. 54, l. 26. *Peyteres*; l. 27. *Chartres*.—Charlemagne's fictitious pilgrimage to Jerusalem is a common theme of romance. The authorities quoted by Sir G. Warner for the preputium story are: *De Situ* (p. 426), Eugesippus (p. 999), John of Wirtzburg (p. 119), Petrus Comestor (*Evang.* 6; Migne, cxcviii, 1541) and the *Golden Legend* (c. xiii.). Dr. Bovensehen adds Vincent de Beauvais, XXV., c. v., the most likely source. Poitiers and Chartres, in the French text, appear to be misreadings of d'Outremense (possibly of his copyists) for Charroux in Poitou, where a Benedictine abbey was founded by Charlemagne, and where the relic was transferred by Charles the Bald.

p. 54, l. 28. *not the temple*.—Sir G. Warner and Dr. Bovensehen agree that no single source has been found for those particulars. Boldensele, the topographers, Scripture and the author's imagination have all contributed.

p. 55, l. 1. *.x.c.c. for o peny.*—This sale is mentioned in the Arthurian romances, P. Paris: *Romans de la Table Ronde*, I., 1868, p. 140, and in the *Golden Legend*, c. lxxv.

p. 55, l. 10. *lynage of Troye.*—The epic tradition of the Middle Ages connected Rome with Troy.

p. 55, l. 18. *long tyme befor.*—H.: Cis emperour fist enclore et enmurer leglise de saint Sepulere onesques la cite, qauant estoit loinz dehors de la cite, *i. e.* This Emperor ordered the church of the Holy Sepulchre to be enclosed and walled in with the city, which before lay far outside the city. Mistranslation. The Englisher mistook the adverb of space for the adverb of time.

p. 55, l. 32. *ben many high stages.*—H.: y a plus haute estage, *i. e.* there is a raised (higher) platform. Mistranslation.

p. 55, l. 35. *cometh noman.*—H.: La ni entroit nulli fors qe luy prelait, *i. e.* therein entered no man except their high priest. Mistranslation. The French refers to the past of the Old Testament, the Englisher transfers the statement to his own time.

p. 56, l. 5. *but it renneth noght.*—This is not in the sources. It would perhaps be fanciful to apply it to the drying up of the springs of piety in the Church.

p. 56, l. 7. *Vidi aquam.*—Sir G. Warner states that this is not directly from Holy Writ, but from an antiphon for the sprinkling of holy water at Easter, *Graduale Rom.*, Paris, 1858, p. 2, itself founded on Ezek. xlvii. 1. The Anglo-French *Pelrinages et Pardouns de Acre* (éd. Riant, 1882), p. 231, calls the spring Parays, Paradise.

p. 56, l. 10. *pat men clepen Moriach.*—H.: qe homme soletz appeller Moriach. Mistranslation.

p. 56, l. 15. *the .x. commandementes.*—H.: les tables des x commandementz et la verge Aaron et la verge Moyses. The English seems past mending. The two occurrences of the preposition *of* seem due to the French *des*.

p. 56, l. 22. *honournementes.*—H.: ournementz. Brussels 11141: aournemens. Scribe's mistake?

p. 56, l. 24. *with .iiij. figures t .viij. names.*—H.: onesque vij figures des nouns nostre Seignur. Brussels 11141: avec vij figures.

p. 56, l. 27. *pei bare Cherubyn.*—H.: il y auoit iiij. cherubin dor de xij. palmes de long. Mistranslation.

p. 56, l. 28. *the Cercle of Swannes.*—H.: le cerele des signes

du ciel. The Englisher read *cygnes*, swans, instead of *signes*, signs. The French text meant the signs of the Zodiac.

p. 57, l. 7. *ȝaf him light*, repeated on l. 14. The French original omits ll. 6-7: And in this roche . . . light, probably introduced by the Cotton scribe through homoioteleuton.

p. 57, l. 36. *turtles*.—H. adds: et maintenant ont les Sarazins fait roies sur cel aultier pur regarder quelle heure de iour il est ouesqe vne broke qil y a, *i. e.* and now have the Saracens made lines on that altar to see what time of the day it is with a pin that is there. This description of a sundial was probably too hard for the translator.

p. 58, l. 8. *Salomones scole*, so called after Boldensele, appears to be identical with the temple of Salomon of l. 9.

p. 58, l. 9. *right fair t wel pollisscht*.—H.: mult beau et siet en vne grande place et bien plaine. Mistranslation.

p. 58, l. 10. *duelle*.—H.: demorrerent. The present is a mistranslation. The order of Templars was abolished in 1312.

p. 58, l. 16. *water fro paradys*.—This fiction of d'Outremeuse's was probably suggested by the name of the spring mentioned in the note to p. 56, l. 7. ȝit it droppeth sounds like mockery.

p. 58, l. 27. *Probatica piscina*.—The pool of Bethesda, John v. 2. Vincent de Beauvais, l. XXXI., c. lxiv. (of 1624 ed.), connects it with the Legend of the Holy Cross: In Hierusalem est lacus, qui probatica piscina dicitur, cuius aqua singulis sabbatis ab angelo movebatur. Descendente scilicet ad visitationem ligni Dominicæ passionis ibidem absconditi a tempore Salomonis. Et post aquæ motionem sanabatur unus, quicumque descenderet in eam prius. Iuxta hunc ergo lacum sanavit Dominus in sabbato Paralyticum, sub templo Domini et monte Syon. In his *Mirror of Histories*, Jean d'Outremeuse reports that after the Tree of the Cross was removed from the pool, its water cured diseases after stirring. The tree was laid across as a bridge (vol. I., 1864, p. 324). On p. 62, l. 34, the bridge spans the brook Kidron. Boldensele is matter-of-fact, as usual: Non longe versus aquilonem est illa Probatica piscina, curatrix debilium secundum evangelium motu angeli descendentis, et ecclesia sanctæ Annae, avia Christi, ubi beata Virgo concepta et nata fuisse dicitur (p. 55 of 1855 ed.).

p. 59, l. 1. *cursed t cruell*.—Sir G. Warner and Dr. Bovenschen agree that Pet. Comestor, *Hist. Schol.*, 2 Macc. xxiii., *Evang.* 13-18,

and the *Golden Legend*, c. x., are the sources for the legend of Herod.

p. 59, l. 16. *lete smyte of all the hedes*.—Similar stories were current about Nero and Alexander. Nöldeke, *Alexanderroman*, 1890, writes that, according to Dinawari, Alexander before his death wanted all prominent citizens and kings' sons to be killed. Aristotle advised him to give them crowns (p. 41).—Kehrer, *Die heiligen drei Könige in Literatur und Kunst*, 1908, reports that when Nero foresaw his end, his astrologer Babilus advised him to murder his nobles (I. 4).

p. 59, l. 25. *name t loos*.—H.: de grant renoun. The noun loos, *i. e.* praise, seems inappropriate.

p. 59, l. 31. *the left Arm*.—Sir G. Warner knows no source for this or for the piece of St. Stephen's head.

p. 60, l. 3. *the ston*.—Bovenschen knows no source; Sir G. Warner traces it to Odoric, c. xxi.

p. 60, l. 15. *And pere also*, etc.—H.: La y a auxi yne pierre, en pareie delez la porte, de la columpne a quoi nostre Seigneur fuist flagelle; the meaning appears to be: Here, within the wall, beside the door, there is also a stone from the pillar which Our Lord was scourged at.

p. 60, l. 28. *oure lady herde*.—Sir G. Warner knows no source. Dr. Bovenschen has nothing.

p. 61, l. 6. *pan the oþer syde*.—H.: qe de nulle autre, *i. e.* than on any other side.

p. 61, l. 12. *cast vp*.—H.: Et la est ly lien ou li Iuys voloient iecter ius le corps nostre Dame, *i. e.* And there is the spot where the Jews wanted to throw down the body of Our Lady. Mistranslation.

p. 61, l. 14. *seynt Petir wepte*.—Chapel of St. Peter ad Gallicantum. Vincent de Beauvais, *Spec. Hist.*, l. XXXI., c. lxiv. (ed. 1624): In loco Lycostratos ter Dominum Petrus negavit, et loco quae dicitur Gallicantus amare flevit. The *Manderille* follows Boldensele. The Galylee of l. 19 is variously placed by Sir G. Warner's authorities, and often identified with the Gallicantus.

p. 61, l. 22. *reysed the mayden*, the daughter of Jairus in the Gospel, placed here by Eugesippus.

p. 61, l. 30. *hond of Absalon*.—From Boldensele, who refers to 2 Kings = 2 Sam. xviii. 18: ". . . and it is called unto this day, Absalom's place." Boldensele: In hac etiam valle [Josaphat] in pede montis, super quem civitas sancta constituta est, sub terra

quodammodo sunt natatoria Syloe, fons scilicet Christi evangelio non ignotus. Ex opposito ejus statua quaedam lapidea bonae magnitudinis et artificiosa discernitur, quam, ut dicitur, Absalon ob memoriam sui fieri praecepit, et in libro Regum manus Absalon appellatur (p. 64, ed. 1855).

p. 61, l. 33. *synagoge*.—Not mentioned in the *Itineraries*.

p. 61, l. 34. *sarrazin*.—H.: Pharisenz, right. The mistake is the Cotton scribe's.

p. 62, l. 7. *pilgrynes grauen*.—Jean d'Outremeuse's *Mirror of Histories* has more about Aeeldama: ilh en achaterent [with the 30 pennies] une lieue por pendre et destruire les malfaiteurs; et la ilh metteroient les corps de cheaux qui moront en la citeit de Jherusalem, de strangnes gens, sicom pelerins et aultres (Vol. I., 1864, p. 409). The method of expansion is characteristic.

p. 62, l. 24. *pat pe lyoun mette withall*.—H.: que ly leoun assembla touz, *i. e.* whom the lion all collected. *Continueateur de Guillaume de Tyr* (éd 1882): A iij archieüz de Jherusalem avoit une cave que l'en apeloit le charnier du Lyon. En cele cave au tenz le roi Cosdroé furent .xij. m. martyrz pousséz par le lyon (p. 171). *Chanson de Jérusalem*, éd. Hippeau, 1868:

Dex affait tex miracles, ains si beles ne vis

Et tot no Crestien sont assés près de chi

i lions les a mis, par la Jhesu merchi

Ens en i bel carnier, onques plus bel ne vi.

(Chant VIII., p. 356, ll. 9079-9083.)

The Englisher has mistranslated his original.

p. 62, l. 34. *ouerthwart lay a tre*.—See note to p. 58, l. 27.

p. 62, l. 36. *is ȝit entered*.—H.: est vngore en terre, *i. e.* still in the earth, interred.

p. 63, l. 9. *out of the floñe of paradys*.—See notes to p. 56, l. 7, and to p. 58, l. 16.

p. 63, l. 14. *into the vale And pat þei*.—H.: pur ceo que . . . luy murs soient cheuz et tombez en la vallee et qils haient ensi reemplie et la terre enhaucez, *i. e.* because the walls have fallen into the valley and have thus filled it and raised the ground. The blunder may be the scribe's; then we ought to read: And þat it hath ben so filled, etc.

p. 63, l. 17. *the erthe hath so ben clouen*.—H.: la terre est ensi creuee de luy mesmes, *i. e.* the earth has grown of itself. Mistranslation. The verb *croitre* is correctly rendered in l. 19: *wexeth t*

groweth. That the surface of the earth is constantly changing is a fact recognised by Vincent de Beauvais, *Spec. Naturale*, l. VI., c. xx., de Montibus : . . . Sicut aqua putei crescit post ablationem, ita crescere contingit terram humorosam, *i. e.* as water rises in a well after some has been removed, so the moist ground will rise sometimes. Earthquakes were interpreted as miracles. According to the *Chanson de Jérusalem*, when Christ entered the Holy City on Palm Sunday, the earth bent under his feet :

La chités fu plorans, la terre si ploia
 Sos les piés Jhesu Crist, ainc puis ne redrecha.
 (éd. Hippeau 1868, Canto II., p. 37.)

Such wonders were added by d'Outremeuse to Boldensele's sensible remark : In hujus vallis principio a sinistris est ecclesia beatissimae Virginis, in quam descenditur per plures gradus lapideos, quae pro majori parte sub terra est, quod credo etiam ruinis civitatis Hierusalem vallem replentibus accidisse, which corresponds to ll. 10-16 of our *Mandeville*.

p. 63, l. 30. *apperen the fynghes*.—The Anglo-French text of the *Chemins* (éd. Riant, 1882) : En cel liu aperent les deys des mains Nostre Seignur (p. 195). Burchard, *De Terra Sancta* (1864) knows of other marks in stone : knees and hands (p. 69), hair and neckbone (pp. 68-69).

Ibid. *putte hem in the roche*.—H. : sapon a la roche, *i. e.* leant against the rock. Mistranslation.

p. 63, l. 35. *Josaphath was kyny*.—Odoric, *De Terra Sancta* (1864), c. xxviii. Deinde in valle Josaphat, dicta a rege Josaphat ibi sepulto . . . (p. 151). Both Sir G. Warner and Dr. Bovenschen think that the medieval legend of Barlaam and Josaphat (*Golden Legend*, c. clxxx.) gave rise to the sentence in ll. 35-37. Hermits are mentioned as living in the valley by Joh. v. Würzb. (VI. 509).

p. 64, l. 6. *ryon þat mount*.—H. : de celle montaigne, *i. e.* from the hill-top.

Ibid. *manye of the stretes*.—H. : auques par totes les rues, *i. e.* nearly through all the streets.

p. 64, l. 16. *wrot it*.—Besides the *Itineraries*, the romances of the Holy Grail allude to the writing of the Lord's Prayer in the stone. P. Paris, *Romans de la Table Ronde*, 1868, I., p. 220.

p. 64, l. 18. *Marie Egipeyane*.—Not in the sources. Sir G. Warner notices a tomb of St. Pelagia on Mount Olivet. D'Outremeuse altered the name.

p. 64, l. 24. *Symon leprous*.—Sir G. Warner states that his identity with Julian the Harbournier is disputed in the *Golden Legend*, c. 30.

p. 64, l. 35. *long fro*.—H. : loinz de, *i. e.* far from.

p. 64, l. 37. *place where oure lady appered*.—The spot where the Girdle was given to incredulous Thomas is not, according to Sir G. Warner, particularised in the *Golden Legend* (c. exix.) or elsewhere. It seems an invention of d'Outremeuse's, like the stone of p. 65, l. 4, where the Lord shall sit on Doomsday.

p. 65, l. 6. *mount of Galilee*.—D'Outremeuse seems to have forged this story by confounding the Mount of Galilee (otherwise called Mount of Offence) of Odoric (p. 154) with the cave in Mount Sion called the Galilee, p. 61, l. 19 (Sir. G. W.).

p. 65, l. 11. *somtyne a lityll cytee*.—H. : Jerico soleit estre vne bele cite, *i. e.* Jericho used to be a beautiful town.

p. 65, l. 19. *refressched t fed*.—H. : qar elle auoit recelez et repastez les messagers, *i. e.* for she had hid and fed the messengers.

p. 65, l. 24. *mede of the prophete*.—Egerton : he schall take hyre of a prophete (Matt. x. 41).

p. 65, l. 30. *by a mountayne t forgh desert*.—H. : par vne montaigne deserte, *i. e.* across a desert hill. Boldensele : deserto quodam montoso medio existente (p. 65).

p. 65, l. 31. *a day iorneye*.—H. gives this as the distance from Bethany to the Jordan, adding : De Bethanie vers orient iusques a la grant montaigne ou nostre Seigneur ieuna xl iours y a vi lieux. The Englisher (or the Cotton scribe) runs the two sentences into one, mixing up the grammar and the topography.

p. 65, l. 34.—*tempted him*.—Page 69, l. 36 contains another reference to the Temptation.

p. 66, l. 17. *hous of Ieremye*.—No source known.

p. 66, l. 20. *Alom t of Alkatran*.—H. : Entour celle mer croist mult dalum et dalketran. Sir G. Warner quotes J. of Würzburg : supra ripam maris praedicti multum aluminis et multum catrani ab incolis reperitur et colligitur (p. 179). Diez, *Etymol. Wörterb. der romanischen Sprachen*, 1887, p. 93, knows forms with the article al in Portuguese and in Spanish, while the French guitran, goudron, the Italian catrame follow the Medieval Latin cataramnus. Like the word cambil, the form alkatran betrays a derivation from Arabic, perhaps through books of medicine. This is a reason for believing the real doctor John de

Mandeville to have had a hand in the composition of our fictitious book of Travels.

p. 66, l. 22. *the baume*.—Burchard, *De Terra Sancta* (1864): In circuitu montis illius [Engaddi] et in ipso erat vinea balsami sed tempore Herodis Magni Cleopatra, regina Aegypti, in odium ipsius Herodis favente Antonio transtulit eam in Babylonian Aegypti (p. 61). The present tenses "make" (l. 22) and "beren" (l. 23) correspond to preterites in the French original. H.: homme fist traire les arbresseaux et les porta homme plantier a Babiloigne.

p. 66, l. 26. *cave þat men clepen karua*.—Sir G. Warner quotes John of Würzburg: supra lacum Asphaltitem in descensu Arabiae Karnaim spelunca in monte Moabitarum, in quem Balac, etc. (p. 179), and identifies the name with that of Ashtarothe Karnaim of Gen. xiv. 5.

p. 66, l. 28. *dede see*.—Sir G. Warner mentions Josephus as the ultimate source of these fables, widely current in the Middle Ages.

p. 67, l. 1. *made moyst*. Prof. C. F. Brown has proved this to be the source of Cleanness, ll. 1027-8:

and þer water may walte to wete any erþe,
 Schal neuer grene þer-on growe, gresse ne wol nawþer.
 (*The Author of Pearl*, 1904, p. 150.)

p. 67, l. 3. *lond chaungeþ*.—Josephus relates that the water changes its colour thrice a day (Sir G. W.).

p. 67, l. 5. *gretness of an hors*.—Josephus: as large as headless oxen. Cleanness, ll. 1037-8:

And þer waltez of þat water in waxlokes grete,
 þe spuniande aspaltoun þat spyserez sellen.
 (C. F. Brown, *Author of Pearl*, 1904, p. 151.)

p. 67, l. 11. *ne may not dyen*.—Josephus, *Bell. Jewl.* iv. 4, reports that Vespasian threw in men unable to swim, with their limbs bound (Sir G. W.). Cleanness:

If any schalke to be schent wer schowued þer-inne,
 þa; he bode in þat boþem broþely a monyth,
 He most ay lyue in þat loþe in losyng euer-more,
 And neuer dryȝe no dethe, to dayes of ende.
 (C. F. Brown, *Author of Pearl*, 1904, p. 150.)

p. 67, l. 17. *jren þerein*.—Sir G. Warner notices a contradiction between the Medieval sources: Comestor declares that the heaviest things are cast up by the Dead Sea, while Antoninus Martyr (ed. Tobler, p. 97) states that everything sank in it. That iron should

float and feathers sink seems a characteristic invention of d'Outremeuse's. It is repeated in Cleanness, ll. 1025-6 :

For lay þeron a lump of led and hit on loft fletez,
and folde þer-on a list typer and hit to founs synkkez.
(C. F. Brown, *Author of Pearl*, 1904, p. 149.)

This quotation leaves no doubt that its source is a French *Mandeville*. H. : Et qi metteroit fer dedeins, il noeroit par desure ; et qi mitteroit vne plume dedeins, elle irroit au founz.

p. 67, l. 19. *ageust kynde*.—The law of kind (*i. e.* of Nature) is often discussed in the *Mandeville*.

p. 67, l. 21. *faire apples*.—Vincent de Beauvais, *Spec. Hist.* I., c. lxvii. : Nam pro scelere incolarum de coelo descendit ignis, qui regionem illam in cineres aeternos dissolvit ; cuius umbra quaedam et species in favillis et arboribus ipsis etiam adhuc videtur. Nascentur enim ibi poma virentia sub tanta specie maturitatis, ut edendi desiderium gignant, quae si carpas, fatiscunt, ac resolvuntur in cinerem, et fumum exhalant, quasi adhuc ardeant (p. 25). The corresponding passage in Cleanness bears some evidence of being derived from the French : Bot quen hit [*viz.* the fruit] is brused oþer broken (p. 151), H. : qi les brusera ou trenchera parmy.

p. 67, l. 24. *brente & sonken*.—H. : ardz del feu denfern.

p. 67, l. 25. *lake daljetidee*, corrupt from Asphaltites, the classical name of the Dead Sea, no doubt influenced by foetidus, = stynkyng. Nöldeke, *Der Alexanderroman*, 1890, p. 27, states that the stinking sea was opposed to the clear seas. Boldensele : mare Mortuum, foetens et horridum, lacus detestabilis et abjectus (p. 66).

p. 67, l. 26. *flom of deueles*.—Mare Diaboli, the name used in Crusading times.

p. 67, l. 32. *sett rpon an hill*.—Boldensele : Et prope est civitas parvula Segor, quae oratione Loth salvata est, cui mons supereminet, etc. (p. 66). Similarly H. : qar elle seoit a dessouz vne montaigne. Mistranslation.

p. 67, l. 33. *aboue the waler*.—H. : dessouz leawe. Mistranslation.

p. 68, l. 1. *doughtres*.—The commentators take no notice of such immoral passages, or of their bearing on the literary and historical position of the author of *Mandeville*. Yet they are too many to be negligible.

p. 68, l. 14. *dwelletth 3it*.—H. : demorra. Mistranslation.

Boldensele (p. 66) and Burchard (p. 59 of 1864 ed.) both state that they could not see the statue of salt!

p. 68, l. 19. *.iij. 3eer and .x.*—H.: *iiii.^{xx} dis ans.*

p. 68, l. 21. *another sone ysmael.*—H.: *vn aultre fitz Ismael, qi auoit XIII. anz, qele il auoit engendrez en Agar sa chambrere.* Mistranslation.

p. 68, l. 29. *renneth the flom.*—Boldensele: *Hic fluvius non est magnus nec multum profundus, limosum fundum habens, bonos pisces et dulcis saporis aquam continens . . . in radice montis Libani scaturiens, ex duobus fontibus, ut dicitur, Jor et Dan collectus re et nomine trahit originem. Per mare Tiberiadis fluens, prope locum ubi Christiani communiter lalueantur, in mare Mortuum praedictum dilabitur, et non apparens ulterius inibi absorbetur* (ed. 1855, p. 67).

p. 68, l. 34. *laboch.*—As various French texts give initial *L*, instead of capital *I*, the misspelling is probably d'Outremeuse's.

p. 69, l. 5. *And gon the hilles.*—Sir G. Warner remarks that the topographers write that the valley of the Jordan (not the hills of Lebanon) extend to the desert of Pharan. D'Outremeuse misinterpreted his sources, and was followed by the Englisher.

p. 69, l. 10. *as a mannes heued.*—Bovenschen states that Thietmar (c. 29, p. 53) saw apples of that size from cedars, but denies that the cedars of Lebanon bear any fruit. D'Outremeuse adopted the more startling view.

p. 69, l. 12. *Betron.*—Explained by Sir G. Warner as Bostra, now Buzrah, about eighty miles south of Damascus.

p. 69, l. 13. *Meldan in Sarmoyz.* H.: *qe homme appelle Meldan en Sarazinois, ceo est a dire Foire ou Marchee en Romanz, i. e. which is called Meldan in the Saracen language, that is to say fair or market in French, because fairs are often held in that plain.* The course ascribed to the Jordan in ll. 12–15 is that given to the Dan by Vincent de Beauvais, l. XXXII., c. lxi. Meldan is the form given by Eugesippus to the word spelt Medan by Vincent and known in the East as meidan, Arabic for a square or open space.

p. 69, l. 17. *And in pat flom.*—Boldensele: *In hoc sacratissimo fluvio Dei filius a beatissimo praeursore Johanne baptizatur; vox Dei Patris auditur, Spiritus sanctus in specie columbae descendens cernitur, lavacrum regenerationis efficitur. . . . Hunc fluvium filii Israël sicco vestigio transierunt duodecim lapides de ipsius fundo secundum numerum tribuum assumentes et totidem aliunde sumtos*

in ejus medium reponentes in memoriam miraculi perpetuo recordandi. Undis hujus fluvii Naaman Syrus a lepra curatur. . . . Circa hunc fluvium plura sunt monasteria ubi Christiani . . . ducunt vitam : et prope est civitas Hai per Josue expugnata.

p. 69, l. 31. *cytee of Haylla*.—H. : la citee de Hay, la quelle Iosue assailly et prist. Englisher's blunder: he takes the French article la to be part of the name of the city.

p. 70, l. 7. *Carak en Sarmoyz*.—Boldensele : Ultra mare Mortuum versus orientem, extra fines terrae promissionis est castrum fortissimum in montanis, quod Latine Mons Regalis dicitur, in Arabico autem Krak. . . . Dicitur, quod sub castro in villa, quae Sobak dicitur, ac in terminis ejus Christianorum seismicorum circa 40 milia commorentur de illis partibus oriundi (pp. 66-67). Boldensele confused the Kerak East of the Dead Sea with another Kerak, also called Montreal, and lying south of the Dead Sea. D'Oultremeuse adopts his blunder. The Englisher took the French word sarasinois, describing the Arabic language, for the name of a country, like on p. 69, l. 14. Moreover, he read in as m.

Ibid. *Ryally*.—H. : roialment, misspelling for royal mont, *i. e.* royal mount.

p. 70, l. 8. *Baldwyn . . . of France*.—No Baldwin ever was king of France. Jacques de Vitry states that Mons Regalis [*i. e.* the Southern Krak] was founded by Baldouinus de Burgo, de regno Franciae, *i. e.* Baldwin II., third Christian king of Jerusalem (ed. Bongars, t. I., pt. II., p. 1068). Hence d'Oultremeuse's blunder.

p. 70, l. 15. *iiij. journeyes*.—Boldensele : De his locis processi versus provinciam Galileae per mediam Judaeam et Samariam in tribus diebus, et . . . perveni in Ramatha Sophim, in montem Ephraïm altum, ubi Helcana et beata Anna Samuelis mater commorati sunt; ibidemque sanctus ille propheta Samuel natus et defunctus est. [Samuel's grave in Mountjoy is mentioned on p. 62, l. 27.] Sic igitur procedens veni ulterius in Silo, . . . ubi arca Dei sub Heli sacerdote longo tempore servabatur, sicut astruit liber Regum. Hic vota et sacrificia populi Domino reddebantur, Samueli primo Deus locutus est et sibi inter cetera de mutatione sacerdotii intimavit et revelavit. Prope a sinistris est Gabaon, et ex opposito Gabaa, de propinquo Rama Benjamin, quorum locorum sacra historia recordatur. Inde procedens veni in Sichem vel Sichar, ubi est provincia Samaritanorum. Vallis est pulcherrima ac fecunda civitasque bona, quae nunc Neapolis appellatur, juxta quam circa viam versus Judaeam Dominus cum muliere Samaritana

prope puteum loquebatur, qui adhuc ibidem ostenditur, sed aliquantulum obstructus est; supra quem locum olim pulchra erat ecclesia, nunc plurimum dissipata (pp. 68-69).

p. 70, l. 33. *womman of Samaritan*.—H.: la femme Samaritane, i. e. the Samaritan woman.

p. 70, l. 35. *Roboas*.—Jeroboam (Kings xii. 28).

p. 70, l. 37. *cytee of Deluze*.—H.: cite de Luze.

p. 71, l. 7. *Dyme*.—Gen. xxxiv.

p. 71, l. 10. *Garasoun*.—Guérin mentions a convent of Saint Gerasime in the plain of Jericho (*Terre Sainte*, ed. 1897, p. 262). Is this the source of d'Outremeuse's strange spelling?

p. 71, l. 17. *hill of Aygues*.—H.: montaignes. The Englisher misread *n* as *u*, mistook the second syllable for a proper name, and translated "mont" as "hill"! Boldensele: Nunc Sebaste dicitur et multum assimilatur civitati sanctae in situ (p. 69).

p. 71, l. 18. *of the xij. tribes*.—Boldensele: In hac fuit caput et sedes regni 10 tribuum (p. 69). H.: x. tribuitz. The mistake may be the Englisher's or the copyist's.

p. 71, l. 20. *John the Baptist*.—Vincent de Beauvais and the *Golden Legend*, c. cxxiv., may be the sources.

p. 71, l. 21. *Abdyan*.—Abdias in the *Golden Legend*.

p. 71, l. 22. *Macharyme*.—Macheron by the Dead Sea.

p. 71, l. 26. *askes in the wynd*.—According to Ernoul's *Itinéraire*, this is the reason why children used to burn bones on St. John's eve.

p. 71, l. 30. *in to the hill*.—The *Golden Legend*, written by an Italian, says that the finger was carried beyond the Alps and laid down in St. Martin's Church [at Tours?]. Sir G. Warner refers to Eugesippus and John of Würzburg, who state that St. Thecla conveyed it to Maurienne among the Alps of Savoy. A virgin called Tecla figures in the epic cycle of Charlemagne, Paris: *Hist. poët. de Charlemagne* (1905), p. 280. *Oeuvres de St. Charlemagne*, t. II., col. 1366, in vol. 98 of Migne. The original French reading of d'Outremeuse is doubtful. It may be: entre les Alpes, or outre les Monts, or outre les Alpes, or entre les Monts. The close of this sentence was linked up by the Englisher with the beginning of the next. H.: A Sebaste, en celle lieu mesme, soloit auoir vne bele esglise.

p. 71, l. 34. *in the wall*.—Sir G. Warner states that the head is reported to have been immured, not at Samaria, but in Herod's palace at Jerusalem. He quotes the *Cursor Mundi*:

Here nu quat Herodias did ;
In a wall his heued sco hid.

(p. 758, ll. 13228-9.)

p. 71, l. 35. *cloth all bloody*.—According to the *Golden Legend*, the head was wrapped in a cloth of imperial purple, and taken to Rome.

p. 72, l. 3. *hundred ordres*.—H.: noinaignes cordelers, *i.e.* nonains cordelières, *i.e.* Franciscan muns. The Englisher read the initial c. as a numeral, and the latter part of the word as [monastic] orders! Mistranslation!

Ibid. *broylly*.—H.: bruille, ensi qe demy ars, *i.e.* charred, like half burnt. Brûlé seems to be confused with brouillé. A verb bruillir occurs in Godéfray, meaning: être brûlé.

p. 72, l. 7. *be Popes*.—An obvious piece of impertinence.

p. 72, l. 10. *at Gene*.—The *Golden Legend* says that the ashes are at Genoa.

p. 72, l. 11. *Sarazynes also*.—A piece of flippancy characteristic of d'Outremeuse.

p. 72, l. 16. *holt him apayd*.—Neither Dr. Bovensehen, who suspects "oral tradition" as the source of this passage, nor Sir G. Warner has pointed to the impudence of such jokes against the Papacy and against the worship of relics.

p. 72, l. 19. *chaungeth his colour*.—Both commentators give Isidore, *Etym.* xiii. 13, 8 (Migne, lxxxii., 483), and Jacques de Vitry, c. lxxxv., p. 166, as the sources. We may suspect a sly intention in the collocation of this miracle with those worked by St. John's relics.

p. 72, l. 21. *Samaritanes*.—Boldensele: Hi nec legem Christianorum aut Judaeorum aut Saracenorum, sed nec paganorum sectantur, sed unum Deum dicentes, opiniones, ritus colendi ac modos vivendi mirabiles tenent, se solos reputantes de numero salvandorum. Et etiam in habitu ab aliis distinguuntur quia, cum in his partibus habitantes generaliter involvant capita linteis longissimis, Christiani quidem flavis, Saraceni albis, Judaei glaucis, horum capita rubeis involvuntur; et se dicunt Dei electissimos inter omnes (p. 69). The only change from this introduced in the *Manderiville* is that in the colour of the turban: Christians wear yellow in Boldensele, and Jews blue.

p. 73, l. 7. *From this contree*.—Follows Boldensele, with additions from Eusebius.

p. 73, l. 16. *Cedar*.—Odoric, *De Terra Sancta*, 1864, p. 148:

Quinto miliario a Corrosaim est Cedar, civitas excellentissima, de qua in psalmo : Habitavi cum habitantibus Cedar (Ps. cxix., A.V. exx. 5).

p. 73, l. 18. *Antecrist*.—Odonic, *De T. S.* : Mare autem Galilee sumit initium inter Bethsayda et Capharnaum, et terminatur Corrosaim, in qua nutrietur Antichristus. De hiis duabus civitatibus ait Jesus : Ve tibi, Betsayda, ve tibi Corrosaim ! (p. 148) (Matt. xi. 21 ; Luc. x. 13).

p. 73, l. 19. *Babgloyme*.—This reads like another attack on the Papacy and on the Roman Church, which was by heterodox sects of the Middle Ages called the impure Babylon of Revelation (Jundt *Le Panth.* 1875, p. 31). It agrees with Adso, see note to p. 25, l. 1.

p. 73, l. 22. *schal come a worm*.—Sir G. Warner knows no source for this. It may have been current among opponents of the Papacy.

p. 73, l. 23. *schall be norysscht*.—Pseudo-Methodius : Hic nascitur in Chorozaïm et nutrietur in Bethsaidam et regnavit in Chaparnaum et letabitur Chorozaïm, eo quod natus est in ea, et Chaparnaum ideo, quod regnaverit in ea. Propter hanc causam in euangelio Dominus tertio sententiam dedit dicens : Ve tibi Corozaïm, ve tibi Bethsaida, et tibi Chaparnaum, si usque in celum exaltaveris, usque ad infernum discendes (p. 93 of Sackur's edition, 1898).

p. 74, l. 5. *et his wif Canee*.—H. : et la femme Cananee. Mis-translation. Matt. xv. 22 : a woman of Canaan.

p. 74, l. 7. *Architriclyn*.—Architriclinus, the governor of the feast, John ii. 8.

p. 74, l. 9. *mownt hendor or hermon*.—Endor is a town, and Hermon a mountain. But Endor was called a mountain in the early Itineraries. Boldensele refers to the hills of Gilboa. The author of *Maulerille* mixes up all his sources, as Dr. Bovenschen has shown in detail.

p. 74, l. 11. *Torreus Cison*.—Eugesippus : Supra Naim mons Endor, ad radicem cuius supra torrentem Raduinum, qui est Cison, etc. Judges v. 21 : . . . that ancient river, the river Kishon.

Ibid. *sometyne was clept*.—H. : autrement est appelez. Mis-translation.

p. 74, l. 12. *Abymelech*.—Judges v. 1 : Barak the son of Abinoam.

p. 74, l. 13. *with sone of Delbore*.—H. : ouesqe le filz Delbore. The article has been omitted by the copyist. D'Outremeuse seems responsible for the treatment of the Biblical narrative.

p. 74, l. 16. *zeb and zebee t Salmana*.—According to the *Pseudo-Methodius* (ed. Sackur, 1898) the leaders of the Ishmaelites in their fight against Israel were Oreb, Zeb, Zebe and Salmana (p. 18 of Introduction, p. 68 of text). Psalm lxxxiii. gives the names Zeeb, Zebah and Zalmunna (v. 9–11); Judges c. vii.–viii.

p. 74, l. 28. *nouþer derc ne reyn*.—Burchard archly remarks that David's curse did not stop the rain, for visiting the hills of Gilboa on St. Martin's day, he was soaked to the skin (ed. 1864, p. 52). The *Manderille* never has such touches of homely truthfulness.

p. 74, l. 33. *Nazareth*.—Boldensele is followed and amplified from other sources.

p. 75, l. 10. *a lityll resceyt*.—H. : vn petit casen. Godefroy, Dict. etym. *verbo* : cassel, casel, caissel explains the word as loge, logette, cahute, i.e. niche, box or recess. The readings of my two Brussels manuscripts are impossible. Boldensele: In hoc loco pulchra fuit ecclesia atque magna; sed heu! quasi destructa est; parvulus tamen locus est in ea coopertus et a Sarraценis diligentius custoditur, ubi circa quandam columnam marmoream asserunt veneranda conceptionis mysteria esse perfecta (pp. 71–72). D'Outremeuse irreverently converts the tabernacle where the Immaculate Conception is said to have taken place into a box for collecting the pilgrims' money!

p. 75, l. 24. *Sephor*.—Identified by Sir G. Warner with the modern Seffûrieh.

p. 75, l. 26. *lepe of oure lord*. The substitution of Our Lady is probably an oversight of the Cotton scribe's. Boldensele: Prope ad unum miliare locus est, qui Saltus Domini appellatur, ubi, cum Christus ductus esset, ut praecipitaretur de montis cacumine, ipse transiens per medium illorum ibat, evangelio attestante (p. 72). The additions are either from the "folklore of charms" (Sir G. Warner) or from d'Outremeuse's imagination. The reading of Brussels 10420–5 differs from H., and reads as follows, in modernised spelling: À demi-lieue de Nazareth est le Saut Notre Seigneur, car les Juifs le menèrent sur une haute roche pour le jeter aval, mais il connaissait bien leur male pensée, si passa parmi tous eux et saillit en une autre roche bien outre et dit l'Écriture: Jesus autem transiens per medium illorum ibat. Et quiconque dit ce dit de la Sainte Écriture il peut passer sûrement parmi les larrons en ayant souvenance comment Notre Seigneur passa parmi les Juifs qui étaient les larrons et les brigands qui le voulaient faire mourir. Et

dit-on avec ces deux vers du psautier : Irruat, etc. Ces choses dit l'on trois fois et puis passe l'on sans péril.—Dr. Bovenschen remarks that the verses here ascribed to the psalter are from Gen. xv., xvi., where I could not find them.

p. 75, l. 29. *3it ben the steppes . . . sene*.—Not in the sources.

p. 76, l. 8. *.xv. 3eere old*.—*Goblen Legend*, c. cxix.

p. 76, l. 14. *the scole of god*.—Boldensele : Ibi enim Christus frequenter discipulos docuit, arcana secretorum coelestium revelavit, ut ex hoc non immerito singularis schola Domini nuncupetur, etc. (p. 72).

p. 76, l. 19. *slayn Abymelech*.—H. : occis Amalech. Scribe's mistake.

p. 76, l. 26. *Lord it is gode*.—Matt. xvii. 4.

p. 76, l. 28. *Hie est filius*.—Matt. xvii. 5 : This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

p. 76, l. 31. *day of doom*.—No particular source known except the common belief of the Middle Ages.

p. 77, l. 8. *mount heremon*.—See note to p. 74, l. 9.

p. 77, l. 12. *sones*.—H. : le filz Zebedee et le filz Alphee.

p. 77, l. 24. *t renmeth*.—H. : Et court ly flum Iordan parmy, *i. e.* and the river Jordan flows through it. Mistranslation. Boldensele : Est autem hoc mare locus multum magnus, scilicet forsitan circa 30 miliaria in circuitu continens, per cujus medium fluvius Jordanis currit ; bonos habet pisces in magna copia, etc. (p. 73).

p. 77, l. 27. *gret brigge*.—Sir G. Warner has found this bridge mentioned in Ernoul (*Itinéraires*, p. 57).

p. 77, l. 31. *Traconye*.—H. : Traconyde, *i. e.* Trachonitis.

p. 77, l. 34. *Ienazareth*.—Genezareth.

p. 78, l. 1. *whan he began*.—H. : qi estoit auques noie dedeinz la mer, *i. e.* who was nearly drowned in the sea. Boldensele : dum in ipso mergi coepisset (p. 73).

p. 78, l. 3. *Modice fidei*.—Matt. xiv. 31 : O thou of little faith, wherefore didst thou doubt ?

p. 78, l. 6. *rowed*.—H. : nagea, an archaic use. Boldensele : In hoc mari saepe Dominus navigavit (p. 73).

p. 78, l. 9. *the table*.—The spot called Mensa is not a table, but, according to the *Surrey* (I., p. 369), "a small artificial square plateau" outside (not in) the city of Tiberias (Sir G. Warner).

p. 78, l. 11. *Et cognouerunt*.—Luke xxiv. 35 : he was known of them in breaking of bread.

p. 78, l. 15. *an brennyng dart*.—*Les Pelerinaiges pour aller en Jherusalem* : A Thabarie est ly tysons que li Juif geterent apres

Nostre Seignor, quant lor monstra comment il devoient faire la tainture; et le tison tint a .j. mur et erut maintenant en un grant arbre (*Itinéraires*, ed. 1882, p. 102). Odoric, *De Terra Sancta* (1864): Ubi accidit, quod, cum puer Jesus cum quodam cognato suo moram ibi traheret, commotus homo predictus arripuit facem ardentem, et post Jesum proiecit, volens eum percutere; sed fax infixâ terrae in arborem crevit maximam, quae usque in hodiernum diem flores et fructus producit (p. 147). See note to p. 45, l. 7.

p. 78, l. 20. *Saphor*.—Boldensele (73) writes Saphiet, meaning the Crusading castle of Safed. D'Outremeuse confounds it with the Sephoris of p. 75, l. 24 (Sir G. Warner).

p. 78, l. 24. *Centurioes hous*.—This was at Capernaum (Matt. viii. 5).

p. 78, l. 25. *taken to tribute*.—H.: baille as tribuitz de Zabulon et de Neptalim, *i. e.* granted to the tribes of Zabulon and Naphtali. Mistranslation.

p. 78, l. 31. *toward the north into the South*, slavishly translated from H.: vers bise insques vers mydy. The right reading is in Brussels 11141: de vers bise jusques vers mydy, *i. e.* from north to south.

p. 78, l. 32. *t of lengthe*.—H.: Et de large, *i. e.* And in width. Mistranslation.

p. 78, l. 34. *myle of lombardye*.—As the distances in the *Manderille* are often incorrect or even fanciful, one may suspect a joke in his account of little miles and great miles. The length of the Holy Land is 180 miles in the *Manderille*, 140 (variant 160) in Boldensele!

p. 78, l. 36. *prouynce of Almayne*.—H.: ne de Prouince ne Dalemaigne, *i. e.* nor of Provence, nor of Germany. Mistranslation.

p. 79, l. 2. *Cecyle*.—H.: Cilicie.

p. 79, l. 5. *west see*.—Boldensele's mare Mediterraneum. The list of Syrian provinces is shorter and less orderly than in Boldensele.

p. 79, l. 16. *senden hem þus*.—H.: les enuoient quere por porter lour lettres, *i. e.* the lords send for the pigeons to carry their letters. The Englisher seems to have read quar = car = therefore instead of querre = quérir = fetch. Mistranslation. The Crusading epic refers to the pigeon post of the Saracens. *Chanson de Jérusalem*, éd. Hippeau, 1868:

A chascun colon soit la chartre au col fremée,
Et par devant la gorge en la plume bofée,
Que Franchois n'es perchoivent, cele gent païjurée.
(p. 101, ll. 2537-39).

Sir G. Warner refers to Foucher de Chartres, III. 47; Albert d'Aix, V. 9; R. de Aguilers, c. 19; Baudri, IV. 6; Jacques de Vitry, p. 1105. The Crusaders brought the pigeons down with arrows or hawks, read the messages, and dispatched the carriers with deceitful letters.

p. 79, l. 25. *seyut Iame conuerted hem*.—Sir G. Warner: "De Vitry rightly says that they had their name, not from St. James the apostle, but 'a quodam magistro suo dicto Jacobo cujusdam (Theodosii) Alexandrini patriarchae discipulo,' meaning Jacob al-Baradai, or Baradaeus, a monk of Constantinople in the sixth century, by whose energy the sect was organised; and he [viz. Jacques de Vitry] is responsible for the statement that saint John baptised them, only in so far as he incidentally mentions St. John *the Baptist* in speaking of the confession of sins." The whole trend of the *Maunderville's* argument is obviously as heterodox as was possible in his day. Auricular confession was often opposed by dissenters from Roman Catholicism. Jundt, *Histoire du panthéisme populaire au M.A.* (1875) quotes the Dominican Étienne de Belleville (1223) on the Vaudois: . . . "Ils enseignent qu'il suffit de confesser ses péchés à Dieu et que Dieu seul a le droit d'excommunier" (p. 31). In d'Outremeuse's own time, the Lollards were accused of denying confession to the priest:

Sed hoc Lollardi renunt,
Cum soli Deo instruunt
Nostras culpas detergere.
(Wright: *Political Poems and Songs*, I., 1859, p. 240).

p. 79, l. 27. *only to him*.—H.: qar a cely homme se doit rendre coupable contre qi il mesprint, *i. e.* for to him against whom one has trespassed should one avow one's guilt. Slight change of meaning.

p. 79, l. 32. *Confitebor*.—Ps. cxi. 1: I will praise the Lord with my whole heart. A formula repeated in ix. 1, and in cxxviii. 1.

p. 79, l. 33. *Delictum meum*.—Ps. xxxii. 5: I acknowledged my sin unto thee.

p. 79, l. 34: *Deus meus*.—Ps. cxviii. 28: Thou art my God and I will praise thee.

p. 79, l. 35. *Quoniam cogitacio*.—Sir G. Warner refers to Ps. xciv. 11: The Lord knoweth the thoughts of man. This is not very near.

p. 80, l. 2. *Nathelies seynt Austyn*.—H.: Et nientmoins seint Augustin et seint Gregory dient. Brussels 10420-5 (modernised): Et toutefois nous lisons en saintes écritures qu'aucuns des auteurs (B. 11141: autres) des saints hommes s'accordent à leurs opinions, si que saint Augustin, saint Grégoire, saint Hilaire. In the Brussels version, those Fathers of the Church are definitely pitted against the Papal doctrine of auricular confession.

p. 80, l. 4. *Qui scelera*.—Whoso ponders on his sins and feels converted, let him hold himself pardoned.

p. 80, l. 5. *Dominus pocius*.—The Lord considers thoughts more than words.

p. 80, l. 6. *Longorum temporum*.—Sins committed long before perish in the twinkling of an eye once repentance is born in the heart.

p. 80, l. 15. *was first*.—H.: Et verite est qe ceste confessioun est primitiue et naturelle.

p. 80, l. 16. *seynt peter*.—H.: Mes ly seintz pieres apostoilles qi sunt depuis venez, *i. e.* But the Holy Fathers the Popes who have come since. Mistranslation. The French original opposes Scripture and the Primitive Church to the Papal authority.

p. 80, l. 21. *medicpe*.—Brussels 10420-5: Et ainsi ne peut-on donner penance convenable, qui ne sait la qualité [MS. quantité] du fait, *i. e.* Similarly, one can give no appropriate penance unless one knows the character of the deed. The Englishier has followed H. The orthodox conclusion of d'Outremeuse's unorthodox argument is from Jacques de Vitry, who inveighs against the Jacobites: *Pereunt ex defectu doctrinae, vulnera sua medicis spiritualibus abscondentes, quorum est inter lepram et lepram discernere, et peccatorum circumstancias pensando poenitentias iniungere, etc.* (quoted by Bovenschen, p. 263).

p. 80, l. 26. *Suriens*.—From Jacques de Vitry, c. lxxv., p. 138, and Haiton, c. 14.

p. 80, l. 29. *therf bred*.—H.: et font le sacrement dun pain leuez. Mistranslation.

p. 80, l. 32. *Georggyenes*.—From Jacques de Vitry, c. lxxx. p. 156.

p. 81, l. 3. *gyrt abouen*.—H.: ceintz par dessure. Burchard, *De Terra Sancta*, writes of the Syrians: *In habitu concordant eum Sarracenis, nisi quod tantum per cingulum laneum discernuntur* (ed. 1864, p. 89). Another derivation of the name is from Our Lady's Girdle, given to St. Thomas at the Assumption (D'Anglure,

Le Saint Voyage, ed. by Bonnardot and Longnon, S.A.T.F., 1878).

p. 81, l. 4. *Arryenes*.—No Arians appear among the sects of Medieval Palestine. D'Outremeuse brings them in.

p. 81, l. 5. *of Ynde t summe*.—H.: Yndiens, qī sont de la terre Preistre John, i. e. Indians who are of Prester John's land. Mistranslation.

p. 81, l. 7. *to othere þei ben varyaunt*, i. e. from others they vary.

p. 81, l. 21. *Helizeus Damascens*.—Eliezer (Genesis xv. 2). From Eugesippus and other Itineraries. Vincent de Beauvais, XXXII., c. 61. Most other data in the notice of Damascus are from Boldensele.

p. 82, l. 15. *Sardenak*—Prutz, *Kulturgesch. d. Kreuzzüge* (1883), calls the monastery Sebedany, and places it in the Anti-Lebanon (p. 65), and reports similar stories from Our Lady's Church near Tripoli and from that at Tortosa (p. 66). Schefer, in his edition of *Bertrandon de la Broquière* (1892), gives the modern name as Sidnaya, the Medieval ones as Sardenay, Sardan, Sardenal and Notre-Dame de la Roche (p. 65). All the Itineraries report the miracle, which may be connected with the Jewish practice of anointing stone pillars with oil (Gen. xxviii. 18; xxxv. 14, etc.). See the miracle of St. Catherine, p. 39, l. 23.

p. 82, l. 20. *vout*.—H.: voute. Boldensele: In casali pulchro, quod sub monasterio est, Christiani scismatici commorantur, bono vino satis abundantes (77). D'Outremeuse seems to have read some such word as *cava*, *caverna*, vault, instead of *casale*, village!

p. 82, l. 24. *pat turneth into flesch*.—H.: qī se conuert en char. The French *convertit* was probably meant as a preterite. Mistranslation.

p. 82, l. 26.—The account of the Tartars is from the *Historia Mongolorum* of the Franciscan Joannes de Plano Carpini, included in Vincent de Beauvais' encyclopedia.

Ibid. *eten hounles*.—*Pseudo-Methodius*, ed. Sackur, 1898: Comedebant enim hi omnes cantharo speciem omnem coinquinabilem vel spurcebilem, id est canes, mures, serpentes, etc. (pp. 72–73). Alexander asks God to enclose those impure nations between the Ueber mountains.

p. 83, l. 8.—Batho (d. 1255), grandson of Yenghiz and khan of the Golden Horde (Orda) received Carpini's vi it (Sir G. Warner).

He was dead when the *Mandeville* was written. Batho is mentioned by Hayton, p. 157 of 1906 ed.

p. 83, l. 11. *to sowen june*.—II.: Il serroit bon pais a semer de fenchiere et de genest et des espines et de rounces, *i. e.* It would be a good country for sowing fern and broom and thorns and brambles. Mistranslation.

p. 83, l. 18. *Daresten*.—Sir G. Warner guesses at Dorostena or Drestra, the old name of Silistria. But the irresponsible d'Outremeuse may have thought of the Dur-Este of romance mentioned, *e. g.* in the *Chanson de Roland*. See note to p. 44, l. 33.

p. 83, l. 35. *Sclayes*.—H.: soleiez. Brussels 10420-5: seleis. Egerton: sleddes. The original reading probably was seleyes, cognate with esclisse = traîneau in the abridged edition of Godefroy, 1901. D'Outremeuse might know the Middle Flemish word sledde, slee = sledge. Grandgagnage, *Dict. étym. de la langue wallonne*, t. II., 1880, gives the form scelite, meaning sledge.

p. 84, l. 18. *of here lawe*.—The word law was used in the Middle Ages with the meaning religion, especially of the Jewish, Christian and Saracen laws. Renan, *Averroès* (1866), p. 166.—In the Liégeois version of the Crusading cycle, the three are said to be equally false. Cornumarant says to Godfrey of Bouillon:

En tiere sont trois lois, il est bien vérités,
Et chascuns est si bien en sa foi abusés,
Juis et Sarrasin et les crestienés
Que chascuns cuide en foi estre bien asenés.

(P. Paris, *Histoire littéraire*, Vol. XXV., p. 533.)

p. 84, l. 21. *Meshaf*.—William of Tripoli, *De Statu Saracenorum*, ed. in Prutz, *Kulturj. d. Kreuzz*: Postquam dictum est de egressu Macometi et suorum, progressu eorum atque occasu, restat videre, quid sentiendum est de eorum lege seu libro Alcoranum, Meshaf seu Harine (c. xxv., p. 590).

p. 84, l. 27. *place of delytes*.—Will. Trip.: Locus deliciarum est, in quo quisque habebit nonaginta novem virgines delicatas, quibus omnibus fruetur omni die et semper inveniet illas illibatas et integras. Ad nutum etiam desiderii rami arborum fructum porrigent optatum ori comedentis, flumina lactis et mollis meri et liquidissime limphe deorsum defluent, menia et mansiones pro meritis singulorum assignabuntur singulis ex lapidibus preciosis edificate et ex auro precioso Ofir (Prutz, 596).

p. 85, l. 9. *crist spak als some as he was born*.—Will. Trip.: The relatives of the Virgin ask: Quomodo loquitur infans in
MANDEVILLE.

cumabulis? Et ipse puer dixit: . . . Deus . . . me fecit benedictum prophetam (ed. Prutz, p. 593).

p. 85, l. 13. *The Angel*.—Will. Trip.: Et apparuit [Spiritus] ei [Mariæ] in similitudine viri et dixit Maria territa: Invoco Deum misericordem, si tu es Taquius. (Glosa Sarracenorum: Taquius erat quidam incantator, qui subito intrabat super virgines et supprimebat eas speciosus et pulcher ut angelus.) Et dixit: Ego sum nuncius Dei tui: donabitur tibi filius innocens et purus (ed. Prutz, c. xxxii., p. 592). D'Outremeuse has followed this so closely that no conclusion is possible as to his own views on the Immaculate Conception. Dr. Bovenschen rightly points out that the gross calumnies of Medieval Christians against Islam and its founder, known to the author of *Mandeville* through Vincent de Beauvais, Jacques de Vitry, and other writings, have not been repeated here. Sir G. Warner explains the name Taquius as a mistranslation of a word in the Koran (Transl. Rodwell, 1876, p. 112).

p. 85, l. 24. *childed under a palme tre*.—Will. Trip., c. xxxiii.: Quomodo peperit [Maria] et natus eam consolatur.—Item in alio loco demonstrat [Alcoran] quomodo filium, quem conceperat, peperit et quomodo filius natus de ea matrem consolatur et dicit sic: Concepit Maria filium et abiit cum eo in locum longinquum et remotum. Et cum advenisset tempus partus, peperit sub palma. Et tunc dixit: O ut mortua fuisset, antequam hoc evenisset mihi et oblivioni fuisset tradita! Et mox natus de ea dixit: Ne tristeris, ait, posuit sub te Deus secretum. Trahe ad te ramum palme cum fructu et super te cadet fructus electus maturus; comede ex eo et bibe et esto leta (ed. Prutz, 592).—Montégut, *Heures de lecture d'un critique* (1891), maintains that these episodes bear a striking likeness to the story of the conception and birth of the enchanter Merlin (p. 308, fn.).

p. 86, l. 3. *full of c[h]aritee*.—The original reading, *claritee*, is correct. Will. Trip.: . . . evangelium, in quo est directio et lux et veritas (ed. Prutz, p. 594).

p. 86, l. 9. *Missus est Angelus*.—An Evangelium from Luke i. 26, often repeated in the liturgy, I am told by a learned Benedictine: "And in the sixth month, the angel Gabriel was sent from God unto a city of Galilee, named Nazareth."

p. 86, l. 19. *newere crucyffed*.—William of Tripoli is more hostile to the Mahometans: Mendacium Sarracenorum et fabula de Christi morte et eius cruce. Dicunt hic glosatores Alcorani, quod

Judei non crucifixerunt Christum, set Judam proditorem, qui dum quereret magistrum suum in spelunca, ut caperetur, mutatus est vultus eius in faciem Jesu; quem ministri tollentes crucifixerunt, et ideo dicunt, quod christiani non habent scientiam de Deo, quia dicunt Christum crucifixum ab impiis Judeis, qui non fuit crucifixus nec mortuus, sed vivus ascendit in celum iterum descensurus. Item dicunt, quod Deus contra suam iusticiam egisset, si permisisset Christum innocentem occidi (ed. Prutz, pp. 594-595). This is the doctrine called Doketism, which was common among heretics both before and after d'Outremeuse's time. (Ch. Schmidt, *Histoire des Cathares*, II., 1849, pp. 36-37; A. Jundt, *Hist. Panth.*, 1875, p. 142.

p. 87, l. 2. *pei gou so ny oure feyth*.—Will. Trip.: ipsi sunt vicini fidei christiane (ed. Prutz, p. 596).—Et sic simplici sermone Dei, sine philosophicis argumentis sive militaribus armis, sicut oves simplices petunt baptismum Christi et transeunt in ovile Dei. Hoc dixit et scripsit, qui auctore Deo plus quam mille iam baptizavit (*ibid.*, p. 597-598).

p. 87, l. 6. *the lawe of Machomete schall fayle*.—Will. Trip.: Attrahit etiam eos ad veram fidem credulitas et quedam communis conceptio in cordibus omnium tanquam prescientia sita, quod doctrina Maconeti et fides sit in brevi casura, sicut et Mosayee legis cultura et sola fides Christi cum populo christiano semper sit, quamdiu mundus durabitur, stabilis et mansura (ed. Prutz, p. 596).

p. 87, l. 8. *3if ony man aske*.—Will. Trip.: Si quis enim querat ab ipsis quenam sit fides eorum, nesciunt aliud dicere nisi hoc tantum: Credimus Deum creatorem omnium, diem iudicii, in quo remunerabuntur merita hominum, et vera esse, que Deus locutus est per ora sanctorum prophetarum omnium (ed. Prutz, p. 596).

p. 87, l. 16. *3if wyfes*.—Will. Trip.: Habeas uxores duas et tres et quatuor et ita usque ad novem, et concubinas, quot poterit emere dextera manus tua. Et si in oculis tuis displiceat uxor, trade ei libellum repudii et abire permittas (ed. Prutz, p. 596).

p. 87, l. 23. *3if persones*.—Will. Trip.: Mirantur, quando audiunt divine et deifice trinitatis mysterium, sine cuius cognitione non habetur de Deo vero vera scientia. Nam cum audiunt, quod Deus, quem colunt, ut aiunt, est creator coeli et terre et creaturarum omnium, qui creavit omnia ex nichilo verbo suo sibi coaeterno, concedunt gaudentes, quod Deus habeat verbum, per quod creata

sunt universa et sine ipso factum est nichil. Item cum audiunt, quod Deus, qui est verbalis, hoc est habens verbum, ut vivus et vita vitarum, vitam tribuens viventibus cunctis, in vita vivens, fons vite indeficiens, unde vitam hausit omnis creatura corporalis et spiritualis, concedunt Deum habere vitam sive spiritum, quem dicimus sanctum (ed. Prutz, p. 597).

p. 88, l. 4. *Moyser*.—Will. Trip.: Abraham est amicus Dei, Moyses autem prolocutor Dei, Jesus, Marie filius, verbum et spiritus Dei et Macometus est Dei nuncius. Inter quos quatuor Jesus verbum Dei est maior, cuius magnitudinis laudes et preconia monstrata sunt supra (ed. Prutz, p. 596).

p. 88, l. 9. *feyth as cristene men han*.—H.: loy parfite et foy solone Cristiens. The French original is less orthodox than the English translation.

p. 88, l. 16. *ben pei repreued*.—H.: Et pur ceo sunt ils persecutours de veraiz sages, qi espiritalment lentendent, *i.e.* therefore they persecute the really wise, who understand it after the spirit. Mistranslation. The French original accuses the foolish infidels, who take Scripture literally, of persecuting the wise who interpret it aright. A heretic position.

p. 88, l. 18. *viuificat*.—Brussels 10420-5 adds: Mais qui lentent espiritalment, il la croit parfaitement.

p. 88, l. 19. *pei han defouled the lawe*.—Will. Trip.: . . . in hoc Sarraeni se preferunt Judeis et Christianis, quod dicunt, Judeos violasse legem et Christianos violasse evangelium, et se suum in sua virtute et integritate servasse divinum librum Alcoranum (ed. Prutz, p. 591).

p. 88, l. 23. *the Soudan tolde me*.—Dr. Bovenschen accepts this as truthful and autobiographical. Sir G. Warner looks upon it as fiction and compares it to the commonplaces of satirical literature in the Middle Ages. The sinfulness of Christians is dwelt upon in William of Tyre (see Caxton's *Godfrey of Bouillon*, E.E.T.S., 1893, p. 31). Prutz refers to Jaques de Vitry (I. 70, p. 128-129); to Guilelm. Neubrig. (III. 14); to Caesarii Heisterbac., *Dial. mirac.* (IV. 15 ed. Strange, I. 187-188), and to Ricoldus de Monte Crucis. Montégut instances the tale of the Jewish merchant in Boccaccio's *Decameron* (First Day, Tale Second). Gröber refers to a tale by Bosone da Gubbio (*d.* after 1345) as the source of Boccaccio (p. 11 of Gröber's Introd. to *Decameron*).

p. 88, l. 29. *see cristene men*.—Brussels, 10420-5: voz gens.

Brussels 11141: vos prebstres. H.: voz flamynes. The latter two readings, containing an attack on the clergy, are obviously right, as opposed to the lewed peple of l. 31.

p. 89, l. 1. *fighten*.—H.: baretter, *i.e.* cheat. The MS. used by the Englisher probably read: battre.

p. 89, l. 4. *now swerded, now daggered*. Sir G. Warner gives variants:—S.: ore brondez ore contailliez. G.: ore brondes ore court taillies. Brussels, 10420–5: ou broisde ou contaillies. Brussels 11141: broude puis decope et entretaillie. We may guess that contaillé or entretaillé means slashed, as a tailoring term. The Englisher probably thought of coutel, couteau, *i.e.* knife, and therefore introduced words derived from sword and dagger. Mistranslation.

p. 89, l. 19. *pat knowe we wel be oure prophecyes*.—De Reiffenberg, in his Introduction to Vol. II. of the romance of the *Cheralier au Cygne et Godefroi de Bouillon*, quotes Robert le Moine, where the soothsayer Calabre says: A centum annis et infra invenerunt patres nostri in sacris Deorum responsis et in sortibus et divinationibus suis et animalium extis, quod christiana gens super nos esset ventura nosque victura. Concordant super hoc aruspices, magi, arioli, et numinum nostrorum responsa et prophetarum dicta (pp. xl.–xli.). The fourteenth-century verse says:

Par forche conquisteront la nostre mançon;
Et prenderont oussy le temple Salemon.
Vous en serés livrés à grant destrucion.

(p. 12, ll. 3650–3652.)

p. 89, l. 26. *contres of cristene kynges t priwes*.—H.: des courtz des princeez. Mistranslation.

p. 89, l. 27. *messangeres*.—Such a spying expedition is reported in the Crusading epics. Cantos xii.–xviii. of the romance of *Godefroi de Bouillon*, edited by Hippeau (1877), tell how King Cornumarant of Jerusalem comes to Bouillon as a palmer to survey the power of his future opponent Godfrey. The text edited by de Reiffenberg has a similar episode:

Or est Cornumarans par son fier hardement
Passés deçà la mer, de quoy il se repent
Pour véoir vostre estat et vo demainement.

(Vol. II., 1848, p. 55, ll. 4656–4658.)

p. 89, l. 29. *of clothes of gold*.—Brussels 10420–5: de musk. Can the Englisher have read damask and thus reached cloth? Mistranslation.

p. 90, l. 12. *Seynt Gabriell*.—Will. Trip.: . . . Macometus habens etatis vite 45 annos cepit dicere se esse prophetam Dei, Gabriele archangelo nunciante ei voluntatem divinam (ed. Prutz, p. 590).

p. 90, l. 14. *born in Arabye*.—Will. Trip.: puer videlicet orphanus, egrotativus, pauper et vilis, custos cameli, natione Arabs (ed. Prutz, p. 576).

p. 90, l. 10. *Erenyte*, the Nestorian monk Sergius, otherwise called Bahira, William of Tripoli's Bahayra.

p. 90, l. 21. *the entree began to wece*.—Will. Trip.: Hic ponunt Sarraceni primum miraculum, quod Deus operatus est, ut dicunt, pro famulo suo adhuc parvulo, dicentes, quod parva porta curie monasterii, per quam transibant ad presentiam pueri, dum vellet intrare parvulus, ita divino nutu crevit dilatata et arcualiter exaltata est, ut curie imperialis videretur hostium aut introitus domus regie magestatis (ed. Prutz, p. 576). The same miracle occurs in the *Montage Guillaume*, when William of Orange knocks at Bernard's door (Bédier, *Légendes épiques*, I. 1908, p. 349).

p. 90, l. 26. *gouvernour & prince*.—H.: gouvernour de la terre al prince de Corodane, *i. e.* governor of the country of the prince of C. Mistranslation.—William of Tripoli calls the first husband of Khadidjah a wealthy merchant. D'Outremeuse raises him to princely rank. Sir G. Warner identifies Corodane as the name of Khorasan in the Crusading historians. Vincent de Beauvais (*Sp. Hist.*, l. 23, cap. xxxix.) writes of Eadiga, lady (domina) of Corozania.

p. 90, l. 30. *the grete sikeness*.—H.: de la grant maladie, ceo est de la caduke. Vincent de Beauvais: Post haec vero Machomet caepit cadere frequenter epileptica passione. Quod Eadiga cernens valde tristabatur, quod nupsisset impurissimo homini et epileptico. Quam ille placare desiderans, talibus sermonibus demulcebat eam dicens; quia Gabrielem Archangelum loquentem mecum contemplor, et non ferens splendorem vultus eius, utpote carnalis homo deficio et cado. Credidit ergo mulier, et omnes Arabes, et Ismahelitae, quod ex ore Archangeli Gabrielis illas susciperet leges, quas suis discipulis dabat, eo quod Gabriel Archangelus saepe a Deo mittatur hominibus sanctis (ed. 1524, p. 913).

p. 91, l. 2. *generacioun of ysmael*.—Will. Trip.: natione Arabs de genere Ysmaelis (ed. Prutz, p. 576).

p. 91, l. 4. *Ismaelytenes*.—Honorius, *Imago Mundi*, Migne,

Vol. CLXXII., col. 125 (lib. I., c. xv.), describing Western Asia: In ea sunt gentes multae, Moabitae, Ammonitae, Iduamaci, Sarraceni, Madianitae, et aliae multae. (Col. 126 c. xvii.): In hac [Palestina] etiam Sarraceni, a Sara dicti, qui et Agareni, ab Agar. Item Ismaelitae ab Ismael nuncupati.

p. 91, l. 9. *heremyte*.—Identical with the Eremyte of p. 90, l. 19, according to the legend. Our text seems to separate him into two.

p. 91, l. 14. *wente Machomete*.—Will. Trip.: Ad praedictum magistrum suum Bahayram frequentius veniebat et in veniendo et moram faciendo apud ipsum sodales gravabat, quem tamen ipse libenter audiebat et multa pro eo faciebat. Ob quam causam sodales cogitaverunt Bahayram interficere, sed timebant magistrum. Accidit igitur quadam nocte, ut gravati longa collatione, qua tenuit magistrum reclusus, cum cernerent magistrum tremulentum, pugione ipsius Machometi iugulaverunt virum sanctum nocte illa, imponentes eidem magistro, quod nimia ebrietate alienatus suum interfecerat magistrum et auctorem. Mane autem facto dum Machometus sanctum virum quaereret licentiam accepturus et dicturus vale, inveniens ipsum mortuum vehementer contristatus cepit quaerere homicidas, et cum argueretur a sodalibus tamquam auctor sceleris ebriosus, credens verum esse, quod dicebant, conscius quod ebrius exstiterat nocte illa et videns proprium gladium eruentatum, contra ebrietatem et vinum ebrietatis causam maledixit omnes vini portitores [potatores?] venditores et emptores, ob quam causam Sarraceni devoti vinum non bibebant nec bibunt Racabitarum more (ed. Prutz, p. 577).—This may be compared to the killing of Clitus by Alexander.

p. 91, l. 32. *Calamell*.—Sir G. Warner: For sugarcanes, "calamelli, calami pleni melle," and "canamellae, de quibus zucchara ex compressione eliquatur," see J. de Vitry (pp. 1075, 1099). They are noticed also by the crusading historians, e. g. Alb. of Aix (v. 37), "calamellos mellitos, . . . quos vocant zuera, suxit populus," and Will. of Tyre (xiii. 3). But though the canes and the sugar are mentioned, the drink is not. For the medicinal properties of sugar (it is gode for the breest) see Alb. Magnus, *De Veget.* vi. 37, "Lenit etiam pectus," etc. (ed. Jessen, p. 470).

p. 91, l. 36. *Archiflamyn*.—The Oxford English Dictionary, under flamen, writes that Geoffrey of Monmouth used archflamen and flamen to denote the two grades of alleged sacerdotal function-

aries in heathen Britain, whose place was afterwards taken by bishops and archbishops. Here, as in the variant quoted in our note to p. 88, l. 29, an ironical side-glance at the Roman hierarchy may be suspected. The words are not in William of Tripoli.

p. 92, l. 2. *La ellec*, etc.—Sir G. Warner gives the Arabic as: Lâ ilâh illâ illâh, Muhammad rasûl allâh. The formula is from William of Tripoli.

p. 92, l. 6. *here lettres*.—Sir G. Warner: This alphabet is found in the *Cosmographia* of Aethicus . . . it has strong affinities with the Slavonic alphabet known as Glagolitic.—According to Gaster (see note to p. 13, l. 12), many Medieval heresies were of East-European or Slavonic origin. See *Introd.*, pp. 21–22.

p. 92, l. 12. *þorn* + *zogh*.—H.: nous auons en nostre parleure en Engleterre deux lettres pluis qils nount en lour a b c, cest assauoir þ et z, qi sont appelez thorn et zogh. If, as the present editor believes, d'Outremeuse wrote the *Manderille*, he would have learned the names and shapes of those two letters from a traveller, possibly from the English doctor Sir John Mandeville.

p. 95, l. 4. *the more* + *the less*.—H.: la moindre, *i. e.* Cairo. Babylon the Great was in Mesopotamia.

p. 95, l. 9. *.iiij. flodes*.—Only three are named.

p. 95, l. 12. *Persye*.—Ausfeld points to the form Persis (Persidis) as the name of a town [Persepolis?] (*Alex. Rom.*, 1907, p. 70).

p. 95, l. 17. *the grete see*.—A term applied to the Euxine in the Middle Ages (Sir G. Warner). See note to p. 170, l. 9.

p. 95, l. 21. *Thamy*.—The Tanaïs or Don.

p. 95, l. 23. *Albanye*.—Vincent de Beauvais: Albania est a colore populi nuncupata, eo quod albo crine nascantur. Haec ab oriente sub mari Caspio surgens, per ora oceani septentrionalis usque ad Maeotides paludes per deserta et inculta extenditur. Huic terrae canes ingentes sunt, tantaeque feritatis, ut tauros premant, leones perimant (*Sp. Hist.*, l. I., c. lxix., p. 26 of 1624 edition). According to a footnote to Dan. de Thaurisio's *Responsio ad errores impositos Hermenis* (ed. 1906, p. 593), the country of the Albanians, or Aghouans, comprises three parts: Armenia, Shirvan and Azerbeidjian.

p. 96, l. 3. *the see more high þan the lond*.—Jean d'Outremeuse, *Miroir des Histoires*: Libe . . . la mere y est asseis plus grant et plus hault qui n'est la terre; et se soy sourtient dedens ses metes

en teile manere, qu'ill ne chiet et ne gote sour la terre (Vol. I., 1864, p. 295). The fourteenth-century version of the *Chevalier au Cygne* places the high sea near Paradise :

Et puis le haulte mer qui paradix costie,
Et la mist Dieu Adam et Eve son amie.
(Vol. III., 1854, ll. 21769-21770.)

Compare Dante's hill of Paradise and Purgatory, arising in the midst of the Antipodean sea like Mandeville's mountayne, l. 6, of p. 96 (John of Hildesheim, ed. 1878, p. 30).

p. 96, l. 20. *Pountz*, Pontus Euxinus or the Black Sea. Here d'Outremeuse begins to follow friar Odoric's account of his travels in the East.

p. 96, l. 23. *Quicumque vlt*, the first words of the Athanasian Creed, which is not now believed to be by Athanasius. The story of his quarrel with the Pope, described by Sir G. Warner as highly fanciful, really contains one more attack upon the Papacy.

p. 97, l. 7. *old castell*.—Brussels 10420-5: j e chastel anchien dont les meurs sont pres tous couers de eder que nous appelons ivy et siet sur vne roche, *i. e.* an old castle, the walls of which are nearly all covered with ivy, which we call [in English] ivy, and which stands on a rock. The fiction of an English authorship is again supported by the introduction of an English word.

p. 97, l. 9. *Layays*.—Laias, modern Laiazzo, Pharsipée, modern Perschembé, and Cruk, modern Korgho or Guiaourkeni, all lie in Cilicia, or Little Armenia, on the Mediterranean coast, right away from Trebizond on the Black Sea. Hayton of Armenia, an author familiar to d'Outremeuse, had been a lord of Cruk.

p. 97, l. 13. *lady of fayrye*.—The lady Melior, sister of Melusine, in the romance of that name, written down 1387, after d'Outremeuse had finished the *Mandeville*, and edited in 1891, for the E.E.T.S., by A. K. Donald.

p. 98, l. 4. *sone of a pore man*.—This part of the tale is not included in the romance of *Melusine*, nor is the knyght of the temple of l. 10.

p. 98, l. 21. *Artyroun*.—Odoric: Et de la m'entournay en Armenie la grant qui a nom Artiron. Ceste cité est moult bonne et riche et seroit encore plus se ne feussent l'artre et Sarrazin qui la ont destruite car on y treuve encore pain et char et tous autres vivres en tres grant habondance fors de vins et de fruit. Ceste cité est moult froide car les gens dient qu'elle sciet au plus hault

terroir qui soit aujourd'hui habité. En ceste cité a moult bonnes eaues, et est la cause car cestes eaues du fleuve de Eufirates qui cuert a vne journée pres de ceste cité a my voye de Trapesonde et la cité de Thoris (ed. Cordier, 1891, pp. 5-6).

p. 98, l. 24. *pat maketh gret cold*.—H.: et si fait grant froide, *i. e.* it is very cold. Gallicism.

p. 98, l. 27. *a iorneye besyde pat cytee*.—H.: a vne iournee pres de celle cite, *i. e.* a day's travelling from that city. Mis-translation.

p. 98, l. 28. *vnder erthe*.—This marvel is not in Odoric. It is a duplicate of what d'Oultremeuse had written about the Nile (p. 28, l. 10).

p. 98, l. 29. *resorteth*.—H.: resourt, *i. e.* rises again, from sourdre. Mistranslation.

p. 98, l. 31. *Sabissocolle*.—Odoric: Sabissa colloasseis, explained by Cordier as Hassan-kaleh, east of Erzerum (pp. 6 and 15).

p. 98, l. 32. *Ararath*.—Vincent de Beauvais, *Sp. Nat.*, l. VI., c. xxi., col. 383 of 1524 ed.: Ararat est mons Armeniae, in quo Arcam historiae post diluvium resedisse testantur, unde et usque hodie ibidem lignorum eius videntur vestigia (from Isidore).

p. 98, l. 33. *Tunez*.—Brussels 10420-5: chano. Cordier quotes from Charlin I, p. 219: Ce mont [Ararat] a encore deux autres noms dans les livres persans, savoir Cou-nouh, c.à.d. Mont-Noé, et Sahet-toppus, c.à.d. heureuse butte. Sir I. Gollanez drew my attention to the identity of the first component with the Persian word koh = mountain, *e. g.* in Koh-i-Noor = mountain of light. Daniel de Thaurisio calls Ararat mons Noe. His commentators summarise the legend of a monk James, who tries to ascend to the top, but falls asleep on the way, and finds himself at his starting-point again when he awakes. After several fruitless attempts, an angel tells him that God takes pity on him and gives him a piece of the ark, which was first preserved in St. James's monastery, and is now at Etchmiadzin (Dan. de Th., 1906, p. 592).—Prof. C. F. Brown quotes from Cleanness:

On þe mounte of Mararach of Armene hills,
 þat oþer-wayez on ebrv hit hat þe thanes.
 (ll. 417-8, quoted in *Author of Pearl*, 1904.)

The author of Cleanness probably followed the *Maunderille*, while d'Oultremeuse may have obtained his Persian word from some

Jewish source, oral or written (John of Hildesheim, ed. 1878, p. 26).

p. 99, l. 4. *nouper somer ne wynter*.—H.: et en estee et en yuer, i. e. both in summer and in winter.

p. 99, l. 8. *of the montayne*.—Here the French MSS. insert the legend of the monk as in ll. 10–20.

Ibid. *Dayne*.—Sir G. Warner: The ruins of Ani, once the capital of Armenia, are about sixty miles north-west of Ararat, near Kars. Its thousand churches are mentioned by Rubruk in 1253 as then existing (p. 389); but the whole city was destroyed by earthquake in 1319 (St. Martin, *Mém. sur l'Arménie*, 1818, I., pp. 111–114).

p. 99, l. 9. *Any* is a mere duplicate of *Dayne*, according to d'Oultremeuse's familiar method.

p. 99, l. 21. *Thauriso*.—Odoric: Thoris . . . jadis ot nom Faxis autres dient Sussis (ed. Cordier, 1891, p. 19).

p. 99, l. 37. *gode ryueres*.—Odoric only mentions good water. D'Oultremeuse adds the rivers and ships!

p. 100, l. 2. *Cussak*.—Odoric: . . . cité des trois roys. . . . Et appelle on ceste cité de Cassan, cité royal de grant honneur, mais Tartre l'ont moult destruite. Cordier hesitates between Qaschân, three days from Ispahân and four from Ardistan and Sawah = Saba, mentioned in Marco Polo and lying between Soldania and Yezd (ed. 1891, pp. 41–42).

p. 100, l. 9. *Geth*.—Sir G. Warner hesitates between Yezd and a place immediately to the north of Ispahan, now called Gez.

p. 100, l. 10. *gravely see*.—Mentioned again as in Prester John's land on p. 181, ll. 19–29.

p. 100, l. 12. *clepen flossch pere Dabago*, etc.—Brussels 10420–5: La appellent ilz la char dalbago et le vin vappe. So in B. 11141. H. has Dabago and Vapa. Sir G. Warner, following the Egerton MS., which omits all mention of wine and meat, tries to interpret these two words as place names. But vappa is only the Latin for flat wine, as in Massinger's *Believe as you list*:

. Your viper wine,
So much in practice with grey-bearded gallants,
But vappa to the nectar of her lips.

(Act IV, Scene 1.)

As for dalbago, it bears some resemblance to albacore, explained in the Oxford English Dictionary as meaning a certain fish, and

derived from Arabic al + bukr, pl. bakārat, a young camel, a heifer.

p. 100, l. 17. *Cornaa*.—Cordier's *Odoric* has seven variants, and identifies the site with Istakhr, the ancient Persepolis (pp. 49–50), where Yule notes a modern name, Kinara.

p. 100, l. 23. *lettres of Persaynes*.—The French texts and Egerton give another alphabet here. Sir G. Warner identifies it as “given by J. G. Eccard, *De origine Germanorum libri duo*, 1750, pl. IV., p. 192, from an unspecified MS. at Ratisbon, said to be of the eleventh century. It there professes to be Chaldaic. This MS. also contains six other alphabets; and it is significant that among them, in addition to the Hebrew, is included the so-called Egyptian alphabet of Mandeville.”

p. 100, l. 29. *Sweze*.—Sueta in Eugesippus (p. 994) lies below Damascus.

Ibid. *Theman*, also in Eugesippus.

p. 101, l. 1. *Are of Gosra*.—Brussels 10420–5: are de bosra. Sir G. Warner: For the account of Job, identified with “Jobab the son of Zerah of Bozrah” (Gen. xxxvi. 33), see Isidore, *De ortu et obitu Patrum*, cap. 24 (Migne, lxxxiii., 136).

p. 101, l. 5. *after his lawe*.—A hint that one religion is as good (or as bad) as another. John of Hildesheim writes that it is a moot point among the Jews how the Lord could praise Job, though he was but a Gentile (ed. Köpke, 1878, p. 10).

p. 101, l. 9. *to heere estate*.—H.: et a hauteesse de rechief, *i. e.* and to high estate again. Mistranslation.

p. 101, l. 15. *Manna*.—Odoric: La treuve on le manne meilleur et en plus grant habondance que en nulle partie du monde (p. 59–60). The rest is from Vincent de Beauvais, *Spec. Nat.*, 1624, l. IV., cc. lxxxiv.–lxxxv.: Manna est ros cadens super lapidem aut arborem et fit duleis et coagulatur, sicut mel . . . visum acuit, pulmone confert, et renibus ac vesicæ. . . . Et est bonum stomacho et epati . . . laxat ventrem . . . habet autem virtutem depurandi et mundificandi sanguinem (col. 285–286).

p. 101, l. 20. *congeleth*.—H.: se coagule = coagulates.

p. 101, l. 25. *Caldée*.—Odoric: De la vins en Caldée, qui est uns grans royaume. Si passai par la terre de Babel qui est à iiii. journées près de Caldée. En ceste Caldée ont leur propre langage des gens du pays (p. 63).

p. 101, l. 26. *gret in sowynnye*.—This praise of the Chaldaean language is not in Odoric. No source has been traced for it.

p. 101, l. 31. *In pat reme*, etc.—H.: En le roialme de Caldée sont ly hommes belles et vont mult noblement parez ouesqez crenechiez dorrez, et lour draps auxi sont aoernez des orfraies et des grossez perlez et de pieres precieuses mult noblement. Similarly, the two Brussels MSS. Meaning: In the kingdom of Chaldea, men are fair and go most nobly arrayed, with gilded head-dresses, and their garments also are adorned with orphreys and large pearls and precious stones very nobly. The Englisher has not translated *couvre-chefs*, *i. e.* coverchiefs, kerchiefs. Odoric: Les hommes y sont beaux et les femmes laides. La vont les hommes aournez ainsy que cy vont nos femmes et portent sur leurs chiefs d'or clos et chapeaux de perles (p. 63).

p. 101, l. 35. *large wyle*.—The French original has only large, which the Englisher preserves along with its proper equivalent: wide.

p. 102, l. 4. *Hur*.—Jean d'Outremeuse, *Miroir des Histoires*: Tharé le pere Abraham le patriarche . . . vient . . . demoreir en la terre de Caldée, en une citeit e'on nommoit Hur, qui est a dire en franchois Feu. . . . Astoit roy de Asserie Nynus, liqueis fondat en sa terre marchissant à la thour de Babel, une mult belle citeit . . . Nynyve (Vol. I., 1864, p. 10). The ultimate source is Gen. xi. 27–xii. 6.

p. 102, l. 22. *here after*.—Both the Brussels MSS. and some of those used by Sir G. Warner here insert an alphabet, not recognisable to that learned palaeographer.

p. 102, l. 23. *Amazoyne*.—The story of the Amazons is an episode of the Medieval epic cycle of Alexander. Dr. Bovenschen refers especially to the *Historia de preliis* of the archpriest Leo. The French romance of *Alexander* and Gautier de Châtillon's (*alias* Gautier de Lille's) Latin poem of *Alexandreis* are a more likely source.

p. 102, l. 26. *wommen wil not suffre no men*.—Bovenschen (p. 279) quotes the Letter of Prester John, ed. Zarneke: Mariti praedictarum mulierum non morantur eum eis nec audent ad eas venire nisi statim vellent mori. Statutum est enim, quod quicumque vir intraverit praedictam insulam ipso die morietur.

p. 102, l. 30. *Colepeus*.—Vincent de Beauvais, *Spec. Hist.*: Duo reges juvenes Ylinos et Scolopitus . . . per insidias trucidantur; quorum uxores, arma sumentes, viros, qui domi remanserant, interficiunt: tunc armis pace quaesita finitimorum concubitus ineunt. Mares, qui nascebantur, interficiunt, virgines reservant,

quas non lanificio, sed armis et equis et venationibus assuefaciunt inuistis infantium dexteris mammis, ne sagittarum ictus impeditur. His duae fuere reginae, Marthesia et Lampeto vicissim terminos defendentes (*Spec. Hist.*, l. I., c. xvi., p. 36, ed. 1624).

p. 102, l. 33. *as creatures out of wytt*.—H.: come desesperez.

p. 103, l. 3. *male scholde duell*.—H.: ne qenfant madl fuist norry entre elles.

p. 103, l. 5. *pei dracen hem*.—Gautier de Châtillon narrates the loves of Alexander and the queen of the Amazons, named Thalestris:

... Visendi succensa cupidine regis
Gentis Amazoniae venit regina Thalestris
Castraque virginibus subiit comitata ducentis.

Laeva papilla manet et conservatur adultis,
Cuius laete infans sexus muliebris alatur.
Non intacta manet, sed aduritur altera, lentos
Promptius ut tendant arcus.

Se venisse refert, ut pleno ventre regressa
Communem pariat cum tanto principe prolem

... Fuerit si femina partu
Prodit, maternis potietur filia regnis:
Si mas exstiterit patri reddetur alendus.

... tandem pro munere noctem
Ter deciesque tulit.

(*Alexandreis*, ed. Mueldener, 1863, l. VIII., ll. 8-47, pp. 173-174.)

The distinction made between aristocratic girls, who lose the left breast, and the infantry, who lose the right, seems a characteristic duplication, imagined by d'Outremeuse.

p. 103, l. 29. *Tarmegyte*.—Sir G. Warner refers to Brun. Latini, who locates Termegite east of the Caspian (l. 4. 123, p. 158). He identifies it with Alexandria Margiana, now Merv, the foundation of which is attributed also to Seleucus.

p. 103, l. 36. *est partie t in the meridionall partie*.—Isidore: Duae sunt autem Aethiopiae, una circa solis ortum, altera circa occasum in Mauretania (*Etym.* XIV. 5, 16-17, quoted by Boven-schen). Isidore's west becomes the *Manderiville's* south through carelessness.

p. 104, l. 4. *a well*.—Honorius d'Autun: Apud quos [Garamantes] est fons tam frigidus diebus, ut non bibatur; tam fervidus

noctibus, ut non tangatur (*Imago Mundi*, Migne, 172, l. 1., c. xxxiii.). Vincent de Beauvais: fons qui friget calore diei, et calet frigore noctis (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XXXII., c. xv., 1524).—Jean d'Outremeuse's *Miroir des Histoires* improves upon this: illi at une fontaine en Egypte mult merveilheux qui chandelles esprise estindent, et les estintes respresent (Vol. I., 1864, p. 294). In the Arthurian romances, the Duke of Bellegarde having struck off King Lancelot's head, it falls into the brook. When the Duke dips his hand into the water, which had been very cold, it begins to boil with such violence, that he hardly has time to withdraw his fingers, which are burning to coal (P. Paris: *Romans de la Table Ronde*, I., 1868, p. 351).

p. 104, l. 16. *folk pat han but o foot*.—Vincent de Beauvais: Legimus Monosculos quoque ibi [in India] nasci, singulis cruribus et singulari pernecitate, qui ubi defendi se velint a calore, resupinati plantarum suarum magnitudine inumbrentur (*Spec. Hist.*, l. I., c. xciii., p. 34, ed. 1624).

p. 104, l. 20. *pei ben all zalowe*.—H.: ils sont totes chanuz, *i.e.* white-haired. Can the Englisher have read jaune? Mis-translation.

p. 104, l. 21. *pat zalowness turneth*, etc.—H.: ils ont les cheueux touz noirs. The Englisher seems to have mixed up cheuen and chenu.—Vincent de Beauvais: Apud Ctesiam legitur feminas semel parere, natosque canos illico fieri. Esse rursum gentem alteram, quae in iuventa cana sit, in senectute nigrescat, ultra aevi nostri terminos perennantem (*Spec. Hist.*, l. I., c. xciii., p. 34, ed. 1624).

p. 104, l. 26. *Emlak*.—H.: Euilae, *i.e.* the Havilah of Gen. ii. 11.

p. 104, l. 31. *the water becometh Cristall*. Vincent de Beauvais: Traditur, quod sit [chrySTALLUS] nix glacie durata per annos (*Spec. Nat.* l. VIII., c. lxii., col. 525, ed. 1524).

p. 104, l. 33. *zalow Cristall*, etc.—H.: cristal ianuastre trehaut a colour doile, *i.e.* yellowish crystal, the colour of which is like that of oil. Mistranslation.

p. 105, l. 1. *Arabye*.—Vincent de Beauvais has a similar list of four kinds of diamond: Indian, Arabic, Macedonian and Cyprian (*Spec. Nat.*, l. VIII., c. xl., col. 514, ed. 1624).

p. 105, l. 7. *out of gold*.—Vincent de Beauvais: In metallis repertus est auri modo, nec nasci videbatur nisi in auro (*Spec. Nat.*, l. VIII., c. xxxix., col. 513, ed. 1624).

p. 105, l. 19. *male & female*.—Sir G. Warner quotes from a Lapidary edited by Pannier, *Les Lapidaires français*, 1882 :

Inde Arrabe est mere et mamele
 Dou dyamaunt, masle et femele.
 D'Ynde li brun d'uel coulor
 Sont li droit masle et li millor ;
 D'Arabe sont li blanc femeles,
 Bones sont, ne sont pas si beles.

(p. 283.)

Union pearls are begotten in that way according to Vincent de Beauvais : Naturaliter tamen aperit se contra rorem caeli, ipsumque in se recipit, et continet tanto tempore, quanto mulier foetum gestat in utero suo (*Spec. Nat.* l. VIII., c. cvii.).

p. 105, l. 20. *der of heuene*.—Vincent de Beauvais reports this of pearls, not of diamonds : Gignitur autem de caelesti rore, quem certo anni tempore conchae hauriunt (*Spec. Nat.*, l. VIII., c. lxxxi., col. 534).

p. 105, l. 22. *I have often tymes assayed*.—Probably a hit at the alchemists.

p. 105, l. 26. *congeleth*.—H. : se congree et fait et soy engrosse, *i. e.* joins and acts and grows pregnant. Mistranslation.

p. 105, l. 30. *on his left syde*.—Vincent de Beauvais : gestatus in lacerto sinistro (*Spec. Nat.*, l. VIII., c. xxxix., col. 513).

p. 105, l. 31. *the strengthe of here growynge*.—H. : la force de lour naissance vient deuers septentrion, *i. e.* the strength of their nativity comes from the North. Mistranslation.

p. 105, l. 33. *& the left partie of man is*, etc.—H. : la sinistre partie de homme, quant il tourne sa face vers orient, *i. e.* the North is on the left side of man when he faces East (as Medieval maps are oriented).

p. 106, l. 2. *hardyness*.—Vincent de Beauvais : Adamas fortem facit hominem contra hostem, somnia vana repellit, venenum fugat et prodit, fertur enim sudore madere si venenum adhibeatur prope, prodest lunaticis, ac daemone repletis. Ex contactu etiam prodesse dicitur insanis (*Spec. Nat.*, l. VIII., c. xxxix., col. 514, ed. 1624).

p. 106, l. 10. *sorwe & mischance*.—H. : luy sortilegies ou ly enchantementz, *i. e.* those bewitchings and enchantments. Mistranslation.

p. 106, l. 20. *violastres*.—Godefroy mentions violat, as a medicine or syrup made of violets. Egerton : of violet colour.

p. 106, l. 33. *I tarye my matere*.—H. : ieo proloigne ma matiere

p. 107, l. 14. *the ademon droweth not the nelle*.—Vincent de Beauvais: [Adamas] cum magnete lapide dissidet intantum ut juxta positus ferrum non patiatür trahi a magnete, aut (si admotus magnes ferrum comprehenderit) rapiat atque auferat (*Spec. Nat.*, l. VIII., c. xxxix., col. 513, ed. 1624).

p. 107, l. 24. *Eles of .xxx. fote long*.—Medieval geographers and romancers place these in the Ganges. Sir G. Warner refers to the Romance of Alexander in Weber's *Metrical Romances* (1810, l., p. 202); Bovenschen to Honorius, l. 12, etc.

p. 107, l. 26. *.v. M. Hes*.—Vincent de Beauvais: In India traduntur fuisse quinque millia oppiderum præcipua capacitate, populorum 9000. Diu etiam credita est tertia pars terrarum, nec mirum sit, vel de hominum, vel de urbium copia, cum soli Indi nunquam a natali solo recesserint (*Spec. Hist.*, l. l., c. lxiii., p. 24).

p. 107, l. 27. *pat men duellen in*.—H.: En Ynde et enuironn Ynde sont pluis de v. mil isles habitables, bones et grandes, sanz celles qui sont inhabitables; *i. e.* In and about India are over five thousand inhabitable isles, good and large, without those that are uninhabitable. Mistranslation.

p. 108, l. 3. *pei neuere gon out*.—Besides the preceding quotation from Vincent de Beauvais, this is stated in Alexander's last epistle to Didimus: quia mutare patriam vestram non valetis, laudatis (*Spec. Hist.*, l. IV., c. lxxi., p. 136, ed. 1624).

p. 108, l. 6. *firste clymat*.—Medieval geographers divided the inhabited part of the Northern hemisphere into seven climates, and both the Liégeois d'Outremeuse and the Englishman Mandeville lived in the seventh. Sir G. Warner quotes Barth. de Glanville: For, as Ptholomeus saythe, the moone maketh a man unstable, chaungeable and remeuynge aboute fro place to place (VIII., 29, 30 ff., 129, 131). In Roger Bacon's *Metaphysica*, ed. Steele, the house of Jupiter, the ninth, "est peregrinacionum atque itinerum," etc. The moon is the house of mendacity! (p. 49). D'Outremeuse's astronomical geography seems made up of ill-digested recollections.

p. 108, l. 22. *Crues*.—Here Odoric is followed again. One of the variants there for Hormuz is Ornez, the source for the *Mandeville's* distortion of the name (c. ix., p. 69 of Cordier's edition).

p. 108, l. 29. *oynementes*.—H.: oignement restrictif et refrigeratif. Such medical jokes may be adduced as arguments for the authorship of the English doctor Mandeville.

p. 108, l. 31. *in rygueres*.—Bovenschen, p. 285: the letter of Alexander to Aristotle, ed. Alexander Achillinus, 1516, reports that the people of Ormuz escape from the heat by spending the day in the water up to their chins.

p. 109, l. 1. *schippes withouten nayles*.—The *Manderille* appears to stand alone in explaining this method of shipbuilding from the vicinity of the loadstone rocks, placed by Vincent de Beauvais on the shore of the Indian Ocean (*Spec. Nat.*, viii., 21). They also appear in the romance of Ogier le Danois, dear to Jean d'Outremeuse (Child, *Popular Ballads*, I., 1882, p. 319); in *Huon de Borleaux* (E.E.T.S. 1882-4, p. 370); in *Herzog Ernst* (ed. Bartsch, p. cxlviii., etc.).

p. 109, l. 10. *Chana*.—Identified by Cordier with Marco Polo's Thana, now Thána or Tanna, in the island of Salsette and in the Presidency of Bombay (p. 89 of Cordier's *Oloric*).

p. 109, l. 13. *ouercomen it*.—Brussels, 10420-5: apeticie; Brussels 11141: apeticiee = modern rapetissée, made smaller. Mistranslation.

p. 109, l. 16. *worschiþe the sonne*.—In Vincent de Beauvais, St. Thomas of India, a favourite hero of d'Outremeuse's, is ordered to worship a golden statue of the sun (*Spec. Hist.*, l. IX., c. lxvi., p. 345, ed. 1624). Hayton writes of the Chinese: La creance de ceste gent est molt diverse, car aucuns croient es ydoles de metal, autres croient en le solail, autres en la lune, autres es esteiles, autres es natures, au feu, autres à l'ève, autres a arbres, autres a bues, por ce que laborent la terre dont il vivent; et aucuns ne ont point de loi, ne de creance, ains vivent come bestes (*Flor des Estoires*, ed. 1906, l. I., c. i., p. 121).

p. 109, l. 20. *symulacres t ydoles*.—Sir G. Warner and Bovenschen point to a similar distinction in Isidore, *Etym.*, VIII., xi., 4-14. But the *Manderille* seems more logical in contrasting natural and unnatural or monstrous images.

p. 109, l. 25. *.iiij. hedes, on of man*, etc.—H.: vne ymage a .iiii. testes, ou vn homme a teste dun chinal, etc. The French original opposes many-headed figures, like the ones seen in India, to those with heads of animals, as in Egypt. The Englisher collects the heads of several species on one trunk. Mistranslation.

p. 109, l. 28. *sum worthi man*.—Euhemerism is here carried so far as to justify idolatry.

p. 109, l. 31. *god of kynde*.—Haiton also tries to reconcile idolatry and monotheism: Et por ce que les habiteors de celes

contrees estoient touz ydolatres, les Tartars comeneierent aorer les ydoles ; mes tout ades confessoient le Deu immortel, plus grant que les autres (*Flor des Est.*, 1906, p. 157).

p. 110, l. 9. *the ox is þe moste holy best.*—Was d'Outremeuse thinking of the worship of the golden calf?

p. 110, l. 13. *god of an ox*, etc.—Odoric : Les gens de ce pais aourent une autre ydole laquelle ilz paignent la moitié homme et l'autre moitié beuf (p. 101).

p. 110, l. 20. *gode meetynge.*—These general remarks on omens and superstition have not been traced to any single source. Jacques de Vitry writes that some Orientals worship the first thing that they meet in the morning (Michaud, *Bibl. d. Cr.*, I., 1829, p. 170).

p. 110, l. 33. *foules of rarcyne.*—In the romance of the *Conquête de Jérusalem*, Godfrey of Bouillon with one arrow kills three birds of prey flying, and thus saves two white doves from death. The quarry fall

Delés la sinagoge Mahom et Tervagant.

The Franks rejoice, and the paynim foresee their downfall.

p. 111, l. 4. *enformed t taught.*—H. : abeuerez = abreuvés.

p. 111, l. 17. *Chana.*—After his apology for unbelievers, d'Outremeuse returns to Odoric.

p. 111, l. 19. *als grete as houndes.*—Rats of the size of a large mastiff occur in *Gulliver's Travels* (ed. G. R. Dennis, Bell, 1905, p. 95).

p. 111, l. 25. *Sarchee.*—Sir G. Warner suggests Panche, fourteen days' journey from Tana, in one MS. of Odoric, corresponding to Jourdain de Séverac's Paroth (Baroach), p. 90 of Cordier's *Odoric*.

p. 111, l. 28. *lomb.*—Odoric's Poliobum [Polumbum], p. 84, identified with modern Quilon, on the coast of Malabar. See below, note to p. 112, l. 36.

p. 111, l. 29. *Combar.*—Odoric : La province ou le poivre croist a nom Minibar, et en nulle partie du monde ne croist poivre fors en ce pays. La forest ou il croist a bien xviii. journées de long. En ceste forest a deux nobles citez : l'une a nom Flandrine et l'autre Singulir (p. 99).

p. 112, l. 7. *Long peper, blak peper t white peper.*—Vincent de Beauvais : quae cum primo flores producit, flores in unum reducuntur, et constringuntur in longum, fitque piper longum, quod

macropiper dicitur. Postea producunt interius parvos fructus, qui leucopiper, idest piper album dicuntur, quia albi sunt. Efficacius est piper nigrum (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XIV., c. lxiv., col. 1051, ed. 1624). Quod incorruptum ab igne, piper album (*ibid.*).

p. 112, l. 8. *Sorbotym*.—There is no evidence connecting this with the radical of sherbet, French sorbet.

p. 112, l. 9. *Fulfull*.—According to Sir G. Warner, the common Arabic name, given by medical writers, such as Matth. Silvaticus.

p. 112, l. 20. *serpentes*.—That snakes feed on white pepper is twice stated in Vincent de Beauvais (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XX., c. xiii., col. 1468, ed. 1624 and *Spec. Hist.*, l. IV., c. lviii., p. 133, ed. 1624), once in connection with the Alexandrian legend. That fires are lighted near the pepper forest is from Isidore (*Etym.*, XVII., viii., 8). The refutation seems d'Outremeuse's own invention.

p. 112, l. 29. *pei enoynten*.—H.: Mes ils se oignent des pee et les mains del iutz de lymons et dautres choses, dontz ly serpentz doutent le odour, *i. e.* but they anoint their feet and hands with lime-juice and with other things, of which the snakes fear the smell. Instead of limon = lime, the Engliſher understood limace = slug. Mistranſlation.

p. 112, l. 36. *Polombe*.—Variants in Cordier's *Odoric*: Ploubir, Palombo, Colonbio, Plombum. Explained as Quilon, on the Malabar coast, called Koulam in Arabic (ed. 1891, p. 100).

p. 113, l. 1. *mountayne*.—Ogier the Dane visits this country according to Jean d'Outremeuse's *Miroir des Histoires*: he finds a well springing under two fir-trees, which has the flavour of all spices, and is called the fountain of Youth. He drinks from it with all his people. It cures all ills that men may feel or suffer, unless there be death in them. The further adventures of Ogier also resemble the narrative in the *Mandeville* (Vol. III., ed. 1873, p. 58). A different version of Ogier's experiences at the Well is summarised in Ward's *Catologue of Romances*, I., ed. 1883, p. 609. One of the cantos of the *Romance of Alexander*, edited by Michelant, 1846, is devoted to the Fontaine de Jouvence (pp. 347 ff.). Sir G. Warner refers to Huon de Bordeaux (p. 434 of the E.E.T.S. reprint).

p. 113, l. 16. *In pat lond*.—Odoric: Les gens de ce pais aourent un beuf pour dieu. Ce beuf ilz nourrissent six ans, etc. (pp. 100–101). To the close of the chapter Odoric is closely followed.

p. 113, l. 26. *Archiprothepapaton*.—The protopope, *πρωτοπαπᾶς*, is a chief priest in the Greek Church. Prester John's Letter (ed. Zarneke, p. 94) mentions the archiprotopapaten, in the accusative. Perhaps d'Outremeuse here intended a satire against the papacy.

p. 114, l. 4. *brennen his body*.—In Jacques de Vitry, Didymus the Indian blames Alexander for burning dead bodies, instead of restoring them to the soil that gave them birth (*Historia orientalis*, ed. 1597, p. 205).

p. 114, l. 6. *pei brenne hire*.—Vincent de Beauvais: Apud eos [viz. the Indians] lex est, ut uxor charissima cum defuncto marito cremetur. Haec ergo contendunt inter se de morte viri, et ambitio summa certantium est testimonium castitatis digna morte decerni (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XXXI., c. exxxi., col. 2396, ed. 1524).

p. 114, l. 18. *wommen dryuken*.—Odoric: Les femmes y boivent vin [viz. in Polombe] et non li homme. Item les femmes y font rere leur barbe et non li homme. Cordier traces this nonsense to a misinterpreted Latin text: mulieres etiam faciunt sibi abradi frontem et barbam homines non (ed. 1891, p. 102).

p. 114, l. 22. *Mabarom*.—Odoric: Mobarum. Cordier: the Coromandel coast. Arabic: Ma'bar (p. 117).

p. 115, l. 2. *in a vessell*.—The correct French reading probably is that of two variants given by Sir G. Warner: S, dehors le vessel; G, dehors du vaissel, *i. e.* outside his shrine. Brussels 10420-5 is corrupt: a dehoirs dun vaisseau. The Englisher mistranslates. The sources for the judgments delivered by the dead saint's hand are, according to Sir G. Warner and Bovenschen, Gervase of Tilbury, *Otia imperialia* (III., xxvi., p. 969), where the hand reaches the host to the faithful, and withholds it from the unworthy. John of Hildesheim denies that such a miracle takes place among the Nestorian heretics (1878, p. 32). The romance of the Knight with the Swan relates that an image of orpiment, standing in the Emperor's hall at Nimegue, raises its finger against him who judges unjustly:

Qui fu faite par art, en tel devisement,
Qu'a celui tent son doit qui fait faus jugement.
(éd. Hippeau, Vol. I., 1874, p. 116.)

Two ladies of romance, the fair maid of Astolat (Malory, xviii., 20) and the lady Blanche fleur, similarly move their hands after death: the former hands a letter to King Arthur (Rhys, *Stud.*

Arth. Leg., 1891, p. 149), the latter always points towards the sun (A. Thijm, *Karolingische Verhalen*, 1851, p. 337, following Diederik van Assenede). Jean d'Outremeuse, *Miroir des Histoires*, Vol. III., 1873, p. 59, agrees exactly with the *Mandeville*.

p. 115, l. 26. *seynt Iames*.—H.: seint lake de Galice. The Englisher imagined that Galicia was a place away from St. James of Compostella. Mistranslation.

p. 117, l. 12. *.cc. or .ccc. persones*.—Odoric only states that five hundred die every year. He often expresses abhorrence of the heathen practices which he notes briefly instead of expatiating upon them with the cynical zest of the *Mandeville*.

p. 117, l. 31. *ledynge him*.—H.: vont deuant lydole a grant feste menant. Et cil qi se doit occire ad vn cotel, etc., *i. e.* they go before the idol, showing great joy. And he that will slay himself has a knife, etc. Mistranslation.

p. 118, l. 18. *Lamary*.—Odoric: De Pisle Lamori, *alias* Samorj. Cordier: one of the kingdoms in the island of Sumatra, near Atjeh. Arab travellers often mention this kingdom (p. 136).

p. 118, l. 20. *scornen*.—Odoric was mocked in this way, but he does not indulge in an argument about Adamism, which was a common topic of orthodox and unorthodox thinkers of the Middle Ages. Vincent de Beauvais (*Spec. Nat.* l. XXX. c. lxxv., col. 2271, ed. 1624) takes the side of the Church.

p. 118, l. 26. *beleuen in god*.—Odoric has no such praise of the Adamites.

p. 118, l. 29. *pei synnen*.—John of Hildesheim says the same about the Nicolaïte heretics (ed. 1878, p. 27). Jacques de Vitry accuses medical men of advising sin: sub obtentu purgationis consulunt fornicari (Funk, *Jacob von Vitry*, 1909, p. 72); cf. Jundt, *Hist. Panth.*, 1875, p. 112. Such attacks against monogamy were common in the Netherlands (Baluze, *Miscell.*, II., 1761, *Errores . . . hominum intelligentiae*, p. 289).

p. 119, l. 14. *cursed custom*.—This seems to imply tacit approval of the community of wives and goods.

p. 119, l. 27. *Antartyk*.—This star seems to have been invented by d'Outremeuse by his familiar process of turning the world topsy turvy. Vincent de Beauvais quotes St. Augustine about the roundness of the earth (*Spec. Nat.*, l. VI., c. x., col. 376, ed. 1524). He also knows that a star cannot be visible from all quarters of the globe: *stellae, quae in uno climate apparent, in alio non apparent*. Canopes stella quae ab Aegyptijs videtur, a

nobis non videtur, quod nunquam contingeret si terra plana esset (*ib.* c. IX., col. 375).

p. 119, l. 31. *the lodesterre . . . appereth not*.—Odoric says he lost sight of the North Star in Lanory (p. 135).

p. 120, l. 3. *after pat I haue seyn*.—So H.: solone ceo qe iay ven. The two Brussels MSS. are much more positive: selon ce que jay essaïet, *i. e.* according to my experience.

p. 120, l. 16. *I haue gon*.—This seems an echo of the *Directorium* of Pseudo-Brocardus: transiens infallibiliter sub et ultra tropicuum estiualem, sub equinoctio me inveni, quod probatur ex tribus demonstrativis evidenciis argumentis. Primo quod in loco illo in quantitate diei ac noctis, nullo anni tempore, alicujus hore seu eciam momenti sensibilis differencia notabatur; secundo quod existente sole in primo gradu Arietis et Libre, erat ibi in meridie umbra recta; tercio quod stellas, que circumcunt propinquius polos mundi videbam in aliqua parte noctis istas, scilicet ad aquilonem, illas autem ad meridiem super circulum orizontis simul et equaliter elevatas. Obmitto causa brevitatis multa alia argumenta, licet essent auribus curiosa. Processi ultra versus meridiem ad locum ubi polum nostrum articum non videbam, et videbam polum antarcticum circa xxiiii. gradibus elevatum. Ab isto loco ulterius non processi (ed. Kohler, 1906, pp. 383–384).

p. 121, l. 16. *feet azen feet*.—Vincent de Beauvais (*Spec. Nat.*, l. VI., c. x., col. 376) admits Antipodes, but denies the possibility of circumnavigation.

p. 121, l. 35. *schereth no schadwe*.—Sir G. Warner refers to Aenulf's pilgrimage (ed. Tobler, I., 13), where a column in the centre of Jerusalem is said to cast no shadow in the summer solstice. Honorius writes that no shadow appears in summer in Meroe in Egypt (*Im. Mund.*, l. I., c. xxxvi., col. 131; Migne 172). Vincent de Beauvais writes that the Arabs have those shadows on the left, that we have on the right (*Spec. Hist.*, l. I., ch. lxxxviii).

p. 122, l. 11. *befallen*.—H.: Et par ceo mad il sotenuz meinfoithe dune chose qe ieo oy conter, *i. e.* and therefore I have often remembered a thing that I have heard told. Mistranslation.

p. 122, l. 16. *fowl an yle*.—In the fourteenth-century version of the *Knight of the Swan* by the anonymous author of Liège whom we believe to be d'Outremeuse himself, Ponce and the abbot of St. Trond, travelling from Jerusalem, mistake their way and instead of returning to Ponthieu or Flanders, they arrive at a new forest of

Ardennes and a new castle of Bonillon (*Hist. Litt.*, Vol. XXV., p. 516).

p. 122, l. 17. *callynge on oxen*.—H.: toucher les boeufs *i.e.* goad the oxen. Mistranslation.

p. 123, l. 10. *qui suspendi*.—Job, xxvi. 7: He stretcheth out the north over the empty place, and hangeth the earth upon nothing. Honorius quotes this: Qui appendit terram super nihilum (Vincent de Beauvais, *Spec. Nat.*, l. VI., c. iv., col. 372, ed. 1524).

p. 123, l. 14. *For, for the gretness*, etc.—H.: Qar, par la grandeur de la terre et de la mer, homme purroit aler par mil et mil autres voies, qe nul nadresseroit parfitement vers les parties dont il mouverout, si ceo nestoit daenture on de droit grace de Dieu, *i.e.* for, on account of the extent of the earth and sea, one might go thousands of other ways, without ever making straight for the country that one came from, except through luck or through the grace of God.

p. 124, l. 4. *D.C. furlonges*.—H.: stadies. The Englisher used furlong for stadium, which the French text took over from Vincent de Beauvais. The length of a stadium is given as 125 paces, or 606 ft. 9 in. English. Vincent gives seven hundred furlongs to a degree, while our Cotton MS. gives only six hundred on p. 124, l. 4. Similarly H.: Et sachez qe solonc lez autours dastronomie de. stadies de terre respondent a vn degre du firmament, cez sont iiij. ^{xx} vii. et iiij. stadies. Ore soi ceo si multipliez par cccxl. foithes, cez serront xxxi. mil de. miles, chescune de viij. stadies, solonc miles de nostre pais. Vincent de Beauvais: Comperta igitur magnitudine unius partis terrarum circulum terrae diffinivit: stadiorum ducentorum quinquaginta duorum millia, id est miliaria xxx. et unum milia et D. (*Spec. Nat.*, l. VI., c. xiii., ed. 1524, vol I., col. 378).

p. 124, l. 10. The Englisher follows H., which differs entirely from Brussels 10420-5 to the close of the chapter.

p. 124, l. 18. *not of the.vij.clymates*.—This contradicts p. 108, l. 14.

p. 124, l. 19. *betwene high*—H.: en trehant, *i.e.* drawing towards the roundness of the world. Mistranslation.

p. 124, l. 21. *lowe contree*.—Does d'Outremeuse mean Liège, and reckon it in the Low Countries? or does he mean England, as lying low, *i.e.* far to the west of Jerusalem?

p. 124, l. 25. *Sumobor*.—Odoric: Sinohora, Sumoltra, etc. Cordier: that kingdom in Sumatra which gave its name to the whole island (p. 154).

p. 125, l. 4. *Betemga*.—Cordier quotes Yule as spelling this Resengo and explaining it as Rejang, while himself tentatively suggests Bengkoelen, in the island of Sumatra (p. 159). Sir G. Warner thinks of Batang, south of Singapore.

p. 125, l. 16. *the notemuge bereth the maces*.—Vincent de Beauvais: Sunt autem cortices quidam qui reperiuntur circa nuces muscatas sicut circa avellanas (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XIV., c. liii.).

p. 125, l. 26. *ben all square*.—H.: ont vn quarren dor et vn autre dargent. Mistranslation.

p. 125, l. 29. *enlered*.—H.: enleuez, *i. e.* in relief. Odoric: entaillies, *i. e.* carved (p. 162).

p. 126, l. 6. *Pathen*.—H.: qest appelle Thalamassy, et en autre langage homme lappelle Paten. Odoric: Bien près de Fana (*i. e.* Java) est une autre isle qui a nom Natem (var. Panthen), autrement est nommée Calamasi (p. 173). Cordier: Bandjermasin, on the southern coast of Borneo (p. 177).

p. 126, l. 8. *beren mele*.—Odoric: En ce pays a arbres qui portent farine, et aucunes fois portent miel et aucunes fois vin. Et si y a plusieurs autres arbres qui portent venin le plus périlleux qui soit, etc. (p. 173).

p. 126, l. 11. *beren hony*.—The same joke occurs in accounts of the land of Cockayne. Poeschel quotes Ovid:

Flavaque de viridi stillabant ilice mella.

(*Met.*, I., 111, etc.)

and Horace, *Ode to Bacchus*:

. . . truncis lapsa cavis . . . mella.

(*Carm.*, II., xix., 9–12.)

(*Schlaraffenland*, in Paul u. Braune's *Beiträge*, 1878.)

p. 126, l. 11. *beren venym*.—H.: et des autres qi portent vin, et des autres qi portent venin. Sir G. Warner explains the wine as palm-wine, referring to Marco Polo (II., p. 274), and the poison as that of the upas tree.

p. 126, l. 13. *here propre leces*.—H.: de ses propres fiens. Odoric: Cest que cilz qui a pris de cest venin, il preigne fiente de l'homme, et la destrempe avec eaue et boive de celle eaue, il en garra (pp. 173–174). Two MSS., S. and G., give variant feuilles for fiente in Sir G. Warner's edition. The Englishier followed them.

p. 126, l. 16. *the Iewes*.—This is not in Odoric.

p. 126, l. 21. *beren wyn*.—See above, note to p. 126, l. 11. Sentement, *i. e.* scent.

p. 126, l. 22. *how the mele cometh*.—Odoric describes the process in nearly the same way, but without mentioning the mill, which is also missing from Cordier's description of the preparation of sago (p. 183).

p. 126, l. 32. *it schall neuere comen vp azen*.—Odoric : L'eau de ceste mer euert adès vers midj et se aucuns y cheoit jamais n'en pourroit estre resqueux ne trouvés (p. 175). Sir G. Warner explains this as referring to the strong currents of the Southern Ocean.

p. 126, l. 34. *cannes*.—Vincent de Beauvais quotes from Alexander's letter to Aristotle on India : flumen cuius ripam arundo pedum sexagenum vestiebat (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XII., c. lxvii.). The *Roman d'Alexandre* says :

d'ambes II pars la rive fu parereus li ros,
xxx. piés ot de haut et iii. toises de gros.

(éd. Michelant, 1846, p. 280, ll. 19-20.)

Sir G. Warner has traced the name Thaby to Brun. Latini (I. 4. 123, p. 158), who applies it to the reeds and to Solinus (50, § 2), who applies it to a sea.

p. 126, l. 37. *.iiij. quarteres of a furlong*.—H. : quatre arpents ou pluïs.

p. 127, l. 2. *precious stones*.—Odoric, p. 176. The stone was called bezoar or snakestone (Cordier, pp. 184-186).

p. 127, l. 6. *on vo partye*.—H. : par nul arme, *i. e.* by no weapon. Mistranslation.

p. 127, l. 16. *ne beren on to the erthe*.—H. : ne leuer haut de terre. Mistranslation.

p. 127, l. 17. *Calonak*.—Odoric : Campe, explained by Cordier as Tehampa, in the peninsula of Indo-China, conquered by Annam in 1471 (pp. 188-193). The form Calonak has not been explained.

p. 127, l. 19. *many wyfes*.—Expanded and exaggerated from Odoric : Le roy qui en ce pays regnoit quant je y fus, avoit bien CC. enfans, que fieux que filles : car il avoit pluseurs femmes espousées et grant plante de concubines (p. 187).

p. 127, l. 29. *.iiij. Mil Olifantz*.—Odoric gives the number of children as two hundred, that of tame elephants as 14,000 (p. 187). The reference to the use of elephants in wars may be from the Alexandrian or from the Crusading romances. Vincent de Beauvais, *Spec. Nat.*, l. XIX., cc. xxxviii.-l., on elephants, is not closely followed.

p. 128, l. 2. *Warkes*.—Brussels 10420-25 : varkes. The word is unexplained. Sir G. Warner suggests Isidore's barrus : "apud Indos autem [elephas] a voce Barrus vocatur," or the French vache, after the Latin luca bos.

p. 128, l. 4. *all manere of fissesches*.—Odoric is closely followed down to p. 128, l. 19.

p. 128, l. 18. *do reuerence*.—Isaiah, c. lxvi. v. 23 : And it shall come to pass, that . . . shall all flesh come to worship before me, saith the Lord. *Pseudo-Methodius* says that fishes will obey the Arab invaders of Christendom : . . . pisces mari natantia, etiam et aquis maris obaudient eis (ed. Sackur, 1898). In Jean d'Outremeuse's *Miroir des Histoires*, Adam is described as sitting in the waters of Jordan after the Fall and as saying to the water : "Je toy dis, aighe de Jordan, que tu moy weulhe condoleur, et vos assembleis deleis moy tous les noians qui asteis en fluis. O Jordan, ilh moy circuient, et si pleurent avec moy ! Ilh ne soy plandent mie, mais moy plandent, car ilh n'ont mie pechiez." Tantost vinrent toutes les biestes entour luy, et ensi estnt-ilh de cel heure sens moveir XVIII jours (Vol. I., 1864, p. 311).

p. 128, l. 21. *Crescite*, etc.—Not in Odoric. According to Gibbon, the saint, in the Magian [Zoroastrian] religion, is obliged to beget children, etc. (I., p. 201, ed. 1900). But the explanation may be d'Outremeuse's own.

p. 128, l. 36. *Snayles*.—Odoric : En ceste contrée vy je une lymace qui estoit si grande que ce estoit merveille. Elle estoit plus grande que le clochier Saint-Martin de Padue, se il feult ainsi tournez comme maison de lymace (p. 188). Cordier and all the commentators agree that Odoric meant a tortoise and that his authority for its size was literary. Vincent de Beauvais writes of the people of Taprobane : pastationibus delectantur, praesertimque testitudinum quarum superficie domus familiarum capaces operiunt (*Spec. Hist.*, l. I., c. lxxix., p. 28, ed. 1624). Sir G. Warner thinks Odoric may have seen an enormous sculptured turtle, and Cordier suggests a heap of shells mistaken for a single one (p. 195).

p. 129, l. 3. *white wormes*.—Sir G. Warner refers to Vincent de Beauvais (*Spec. Hist.*, I., 86) and to the *Ep. Alex.* (p. 56).

p. 129, l. 7. *And 3if a man*, etc.—Odoric : Quant aucuns homs meurt en ce pays on ensevelist sa femme avec lui, car ilz dient que drois est que elle demeure avec lui en l'autre siècle (p. 188).

p. 129, l. 12. *Caffolos*.—Brussels 10420-5 : . . . a nom kaffo. Les gens de ce pais, etc. The article became attached to the

preceding word, which seems the name of Caffa in the Crimea, mentioned by Hayton (ed. 1906, p. 162, fn. 1) as a Genoese trading centre.

p. 129, l. 13. *pei hangen hem*.—Vincent de Beauvais: Sybarini senes, quos dilexerunt, suspendunt in patibulo. Hyrcani volucris et canibus semivivos proiciunt, Caspi itidem bestiis mortuos. Scythae eos, qui a defunctis amati sunt, vivos infodiunt cum ossibus mortuorum. Caprij canibus ad hoc nutritis subiiciunt senes (*Sp. Nat.*, l. XXXI., c. exxix., col. 2394 of 1524 ed.).

p. 129, l. 14. *Angeles of god*.—This pious reason is invented by d'Outremeuse.

p. 129, l. 23. *Milke*.—Sir G. Warner guesses at Malacca or even Malay. He also refers to the "Malichu insula" of Pliny (VI. 175.—Warner's p. xxv.).

p. 129, l. 26. *Dieu*.—So in the French original, probably meant as a satire against the doctrine of transubstantiation. Egerton: *pare es na drink þat þai lufe so wele as mannes blude, and þat þai say es Godd*. The original Englisher missed the point, or chose to evade it.

p. 129, l. 30. *euery of hem . . . drynke of oþeres blood*.—Vincent de Beauvais writes of Scythians: *haustu mutui sanguinis foedus sanciant* (*Spec. Hist.*, I. 88).

p. 129, l. 36. *Tracoda*.—A name probably invented after the precious stone called *draconitis*, because taken from a dragon's brain; on p. 130, l. 8 it appears as *Tracodoun*. Brussels 10420-5: *tracodite*. The hissing cave-dwellers are Vincent de Beauvais' *Troglodytes*.

p. 130, l. 12. *Nacumera*.—Odoric: De l'isle Vacumeran, *alias* Nychoneran (p. 201). Cordier: Nicobar islands, perhaps Nancoury, one of their number (pp. 203-204).

p. 130, l. 15.—*Canopholos*.—The Cynocephali of ancient and Medieval geography and of Alexandrian and Crusading romances. The name is not in Odoric. (*Roman d'Alexandre*, éd. Michelant, 1846, pp. 319, 336.—Jean d'Outremeuse, *Miroir des Histoires*, I., 1864, p. 281.)

p. 130, l. 33. *whan þei chesen*.—Haiton: *et quando rex illius insulae debet coronari, lapidem illum manibus suis tenet, et sedens super equo circuit civitatem et tunc oboediunt sibi tamquam regi* (c. vi., quoted by Bovenschen).

p. 131, l. 2. *Cane of Cathay*.—From Haiton. Cordier's note, p. 218.

p. 131, l. 9. *Silha*.—Odoric : Sillam, *alias* Silan (p. 219). Odoric's text is closely adhered to.

p. 131, l. 33. *And for the vermyne*.—H. : Et pur le vermine qest dedeins ils se oignent les braz et les iambes del iuez de lymons, cest vn manere de fruit come pesches petites, *i. e.* And for the vermin that is within they anoint their arms and legs with the juice of limes, which are a kind of fruit like small peaches, etc. The Englisher mistranslated pêches = peaches, as pois = pease.

p. 132, l. 9. *gees pat han .ij. hedes*.—Hornbills.

p. 132, l. 10. *lyouns all white*.—Not in Odoric, but from the Alexandrian romances (*Rom. d'Alex.*, éd. Michelant, 1846, p. 288).

p. 132, l. 13. *the see is so high*.—Duplicate of p. 96, ll. 3-5.

p. 132, l. 20. *Dondun*.—Odoric : Dondim. Cordier : the Andaman Islands, described out of Odoric's imagination (pp. 237-239). Jean d'Outremeuse's *Miroir des Histoires* takes Ogier the Dane to Dondim : Puis vient Ogier a Dondine ou at des gens qui sont nomeis Quespois, et sont tuis agoyans et n'ont que une oeilli emy le front ; et ly une mangnoit l'autre : ly fis son pere, la feme son marit ; et y at des lyons blans comme nois ; si y at des gances ; ce sont oywes qui ont dois tiestes (Vol. III., 1873, p. 62).

p. 132, l. 22. *the sone [eteth] the fuder*.—While following Odoric, d'Outremeuse also agrees with the Alexandrian romances. The Persian guards called immortals are converted by Jacob van Maerlant into the people of Triballe, who live so long, that it is lawful for the son to kill his parents (*Alexander*, éd. Franck, 1882, p. lxi.).

p. 133, l. 6. *hondes vpon his mouth*.—H. : ly met vn pain sur la bouche, *i. e.* put a piece of cloth over his mouth. The Englisher read main = hand for pain = pannus = cloth. Mistranslation.

p. 133, l. 12. *And alle po*, etc.—Odoric : Tous les amis et parens du mort qui à le mengier ne sont point appellé en sont moult honteulz et se tiennent à moult villenez et vergondez (p. 238). D'Outremeuse reverses Odoric's statement.

p. 133, l. 19. *whan the flesch is tendre*, etc., as far as l. 25, missing in Odoric.

p. 133, l. 30. *geauntes*.—Odoric is abandoned and Medieval accounts of monsters, such as Vincent de Beauvais and the Alexandrian romances, are followed. The main source for monsters is *Spec. Hist.*, II., 92-93. The remoter sources are listed by Boven-schen, pp. 292-293.—Cyclopes eadem India gignit, dictos Cyclopes,

eo quod unum habere oculum in fronte media perhibentur (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XXXI., c. cxxvi., I., ed. 1524).

p. 133, l. 34. *non hedes*.—Leucanos in Lybia credunt truncos sine capite nasci, et os et oculos habere in pectore (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XXXI., c. cxxvii., col. 2393, ed. 1524).

p. 134, l. 2. *in here schuldres*.—Alios sine cervicibus gigni, oculos habentes in humeris (*ibid.*).

p. 134, l. 3 *face all platt*.—Aliae sine naribus, aequali totius oris planicie, informes habentes vultus (*ibid.*).

p. 134, l. 7. *the lippe above the mouth*.—Aliae labro *subteriori* (i. e. lower!) adeo prominenti, ut in solis ardoribus totam ex eo faciem contegant dormientes (*ibid.*). Brussels 10420-5 follows the Latin in mentioning the nether lip, while the Englisher follows H. : *dessour la bouche* = upper lip.

p. 134, l. 10. *to so meche*.—Brussels 10420-5 : *doxis foyx tant plus grans* = twice as large.

p. 134 l. 12. *lytyll round hole*.—Alijs concreta ora esse modico tantum foramine calamis avenarum pastus haurientes (Vincent, as in note to p. 133, l. 34).

p. 134, l. 13. *porgh a pipe or a penne*.—H. : *ouesqe vne tuel de plom ou daltre chose* = with the quill of a feather or of some other thing. Mistranslation.

p. 134, l. 14. *no touge*.—Nonnulli sine linguis esse dicuntur, inuicem pro sermonibus utentes nutu sive motu (Vincent, as above).

p. 134, l. 15. *hissyngye as a nedder*.—See note to p. 129, l. 36.

p. 134, l. 17. *as monkes dou*.—The stricter monastic orders, such as the Carthusians, are forbidden to speak, but allowed to express themselves by means of gestures. Brussels 10420-5 : *comme moines ou mowes ou nonains* = like monks or monkeys or nuns. This is anti-clerical.

p. 134, l. 18. *grete eres*.—Panothios [*παν-ώτης*] apud Scythiam esse ferunt tam diffusa magnitudine aurium, ut omne corpus ex eis contegant (Vincent, as above).

p. 134, l. 20. *hors feet*.—Hippopodes in Scythia sunt, humanam formam et equinos pedes habentes (*ibid.*).

p. 134, l. 22. *gon vpon hire hondes*.—Hirhabacitae in Aethiopia proni ut pecora ambulare dicuntur (*ibid.*).

p. 134, l. 26. *bothe man t womman*.—Vincent simply mentions the existence of hermaphrodites (c. cxxviii). D'Outremeuse's licentious imagination does the rest.

p. 134, l. 27. *but o pappie*.—See p. 103, ll. 11-16. Duplication.

p. 134, l. 33. *vpon here knees*.—Ultra hos et Riplaeum iugum regio est assiduè obsessa nivibus, ubi humani pedes flexi nisibus erurium, serpunt potiusquam incedunt, et pergendi usum lapsu magis destinant quam gressu (Vincent. as in note to p. 133, l. 34).

p. 135, l. 5. *Mancy*.—Odoric : Mangy, p. 245.—*yule the more*.—Odoric : la Haulte Inde, explained by Cordier as China, while Mangy is Southern China, p. 248.

p. 135, l. 15. *thygne berdes*.—Hayton writes of the Cathayans or Chinese : Et se trovent entre eaus meints beaus homes e fames, selonc luer nacion, mès touz ont les oïls petiz et ont poi de barbe (ed. 1906, p. 121).

p. 135, l. 21. *Albanye*. Not in Odoric. Duplicate from p. 95, l. 24.

p. 135, l. 22. *Latoryn*.—Odoric : Tesculan (p. 247) (Censcalan in Yule's edition). Cordier : Canton, called Sin Kilân by Muhammadan travellers (p. 256).

p. 135, l. 28. *white gees*.—The Guinea-goose or swan-goose, anser cygnoides.

p. 135, l. 29. *crest*.—H. : boce = bump. Mistranslation.

p. 136, l. 1. *gode cytees*.—This passage follows Odoric's description of Cartan, *alias* Catan (p. 263). Cordier : Zaïtoun (p. 268).

p. 136, l. 11. *beren white wolfe*.—Silk-fowl, Gallus lanatus.

p. 136, l. 12. *vmmaryed*.—Odoric : Les dames mariées y portent une corne sur leur chief et par celle corne recognoist-on les dames mariées des autres (265-266). This agrees with the original French *Manderille*. Mistranslation.

p. 136, l. 17. *loyres*.—The Middle French name of the otter, the use of which for catching fish is mentioned by Vincent de Beauvais (*Spec. Nat.*, XIX., 89.) Odoric (p. 266) describes fishing in Chinese rivers with tame cormorants. In his perplexity, the Englisher retained the French word, which he probably could not understand.

p. 136, l. 23. *Cassay*.—Odoric : Casay, *alias* Catusaie (299). Cordier explains that Hangchow is called the City of Heaven by mistake (p. 306).

p. 136, l. 27. *before euery gate*, etc.—H. : deuant chescun porte a .iiii. lieues ou .iiii. long ad ville ou cite bien grande, *i. e.* before each gate, at a distance of three or four leagues, there is a very large town or city. Mistranslation.

p. 137, l. 1. *Bigon*.—Cerdier cannot explain this word: he thinks it is Persian, and the ending *goun* marks colour. Odoric spells it *bigum*, *bigni*, *bigini* (p. 302).

p. 137, l. 15. *smyleth ou the gardyn zate*, etc.—H.: *sonne vne cloquette d'argent. qil teigne en sa main. i. e. rings a little silver bell that he holds in his hand.* Mistranslation.

p. 137, l. 16. *clyket*.—A clapper.

p. 137, l. 19. *comen in*.—H.: *se rengent, i. e. line up.* Mistranslation.

p. 137, l. 24. *bestes ben soules*.—Cordier remarks that the Bodhisattvas, or beings predestined to become Buddhas, often appear in the shape of monkeys (p. 331). D'Outremeuse follows Odoric closely, otherwise his account of Buddhist almsgiving to beasts must appear a satire on the doctrine of Purgatory and on the sale of indulgences, which diverts alms from the poor (Montégut, *Heures de lecture*, 1891, pp. 322–323). That animals, not beggars, ought to be given the leavings of rich men's meals is the opinion of the Saracen Cornumaran in the fourteenth-century version (by d'Outremeuse?) of the Crusading epic (*Hist. Litt.*, Vol. XXV., p. 518).

Ibid. *pat resemblen*, etc.—H.: *qi sont entrez en celles nobles bestoilles, i. e. that have entered those noble animals.* Mistranslation.

p. 138, l. 4. *Chilenfo*.—Odoric: *Gilenfo* (p. 341).

p. 138, l. 10. *Balay*.—Odoric: *Talay* (p. 345). Cordier: *Talaï*, Mongolian for the sea, applied to the Yang-tse-Kiang (p. 347).

p. 138, l. 14. *Pigmans*.—Jean d'Outremeuse's *Miroir des Histoires* takes Ogier the Dane to visit the Pygmies in the city of Janichay (see p. 139, l. 4); they are three feet high, marry when half a year old, and the women bear children when two years of age. They live six or seven years; if they live eight, they grow quite wrinkled (Vol. III., 1873, p. 64). Vincent de Beauvais: *Perhibent in India gentem esse foeminarum quae quinquies concipiunt, et octavum vitae annum non excedunt* (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XXXI., c. cxxiv., col. 2391, ed. 1524).

p. 138, l. 21. *gold, syluer*, etc.—In Odoric they only work cotton (p. 347). Jean d'Outremeuse appears to have added the silk, and the Englisher the gold and silver.

p. 138, l. 24. *bryddes*.—Odoric: *Ces Pymains ont tousjours guerre aux grues et aux cygues du pays qui là sont plus grans que les Pymains* (p. 346). Vincent de Beauvais: *In montibus Indiae*

Pygmaei sunt cubitales, quibus bellum est contra grues (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XXXI., c. cxxviii., col. 2394). II.: Et si ont souent guerre as oïseaux de pais, qī les preignent et qī les mangent, *i. e.* the birds eat the pygmies. The Englisher reverses the relation. Mis-translation.

p. 139, l. 4. *Ianichay*.—Odoric: Jamathay, *alias* Jansu (p. 357).

p. 139, l. 9. *Cumantz*.—Odoric: tumans (p. 358). Cordier explains that tuman in Persian is a loan-word from the Mongolian language, and means ten thousand (pp. 315-316).

p. 139, l. 27. *Menke*.—Odoric: Mente (p. 359). Yule interprets this as Ningpo, Cordier as Tshu-kiang, at the meeting of the Imperial Canal and of the Kiang River (pp. 362-363).

p. 139, l. 33. *Lauteryne*.—Odoric: Lancerny (p. 365). Cordier: Lin-tsing-tcheou (p. 381).

p. 139, l. 36. *Caramaron*.—Odoric: Caramorian (p. 365). Cordier: Kara mouren, the Black River, is the Mongol name of the Hwang-ho or Yellow River (p. 384).

p. 140, l. 14. *Sugarmago*.—Odoric: Ingarmato (p. 366). Cordier: Marco Polo's Singui matu, now Tsi-ning-tcheou (p. 389).

p. 140, l. 19. *Caydon*.—Odoric: Cayto (p. 367). Cordier: Ta-tou, or the Great Court, the Mongol City, built 1267 to the north-east of Peking (pp. 400-401).

p. 141, l. 14. *rode skynes*.—R.: cuirs rouges, *i. e.* red leather. Odoric: les parois sont toutes couvertes de rouges peaux, et dit-on que ou monde n'a point plus nobles peaux (p. 368). Odoric probably meant the walls were hung with Russia leather.

p. 141, l. 15. *Panteres*.—Vincent de-Beauvais: Panthera . . . rugitum magnum emittit cum odore suavissimo quasi omnium aromatum (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XIX., c. xcix., col. 1436). D'Oultremeuse would naturally think of this on smelling Russia leather.

p. 141, l. 23. *mountour*.—Odoric: Ou milieu de ceste salle a une grant pigne, c'est-à-dire un pignetaire un grant vaissel là ou on met piment et buvrage (p. 368), *i. e.* in the centre of the hall is a large jar or vessel where spiced wine and beverage are put. The Middle French pignate, peignate, pinate is a metal kettle. The Middle Latin pinna also seems to mean some drinking-vessel, according to the example in Du Cange: Ut presbyteri non eant ad potationes nec ad pinnas libant. This meaning d'Oultremeuse seems to have combined with that of pinna, pinnacle, and rendered by montour. The latter word, I am told by Prof. Aug. Doutrepont,

one of the editors of the *Dictionnaire de la langue wallonne*, exists to-day in the Walloon dialect, meaning a stile (échalier), and corresponding with a French form *monteur. This is not unlike Rabelais's montouoir: “. . . je coupe à quelqu'une [mule] l'estri-
vière du costé du montouoir” (*Pantagruel*, l. II., c. xvii., Vol. I., p. 410 of Didot's third edition of *Oeuvres*). In the *Mirror of Histories*, by d'Outremeuse, montoir occurs twice (Vol. I., pp. 289–290), meaning a hill or mount. Grandgagnage, *Dict. étym. de la langue wallone*, t. II., 1880, *verbo* monteie gives monteû (échalier); propr. = fr. montoir.

p. 141, l. 26. *iiij. serpentes*.—Odoric: A chascun anget de celle pigne a un serpent qui halette et bat ses elles moult fort, par certains conduis qui sont en la court du roy administrant cil serpent le buvrage, *i. e.* At each corner of that jar there is a dragon which pants and flaps its wings right strongly; this dragon pours out the beverage by means of certain pipes which are in the king's court (p. 368).

p. 141, l. 35. *throne*.—What follows is expanded from Odoric, pp. 369–370.

p. 143, l. 4. *Pecokes*.—Odoric: En ce palais a moult de paons fais tous de fin or. Et quant aucuns Tartres veult en ce palais faire aucune feste à son seigneur, il bat les mains ensemble et tantost ces paons espandent les elles et alettent et semble droit que ilz dancent tellement; sont faits cilz paon par science d'homme ou par art de diable, *i. e.* In the palace are many peacocks all made of fine gold. And when some Tartar wants to give some entertainment to his lord in the palace, he claps his hands together and anon those peacocks spread their wings and pant and they truly seem to dance; so are those peacocks made through man's skill or devil's craft (pp. 368–369).

p. 143, l. 7. *maken gret noyse*.—R.: et en fait homme des grantz museries, *i. e.* and people take great pleasure in it. Mis-translation.

p. 143, l. 11. *moste sotyle men*.—Hayton: Cestes gens, qui tant sont simples en hur creance e ès choses espiriteus, sont plus sages et plus sotils que totes autres gens es euvres corporels. Et dient les Cataïens que il sont ceus qui voient de II. oïls, e des Latins disent q'il voient d'un oïl mes les autres nacions dient que sont avuegles. Et verraïement l'om voit venir de celui païs tantes choses estranges et merveïlloses, et de sotil labour, que bien semblent estre la plus soutils gens du monde d'art et de labour de

mains (*Flor des Estoires*, l. I., c. i., p. 121, ed. 1906). Those people, who are so simple in their belief in things spiritual, are wiser and more skilful than any other people in works of the body. And the Cathayans say that they are those that see with both eyes, and the Latins, they say, see with one eye, but the other nations they say are blind. And truly from that country so many strange and marvellous things and of subtle craft are seen to come, that they truly seem to be the subtlest people in the world, with art and craft of their hands.

p. 143, l. 22. *vyne*.—This vine is from the Alexandrian romances. Sir G. Warner quotes *Epistol. Alex. de Situ Indiae*, ed. 1706, p. 22; Bovenschen, *Historia de proeliis*, c. lxxxii. Guérin traces it to Josephus, where it adorns the doors of the Temple rebuilt by Herodes (*Antiqu. Jud.*, l. XV., c. xi., quoted in Guérin: *La Terre Sainte*, 1897, p. 64). Vincent de Beauvais describes it in Solomon's Temple: grandes uvae aureae cum pampinis aureis (*Spec. Hist.*, l. II., c. lxxvii., fol. 71, ed. 1624).

p. 143, l. 26. *cristall et of berylle*, etc.—In Lamprecht's *Alexander*, the Macedonian wants to be taught the virtues of precious stones (ed. Kinzel, p. 373). Kinzel's note, p. 518, refers to Revelation xxi. and to Exodus xxviii., and to the spiritual interpretation of those passages.

p. 143, l. 28. *Alabraundynes*.—R.: alabaundines. Almandine.

p. 143, l. 30. *Garantez*.—R.: geracites. Brussels 10420-5: geratices. Pliny's hieracites.

p. 144, l. 1. *desportes*.—R.: reuories.

p. 144, l. 7. *Vessell of syluer is pere non*.—Neither the account of precious stones nor the contempt of silver occurs in Odoric.

p. 144, l. 15. *my felawes and I*.—Odoric here speaks of himself and his fellow Franciscans. D'Outremeuse again assumes the guise of a warrior as on p. 21, l. 20. Duplicate.

p. 144, l. 28. *the lordes here*.—R.: Qar ly seignur par de cea ont au mointz de noumbre de gent qil poent, *i. e.* lords in our parts have as few retainers as they can. Complaints about the niggardliness of lords who keep down the number of their dependents were common in the Middle Ages.

p. 145, l. 29. *Sem toke Affryk*.—These commonplaces from Genesis and from the Medieval commentators are deliberately perverted by d'Outremeuse, in order to derive the Asiatic Khan's title from the Biblical Cham, the owner of Africa.

p. 146, l. 7. *monstres*.—From p. 30, l. 4. Duplication.

p. 146, l. 26. *more þan .xiiij. 3eer.*—^{xx}Vincent de Beauvais dating the rise of the Tartars in 1202 (*Spec. Hist.*, l. XXIX., c. lxix), this passage seems to have been written after 1362, when Jean d'Outremeuse was 24 years old, and Sir John Mandeville had still ten years to live. The earliest dated MS. belonging to the year 1371, a date soon after 1362 for the composition is not impossible.

p. 147, l. 3. *knyght Armed all in white.*—From Hayton, p. 148, ed. 1906.

p. 147, l. 10. *whan he cam.*—R.: quant il vient a matyn, *i. e.* when it came to be morning. Mistranslation.

p. 147, l. 21. *vpon a blak fertre.*—R.: sour vn feutre noir, *i. e.* upon a black felt. The Englisher understood Lat. feretrum, a litter, a bier.

p. 147, l. 28. *Ysya Chan.*—Hayton: Multa alia bona exempla et mandata dedit eis Changuis Can, que adhuc reverenter a Tataris observantur. Et in ydiomate ipsorum dicuntur Yasac Changuis Can, id est constitutiones Changuis Can (p. 289 of 1906 ed.).

p. 148, l. 30. *Owle syttynge.*—Sir G. Warner recalls that Mahomet is said to have been saved in a similar way by a spider's web spun across the mouth of the cave where he was in hiding.

p. 149, l. 12. *mount Belyan.*—Baldjouna or Diloun—Bouldae, or Kentaï, in the Khanlla range of mountains, N.W. of Peking, S.E. of Irkoutsk and of Lake Baïkal (Hayton: *La Flor des Estoires*, etc., ed. 1906, l. III., c. i., p. 147 fn.).

p. 150, l. 4. *in .iiij. places.*—R.: de iii. liens, *i. e.* with three strings. The Englisher may have followed a MS. like G, which has: en iii. lieux de iii. liens, *i. e.* in three places with three strings.

p. 150, l. 20. *in .iiij. places.*—R.: de iii. liens. Here the sense is weakened by the translation.—This well-known apologue is less tersely told in Jean d'Outremeuse's *Miroir des Histoires*, Vol. V., 1867, p. 185.

p. 150, l. 32. *After Ecchecha*, etc.—Haiton's *Flor des Estoires* is less faithfully followed from this passage onwards (ed. 1906, pp. 155-157).

p. 151, l. 4. *of so high worschiþe.*—R.: lem troua tant de tresour qe en tout le remenant de mounde en deueroit a peynes tant auoir, *i. e.* so much treasure was found that in the rest of the world there could hardly be so much. Mistranslation. The story told of the Caliph Mostassim by Haiton (pp. 168-169 of 1906 ed.) is also told by William of Tripoli of Crassus, to whom the citizens

of Cairo say : Aurum sitisti, aurum bibe ! Having thirsted for gold, do now drink gold ! (ed. Prutz, p. 583). Prutz refers the story to Manius Aquilius, at the time of the first war of Mithridates. Cf. Ezekiel, viii. 19 : . . . their silver and their gold shall not be able to deliver them in the day of the wrath of the Lord : they shall not satisfy their souls, neither fill their bowels.

p. 151, l. 24. *Izonge in Cathay*.—D'Outremeuse, *Miroir des Histoires* : . . . Cabila Cam . . . fondat en . . . Cathay une citeit qu'illh nommat Iomg, qui est asseis plus grant que la grant Romme (Vol. V., 1867, p. 286). Haiton : Iste Cobila Can . . . fundavit quamdam civitatem in regno Catay que dicitur Jong, que satis est, ut dicitur, major Roma (ed. 1906, p. 294).

p. 151, l. 26. *becam a payneme*.—Haiton states that the Tartars learned the use of letters and adopted idolatry from their neighbours under Octota, but that they still revered the one great God immortal (ed. 1906, p. 157).

p. 151, l. 30. *Chan filius*, etc.—Khan, son of God above, highest emperor of all that dwell in the universe, and lord of all rulers. No source is known for this pompous style.

p. 151, l. 33. *Deus in celo*, etc.—God in Heaven, Khan on earth, his strength. Seal of the Emperor of all mankind. Brussels 10420-5 translates : Sa forche passe tout hommes. Chest ly saielh, etc. = His strength passes all men. This is the seal, etc.

p. 151, l. 36. *Dei fortitudo*, etc.—God's strength. Seal of the Emperor of all mankind. These two inscriptions on seals are said by Sir G. Warner to be from Carpini (p. 594). Brussels 10420-5 translates : le forche de dieu est plus grande que la forche de toz le hommes, *i.e.* God's strength is more than all men's strength. This and the above are samples of d'Outremeuse's carelessness and incompetence in translating Latin.

p. 152, l. 2. *belceuen in god*.—Hayton : Credunt enim [in] Deum simpliciter, et in omnibus eorum operibus invocant nomen ejus. Et credunt et confitentur unum deum immortalem [Nulli minas inferrent, nisi Deum preponerent, dicendo sic : Novit Deus quid tibi faciam, et similia] (p. 347 of 1906 ed.).

p. 152, l. 8. *solempne festes*.—Odoric : L'empereur fait iiij. grans festes en l'an, etc. (p. 378).

p. 152, l. 10. *presentacioun*.—Not in Odoric. D'Outremeuse seems to have invented it from reminiscences of the Bible. Cordier remarks that Odoric's mention of the circumcision is a

mistake, as this practice was unknown to the Mongols. The two festivals of ydoles must be those of Heaven and Earth (p. 420).

p. 152, l. 11. *Moseach*.—Mosque. This form is exceptional. Vincent de Beauvais uses Meskida (*Spec. Hist.*, l. XXII., c. xlii., p. 913 of 1524 ed.), agreeing with Musketh (p. 26, l. 17). Will. Trip.: mesged, mesquida, mesgued (p. 580 ed. Prutz).

p. 152, l. 19. *be thousandes*, etc. Odoric: par dizeniers, par centeniers et par milleniers (p. 370). In the Flemish *Alexander* of Jacob Van Maerlant, the army is similarly led by chiliarchs, decurions, etc. (Bk. VI., ll. 85–88 of Frank's ed.).

p. 153, l. 3. *dubbed*.—R.: semez, *i. e.* sown, set with.

p. 153, l. 11. *clothes of gold with tyssens*, etc.—R.: des draps dor tissuz a soie vert, *i. e.* in cloth of gold interwoven with green silk. Mistranslation.

p. 153, l. 17. *of purple or of ynde*. R.: soie pourpre ou Ynde, *i. e.* purple or blue silk.

p. 154, l. 1. *philosofres*.—Odoric: en un anglet du palais sont les astronomiens qui gardent l'heure quant il sera temps de commencer (p. 378).

p. 154, l. 2. *Nigromancye*, etc.—Not in Odoric. Those terms are collected and explained in a passage quoted by Godefroy under *leuconomanee*: Hydromance qui se fait avec de l'eau, leuconomanee qui se fait avec des bassins, pyromance qui se fait avec le feu, geomance par le moyen de la terre, eneromance, laquelle est divisée encore en deux parties, en seyomance et neciomance, lesquelles se pratiquent en parlementant avec les esprits malins, ou en suscitant les ombres et idoles errantes des morts (*Tuhur. Sec. Dial. de Democr.*, p. 232, ed. 1602).

p. 154, l. 18. *boweth his hed*.—Odoric: tous hurtent par trois fois leur teste à terre (p. 378), *i. e.* all strike their heads to the ground thrice. Cordier: they kow-tow (p. 423).

p. 154, l. 29. *significaciouns*.—These explanations are not in Odoric. Probably they are d'Outremeuse's own guesses.

p. 155, l. 10. *And 3if pere falle*.—R.: Et, sil court guerre al emperour nulle part, ou qe homme face ascune contraire en toute sa terre, cis philosophes le veient tantost et le dient al emperour et a soum conseil, "Sire, lem fait maintenant tiel chose en vostre terre et en tiels parties"; et tantost ly emperers enuoie vers celles parties, *i. e.* If war arises anywhere against the emperor or if something is done against him in all his country, those philosophers

see it anon and tell it to the Emperor and to his council: Sir, they are now doing such a thing in your country and in such parts.—Either the Englisher followed a version unknown to Sir G. Warner or he translated very freely.

p. 155, l. 17. *mystraleye*.—Odoric: Quant l'eure est venue, touz ces menestrelx commencent à jouer de leurs instruments et font si grant noise que c'est grant hyde (p. 379), *i. e.* When the time has come, those minstrels begin to play upon their instruments, and make such a noise that it is hideous.

p. 155, l. 25. *als manye*, etc.—R.: tantz come il poet finer, *i. e.* as many as he can provide.

p. 156, l. 11. *libardes*.—Introduced by the Englisher. Odoric brings in no other animals than tame lions (p. 379). The French d'Outremeuse adds eagles, vultures, other birds, fishes and serpents. For fishes doing reverence, see p. 128, l. 18. Duplication.

p. 156, l. 15. *the sonne t the mone*.—Apparently invented by Jean d'Outremeuse.

p. 156, l. 20. *daunces*.—When the fair Isaune was shut in a stone tower, her lover the magician Eliavès made musicians to appear, who played for her, while women danced and tumbled to amuse her (Kittredge, *Gauvain and the Green Knight*, 1916, pp. 226, 297). In Chaucer's *Franklin's Tale*, a magician shows to Aurelius

his lady on a daunce

On which him-self he daunced, as him thoughte.

(p. 449 of *Cent. Tales* in *World's Classics*.)

p. 156, l. 16.—*to every mannes sight*.—R.: pur ly faire reuerence, qi donnent si grant clarite qe a peins lun veoit l'autre. The Englisher skipped twelve words, and mistranslated the last three.

p. 156, l. 22. *mylk of dyuerse bestes*.—R.: lait des iumentz, *i. e.* mare's milk, known as a Tartar delicacy from Haiton (p. 138, ed. 1906).—Odoric: Puis y a enchanteurs qui font par leur art venir hanaps d'or tous pleins de bon vin et en boivent touz ceulx qui en veulent boire (pp. 379–380). Then there are jugglers who through their cunning bring gold cups full of good wine, and whoever want to drink of it may do so.—While writing of enchantments, d'Outremeuse suggests puppet-shows or motions, a favourite amusement in his time.

p. 156, l. 35. *.riij. Cumantz*.—This number is from Odoric, p. 371.

p. 157, l. 8. *Ostryeches*.—R.: oustours, *i. e.* goshawks. Mistrans-

lation. Odoric briefly describes the hawking and shooting (p. 376). D'Outremeuse fills in the particulars.

p. 157, l. 14. *Phisicyens cristene*.—Odoric: médecins qui gardent le corps du roy, III^e ydolatres, VIII crestiens et vii sarrazins (p. 371). See Introduction, p. 5, for Christian doctors serving Infidels.

p. 157, l. 26. *no money but of lether*.—Odoric: Car pour monnoie ne despent on riens en tout son royaume, fors une manière de brievez qui la vault en tout son pais monnoie (p. 380). Leather money was current in France under King Charles V. (*Chastellain*, ed. Kervyn, VII., 1865, p. 325).

p. 157, l. 28. *dyuersitee of his statules*.—R.: solonc la diuersite de seinal qi y est, *i. e.* according to the variety of the marks upon it. Mistranslation. Haiton: En celui païs [Cathay] se despent monoie faite de papier en forme quarrée, signé du seignal du signor, et solonc ce que est signée vaut ou plus ou meins. Et de cele monoie achatent e vendent toutes choses. E quant cele monoie enpire par veillesse ou autrement, celui qui l'aura la rendra a la cort du signor, et em prenra de nueve (*Flor des Est.*, l. I., c. l., p. 121, ed. 1906).

p. 158, l. 2. *Rubye*.—Vincent de Beauvais describes the diamond as lighting in the dark, and being darkened by the sun in the day time (*Spec. Nat.*, l. VIII., c. xxxix., col. 513, ed. 1624). Haiton: E le roi de cele isle [Ceylon] ha la plus grant rubie e la meilleur que soit en monde, e quant le signor doit estre coronés au roi, il porte cele rubie en ses braz (*Flor des Est.*, 1906, p. 126, l. I., c. vi.). John of Hildesheim denies the report that a golden star in Cologne lights the whole church (ed. 1878, p. 32). A room lighted only with precious stones is mentioned by Benjamin of Tudela as being in Constantinople, in the palace of Blachernae (Beazley, *Dawn of Mod. Geogr.*, II., 1901, p. 236). On luminous carbuncles in romances, see Faral, *Recherches sur les sources latines*, etc., 1913, pp. 321–322.

p. 158, l. 6. *po ben*.—R.: cel la est, *i. e.* the ruby carbuncle of l. 2 is a single stone in the French original. Mistranslation.

p. 158, l. 8. *Saduz*.—Odoric: Sadu (p. 371). Cordier: Shangtu, Kubilai's summer residence in Mongolia (p. 413). Coleridge's Xanadu.

p. 158, l. 10. *Camaalech*.—Odoric: Camelech (p. 372). Cordier: Khân-Bâliq, the khan's city = Peking (p. 390).

p. 158, l. 11. *Gaydo*.—A city, not a country (see p. 140, l. 10).

p. 158, l. 12. *Joug*.—A city, as p. 151, l. 24, not a country.

p. 158, l. 15. *iiij. hostes*.—From Odoric, p. 372.

p. 159, l. 5. *Lignum Aloes*.—Not in Odoric. Duplicate from p. 37, l. 6.

p. 159, l. 34—p. 160, l. 1.—Odoric: Tout ainsi que li rois va vont ses femmes et ses aînéz filz, chascun selon leur degré comme dessus est dit (p. 373).

p. 160, l. 2. *xij. prouynces*.—Odoric, p. 373.

p. 161, l. 7. *Chylydo*.—Odoric: Chiribo (var.: chidebo, Chidebeo), p. 375. Cordier: ki-di-fou in Chinese is the ostler or innkeeper (p. 419), while the French version of Odoric wrongly applies it to the inn itself.

p. 161, l. 18. *he commandeth to*, etc.—R.: il commande a ses seigneurs q̄ eiuachent delez ly q̄ils facent venir ces religieux, *i. e.* he orders the lords that ride beside him to make those religious men come nigh. Mistranslation.—Odoric (p. 375) was himself allowed to approach with his brethren, but the details are invented by d'Outremeuse.

p. 161, l. 22. *Galeoth*.—Sir G. Warner's Latin Odoric has *galearium*, Cordier's French has nothing. The Latin diminutive of *galea*, helmet, *galeola* and the pp. *galeatus*, helmeted, come fairly near.

p. 161, l. 29. *sum maner frute*.—Odoric: et pour ce que la guise y est telle que nulz n'y ose apparoir devant l'empereur que il ne lui doint aucune chose lui presentasmes un plat d'argent plein de pommes (p. 375).

p. 162, l. 28. *he defendeth noman to holde no lawe*.—This praise of religious tolerance is not in Odoric, and confirms other passages testifying to d'Outremeuse's "indifferentism." Vincent de Beauvais: Ritus autem Christianos, et quaslibet sectas, et quorumlibet hominum cultus, secure ac libere observari permittunt inter se (*Spec. Hist.*, l. XXIX., c. lxxxiv., p. 1214, ed. 1524).

p. 162, l. 30. *an .C. wyfes*.—From Carpini, in *Spec. Hist.*, l. XXIX., c. lxxvi.

p. 163, l. 3. *precious clothes*.—R.: purpures. Mistranslation.

Ibid. *clothes of Tartarye*.—R.: tartaires. Brussels 10420-5: tartariens.

p. 163, l. 4. *slytt at the syde*.—Vincent de Beauvais: Habitus . . . in latere sinistro antequam induatur divisus est . . . duabus lignis . . . insutis (*Spec. Hist.*, l. XXIX., c. lxxix., p. 1212).

p. 163, l. 6. *the hyle with outhen*.—R.: le peil de hors, *i. e.* with the hair outside. Mistranslation.

p. 163, l. 6. *cappe*.—R. : ne vestent houehe ne chaperoun. Godefroy defines a *houce* as a long gown with open sleeves. Mistranslation (!).

p. 163, l. 10. *mannes foot*.—Odoric : Toutes les femmes qui sont mariées ont sur leurs chiefs un pié d'homme aussi long comme un bras (p. 369). See p. 142, l. 14. Duplication. R : fors qe les mariez qi portent lenseigne sour leur testes, *i. e.* except the married women, who wear the sign upon their heads.

p. 163, l. 19. *of wode*.—R. : de feutre, *i. e.* of felt. The English probably read : de fust, *i. e.* of wood. Mistranslation.

p. 163, l. 24. *they beleenen*.—Vincent de Beauvais : Unum quidem Deum Tartari credunt, ipsum quoque omnium esse tam visibilium quam invisibilium factorem. . . . Nihilominus etiam habent Idola quaedam de filtro . . . eaque credunt pecorum suorum custodes esse, ac beneficium pullorum et lactis eis praestare. Alia vero de pansericis faciunt. . . . Idolis offerunt primum lac omnis iumentum ac pecoris. Sed et quando primo bibere vel comedere incipiunt, primitus eis de cibariis suis, vel de potu offerunt (*Spec. Hist.*, l. XXIX., c. lxxii., p. 1210). The Alexandrian romances also describe a kind of deism or naturalism agreeing with d'Outremeuse's views : Alexander prays to the god of nature in Valerius : Deo summo rerum praesidi. "Quisquis tu deum rex es, qui praestare diceris huic terrae mundumque istum interminem regis" (ed. Kübler, 1888, p. 39). Serapis was especially meant.

p. 163, l. 29. *yroga*.—Vincent de Beauvais (as above) : Ithogo. Sir G. Warner gives Carpini's form as Ytoga (p. 626).

p. 163, l. 31. *when I was pere*.—Sir G. Warner : the author "seems to have coolly transferred to his own time a selection from Carpini's list in 1246 (p. 665) of the sons and grandsons of Yenghiz."

p. 163, l. 32. *Thiaut*.—Seems, according to Sir G. Warner, to stand for Carpini's Thaut, *i. e.* Tangut.

p. 164, l. 10. *worschipen*.—Vincent de Beauvais : Solem etiam ac lunam et ignem et aquam et terram venerantur et adorant, etc. (*Spec. Hist.*, l. XXIX., c. lxxii., p. 1210).

p. 164, l. 17. *for to smyte*, etc.—R. : a soi apoier a fuet de quoy lem fiert les chinalx, *i. e.* to lean on the whip wherewith horses are beaten. Mistranslation.

p. 164, l. 18. *to breke o bon*.—Vincent de Beauvais : . . . et nullum ex ossibus eorum [animalium] confringunt, sed igne comburunt (*Spec. Hist.*, l. XXIX., c. lxxii., p. 1210).

p. 164, l. 29. *passer forgh a fuyr*.—Vincent de Beauvais: Dietum fuit nobis, quod inter duos ignes transire deberemus. Nos autem hoc nulla ratione facere volebamus. At illi dixerunt nobis: Ite secure, quia pro nulla causa hoc volumus facere, nisi tantum ut si vos aliquod malum cogitatis Domino nostro, vel portatis venenum ignis auferat omne malum, *i. e.* We were told to pass between two fires. As we would by no means do it, they said to us: Go safely, for we want to do it for no other reason than that the fire may remove all harm in case you mean to hurt our lord or bear poison about you (*Spec. Hist.*, l. XXXI, c. xxii.). Omnes qui morantur in stationibus suis, oportet per ignem purificari (*ibid.*, c. vii.).

p. 165, l. 1. *Men of pat contree*, etc.—R.: Ils sont toutz bonez archiers et treilient molt bien; et auxi bien chiuachent et courent femmes come ly hommes, *i. e.* They are all good archers and shoot well; and women ride and race as well as men. Mistranslation. Vincent de Beauvais: Mulieres . . . equitant sicut et viri (as above).

p. 165, l. 5. *plowes*.—Not in the French. Introduced by the English.

p. 165, l. 13. *but 3if þei ben*, etc.—R.: tant soient ils grantz princes, *i. e.* however great princes they may be. Mistranslation.

p. 165, l. 14. *lyberdes*.—R.: renardz, *i. e.* foxes. Mistranslation.

p. 165, l. 16. *saf only swyn*, etc.—This reference to the Mosaic law is by Jean d'Outremeuse.

p. 165, l. 21. *nouþer pesen ne beurs*.—Vincent de Beauvais: Porro in vietu sunt homines immundissimi atque spurcissimi, neque etiam mensalibus nec manutergiis utuntur, nec panem habent vel eunt, sed quidam ipsum etiam comedere dedignantur. Olera quoque vel legumina non habent, nec aliquid aliud, quam carnes ut comedant. De quibus etiam tam paucas manducant, quod aliae nationes vix inde vivere possunt. Porro omne carniū genus praeterquam mutae, quia non gignit, comedunt, et hoc turpissimo rapaciterque tangentes pingua, digitos suos lambunt, et ocreis suis tergunt. Solent tamen maiores aliquos habere panniculos cum quibus ad ultimum tergunt, manus commesturi non lavant, nec posta scutellas. Et si aliquando eas brodio carniū abluunt iterum loturam cum carnibus in olla reponunt, aliter etiam non lavant ollas vel coelearia, vel alia huiusmodi vasa. In carnibus autem equinis plus delectantur quam in aliis. Ratos etiam, et canes edunt, et catts libentissime comedunt, vinum libentissime bibunt, quando habere possunt, lacte iumentino, quod ipsi Camous

vocant, quotidie sicut et homines caeteri vino forti se inebriant (*Spec. Hist.*, l. XXIX., c. lxxviii.).

p. 166, l. 4. *to destroyen*, etc.—R. : dencloure lour enemys, *i. e.* to surround their enemies. Mistranslation.

p. 166, l. 6. *gret a.c.*—Brussels 10420–5 : vne grande lance, *i. e.* a long lance. The Englisher follows R. : vne grant hache.

p. 166, l. 7. *speres*.—R. : espeies, *i. e.* swords. Mistranslation.

p. 166, l. 8. *gyrboylle*.—R. : cuir boily, *i. e.* cuir bouilli. Vincent de Beauvais : Armati autem sunt coriis. . . . Capellos habent de corio . . . gladiosque parvos ut Saraceni longitudinis unius brachij, et unius incisionis seu cesurae (l. XXIX., c. lxxix., p. 1212, ed. 1524).

p. 166, l. 11. *pei behoten*.—Vincent de Beauvais : blande loquuntur obsessis, multaque fallaciter, ut in eorum manus se tradant, promittunt eis. Cum illi se reddiderint, vel capti fuerint, omnes occidunt exceptis artificis (*Spec. Hist.*, l. XXIX., c. lxxxiii., p. 1213, ed. 1524).

p. 166, l. 15. *kutten of hire eres*.—Vincent de Beauvais : Itaque cum caepissent. . . . Driabaldin civitatem in Perside, ad suae crudelitatis ostensionem, et audituris incutiendum timorem, omnibus habitatoribus illius decapitatis, aures rebellium sibi iam mortuorum absciderunt; duosque summarios oneratos auribus in aceto positis ad Chaam transmiserunt (*ibid.*, p. 1214).

p. 166, l. 16. *pei maken gret seruyse*.—R. : ils fount entremes pur les grantz seignurs. A characteristic joke in the taste of Jean d'Outremeuse.

p. 166, l. 18. *vnder hire subieccioun*.—Vincent de Beauvais : Aliud quoque statutum habent, quod omnem terram sibi debeant subiugare, nec cum aliqua gente pacem habere, nisi subdatur eis quousque veniat tempus ipsorum interfectionis. Annis 80 debent pugnare, et 18 tantummodo regnare, post hoc ut ipsi dicunt ab alia natione debent vinci, ut vaticinatum est eis, nesciunt autem quae illa sit (*Spec. Hist.*, l. XXIX., c. lxxiii., p. 1210, ed. 1524).

p. 166, l. 23. *folk of all lawes*.—Vincent de Beauvais, *Spec. Hist.*, l. XXIX., c. lxxxiv., p. 1214, ed. 1524. See p. 162, l. 28. Duplicate.

p. 166, l. 26. *ymage all naked*.—This licentious praise of Adamism is d'Outremeuse's own.

p. 166, l. 33. *it is gret drede*.—Hayton : Pugna Tatarorum est valde periculosa, et in uno parvo bello Tatarorum plures moriuntur

quam in alio bello alterius nationis, et hoc est propter sagittas quas prociunt fortiter et directe; et sunt ita docti in arte sagietandi quod sagiete eorum fere armorum penetrant omne genus. Quando Tataři vertunt in fugam, fugiunt omnes simul per turmas et acies ordinatas. . . . Exercitus Tatarorum non est magne apparencie, qui omnes simul congregatim incedunt, ita quod acies mille Tatarorum quingentorum apparenciam non habet (*P.H.T.O.*, l. III., c. xlix., p. 338, ed. 1906). Similarly Vincent de Beauvais, *Spec. Hist.*, l. XXIX., c. lxxi., p. 1210.

p. 167, l. 2. *pei cone wel wynnun*.—Hayton: Tataři terras alienas sciunt faciliter occupare, sed illas nolunt custodire, quia in [castris et] civitatibus nesciunt habitare, immo potius esse desiderant in tentoriis et in campis (*ibid.* p. 339). Vincent, as above.

p. 167, l. 7. *smale eyen*.—Hayton, l. I., c. i., p. 131.

p. 167, l. 8. *pei ben false*.—Hayton: libenter menciuntur (l. III., c. xlix., p. 339).

p. 167, l. 13. *whan ony man schall dye*.—Vincent de Beauvais: Cum aliquis eorum ad mortem infirmatur, hasta una in eius statione erigetur, et circa illa filtrum nigrum circumvolvitur; extunc nullus audet intrare terminos stationis illius. Cumque fuerit mortuus, si de minoribus est, occulte in campis sepelitur, cum uno tentorio suo, sedendo in medio eius ponuntque mensam ante illum, et alveolum caribus plenum, et lactis iumentini ciphum, sepelitur etiam cum eo iumentum unum cum pullo, et equus cum sella et freno. Alium autem comedunt, et cum stramine corium eius implentes, super duo ligna vel quatuor in alto ponunt, quae omnia faciunt pro mortuo ut habeat tentorium, et etiam iumentum in alio mundo; de quo scilicet iumento lac habere possit, et equos sibi multiplicare, in quibus tunc possit equitare (*Spec. Hist.*, l. XXIX., c. lxxxvi., p. 1214).

p. 167, l. 37. *entered preuytly*.—Vincent de Beauvais: Si vero dives et magnus homo fuerit, Tartarus qui moritur cum habitu preciosissimo sepelitur, ac remotius ab omnibus in abscondito loco ne habitu suo spoliatur (*ibid.*, p. 1215).

p. 168, l. 10. *pei seye to him*.—Vincent de Beauvais, *Spec. Hist.*, l. XXXI., c. xxxii.

p. 168, l. 19. *vpon a blak stede*.—R.: sour vne feutre noir, *i. e.* upon a black felt (carpet). Mistranslation.

p. 168, l. 27. Brussels 10420-5 here inserts a so-called Tartar alphabet.

p. 169, l. 1. *Asye the depe*.—Hayton: E cele partie qui est devers orient est apellée Aise la Profunde, e cele qui est devers

occident est apellée Aise la Majour (*F.H.T.O.*, l. l., c. v., p. 125, ed. 1906).

p. 169, l. 3. *Cathay*.—Hayton's first Book is divided into fourteen chapters, devoted to the following countries : Cathay, Tharse, Turquesten, Corasme, Comaine, Inde, Perse, Mede, Ermenie, Jorgie, Caldee, Mesopotame, Turquie, Syrie. They appear in the same order in the present passage of the *Mauleville*.

p. 169, l. 4. *Tharse, the whiche*.—R. : qi fust a vn de rois, *i. e.* which belonged to one of the Kings. Mistranslation. Sir G. Warner describes this tradition as an absurd inference from Ps. lxxii. 10 : The kings of Tarshish and of the isles shall bring presents. Hayton explains that the Uighurs were all idolaters, except the kindred of the Three Kings, from whom the Tartar lords who were still Christians were descended (*F.H.T.O.*, l. l., c. ii., p. 122, ed. 1906).

p. 169, l. 7. *no flesch*.—From Hayton (*ibid.*).

p. 169, l. 13. *Octorar*.—Hayton : Octerar (*ibid.* p. 123). The ancient city of Farab, on the right bank of the Sir-Daria, south-east of the Sea of Aral. Hayton : En celui roiaume ha poi de bones cités, mas il i ha grans plainures e bones pastures ; e por ce, cele gent sunt presque tous pastours et sunt herbergies en tentes e en teles maisons que legierement les portent de luec en autre. En celui país ne croit forment ne orge, si petit non, millet et ris mangent. Vin n'en ont point, mes il boivent cervoise e autres bevrages (*ibid.*).

p. 169, l. 23. *pat dwelleden in Grece*.—R. : qi demoerent en Gricce. Mistranslation. This reference to Cumanians settled in Greece is not in Hayton. Otherwise, this passage follows Hayton (*F.H.T.O.*, l. l., c. v., p. 124).

p. 170, l. 4. *men han foughten*.—Hayton : i passent dessus (*ibid.*), people cross it. D'Outremeuse introduces the warlike note from the Alexandrian romances : Alexander crosses the river Stranga on the ice, Darius's army is drowned in the thawing (A. Ausfeld's ed. of *Alexander-Roman* : 1907, pp. 70–73). The French text reports only 100,000 warriors on each side ; the Englisher or the Cotton scribe doubles that number !

p. 170, l. 7. *And betwene*, etc.—R. : Et entre celle riuiere et la grante mer oceane, qils appellent la mer Maure, gist toutz cis royalmes. Brussels 10420–5 : Celle riuiere entre en la grande meir oceane quil appellent la meir morte, *i. e.* This river falls into the great sea ocean, which they call the Dead Sea ! D'Outremeuse

inextricably confuses the sensible information contained in Hayton, pp. 124–125.

p. 170, l. 9. *the see Maure*.—Hayton : mer Majour (p. 124). Sir G. Warner explains mare maurem as the Black Sea, from Byzantine Greek μαῦρος = black.

p. 170, l. 13. *dangerous passage*. Hayton : l'autre voie est par le Derbent, qui vaist près de la cité que Alixandre fonda, que est nomée Porte de Fer. (as above, p. 216).

p. 170, l. 17. *gate of helle*.—The Englisher appears to have read : porte d'enfer, possibly remembering the volcanoes of p. 36, l. 6.

p. 170, l. 18. *Sarak*.—Hayton : Sera (p. 215), explained as Seraï, on the Aktonba, a tributary of the Volga.

p. 170, l. 25. *the grete see*.—R. : par la grant mer. Hayton mentions the mer Major (p. 216) in this connection. Jean d'Outremerse read the major or greater sea, like Boldensele (1885, p. 29), a name possibly inspired by the classical name of the Mediterranean : mare Magnum, or the great sea. See notes to p. 170, l. 9, and to p. 95, l. 17.

p. 170, l. 25. *Abchaz*.—Hayton : Abcas (p. 216), explained as Abkhasia, modern Abazia, on the Black Sea, north of the Caucasus.

p. 171, l. 18. *Boyturra*.—Hayton : Boccara (p. 126).

p. 171, l. 19. *Sormagant*.—Hayton : Semorgant (p. 127).

p. 171, l. 25. *Nessabor, Saphon & Sarmassane*.—Hayton : Nesabor, Spahen (p. 127). The third name seems to be another variant for Samarkand, smuggled in out of place by d'Outremerse.

p. 172, l. 3. *Taurizo*.—Hayton : Touris (p. 128).

p. 172, l. 11. *Cordynes*.—Hayton : Cordins (p. 127), explained as Kurds.

p. 172, l. 12. *Sarras*.—Hayton : Seras (p. 127).

p. 172, l. 13. *Karemen*.—Hayton : Queremen (p. 127), explained as Kermenchâh.

p. 172, l. 15. *Abzor*.—Hayton : Albors (p. 129). The note states that the name Alburz is found applying to the eastern, and Elbrouz to the western part of the Caucasus.

p. 172, l. 16. *Alamo*.—Hayton refers to the "alœn" alphabet (p. 128), to Alanie (p. 129) in Georgia, and to Aloen (p. 139) in Armenia.

p. 172, l. 29. *Hanyson*.—Hayton : Hamsen (p. 129); fn., Hampasi.

p. 172, l. 36. *Saures*.—Hayton : Savoureux (p. 129, fn.).

p. 173, l. 7. *Megon*.—Hayton : Mougan (p. 130), explained as Moughan, a district of Persia near the Caspian. Appears as Monglin in d'Outremeuse's *Miroir des Histoires* (t. V., 1867, p. 193).

p. 173, l. 18. *confounded in darkness*.—This story is expanded from Hayton (pp. 129–130, ch. x.), who bears witness to having seen the land of Darkness himself. The romance of *Alexander* (ed. Ausfeld, 1907, p. 169) reports marches in the dark, explained as night-marches through the desert of Gedrosia. (See also Nöldeke, *Alexanderroman*, 1890, p. 25, and Friedländer, *Chudhir*, 193, p. 12.) John of Hildesheim reports that the Roman emperor Heraclius, being hard pressed by the Saracens, called on the Three Kings, who covered the Infidels with darkness (ed. 1878, pp. 26–27).

p. 173, l. 19. *A Domino*.—Ps. cxviii, 23 : This is the Lord's doing ; it is marvellous in our eyes.

p. 173, l. 30. *Quoniam*, etc.—Should be : Quomodo. Possibly the Englisher's misquotation from Deut. xxxii, 30 : How should one chase a thousand, and two put ten thousand to flight ?

p. 173, l. 32. *Et cadent*.—Ps. xci, 7 : A thousand shall fall at thy side, and ten thousand at thy right hand.

p. 173, l. 34. *Quia manus*.—Perhaps a misquotation : Because the Lord's hand did all this.

p. 173, l. 36. *Si in vijs*.—Ps. lxxxi, 13–14 : O that my people had hearkened unto me, and Israel had walked in my ways ! I should soon have subdued their enemies, and turned my hand against their adversaries.

p. 174, l. 2. *may not endure*.—Such pious commonplaces may be applied ironically : the triumphs of the Paynim in Palestine may be considered as a condemnation of the Western Church.

p. 174, l. 12. *Omnibus diebus*.—I advise you to partake of communion every Sunday. This could not be identified in St. Paul. It may be due to a slip in d'Outremeuse's memory. The practice of daily communion has lately been revived in the Roman Church.

p. 174, l. 16. *Quesiton*.—Hayton : Quisitun (p. 133), explained as the province of Saroukhan.

Ibid. *Geneth*.—Hayton : Geneth (p. 133), explained as the province of Djanik on the Black Sea.

p. 174, l. 25. *Maraga*.—Hayton : Moraga (p. 138). The fn.

to p. 139 states that Hayton confounded the city of Maragah, south of Tabriz, with the river Mourghâb, near Merv.

p. 174, l. 29. *vuto a cytee*.—R.: a vne citee, *i.e.* at a city. Mistranslation.

p. 174, l. 35. *Symar*.—Hayton: Simar (p. 131), explained as Sindjâr, to the west of Mossoul.

p. 174, l. 36. *Lyson*.—Hayton: Bysson (p. 131), explained as Behseny, a town and mountain of Diarbekir, on the Arban-Tchay.

p. 175, l. 23. *Bacharye*.—Unexplained. Sir G. Warner guesses Bactria.

p. 175, l. 24. *Cadlille*.—Odoric: Cadili, *alias* Caloy (p. 425), explained as a Tartar kingdom on the Volga. Cordier quotes: Tartarorum horda primaria Zauolha est (p. 427). Jean d'Outremeuse, in his *Miroir des Histoires*, calls it Cadilla, and takes his hero Ogier the Dane to it. His account is nearly identical with the present (III., 1873, p. 64).

p. 175, l. 28. *lomb withouten wolle*.—Cordier: a polypod; *Polypodium barometz*, L. (p. 426).

p. 175, l. 30. *I haue eten*.—Not in the French original.

p. 176, l. 3. *Bernakes*.—Vincent de Beauvais: Bartlathes sunt aves de ligno crescentes, quas vulgus bernacas appellat . . . decidunt, ac sicut aves caeterae volare incipiunt. Verumtamen nisi decedentes cito aquas invenerint, vivere non possunt, . . . carnibus earum in quadragesima. . . . Christiani uti solebant (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XVI., c. xl., col. 1181). The bartlathes are birds growing on wood and called bernacae by the vulgar. They fall off and begin to fly like other birds. If, however, they do not find water soon after their fall, they cannot live. Their flesh used to be eaten by Christians in Lent. H. Littledale explains that the eating of such birds in Lent was justified by the assertion that they were really transformed barnacles or shellfish. The etymology is given as Hibernicula (because permitted by Irish bishops) and *pernacula, *perna, a kind of shell-fish (*Shakespeare's England*, 1916, Vol. I, p. 520.—N.E.D. refers to Max Müller, *Lect. Sc. Lang.*, ed. 7, II., 583-604). Odoric states that the vegetable lamb is no more impossible than the goose growing on a tree! (p. 426).

p. 176, l. 9. *longe apples*.—Duplicate of p. 31, l. 26. Sir G. Warner traces this to Jacques de Vitry (p. 1099) and identifies the fruit with the plantain, which is allied to the banana.

p. 176, l. 12. *large of .ij. fote long*.—R.: larges de deux pies

de long. The Englisher repeatedly confuses longueur and largeur, length and breadth. Brussels 10420-5 : de ij pies de long et demy piet de large.—Brussels 11141 : de ij piez de long ou de plus et de vng piet de large.

p. 176, l. 16. *a strong man*.—Possibly a reminiscence from the heavy cluster of grapes of Numbers, xiii. 23.

p. 176, l. 19. *Vber*.—Aethicus speaks of two mountains as ubera aquilonis, *i. e.* the breasts of the North Wind, and the *Pseudo-Methodius* tells how those two mountains came together at Alexander's request, that he might enclose his enemies with brazen gates (*Pseudo-Methodius*, ed. Sackur, 1898, pp. 73-74).

p. 176, l. 21. *Goth & Magoth*.—In the *Roman d'Alexander*, Gos and Margos join Porns against Alexander (éd. Michelant, 1846, p. 300). Gog and Magog (Ezekiel xxxviii., xxxix. and Revelation xx. 8) were traditionally identified with the Tartars or with the Ten Tribes.

p. 176, l. 22. *xxij. kynges*.—Nöldeke states that the number of barbarian kings subdued by Alexander is given as twenty-two, while the Hellenic kings are fourteen (*Alexanderroman*, 1890, p. 8).

p. 176, l. 31. *pei dwellen pere*.—One version of the legend prophesies that Gog and Magog shall be destroyed by a Roman king. G. Grion refers to Godfrey of Viterbo's Pantheon (*Alessandro Magno*, 1872, p. cxxxiv.).

p. 177, l. 1. *goth out be londe*.—R. : ist fors par terre. Brussels 10420-5 : ist fours de terre par dessouz lez montanges. Probably d'Outremeuse meant that the water escaped through a subterraneous passage, like the Nile on p. 28, l. 11.

p. 177, l. 5. *lake*.—Boldensele points out that the Caspian joins neither the Ocean, nor the Mediterranean, nor the Black Sea by a visible arm, and concludes that there must be an underground connection (ed. 1855, p. 30).

p. 177, l. 13. *the queen of Amazoine*.—Sir G. Warner quotes Hampole's *Pricke of Conscience* :

Bot þai er noght swa closed about
þat þai ne mught lightly com out,
Yif a qwene ne war þat hades þam in,
Thurgh strengthe, þat þai may noght out wyn,
þat es cald þe qwene of Amazons,
Under whas powere þat folk wons.

(ed. R. Morris, p. 121.)

The reign of a woman and the return of the Ten Tribes were

numbered among the signs announcing Doomsday (R. Taylor : *Polit. Prophecy*, 1911, p. 34).

p. 177, l. 21. *litill issue*.—Sir G. Warner believes this to be copied from Brunetto Latini's account of the Caspian gates (I. 4, 123, p. 157).

p. 177, l. 29. *Clyron*.—Identified by Sir G. Warner with B. Latini's Direu.

p. 178, l. 11. *fox*.—Sir G. Warner recalls that in Pausanias (IV. 18) the Messenian hero Aristomenes escapes by grasping a fox's tail and following him. Nehemiah iv. 3 : if a fox go up, he shall even break down their stone wall.

Ibid. trayne.—R. : taignere, *i. e.* den. The Englisher seems to have thought of the meaning enticement, stratagem (see Stratmann-Bradley, under train).

p. 178, l. 24. *pat issue*.—This story of the fox appears to be invented by d'Outremeuse.

p. 178, l. 25.—*Bacharie*.—Bactria, mentioned in the Alexandrian romances. Bovenschen refers to the *Historia de Proeliis*, c. lxxxviii.

p. 178, l. 26. *trees pat beren wolle*.—The cotton trees (*Hist. de Procl.*, *ibid.*).

p. 178, l. 29. *Ypotaynes*.—Vincent de Beauvais : Hippotamus vocatus est, eo quod sit equo similis. Die in aquis commoratur, nocte segetes depressit (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XVII., c. exxxvi., col. 1317, ed. 1624).

p. 178, l. 30. *half hors*.—Sir G. Warner thinks the hippopotamus is confused with the hippocentaur.

p. 178, l. 31. *eten men*.—Vincent de Beauvais : 200 milites ex Macedonibus leviter armatos nature jussit [Alexander]. Cumque jam partem quartam fluminis enatassent, ab Hippopotamis absorpti sunt (*Spec. Hist.*, l. IV. c. liii., ed. 1624).

p. 178, l. 32. *full byttere*.—Vincent : aqua vero fluminis inventa est gustu amarior helleboro, quam nec homo bibere, nec pecus sine tormento poterat (*ibid.*, p. 131, ed. 1624).

p. 178 l. 34. *Griffounes*.—Vincent de Beauvais : Omni corporis parte leones sunt, alis et facie aquilis similes, equis vehementer infesti, et homines visos decerpunt (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XVI. c. xc., col. 1210).

p. 179, l. 2. *suche lyouns as ben o this half*.—The lions of Liège are an obvious joke. In Vincent de Beauvais, the griffins fight

the Macedonians in India (*Spec. Hist.*, 1624, l. IV., c. lviii., p. 133, ed. 1624).

p. 179, l. 15. *Pentexoire*.—Odoric's ch. xxviii. is: De Penthexoire, la terre au prestre Jehan (p. 433).—The legend of a Christian, but Nestorian, prince, ruling in Central Asia, dates back to Crusading times, and first appeared in the twelfth century, according to Cordier. The country's name has not been satisfactorily explained. Prester John figures in Vols. III., IV. and VI. of Jean d'Outremeuse's *Miroir des Histoires*. In Vol III., Ogier meets him and makes him King and Emperor of India (pp. 52, 66, 71). In Vol IV., he is King of Tartary (p. 564). In Vol VI., he conquers Persia, leaving India to his son (pp. 389-390).

p. 179, l. 16. *full gret lond*.—Odoric says it is quite small: not one hundredth part of what is reported (p. 434).

p. 179, l. 23. *Nyse*.—In Vol. I. of d'Outremeuse's *Mirror of Histories* (p. 139), Nysa is a town of India, founded by Bacchus.

p. 180, l. 6. *Adamant*.—Duplicate of p. 109, l. 1.

p. 180, l. 15. *t oper thing*.—R.: de ceo qi estoit deius niefs, *i. e.* from the putrefaction of what was in the ships grow those shrubs and thorns and thistles and large amount of grass. The Englishers sometimes uses the phrase other things, when he cannot translate the French.

p. 180, l. 28. *Hermes*.—Hayton: Hermès, laquelle cité Hermès le philosophes fit par grant art (*F.H.T.O.*, p. 126, ed. 1906). Explained as Ormuz, already mentioned on p. 108, l. 22. Jean d'Outremeuse drew two different names from two different sources, without suspecting that they applied to one place.

p. 180, l. 31. *Golbach*.—Hayton: Combahoth (p. 126), explained as Cambaye, north of Bombay.

p. 180, l. 35. *hony*.—R.: meel. Brussels 10420-5: millet, *i. e.* millet. Hayton: millet (p. 126.)

p. 180, l. 36. *his wif the doughter*.—Odoric: Prestre Jehan a tousdis la femme la fille du grant Caan et ainsi leurs prédécesseurs a toujours mais (p. 434).

p. 181, l. 1. *in the same wise*.—Duplication by Jean d'Outremeuse of Odoric's statement. Brussels 10420-5 adds that Ogier the Dane ordered these double marriages when he conquered India to maintain an alliance between those two potentates.

p. 181, l. 10. *contree also*.—Brussels 10420-5 here introduces Ogier again.

p. 181, l. 15. *.lxxiij. prouynces.*—Sir G. Warner traces most of these particulars to Prester John's letter (ed. Zarncke, pp. 84-88).

p. 181, l. 19. *Gravelly see.*—R. : mer arenouse. Odoric : mēr sablonneuse, variant : mer de Sablon (p. 45). Schofield quotes from *Peurl*, ll. 10 ff. :

In the founce ther stonden stone; stepe,
As gleute thurgh glas that glowed and glyght,

For uehe a pobbel in pole ther pyght
Wacz emerad, saffer, other gemme gent
That alle the loghe lemed of lyght.

(See note to p. 203, l. 21.) In Jean d'Outremeuse's *Mirror*, Vol. III., p. 65, the "meire Arenouse" is a waterless stream : une fleu sens aighe.

p. 181, l. 26. *gode fissch.*—Invented by d'Outremeuse.

p. 181, l. 31. *gret flood.*—Sir G. Warner : In the *Letter* the great river does not flow from Paradise, nor are its stones precious.

p. 181, l. 33. *+ it remmeth, etc.*—R. : Et court countre aual par le desert a vndis, si qe fait la mer arenouse. Brussels 10420-5 : et court tout par mie le desert dynde a ondes, si que fait lautre mere arenouse, *i. e.* and it flows right through the desert of India in waves, as does the other gravelly sea. Mistranslation.

p. 182, l. 1. *and þat gret plentee.*—R. : qi meignent molt grant bruit, *i. e.* which make a very great noise. Mistranslation.

p. 182, l. 8. *smale trees.*—The ephemeral trees of Alexandrian romances.

p. 182, l. 15. *ben horned.*—Vincent describes a crowd of horned serpents : immensa vis cerastarum [κεράστῆς] (*Spec. Hist.*, l. IV., c. liv., p. 131, ed. 1624).

p. 182, l. 16. *wylde hounles.*—Brussels 10420-5 : Item ilh yat des papions grant fuison che sont chiens sauages, *i. e.* Also there are great plenty of papiouns, which are wild dogs.

p. 182, l. 17. *Psitakes.*—Vincent de Beauvais mentions the bird psitacus among the marvels of India (*Spec. Hist.*, l. I., c. lxiv.). Hayton calls it by its French name papagay, and says it is as common as the sparrow is here (*F.H.T.O.*, I., p. 126).

p. 182, l. 26. *.iiij. crosses.*—R. : xiiij. eroiz. The larger figure is more likely to be d'Outremeuse's original.

p. 182, l. 29. *men of armes.*—R. : hommes darmes. Brussels 10420-5 : cheualiers. Meaning cavalry.

p. 182, l. 31. *Whan þat, etc.*—R. : quant homme guerroie, *i. e.* when we are at war.

p. 183, l. 5. *noble jewelles*.—Added by d'Outremeuse.

p. 183, l. 8. *Suse*.—In d'Outremeuse's *Mirror of Histories*, Vol. I., p. 86, Susse is named as a town of India.

p. 183, l. 13. *brighte vpon the nyght*.—See note to p. 158, l. 2.

p. 183, l. 20. *degrees*.—In the *Prose Life of Alexander* (ed. Westlake), Alexander ascends the throne of Cyrus by seven steps made of the following materials: amethyst, emerald, topaze, grenade, diamond, gold and clay, which are explained allegorically (ed. 1913, p. 56). In Vincent, Alexander's nativity is told from tables of hyacinth, crystal, diamond, hematite, emerald, sapphure, and ophite (l. IV., ch. ii.).

p. 184, l. 3. *to engendre children*.—Jacques de Vitry: Alij . . . cum praegnantibus non concumbunt, ut ostendant quia non causa voluptatis, sed causa procreande prolis, uxoribus commiscuntur (*Hist. or.*, 1597, p. 158).

p. 184, l. 9. *but 3if pat*.—Brussels 10420-5: en teilh manier que en la court le gran can, *i. e.* in like manner as in the great Can's court. Mistranslation.

p. 184, l. 10. *pei eten*.—R.: Et si mangent tontz les iours en sa court plus de xxx. mil persones. Brussels 10420-5: ilh mangnoit, *i. e.* there were daily more than thirty thousand people eating at his court. The Englisher mistook the impersonal singular il for the personal plural ils = they. Mistranslation.

p. 184, l. 26. *of a dyssch*.—R.: de escuelle, *i. e.* with solid food, as a pantler or sewer, opposed to the cup-bearer or butler.

p. 184, l. 27. *Anoper is Styward*, etc.—R.: lautre est seneschal, l'autre est mareschal, lautre prince des escutz, *i. e.* another is steward, another marshal, another lord of the shields. Brussels 10420-5: prince de keux, *i. e.* chief cook.

p. 184, l. 32. *vnder vs*.—Brussels 10420-5 here inserts an alphabet. In his notes to Odoric, Cordier prints a facsimile described as "alphabet fantaisiste de la langue de Penthexoïre" (p. 442). He states that Prester John's name served as a mask for political and religious satire in a letter dated from the year 507 of our Nativity, and circulated in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries (p. 440).

p. 184, l. 34. *Milstorak*.—Odoric: Mellestoire (var.: Millestorte, Milestorte, Melistorte, Ministorte, Mileser, Milestorite, Melensorte, Melestorte) (p. 473), explained either from the Arabic melahideh, *i. e.* heretics, infidels, or from the town of Melazgherd,

in the province of Erzerum, north of lake Van, where the Old Man of the Mountain may have had a dependency (pp. 476-8). Vincent de Beauvais (*Spec. Hist.*, l. XXXI., c. lxvi., p. 1307 of 1624 ed.) does not appear to have been used by the *Maunderille*, which closely follows Odoric, adding the articulate birds and beasts of p. 185, l. 14, the striplings of l. 21, the milk and honey of l. 28, the instruments of l. 35. The Assassins figure in Baudouin de Sebourg (*Hist. Litt.*, Vol. XXV., pp. 567 ff.).

p. 184, l. 37. *Gatholonabes*.—R.: Gachalonabes. Brussels 10420-5: Sachalonabez. Unexplained. This name does not appear to occur elsewhere.

p. 185, l. 13. *dyuerse thinges*.—R.: de diuerse chose et de diuerses museries, *i.e.* various things and various pastimes.

p. 185, l. 25. *dycpred with gold*. R.: ourles dor, *i.e.* hemmed with gold. Brussels 10420-5: aourneis dor, *i.e.* adorned with gold.

p. 185, l. 37. *see the craft*.—R.: saunz veer les menistriiers, *i.e.* without seeing the minstrels. The Englisher probably read mystère. Mistranslation.

p. 186, l. 2. *Dabo robis*, etc.—I shall give you a land flowing with milk and honey (see Levit. xx. 24). Here the application is profane. The phrase "delights of Paradise" was used by heretics in the Netherlands to cover their immoral teaching and practices (Jundt, *Panthéisme*, 1875, p. 115).

p. 186, l. 14. *scheure hem his entent*.—R.: Et lors ly presentoiient affaire toute sa volunte, *i.e.* Then they would offer him to perform all his wishes. Mistranslation.

p. 186, l. 33. *destroyed*.—Brussels 10420-5 adds: Et sachies que je ly vent maint fois et yai esteit. Mais ilh astoit destrus anchois que ie y fusse, *i.e.* And you shall understand that I have often seen it and been there. But it was destroyed before I came.

p. 187, l. 6. *vale perilous*.—This name and that of vale tenebrous both occur in the Alexandrian romances (éd. Michelant, 1846, pp. 320-329). The devil offers to tell Alexander the way out, if the king will lift up the stone that crushes him. They are both released. Bunyan has at least borrowed the name (*Pilgrim's Prog.*, ed. J. Brown, 1887, p. 70). Compare the account of the Land of Darkness on pp. 172-173, and Vincent de Beauvais: Gehenna . . . a valle Idolis consecrata, quae est iuxta muros Hierusalem, olim repleta cadaveribus mortuorum. Ibi enim

Hebraei filios suos immolaverunt Daemonibus (*Spec. Nat.*, l. VI., c. xxiv., col. 385, ed. 1524).

p. 187, l. 8. *noyses*.—Odoric heard such a great noise that he was frightened, without specifying (p. 490). Cordier explains that strange echoes may occasionally be heard in sandy deserts.

p. 187, l. 10. *full of deueles*.—Odoric, having seen the face of a dead man, was told by the Saracens that the corpses in that valley were all devils of hell (491–492).

p. 187, l. 13. *gold & syluer*.—Odoric found some money (argent) (p. 491).

p. 187, l. 18. *an hed*.—The face seen by Odoric.

p. 187, l. 23. *dye*.—R. : defailler, *i. e.* swoon. Mistranslation.

p. 188, l. 14. *Freve Menoures*.—Odoric reports in the preceding chapter (xxxii., p. 485) how the minorite brethren expel evil spirits. Our present narrative is fictitious.

p. 188, l. 15. *lombardye*.—Odoric was born at Pordenone in Frioul, some distance from Lombardy, and his travelling companion was Irish. Jean d'Outremeuse uses Lombardy to denote all Northern Italy.

p. 188, l. 27. *gold & syluer*.—Duplicate of p. 187, l. 13.

p. 188, l. 30. *I touched none*.—Odoric took some money in his lap, but left it behind (p. 491). The probable reason is that he had taken a vow of poverty. The pretended conduct of Mandeville is unaccountable. Cf. 2 Chronicles xx. 25: . . . they found among them in abundance both riches with the dead bodies, and precious jewels, which they stripped off for themselves, etc.

p. 188, l. 34. *more deuout*.—That the author of *Mandeville* never was pious, except in the Vale Perilous, is one of the few credible statements in his book.

p. 188, l. 37. *be all the vale*.—R. : par toute la valle, *i. e.* throughout the valley. Mistranslation.

p. 189, l. 3. *And I trowe*.—The syntax here is quite independent of the French original, which is involved, but comprehensible.

p. 189, l. 13. *were of suche*.—R. : qils estoient deceux, *i. e.* that they were beguiled or seduced from the faith by covetousness. The Englisher read *de ceux* = among those, and altered the construction accordingly. Mistranslation.

p. 189, l. 17. *And 3it*, etc.—Brussels 10420–5 here has about three pages of redundant particulars, not occurring in R., which is

followed by the Englisher. Odoric is now abandoned for a time.

p. 189, l. 23. *ærvij. fote*.—No souree known for that figure. Vincent de Beauvais knows of giants 33 cubits high (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XXXI., c. cxxv., col. 2392, ed. 1524). The men of 50 cubits (l. 34) are probably from Vincent, who knows a young lady of that height (*ibid.*).

p. 189, l. 37. *deuoured anon*.—An allusion to Polyphemus and the sailors of Ulysses; Vincent de Beauvais on Cyclops: . . . unus eorum in antro suo resupinus iacens, una manu duos viros tenens crudos manducabat (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XXXI., c. cxxvi., col. 2392, ed. 1524).

p. 190, l. 1. *scheep als grete as oeen*.—The Crusading chroniclers relate that in Asia Minor the Crusaders had to be carried on the backs of large sheep (Michaud, *Bibl. d. Crois.*, 1829, Vol. I., p. 7; Tiedau, *Chanson d'Antioche*, 1912, pp. 18-19).

p. 190, l. 5. *ij. in anoper*.—Duplication of Vincent. See above, note to p. 189, l. 37.

Ibid. *etynghe hem goynge*.—R.: les aloient mangeantz, *i. e.* were eating them. Mistranslation.

p. 190, l. 6. *toward the north*.—R.: vers austre, *i. e.* to the South. Mistranslation.

p. 190, l. 8. *precious stones*.—Vincent de Beauvais: Apollonides perhibet in Seythia foeminas nasci, quae Bithiae vocantur, hasque in oculis pupillas habere geminas, et perimere visu, si forte iratae aliquem aspexerint, hae sunt et in Sardinia (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XXXI., c. cxxiv., col. 2391, ed. 1524). The *Romant d'Alexandre* tells of snakes with female faces and with bright gems in the centre of their foreheads:

viaires ont de fumes, mult sunt grant figurées.
 sor les espaules gisent les grans crines dorées;
 ceseune d'une pierre sunt toutes estelées,
 en mi le front lor sient, mult i sunt bien posées
 mais plus grant clarté jete que candelles cirées.
 (éd. Michelant, 1846, p. 294, ll. 2 ff.)

The poet probably read gemmas = precious stones for Vincent's geminas = double pupils.

p. 190, l. 17. *Cadeberiz*.—Unexplained. In the Alexandrian romances, a fair girl fed on serpents and on venom is sent to Alexander by a queen of India. Aristotle foresees that she might bring death to the king (J. Franck, Introduction to J. van

Maerlant's *Alexander*, p. xx., ed. 1882). Sir G. Warner quotes Vincent de Beauvais: Angylae vero solos colunt infernos foeminas suas primis noctibus nuptiarum adulteriis cogunt patere, mox ad perpetuam pudicitiam legibus stringunt severissimis (*Spec. Hist.*, I. 88). The boy who takes money to act as substitute for a husband is the theme of a Medieval fabliau (*Van den enape van Dordrecht*, ed. E. Verwijs, *X. goede boerden*, 1860). This may have been contaminated with the Alexandrian tale by d'Outremeuse. In the sixteenth century it was used by Machiavelli in the second act of his *Mandragola*.

p. 190, l. 25. *schall pleyne*, etc.—R.: il soy pleindroit du vallet, qe naueroit mie fait soun deuer, auxi bien come si li vallet ly vousist tuer, i. e. he would complain of the boy, that he did not do his duty, just as if the boy had wanted to kill him. Mis-translation.

p. 191, l. 2. *gret sorre*.—Vincent de Beauvais: recens natum fletu parens excipit et econtra laeta sunt funera, adeo ut exemptos gaudiis prosequantur (*Spec. Hist.*, I. I., ch. lxxxix.).

p. 191, l. 7. *bremmen hem*.—Duplicate of p. 114, ll. 5–17.

p. 191, l. 18. *electionn*.—Vincent de Beauvais, *Spec. Hist.*, I. I., c. lxxxix.

p. 192, l. 1. *another yle*.—Vincent de Beauvais, *Spec. Hist.*, I. I., c. xc.

p. 192, l. 13. *no man knoweth*.—This joke is not in Vincent.

p. 192, l. 17. *cokodrilles*.—Vincent de Beauvais: De crocodilo . . . In terra et in aqua valens, . . . nocte in aquis, die humi quiescit . . . linguam non habet . . . Hyeme cibum nullum capiunt . . . Crocodilus siquando invenerit hominem, et potest eum vincere comedit eum, et postea super eum plorat. Solus in animalibus oris superiora movet et inferiora manent immota (*Spec. Nat.*, I. XVII., c. cvi., ed. 1624).

p. 92, l. 21. *as in a drem*.—R.: en agone. Vincent: Hyeme cibum nullum capiunt (*Spec. Nat.*, I. XVII., c. cvi., col. 1302, ed. 1524).

p. 192, l. 26. *cotoun*.—Sir G. Warner quotes Jacques de Vitry: Sunt ibi praeterea arbusta quaedam, quae seminantur, ex quibus colligunt bombacem, quae (*sic*) Francigenae cottonem seu coton appellant, et est quasi medium inter lanam et sericum, ex quo subtilia vestimenta contextuntur (p. 1099).

p. 192, l. 32. *abyden all quyk*.—Vincent de Beauvais: Juniperus

græce dicta est . . . eo quod conceptum ignem diu teneat (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XII., c. lxxi., col. 922, ed. 1624).

p. 192, l. 34. *of nature*.—R.: de bonus, *i. e.* of ebony. Mis-translation. Vincent: eademque virtus est junipero, quæ et cedro, ejus materies oleo peruncta, nec ruinam nec cariem sentit (*ibid.*).

p. 192, l. 36. *as a mannes hed*.—The cocoa-nut, nux Indica (Vincent, *Spec. Nat.*, l. XIV., c. li.), already mentioned on p. 176, l. 14.

p. 192, l. 37. *Oraql'es*.—Another form of the word giraffe. Vincent calls it camelopardus (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XIX., c. ix.).

p. 193, l. 1. *Gerfiuntz*.—Another form of giraffe, a-similated to elefant (*N.E.D.*).

Ibid. *pomelee*.—R.: techchele, *i. e.* spotted; pomeli in Stratmann-Bradley.

p. 193, l. 6. *Camles*.—Vincent: Chamaeleon non habet unum colorem, sed diversa varietate conspersus est . . . corpusculum. . . . Hiatus eius æternus ac sine usus illius ministerio. Quippe cum neque cibum capiat, neque potu alatur, nec alimento alio quam hausto aere vivat. Color varius et in momento mutabilis (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XIX., c. vi., p. 1386, ed. 1624).

p. 193, l. 12. *grete serpentes*.—The serpent of Mount Tygris, which Baudouin de Beauvais and the other "Chétifs" had to fight in the Crusading epics, was blue, white, yellow, green, black and red, covered itself with long ears when it grew angry, and wore in its forehead a gem that shone in the dark (*Godéf. de Bouillon*, éd. Hippeau, 1877, p. 211).

p. 193, l. 18. *throte open*.—The threatening attitude of the serpent Satenas in the *Chétifs*:

Longement ot la beste sa grant gole baée.

(éd. Hippeau, 1877, p. 426).

p. 193, l. 20. *swyn*.—Vincent: apri ingentis formæ (*Spec. Hist.*, l. IV., c. liv., p. 132, ed. 1624).

p. 193, l. 24. *lyouns all white*.—Vincent: albi leones (*ibid.*).

p. 193, l. 26. *Loerancz*.—I suspect derivation from the Lestrigons, imagined as man-eating monsters in the Middle Ages.

p. 194, l. 27. *Odenthos*.—Vincent: una bestia major elephante tribus armata in fronte cornibus: quam Indi appellant Odontatyrannum (*sic*) capitis equini: coloris atrii (as in note to p. 193, l. 20). Originally, its name was *odontotyrannos*; its French form in the

Crusading epic is dentuant = dent + tyran (*Chanson d'Antioche*, quoted by Pigeonneau, *Le Cycle des Croisades*. 1877. p. 108).

p. 193, l. 29. *scandre*.—R.: ffauues, *i. e.* tawny. Perhaps the Englisher read flo = flue, weak. Mistranslation.

p. 193, l. 32. *.rj. feet*.—Vincent has a monster, "pedum . . . binorum ternorumque," *i. e.* two- or three-footed (?) (*Spec. Hist.*, l. IV., c. lviii.). D'Outremeuse makes it six-footed.

p. 193, l. 35. *myse*.—Duplicate of the giant rats of p. 111, l. 19.

Ibid. *3alowe myse*.—R.: chauue soriz, *i. e.* bats. The Englisher read jaune instead of chauue. Mistranslation.

p. 193, l. 36. *Gees*.—Probably invented by d'Outremeuse.

p. 194, l. 10. *kyndely lawe*.—Lex naturae, sive naturalis was a current phrase (see Schütz, *Thomas-Lexikon*, 1895, p. 443), opposed to written law or Scripture. Jacques de Vitry: Ex his patet quam religiose et secundum legem naturae vixissent isti Brachmani qui nec legem Mosaicam nec legem euangelij audierant . . . (*Hist. or.*, ed. 1597, pp. 212–213). The word lex, law, also meant religion, especially among the Averroists, who placed the various religions on the same level (Renan, *Averroes*, 1866, p. 359). The English doctor Mandeville may have made the younger notary d'Outremeuse acquainted with such views. "Médecine, averroïsme, astrologie, incrédulité, devinrent des termes presque synonymes" (*ibid.*, pp. 327–328). In Valerius, the Brahman Dindimus writes to Alexander:

Una genti lex est: contra ius non ire naturae.

(ed. Knebler, 1888, p. 172).

A Wycliffite proposition condemned by Simon Langham is given as follows: nature has sufficient means to achieve the natural end of man, if by natural end is meant everlasting bliss (Magnan: *Histoire d'Urbain V.*, 1862).

p. 194, l. 16. *And 3if no charge*, etc.—R.: ne nount cure danoir ne de richesse, *i. e.* do not care about property or wealth. The *N.O.D.* classifies the phrase: to give no charge of = to make of no account, under *charge*, sb. 9 b, but gives no example. 3if here stands for give, 3rd pers. pl., ind. pres.

p. 194, l. 23. *Thebe*.—Bovenschen refers to the river Tabobenus in the *Historia de Preliis* (p. 223), Sir G. Warner to the river Tiberoboam in the *Pseudo-Callisthenes* (III., 13, p. 110), and Jul. Valerius.

p. 194, l. 26. *no thef, etc.*—Vincent: Apud Seres, neque meretrix, neque adultera, neque fur ad iudicium ducitur. neque occisus homo fertur aliquando. Sed apud eos legum suorum metus vehementior, quam genesis constellatio: hi in initio orbis terrae habitant. Seres quia caste vivunt, nec aerugine, nec grandine, nec pestilentia, et malis huiusmodi affliguntur, quia nec post conceptum adiri ultra apud eos foemina fas est, neque cum purgatur. Carnibus immundis nemo ibi vescitur, sacrificia nemo novit. Secundum iustitiam omnes sibi ipsi iudices fiunt, ideo non castigantur huiusmodi plagis, sed plurimum temporis in vita durantes absque aegritudine vitam finiunt (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XXXI., c. cxxix., col. 2394–5).

p. 194, l. 29. *weren religious, etc.*—R.: et si sount si chastes et meignent si bone vie come nuls religious parroient faire, *i.e.* they are as chaste and lead as good lives as any religious men might do.

p. 195, l. 5. *is plesed, etc.*—R.: et prent a gre lour creaunce et lour bons ourez, *i.e.* allows their belief and their good deeds. The French original is heretical: how can God approve of the belief of infidels? The Englisher balances the good deeds against the evil faith, which seems more orthodox. Mistranslation.

p. 195, l. 11. *And it befell, etc.*—R.: En le temps iadis le roy Alisandre enuoya despier (Brussels 10420–5 delijr) ceux de celle isle, pur ceo qil voloit gaigner lour pais, *i.e.* In times past, king Alexander sent out to espy (defy) those of that island, because he wanted to win their country. Mistranslation.

p. 195, l. 25. *Oure wyfes, etc.*—R.: Noz femmes ne sount mie pares pur plere, ancis tendrent beal parement pur folie, quant homme se peneroit pur enbeler le corps pur faire sembler plus beau qe Dieu nel ad fait, *i.e.* our women are not adorned to please, but hold a fair array as madness, if a man is at pains to beautify the body in order to make it look fairer than God made it. Mistranslation.—Duplicate of Adamite paradoxes on p. 118, ll. 18–27.—Vincent: Nullus nobis preciosus amictus; sed membra papyri tegmine, vel quod est verius pudore velantur: feminae nostrates non ornantur ut placeant: nec sciunt in augenda pulchritudine plus affectare quam natae sunt, nam quis potest opus naturae corrigere? (*Spec. Hist.*, l. IV., c. lxviii., pp. 135–136, ed. 1624).

p. 195, l. 32. *.ij. thinges.*—Vincent: Tutius nos defendit ab imbre spelunca quam tegula, cuius geminus est nobis usus, mansionis, dum vivimus, sepulturae, dum morimur (*ibid.*).

p. 196, l. 4. *rightwisness*.—R.: iustice, *i. e.* the repression of crime. Mistranslation.

p. 196, l. 13. *Oxibrale . . . Gynosophe*.—Sir G. Warner refers to Jacques de Vitry's mention of Oxydraces seu Gymnosophistae (p. 1108) as one people. The Englisher follows R. Brussels 10420–5 applies both names to one island.

p. 197, l. 5. *And all be it*, etc.—As no source for this is known, it may be taken as original. That Job, like Adam, Henoch and Noah, was neither Jew nor Christian, but a heathen, and praised for piety nevertheless, occurs in Wolfram's *Willehalm* (306, 29), according to H. Reuter, *Gesch. d. relig. Aufklärung im Mittelalter*, II., 1877, p. 66.

p. 197, l. 16. *Ponam*, etc.—I shall give them my various laws. Can this be from Hosea viii. 12: I have written to him the great things of my law, etc.?

p. 197, l. 17. *Qui totum*, etc.—Who subjected the whole earth to his laws. Source?

p. 197, l. 18. *Alias oues*.—John x. 16: And other sheep I have, which are not of this fold.

p. 197, l. 27. *Non dicas*, etc.—Acts x. 15: What God hath cleansed, that call not thou common.

p. 197, l. 30. *hateth*.—Brussels 10420–5 quotes Acts x. 34–35: Of a truth I perceive that God is no respecter of persons. [Interpolation: He does not distinguish between Jews and Gentiles.] But in every nation he that feareth him, and worketh righteousness, is accepted with him.

p. 197, l. 32. *Pro animabus*, etc.—For the souls of all deceased for whom prayer should be offered.—A passage from the burial service, not identified with any given use. The current Roman prayer-book prays only for the faithful, not for all men.

p. 198, l. 1. *prophecyed*.—Duplicate of p. 11, l. 17: Jhesu crist schall be born, etc. The 2000 years of p. 11, l. 19 have now become 3000 or more (p. 198, l. 2)!

p. 198, l. 3. *or*.—R.: anaunt, *i. e.* before.

p. 198, l. 7. *Pytan*.—This imaginary island is, according to Sir G. Warner's guess, drawn from the name of the Trispithami, a people mentioned in Pliny after the Astomi (VII., 25).

p. 198, l. 11. *lyuen be the smell*.—Vincent: Gāngis fontem qui accolunt, nullius ad escam opis indigent, odore pomorum sylvestrium vivunt, longiusque pergentes eadem illa in praesidium gerunt, ut olfacta alantur (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XXXI., c. cxxviii., ed. 1524). Imitated in the *Roman d'Alexandre*:

le dolor des espées [var. : espices] aloient tout flairant.
ne vivent d'autre cose.

(éd Michelant, 1846, p. 353.)

In Cyrano's *Voyage comique*, the inhabitants of the moon live on smoke (Borkowski, *Anglia* XV., 388).

p. 198, l. 16. *all skynned*.—Vincent : Sunt et homines quidam utriusque sexus nudi incedentes, corpus pilosum in modum bestiarum habentes, et aeque in flumine, et in terra habitantes : qui cum extraneos homines supervenire vident, in flumine submersi non apparent. Sunt agrestes magni valde, et pilosi sicut porci, et quasi ferae mugientes (*Spec. Nat.*, l. XXXI., c. cxxviii., col. 2394, ed. 1524).

p. 198, l. 20. *fisch all rough*.—The Ichthyophagi, mentioned by Vincent (*Spec. Hist.*, l. IV. c. lv.), after the Epistle of Alexander.

p. 198, l. 22. *Buemare*.—Vincent : The river Buemar is reached by Alexander after he has seen the gold simulacres of the gods Hercules and Liber (*Spec. Hist.*, l. IV. c. lv., p. 132, ed. 1624).

p. 198, l. 26. *trees of the sonne*, etc.—Vincent, *Spec. Hist.*, IV. lvi., ed. 1624.

p. 198, l. 30. *of the barme*.—Brussels 10420-5 here introduces Ogier the Dane, who, having tasted balm, was permitted to live until he asked for death.

p. 198, l. 32. *as I have told*.—Duplicate of p. 32, ll. 13 ff.

p. 198, l. 36. *wylde bestes*.—Both the Alexandrian and the Crusading epics describe fights between heroes and beasts.

p. 199, l. 10. *wherefore*.—The story seems an original invention of Jean d'Outre-meuse's. A different version occurs in the same author's *Miroir des Histoires* : Ogier crowns John to be King of India, and as this is the first king of India who believes in God, he orders all his successors to be called John, as all Roman Emperors are called Caesar after Julius Caesar (Vol. III., 1873, p. 66). This is repeated in Brussels 10420-5. John of Hildesheim has a similar tale : The Three Kings, having no heirs, elect a ruler and call him priest John, because the priest is the worthiest and most powerful of mortals (ed. 1878, p. 20). There may be an historical connection between the legend of Prester John and the Ionitus, son of Noah of *Pseudo-Methodius* : Ionitus autem, filius Noe, introivit in Enoam usque ad mare, qui vocatur hiliu chora [ἡλίου χώρα] id est regio solis, in quo solis ortum (*sic*) fit et habitavit ibidem (ed. Sackur, 1898, pp. 63-64).

p. 200, l. 3. *Popes*.—If read in conjunction with other allusions to the Papacy, this may be interpreted as blaming the Church of Rome for straying from Early Christian tradition.

p. 200, l. 6. *Taprobane*.—Vincent (*Spec. Hist.*, l. I., c. lxxix., p. 28, ed. 1624).

p. 200, l. 10. *aj. someres*.—Vincent: In hac autem insula dicunt in uno annó duas esse aestates, et duas hyemes, et bis floribus vernare locum (*ibid.*).

p. 200, l. 21. *Orille . . . Argyte*.—Vincent: Chryse et Argere sunt insulae in Indico oceano sitae, adeo fecundae copia metallorum, ut plerique eas auream superficiem et argenteam habere prodiderint, unde et vocabula sortitae sunt (*ibid.*).

p. 200, l. 26. *Canapos*.—Canopus.

p. 200, l. 29. *Pissemyres*.—The giant ants are from Vincent, *Spec. Nat.*, XX., cxxxiv.: Formicae (ut dictum est) dicuntur esse in Aethiopia ad formam maximi canis, etc.

p. 201, l. 11. *zonge coltes*.—This stratagem occurs in Vincent and in the legends of Alexander: on entering the land of Darkness, he selects five hundred female asses, whose foals are left at the entrance (Friedländer: *Die Chadhirlegende*, 1913, p. 54).

p. 201, l. 29. *the derke Reggoun*.—Duplicate of p. 172, ll. 28 ff. One explanation of this legend is the darkening of the air through a thick cloud of dust at the battle of Arbela (A. Ausfeld: *Alexander-roman*, 1907, p. 145; the footnote refers to *Curt.*, IV., 15, 32).

p. 202, l. 17. *sche*.—R. has the feminine, as the pronoun stands for the feminine terre. The Englisher blindly follows his French original, and writes nonsense. Mistranslation. In ll. 15 and 16 the pronoun it is correctly used.

p. 202, l. 23. *mosse*.—This seems one of the whimsical inventions of d'Outremeuse. R.: Et sont ly murs toutz couertez de mosse, ceo semble et ny piert pierre nautre chose, dount ly mur soit, *i. e.* and the walls are all covered with moss, to all appearance, and there appears neither stone nor any other thing that the wall is made of. The initiate probably guessed the meaning of this. Baudouin de Sebourg goes to Paradise, and finds a tree the fruits of which make people young or old (*Hist. Litt.*, Vol. XXV., pp. 573-574).

p. 202, l. 29. *aiij. flodes*.—Vincent, *Spec. Hist.*, l., lxiii.

p. 202, l. 32. *Emlak*.—Duplicate of p. 104, l. 26.

p. 203, l. 13. *in the langage*, etc.—R.: Gyon en langage de Ethiopiens voet dire Trouble, et auxi Nil en langage Degipte est a

dire Trouble, *i. e.* Gion in the Aethiopian language means turbid, and Nile in the Egyptian language also means turbid. Possibly the word Nile was omitted and the meaning spoilt by the scribe.

p. 203, l. 17. *Tigris*.—This pun is repeated in Gauthier de Lille's (or de Chatillon's) *Alexandreis* :

Tigri velocior ipso
Tigri qui celeri sortitur ab impetu nomen
Tigris aquas superat.

(ed. 1863, Book III., p. 70, l. 450 ff.)

p. 203, l. 21. *may not approchen*.—Prof. W. H. Schofield compares this to the situation in the *Pearl*, where an impassable river keeps visitors out of Paradise (*Publ. M.L.A. of America*, vol. XIX., p. 190.—1904).

p. 203, l. 25. *pat ben pere*, etc.—R. : ou il y a mointz, *i. e.* literally, where there are many. Brussels 10420-5 : dont ilh yat mult, *i. e.* of which there are many. The Englisher, following a bad reading, made a bad translation.

p. 203, l. 30. *huge noyse*.—For parallels, Sir G. Warner refers to Yule's *Cathay*, p. 346.

p. 204, l. 11. *for to comen*.—R. : parroit reuenir, *i. e.* he might come back. The Englisher turns the principal clause into a prepositional phrase. Mistranslation.

p. 204, l. 19. *Casson*.—Odoric calls the capital of Prester John's land Cosan and one of its provinces Cossam : Quant on yst d'une cité tantost on voit la porte de l'autre (pp. 434-435). Cordier suggests the province of Kan-sou, capital Kan-tcheou (p. 445).

p. 204, l. 28. *And pat is*, etc.—R. : quelque part qe lem aile, *i. e.* wherever one may go. The Englisher's rendering is clumsy.

p. 205, l. 7. *Ryboth*.—Odoric (pp. 449-454).

p. 205, l. 12. *ferne*.—R. : feutre, *i. e.* felt. Odoric : fuerre (p. 449). The Englisher attempted to copy the French word which he could not understand.

p. 205, l. 14. *pathed*.—R. : paues, *i. e.* paved.

p. 205, l. 18. *lobassy*.—Odoric : En ceste cité demeure l'obassy, c'est à dire leur pape en leur langage. Il est chief de tous les ydolatres et donne les benefices du pays a sa guise (p. 450). According to Cordier, the head of any Buddhist convent was styled Bakehy (pp. 459-462).

p. 205, l. 23. *whan the juder is ded*.—Almost exactly from Odoric (pp. 451-452).

p. 206, l. 7. *Subuenite*, etc.—Come, saints of God, etc. Still in present use in the Roman burial service. This comparison between the Christian priest, who calls on the saints to carry a soul to heaven, and the keeper of a tower of silence, inviting the birds to devour dead bodies, reads like a gruesome burlesque of the service.

p. 206, l. 21. *let brynge forth*.—R.: fait mettre enyre, *i. e.* has the head put on the fire to be cooked. Mistranslation.

p. 206, l. 23. *sukkarke*.—Sub-charge in the *N.E.D.* The French original has only entremes, which is synonymous with sub-charge or sukkarke. Innocent III. allowed entremets only to earls, barons and other noblemen. French prelates were only allowed two courses, the entremets being the third (Michaud, *Bibl. d. Cr.*, I., p. 322).

p. 206, l. 35. *for he is*, etc.—R.: et trop est il riche, *i. e.* and he is passing rich.

p. 207, l. 2. *damyseles*.—Odoric: Il avoit L damoiselles vierges qui le servoient à la table et lui apportoient tous ses mez IIII doubles ou V. The close of the sentence is out of d'Outremense's licentious imagination. Parallels to this tale occur in legends of the land of Cockayne (Poeschel, Schlaraffenland, *P.B.B.*, 1878, p. 417); in Athenaeus (*ibid.*, p. 394 fn. refers to Meineke, *Fragm.*, II. 1, 299); and in the sequel to Defoe's *Crusoe*: *Further Adventures of Robinson Crusoe* (ed. G. A. Aitken, 1895, p. 259): one [female slave] fed the squire with a spoon, and the other held the dish with one hand, and scraped off what he let fall upon his worship's beard and taffeta vest.

p. 207, l. 6. *.v. and .v. togedre*.—R.: elles ly apportent sa viaunde, a chescun foiz v. mes ensemble, *i. e.* they bring him his meat, each time five dishes together. Further down (l. 23) the *Manderille* speaks of fiye damsels, not of five dishes. Mistranslation.

p. 207, l. 12. *to haue longe nayles*.—Odoric: Moult leur semble bel d'avoir longs ongles, etc. (p. 454).

p. 207, l. 17. *bynde hire feet*.—Odoric: Si que les mères quant elles ont filles elles leur loient les piez si que jamais ne peuvent après croistre (p. 454).

p. 207, l. 28. *dedes of Armes*.—This peculiar form of morality is in keeping with the conventions of the romances of chivalry.

p. 207, l. 35. *in the myl place*.—This seems a duplicate of the account of the palace, garden and mountour on pages 140-142.

p. 208, l. 1. *toothill*.—R.: mouster. Brussels, 10420-5:

mostier, *i.e.* minster. Stratmann-Bradley explains tote-hil as a mount of observation. Mistranslation.

p. 208, l. 15. *god of nature*.—Brussels 10420-5: yroga, ce est a dier dieu de nature. If this is the original reading, d'Outremeuse here openly approves of idolaters.

Ibid. *Et metuent*, etc.—Ps. lxxvii. 7: and all the ends of the earth shall fear him.

p. 208, l. 16. *Omnes gentes*.—Ps. lxxii. 11: all nations shall serve him.

p. 208, l. 24. *pat worschipen hem*.—R.: qils adorent, *i.e.* which they worship. Mistranslation.

p. 208, l. 29. *han ymages*.—A covert hit at the worship of images.

p. 209, l. 8. *hire error*.—This heterodox peroration, begun on p. 208, l. 7, summarises the teaching of the whole book.

p. 209, l. 10. *I have not seen*.—An imitation, or rather parody, of honest Odoric's statement (p. 497).

p. 209, l. 31. *And 3ee schull*, etc.—This passage, down to p. 210, l. 18, is missing in R., in Brussels 10420-5, and in the Middle English Egerton MS. printed by Sir G. Warner.

p. 209, l. 33. *holy fulir*.—Haiton similarly concludes his *Flower of Histories* by a dedication submitting it to the Pope's correction. The parody of this in the *Mandeville* is the more impudent as the Papacy is often attacked in it. Vogels points out that there was no Pope in Rome between 1309 and 1379 (*Handschriftliche Untersuchungen*, etc., 1891). According to Poeschel, the *Fabliou de Coquaigne* (thirteenth century) relates that the burlesque pilgrimage to the land of Cockayne takes place by the Pope's orders (Schlaraffenland, *P.B.B.* 1878, p. 408). Boldensele's book of Travels is dated from the Papal Court of Avignon, St. Michael's day, 1337 (ed. 1855, p. 29).

p. 210, l. 13. *Mappu Mundi*.—O. H. Prior, in his Introduction to Gossouin's *Image du Monde* (1913), reports that one MS. gives its title as Mapemonde (p. 15). Jacques de Vitry mentions mappu mundi as one of his sources at the close of his *Historia orientalis* (ed. 1597, p. 215). On a French poem: Mappemonde, see *Hist. Litt.*, Vol. XXIII, pp. 292-293.

p. 210, l. 21. *xxij*.—Brussels 10420-5 adds: le jour de St. Michiel. See above, note to p. 209, l. 33.

p. 210, l. 27. *to reste*.—Boldensele: desideravi multum recedere

. . . ut post laborem aliquali quiete commode recrearer (ed. 1855, p. 78).

p. 210, l. 30. *fulfilled*.—R.: compilez, *i. e.* compiled. Mistranslation.

p. 210, l. 32. *Mill. .ccc. t .lxxj.*—As the journey was purely fictitious, it could neither begin in 1322 nor end in 1356. At the latter date, Jean d'Outremeuse was eighteen years old, and Sir John Mandeville still had sixteen years to live.

p. 210, l. 33. *oure contrees*.—Brussels 10420-5: de mon pays dedens le noble cite de Liège en j hosteit en la basse sauénier que ons dit al hoste herbin levo ou je gisoy malaide. sy men visentoit j. venerable homme phisechiens ly quis moy metit en la voye de fair chi liure et moy cognut. Car illi mauoit vent en egipte a Cayr ou je demoroy aveuc le soudans et illh y demoroit assy li quis aydat fair le [illegible] qui est entre nos pays et egipte. Car illh yauoit demoreit long temps, *i. e.* from my country in the noble city of Liège in a house of the Basse Sauvenière called the house of Herbin Levo where I lay sick. Here I was visited by a worshipful physician who put me in the way of making this book and who knew me for having seen me at Cairo in Egypt where I stayed with the Sowdan and he stayed there also. And he helped to make the [voyage?] that is between our land and Egypt. Cf. Introduction, pp. 4-7.

p. 211, l. 2. *graunte hem part*.—This profane joke is worthy of Reynard the Fox, when having deceived and robbed all the court, he promises to make them partners of his merits as a palmer beyond the seas.

p. 212, l. 5. *it turnes in to flesch*.—H: elle deuient char et sang. Not in Boldensele. Valerius has a story of a statue of Orpheus beginning to sweat when Alexander looks at it: Cum igitur admirationis studio simulacrum illud Alexander intueretur, sudor repente profluere et per omne simulacri illius corpus manare visus non sine admiratione videntium fuit (ed. Kübler, 1888, p. 57). The Alexandrian romances familiar to d'Outremeuse made the most of this (Nöldeke, *Der Alexanderroman*, 1890, p. 5).

p. 212, l. 6. *Bochar*.—Identified by Sir G. Warner with el-Buká'a, which separates Lebanon from Antilibanus. Schefer, note to Bertrand de la Broquière: Les écrivains et les voyageurs du Moyen-Âge donnent le nom de Val de Noé à la plaine de la Beqa'a où ce patriarche aurait construit l'arche et planté la vigne (ed. 1892, p. 31 fn.). Ernoul connects it with the Alexandrian romances: Entre ces ij montaignes a une valée, c'on apiele le Val

Bacar, la ou li home Alexandre alerent en fuere, quant il aseia Sur. Dont cil qui le Romant en fist pour mieus mener se rime, le noma le Val de Iosaphas por se rime faire (ed. 1882, p. 56).

p. 212, l. 17. *arkez*.—Called *Archæ* by Dr. Bovenschen, who refers to Jacques de Vitry, c. lxxxviii., p. 167, and Foucher de Chartres, lib. III., li. About the etymology deriving it from Noah's ark I find nothing.

p. 212, l. 17. *Raphane*.—Modern: Rafinèh, or Rafanîyeh (Sir G. Warner).

p. 212, l. 18. *Sabatory*.—An intermittent spring, described by Pliny (XXXI. 2) as resting on the Sabbath. D'Outremense, when making it work only on the Sabbath, may have intended a joke.

p. 212, l. 21. *on nyghtes fresez*.—Jacques de Vitry (p. 1098) knows such a river in Persia.—Here the pilgrimage of Boldensele comes to an end, and the author of *Manderille*, before choosing another guide, indulges in geographical commonplaces.

p. 214, l. 8. *Dispolis* or *Lidda*.—From Boldensele.—Bertrandon de la Broquière, 1892, p. 10.

p. 214, l. 14. *Modyn*.—Burchard, *De Terra Sancta*, 1864: De Bethsames duabus leucis contra austrum in monte Juda videtur mons Modin, de quo oriundi erant Machabei. Et monstrantur hodie sepulchra eorum illic etiam procul, ita ut videantur in mari, quia alte situs est locus, p. 84.

p. 214, l. 17. *Techue*.—From Eugesippus.

p. 214, l. 23. *pe sauour of pe see*.—H.: le charoier de la mer, *i. e.* the sea passage. Other MSS. give *flaireur*, smell, the reading translated in the Egerton MS.

p. 214, l. 33. *Ruffynell*.—Somewhere about Nicomedia. What Sybel writes of the geographical confusion of Albert d'Aix applies to this passage of the *Manderille*, which is inspired by Albert: The confusion is worst in dealing with the army of Poitou, which is thrown about from Nicomedia to Stancona (Iconium), from thence to Finiminae (Philomelium), then marches again to Reclei (Archalla, *i. e.* the modern Erkle, on the border of Armenian Cilicia); in brief, to all the quarters of the world (*Geschichte des ersten Kreuzzugs*, 1881, p. 71).

p. 214, l. 35. *Pulueral*.—Identified by Sir G. Warner with Bafira, on the southern shore of the Black Sea, south-east of Sinope. *Alb. Aqu.*, 1879, l. VIII., c. xvii.: castellum imperatoris

Pulveral nomine Παιράκη. Paurae or Paurace, according to Dr. Bovenschen.

p. 215, l. 7. *Lay*.—Explained by Sir G. Warner as the French lay = lake, repeating that word from l. 6.

p. 215, l. 8. *Nairmont and by þe vales of Mailbrins*.—*Alb. Aqu.*, 1879, l. III., c. i., p. 339 : in vertice Nigrorum montium in valle nomine Malabrunias.

p. 215, l. 9. *Ormanx* is not recognisable.

p. 215, l. 10. *Riclay and Scanton*.—*Alb. Aqu.*, 1879, l. III. c. i., p. 340 : Tancredus . . . ad urbes Finiminis, Reclei et Stancona descendit. The *Manderille* turns the towns into rivers.

p. 215, l. 11. *Antioche þe lesse*.—Yalovatch.

p. 215, l. 16. *Romany*.—Asia Minor.

p. 215, l. 17. *Florach*.—*Alb. Aqu.*, 1879, l. IV., c. vi. : Foloraca arx, quae est juxta mare et confinia regni Russiae. All the names in this passage are in Albert.

p. 215, l. 23. *Artoise*.—Artasia.

p. 215, l. 25. *to þe cite of Damasc*.—H. : et vient des fontaines et des roches de deuers la cite de Damase, *i. e.* and it arises from wells and rocks in the neighbourhood of Damascus. Mistranslation.

p. 215, l. 29. *Eustace*.—Chap. clxi. of the *Golden Legend*. Eugesippus : Montes Libani et planitiem Archados transfluit Abana, mari magno se copulans finibus illis, quibus S. Eustachius, ab uxore sua privatus et filiis desolatus recessit (p. 994).

p. 215, l. 31. *reed see*.—Instead of Mediterranean !

p. 215, l. 32. *Phenice*.—H. : Phemynie, *i. e.* Philomelium, incidentally mentioned out of its proper geographical place by Albert of Aix (Sir G. Warner).

p. 216, l. 5. *ranne þe water*.—H. : court celle riuiere.

p. 216, l. 7. *.ccc. and fifty toures*.—Albert has only four (III. 38).

p. 216, l. 13. *lund of Channel*.—Jacques de Vitry (p. 1073) : Emissena civitas, quae hodie Camela seu Chamele, *i. e.* ancient Emessa, now Homs.

p. 216, l. 17. *Gibilet*.—Byblos.

p. 216, l. 21. *Maryn*.—H. : par marine, *i. e.* along the sea-shore.

Ibid. *Flagramy*.—Sir G. Warner writes : in Syria.

p. 216, l. 30. *anoper way*.—Hayton, *Fleur des Histoires de la Terre d'Orient*, 1906, IV., c. xxv., p. 247, also describes three routes for Crusaders to the Holy Land, the first across Barbary,

quite unlike the above, the second partly by land, over Constantinople, the third altogether by sea. This threefold division may have induced d'Outremeuse to describe a third Continental route to the Holy Land across Tartary!

Ibid. *3yt es pare*, etc.—H.: Il y ad vnqore vn autre chemyn par ou homme puet aler sanz passer mer tot par terre insques a Ierusalem de Flandres ou de France en auant.—Here the fiction of a traveller starting from the British Isles, as in c. i., p. 4, l. 21, is not upheld. Neither is the starting-point placed at Liège, the actual residence of both the English doctor Mandeville and the Liégeois notary d'Outremeuse.

INDEX

- AARON, rod of, in Ark of Covenant, 56/14.
- Abana, river, St. Eustace lost family in, 215/28.
- Abbey of Monks, in China, 137/7, etc.
- Abbot of Mt. Sinai, miraculous election of, 39/35.
- Abchaz (Abkhasia), kingdom of, on way to India, 170/25 (*see* Note); part of Georgia, yet distinct from Georgia Proper, 172/21; defended by its Christian king, 172/24; Land of Darkness in, 172/27; devout Christians of, 174/7.
- Abdyan (Abdias), prophet, buried at Sebaste, 71/21.
- Abelissam, Saracen name for balm-fruit, 32/22.
- Abednego, name given to Azariah, 21/11.
- Abel, 43/15; slain on site of Damascus, 81/26.
- Abimelech, father of Barak, 74/12 (*see* Note); killed by Abraham, 76/19. *See* Note.
- Abkhasia, *see* Abchaz.
- Abraham, dwelling-places of, 27/1, 43/6, 44/2, 71/1; oak of, 44/31; sepulchre of, at Hebron, 43/26; sacrifices of, 50/17, 71/11; garden of, 66/5; relations of, 68/17, 91/2; met Melchi-edech, 76/16; Eliezer his dispenser, 81/22; inferior to Christ, 88/7; Mahommedan belief as to, 87/33-88/10; left birthplace Ur for Canaan, 102/12.
- Absalom, Hand of, a stone monument made by him, 61/30.
- Abzor (Elbruz), Mt., 172/15. *See* Note.
- Aceldama, Christian tombs in, 62/4.
- Achellek (Et-Tih), wilderness of, described, 20/29.
- Acre (Ivacoun), sometimes called Tholomayda, now destroyed, 19/9 and 26; distances from, 19/12-20/9; Carmel near, 19/17; taken by Mel'ethasseraf, 23/3; Sephor on the road from Nazareth to, 75/25; two ways from, to Jerusalem, 216/17.
- Adam, 77/17, 118/21, 128/21, 201/33; apple eaten by, grew on cypress tree, 7/11; legend of death of, and association with Holy Cross, 7/13; apples of, 31/37; wept for 100 years for Abel at Hebron, 43/14; sepulchre of, 43/25; house of, and cave where formed and lived, 44/8; head of, found at Calvary 50/15; lake formed by tears of, 131/22; memory of, in Ceylon, 131/32.
- Adamant, or shipman's stone, used for detecting counterfeit diamonds, 107/12; rocks of, about India, 109/2, 180/4; attracts iron, 109/6, 180/6.
- Adamites, of Lamary, customs and opinions of, 118/14-119/22; constantly at war with people of Cinnabar, 125/2.
- Adana, city of, *see* Assere.
- Adders, 17/6; eaten in Mancy, 135/32. *See* also Serpents.
- Adrian, Emperor of Rome, of lineage of Troy, rebuilt Temple and protected Christians, 55/10; renamed Jerusalem, 55/18.
- Adrianople, city of, 5/13.
- Adriatic Sea, 3⁵/19.
- Adultery, punishment of, in Tartary, 164/35.
- Aelia Capitolina, Adrian's name for Jerusalem, 55/19.
- Africa, Carthage chief city of, 26/33; caliph of, 27/21; inheritance of Shem, 145/29; countries of, 175/1-15.
- Agarenes, Saraens so called, 91/4.
- Aganore, described as the father of Dido, 18/29.
- Ai (Haylla), city of, taken by Joshua, 69/31.
- Alabraundynes, precious stones, 143/28.
- Alamo (Alania), country of, 172/16.
- Albania, land of, why so called, 95/23; great hounds of, 95/26. *See* also Mancy.
- Albespine, or White Thorn, Christ's crown made of, 8/31; virtues of, 8/35.
- Aldama, city of, in Dead Sea, 67/29.

- Ale unknown to Tartars in Cathay, 165/34; made from honey in Turkestan, 169/15.
- Aleppo, kingdom of, 20/34; in Math, under Sultan's rule, 21/31. *See also* Halappee.
- Alexander, king of Macedon, 10/16; spoke with Trees of Sun and Moon, 32/28, 198/26; war with king of Chana, 109/13; built Alexandria, 103/30, 170/14; pursued Jews into Scythian Mts., 176/24; made Gates of Caspia, 178/12; dealings with Brahmins and Gymnosophists, 195/11-197/5.
- Alexandria, 12 cities so called, built by Alexander, 103/31.
- Alexandria, in Egypt, 28/16, 29/25; St. Athanasius, bishop of, 96/22; position of, 36/29; St. Catherine and St. Mark martyred at, 36/30; pictures whitewashed at, 36/33; extent of, 37/1.
- Alexandria, or Gate of Hell, 172/1, 170/13, etc. *See Note.*
- Alexandria, or Seleucia, 103/31, etc.
- Alkaran, *see* Koran.
- Alkatran (bitumen), grows about Dead Sea, 66/20.
- Alliance, sealed by blood-drinking, 129/28.
- Almayne, 4/22, 5/3, 216/34; observations re Polar Star, made by Mandeville in, 120/6; Mile of, 78/36.
- Aloes wood, out of Earthly Paradise, 37/6, 142/29; in Nile, properties of, 37/7; brought by floods of Paradise, 159/5; Great Chan's chariot made of, 159/3; sweet smell of, 159/7; in Phison river, 202/33.
- Alloth, hill of, River Nile runs under, 28/12.
- Alphabet, Greek, 13/10; Egyptian, 34/21; Hebrew, 73/4; Saracen and English, 9-/5; Persian, 100/22.
- Alpheus, sons of, came from Castle of Saffra, 77/11.
- Altars, Greek, forbidden to Latins, 12/27; only one Mass per day to be said on each altar, 12/30.
- Altazar, land of, 98/29.
- Alum, grows near Dead Sea, 66/20.
- Amazonia, 3/26; position of, 95/22; account and description of, 102/22-103/28; extent of, 177/15; Queen of, receives tribute from Jews and keeps gates of Caspia, 177/12.
- Ambassadors, purified by fire, 164/30.
- Amber, Pater-Nosters made of, 130/27.
- Amiens, head of St. John at, 72/12.
- Ammon, son of Lot, 68/2, 91/7; gave name to Saracen tribe, 91/6.
- Ammonites, name of Saracens descended from Ammon, 91/6.
- Amos, prophet, grave of, at Techue, 214/17.
- Amoure, castle of, shrine of St. Hilary at, 17/23.
- Amphibious folk, 198/18.
- Andrew, St., born at Bethsaida, 73/12; calling of, 78/7.
- Andromeda, legend of, as a giant, 19/3.
- Angel, appeared to St. Peter, 197/21; in idols, 208/37; good and bad, 209/3.
- Ani, city of, 1000 churches formerly in, 99/9. *See Note.*
- Annah, mother of Samuel, 70/17.
- Annah, high priest, association with Passion, 9/5; house of, 60/17; garden of, 9/5.
- Anne, St., mother of Blessed Virgin, body of at Constantinople, brought from Jerusalem, 9/24, 58/24; church of, at Jerusalem, 58/18; born in Castle of Sephor, 78/23.
- Annunciation, Saracen belief concerning, 85/12, etc.
- Antarectic Star, observations on, 119/25-120/36.
- Anthony the Great, St., story of his meeting with Satyr, 30/2.
- Antichrist, where he shall be born, 73/17; in his time Jews shall triumph, 177/33-178/24.
- Antioch, 215/35; described, 216/1-8.
- Antioch the Less (Yalovatch), 215/11.
- Antipodes, doctrine of, defended, 121/15, etc.; our Antipodes in Prester John's empire, 121/22.
- Ants, *see* Pismires.
- Apes, at Great Chan's court, 157/12; at abbey of Monks, 137/12.
- Apostles, their way of saying Mass, 199/36-200/2.
- Apple, golden, in hand of Justinian's image at Constantinople, 5/20; of Paradise (plantain), in Egypt, 31/27; of Sodom, 67/21; of Lebanon, 69/9; giant apples (plantains) of Caldille, 176/9; smell of wild apples food of dwarfs, 198/12. *See also* Adam.
- Apple-tree, Adam's 31/37.
- Apulia, on way to Cairo, 35/24.
- Arabia, 3/24, 5/26, 48/21, 66/25, 91/11, 95/10, 199/18; under Sultan's rule, formerly ruled by one of Three Kings, 21/32; description of, 26/19;

- caliph of, 27/17; Mahomet born in, 90/13; Mahomet reigned in, 90/37; position of, 95/10; Ninus, king of, 102/6; diamonds in, 105/1.
- Arabia, desert of, 79/1; Israelites' wanderings in, 37/16; only camels can cross, 38/8; precautions for crossing, 38/18; described, 42/6; chapel on site of Mahomet's first miracle in, 90/17.
- Arabian, language, *see* Sarmois.
- Arabians, called Bedouins, 42/7; *see also* Saracens and Bedouins.
- Ararat, Mt., called by Jews Taneez, Noah's ship on, 98/33; described, 98/32; unscaled save by monk, 99/2.
- Arboth, *see* Hebron.
- Archades, plain of, 215/31.
- Archflamen, high-priest of Saracens, 91/36.
- Archiprothepapaton, prelate of land of Lomb, duties of, 113/26.
- Architriclyn, water turned into wine at wedding of, 74/7. *See* Note.
- Are (Zerah) of Bozrah, father of Job, 101/1. *See* Note.
- Argyte (Argyre), Isle of, described, 200/21.
- Arians, 81/4.
- Aristotle, born and buried in Stagira, 10/16; worship of, 10/19.
- Ark of Covenant, contents of, 56/13; taken to Rome, 56/11; rested on Bethel, 56/10; at Shiloh, 70/20; in Galilee, 74/8.
- Arkes, castle of, 82/14, 212/17. (*See* Note.)
- Armaments, made by men only in Tartary, 165/7.
- Armenia, 3/23, 51/30; trade of, 81/20; always at war, under tribute to Saracens, 97/34-98/3; four kingdoms of, 171/26; described, 171/27-172/4; Armenia the Great, 79/2, 98/20, 174/15, 202/36, 203/1, 212/11; Little Armenia, 172/9; Castle of Sparrowhawk in, 97/8; devout Christians of, 174/7.
- Armour of hardened leather, 166/8.
- Arrows, apologue of, 150/1.
- Artoise (Artasia), bridge at, 215/23.
- Artyroun, city of, *see* Erzerum.
- Ascalon, 20/18, 48/17.
- Ascopardes, name for Bedouins, 42/8.
- Ashes, of Indian saints, kept as relics, 118/9.
- Ash-Wednesday, 13/2.
- Asia, 146/23; Cham's inheritance, greatest and best, 145/28; Asia the Deep and the More, 169/1; Asia Minor, 5/24; called Turkey, 14/13; what Asia Minor comprises, and its conquest by Constantine, 51/29. *See also* Romany.
- Asphalt, cast out of Dead Sea, 67/4.
- Ass on which Christ rode, marks of its feet, 53/7; asses eaten by Tartars in Cathlay, 165/15; milk of, drunk by Tartars, 165/31.
- Assassins, account of, 186.
- Assere (Adana), city of, 215/20.
- Assyria, 202/36.
- As-syrians, ruled Holy Land, 49/9; took body of St. Thomas the Apostle to Mesopotamia, 114/26.
- Astrolabe, 120/9; of gold in Great Chan's court, 154/5.
- Astronomy, practised at Great Chan's court, 154/2.
- Athanasius, St., Bishop of Alexandria, buried at Trebizond, 96/22; accused of heresy, wrote his psalm, 96/23.
- Athos, Mt., in Lemnos, 10/11; height and shadow of, 10/11, 27; described, 10/29.
- Augurs, predictions of, 111/9; instruments of, 154/4.
- Augustine, St., Canons of, in Church of Holy Sepulchre, 52/13; quoted concerning Confession, 80/3.
- Automatic birds, in China, 143/4; automatic birds and beasts in Mock Paradise, 185/14.
- Ave Maria, 130/28; for Mandeville, 211/1.
- Aygues, hill of, 71/17. *See* Note.
- Ayne, city of, founded by Noah, 99/8. *See* Ani and Note.
- Azariah, one of Three Holy Children, 21/9.
- Baalbec, *see* Maubek.
- Babel, Tower of, described, 25/11; founded by Nimrod, 25/18, 146/4; in desert of Arabia, 25/6; distance from Chaldea, 101/30.
- Baboons, at Great Chan's court, 157/12; at abbey of Monks, 137/13.
- Babylan, son of Thiaut Chan, 164/5.
- Babylon, city of, 95/3; described, 25/24; Tower of Babel at, 25/11; taken by Cyrus, 25/29; in Persia, and held of Great Chan, 26/2; some say Antichrist shall be born in, 73/19; Ninus, king of, 102/6.
- Babylon the Less (near Cairo), home of Sultan, 20/20 and 34, 21/1, 34/28, 37/9, 95/3, 213/11; church of

- Blessed Virgin and shrine of St. Barbara at, 21/1; patriarch Joseph dwelt at, 21/5; Three Holy Children in furnace at, 21/6; distances from, 26/17; position and description of, 27/25; smaller than Cairo, 29/3; Pyramids near, 33/36; shortest route to, 35/10; balm-cuttings taken to, 66/23; balm at, 198/32; not to be confused with Babylon the Great, 25/1.
- Babylon, Tower of, *see* Babel.
- Bacharia (Bactria) land of, 95/28, 175/23 (*see* Note); inhabitants and marvels of, 178/24-179/15.
- Báfirá, *see* Pulveral.
- Bagdad, *see* Baldak.
- Balaam, son of Beor, 66/27.
- Balacy, son of Thiant Chan, 164/5.
- Balak, king, 66/27.
- Balay, River, *see* Yangtse Kiang.
- Baldak (Bagdad), chief city of Chaldea, 26/32; called Sútis, founded by Nebuchadnezzar, 27/14; home of Daniel, 27/14; seat of Caliphs, 27/18; Caliph of, starved, 151/1.
- Baldwin, king of Jerusalem, tomb of, on Calvary, 50/19; built Mt. Royal, 70/7. *See* Note.
- Balm, in Egypt, described, growth of, and cutting of, and Saracen names for, 32/3-23; said to grow in India Major, 32/27, 198/31; counterfeited, 32/34-33/11; tests of real balm, 33/11-34; origin in Engeddi, 66/21; sweet odours when burnt, 183/34; gives long life, 198/28; grows near trees of Sun and Moon, 198/31.
- Bamboos, *see* Reeds.
- Bano, name for white pepper, 112/10.
- Barak, overcame Idumeans, 74/12. *See* Note.
- Barbara, St., shrine of, 21/4.
- Barbaresques, Caliph of, 27/21; ruled Holy Land, 49/11.
- Barberry, or Sweet Thorn, our Lord crowned with, 9/7.
- Barley, little of, in India, 180/34.
- Barnabas, St., Apostle, born near Famagosta in Cyprus, 17/24.
- Barnacle Geese, described, 176/3.
- Bashan, land of king of, 77/28.
- Basilisk, women with its power of killing with a look, 190/9.
- Bastards bitten by serpents in Sicily, 35/34.
- Bath of our Lord, in Jerusalem, miraculous property of, 58/15.
- Bathsheba, wife of David, 43/8, 57/27.
- Batu, Khan of Tartary, 83/8.
- Bay, branch of, 39/6. *See* Note.
- Beads of pearl, 130/26.
- Beans, little eaten by Tartars, 165/21, 217/3.
- Bear, 193/34.
- Beards, not shaved in Greek Church, 12/32, or by Syrian Christians, 80/27; shaved by women only in Lomb, 114/18.
- Beasts, souls of men pass into, 137/23.
- Beatific vision, Greek belief as to, 12/14.
- Beautiful Gate of Temple, 58/6.
- Bedouins, Mandeville fought against, 21/21, 42/29; description of 42-3.
- Beersheba, 78/31; described, founded by Bathsheba, home of Abraham, 43/4; distance from Jerusalem, 48/27.
- Begging, unknown among Brahmans, 194/27.
- Behseuy, *see* Lyson.
- Beirout, *see* Beruth.
- Beleth (Belbeis), town of, 20/33. *See* Note.
- Belgrade, 5/9.
- Belian (Belgian), Mt., Changuy's passage of, 149/14. *See* Note.
- Belinas, name for Dan, 78/28. *See* Dan.
- Belon (Belus), river of, 19/28.
- Bendochdare or Melechdare, Sultan of Egypt, 22/26. *See* Note.
- Beneices, sale of, 12/20.
- Benjamin, 47/34.
- Benjamin (Rama Benjamin), 70/27.
- Beor (Booz), father of Balaam, 66/27.
- Bernakes, *see* Barnacle Geese.
- Bernch (Beyrout), city of, 18/30, 212/27, 213/2.
- Betenga, isle of, described, 125/4. *See* Note.
- Bethany, home of St. Julian, 64/26; St. Luke buried at, 9/29.
- Bethel, city of, 70/36.
- Bethel rock, called Moriah, Ark of Covenant rested on, 56/10; scene of Jacob's dream, 56/31; Jacob's name changed at, 57/1; David's vision and St. Simeon's reception of our Lord at, 57/2; other scriptural associations of, 57/6-23.
- Bethlehem, city of, described, 45/18; shrines and scriptural associations of, 46-8, 100/4, 104/23, 169/5; inhabitants all Christian, 47/2; surrounded by vines, 47/3; dis-

- tances from, 48/28, 100/7; star of, 46/14, 48/2.
- Bethphage, town of, 64/19.
- Bethsaida, SS. Peter and Andrew born in, 73/12; Antichrist to be nourished in, 73/23.
- Bethshan, city of, *see* Scythopolis.
- Betron (Bosrah, Buzrah), land of, 69/12. *See also* Botron.
- Bewme, *see* Bohemia.
- Beyrout, *see* Beruch.
- Bezanzon (Byzantium), 5/14.
- Bible, relics of St. Jerome's translation of, 46/28; known well by Jacobites, 79/36; heathen belief in, 208/21. *See also* Scriptures.
- Bigon, name for wine produced in China, 137/1.
- Birds, 194/4; described as angels of God, 129/14; plentiful in Nancy. 135/27; eat dead bodies, 205/35-206/20.
- Birth as cause for sorrow, 191/2.
- Bithynia, *see* Pytan.
- Bitter rivers in Bactria, 178/32.
- Black Sea, *see* Pontus Euxinus, Maure Sea and Great Sea.
- Blindness caused by rivers of E. Paradise, 204/1.
- Blood-drinking, 129/25.
- Boar, 193/32. *See also* swine.
- Bochar (El-Buká'a), vale of, 212/6.
- Bohemia, astronomical observations by Mandeville in, 120/6.
- Bokkara, city of, *see* Boyturra.
- Booz, *see* Beor.
- Boradyn, Sultan of Egypt, 22/13. *See* Note.
- Borak Chan, wife of Thiaut Chan, 164/8.
- Botron (Bosrah, Buzrah), land of, 26/31. *See also* Betron.
- Bougiers (Bulgaria), 4/28, 5/9.
- Bouillon, Godfrey de, tomb of, 50/19.
- Bows, made of griffin's ribs, 179/10.
- Boycott of kings, 191/28.
- Boyturra (Bokkara), city of, 171/18.
- Bozrah (Gosra), 101/1. *See* Note.
- Brabant, astronomical observations by Mandeville in, 120/4.
- Brace of St. George, name for Hellespont, 10/2, 13/27, 214/32.
- Brahmans, described, 194/6-196/11; isle of, 194/6-195/11; relations with Alexander, 195/11-196/11; their natural law pleasing to God, 195/4; their prophecy and belief in Incarnation, but ignorance of Passion of Christ, 198/1.
- Brandys, *see* Brindisi.
- Bread, little eaten by Tartars, 165/19. *See also* Therf bread.
- Brindisi, on way to Cairo, 35/21.
- Brique (Phrygia), province of, 174/16.
- Britain, outside the Climates, 124/17.
- Buennare River, described, 198/20.
- Bugles (buffaloes or young bulls), 179/9.
- Bulgaria, *see* Bougiers.
- Burgoyne, 213/25; on way to Cairo, 35/13.
- Bush, Burning, the, site of, 39/11.
- Buzrah, land of, *see* Betron and Botron.
- Byzantium, *see* Bezanzon.
- Cachas, Sultan of Egypt, 22/23. *See* Note.
- Cacho, wicked angel in idols, 209/4.
- Cadeberiz, Fools of Wanlopie, 190/17.
- Cadu, son of Thiaut Chan, 164/5.
- Cesar, Julius, *see* Julius Caesar.
- Caffo, isle of, sick killed and eaten in, 12/12. *See* Note.
- Caiaphas, high priest, 9/9; founded Haifa, 19/21; house of, at Mt. Sion, 61/17.
- Cain, 43/15; slain by Lamech, age and manner of life of, 77/14; slew Abel on site of Damascus, 81/25.
- Cain, Mt. (Tell Keimûn), 7 miles from Nazareth, Cain slain at, 77/13.
- Cairo, 20/35; seat of Caliph of Egypt, 27/19; near Babylon the Less, 27/25; greater than Babylon the Less, 29/2; near Desert of Syria, 29/4; slave-market and incubators at, 31/14; balm grows near, 32/4.
- Calabre, distance from Acre, 19/13; on way to Cairo, 35/23.
- Calahelyk (El-Kalah), dwelling-place of Sultan, 21/15.
- Calamia (Mailapûr), city of, St. Thomas the Apostle's body in, 114/23; Idol of Juggernaut in, 115/17-118/13.
- Calcas (Chalce, now Cariki), in Greek Archipelago, 10/10.
- Caldilhe, kingdom of, 175/24. *See* Note.
- Caleb, came to Hebron, 43/21.
- Caliph, meaning of, 22/3 (*see* Note); power and office of, 27/10; seats of, at Bagdad, etc., 27/9 and 19; formerly 3 caliphs, 27/16; Caliph of Bagdad lord of all the Saracens, 151/1; he was taken by Halaon, and starved in midst of riches, 151/3.

- Calistre (Thera), in Greek Archipelago, 10/10.
- Calo, good angel, 209/5.
- Calonak, isle of, described, 127/17 (*see* Note); elephants used for war in, 127/28; strange custom of fish in, 128/2; giant snails and large white worms in, 128/36-129/7; suttee in, 129/7.
- Calonak, king of, family and possessions of, 127/18; warfare of, 127/28; honoured by fish, 128/2; eats white worms, 129/6.
- Calvary, Mt., Holy Cross hidden under, 7/33; description of, 50-52.
- Camaalech or Cambalee (Peking), city of, winter residence of Great Chan, 158/9. *See also* Peking.
- Camaca or Camoka (rich silk cloth), 24/20, 116/25, 153/1, 168/26.
- Cambaye, city of, *see* Golbah.
- Camblil, properties of, 44/23. *See* Note.
- Camels, better than horses in desert, 38/8; milk of, drunk by Tartars, 165/30; used to get gold, 201/4.
- Camles (chameleons) described, 193/6.
- Camoka, *see* Camaca.
- Campania, on way to Cairo, 35/23.
- Campus Floridus, legend of, 45/26-46/8.
- Cana, city of, Simon Chananeus and wife lived at, 74/3; water changed to wine at, 74/6.
- Canaan, land of, 102/16.
- Canaanites, ruled Holy Land, 49/9.
- Canapak, name for Egypt, 21/28.
- Cancer, sign of, 27/31.
- Cancee, wife of Simon Chananeus, 74/5. *See* Note.
- Canel (Cinnamon) in Java, 125/15; in Caldilhe, 176/15.
- Canes, *see* Reeds.
- Cannibalism, in Lamary, 119/13; in Caffo, 129; in Naeumera, 130/23; among relatives in Dondoun, 132/19-133/25; in an island beyond the Vale Perilous, 189/28; in Tibet, 206/20; human blood drunk, 129/25, etc.; human ears eaten by Tartars, 166/15.
- Canons Regular, in Temple, 54/20, 58/13; at Mt. Sion, 60/1; held Church of Ascension, 64/11.
- Canopat, name for Egypt, 20/31. *See* Note.
- Canopus, only star seen in Orille and Argyte, 200/26.
- Canton, city of, *see* Latorin.
- Capernaum, city of, Antichrist to reign in, 73/24; near Sephor, 78/20.
- Cappadocia, 174/15; 215/1.
- Carak, *see* Krak.
- Caramaron (Hwang-Ho) River, described, 139/36.
- Caravanserais, in deserts of China, 160/10.
- Carbunelle, of wonderful size and brilliance, belonging to Great Chan, 158/1; wonderful ones of Prester John, 183/12, 31; give light by night, 158/1, 183/12, 31.
- Carki, *see* Caleas.
- Carmel, Mt., Elijah dwelt at, 19/17; first order of Carmelites founded at, 19/18; towns near, 19/19.
- Carmelites, first foundation of, 19/18.
- Carpate (Karpathos), isle of, 10/11.
- Carrier-pigeons used in warfare, 79/7.
- Carthage, founded by Dido, 18/27, 26/33; chief city of Africa, 26/32.
- Caspia, land of, owned by Jews, who pay tribute for it, 177/10; Jews of, 178/4; fox unknown in, 178/16. *See also* Scythian and Caspian Mts.
- Caspian Mts. (Caucasus), called Uber, Ten Tribes enclosed in, 176/18.
- Caspian Sea, 95/21, 170/12, 171/15, 23; position of, 176/32; greatest lake in the world, 177/3.
- Cassak (Cassan), city of, in India, Three Kings met at, 46/21, 100/2; described, 100/2. *See* Note.
- Cassay (Hangelow), greatest city in world, described, 136/21-138/3; abbey of Mendicant Friars at, 137/4; abbey of Monks near, 137/5, etc.
- Casson (Kanson), Isle of, described, 204/19 (*see* Note); king of, subject to Great Chan 205/2.
- Cat, eaten in Tartary, 82/26.
- Cathaillye, city of, *see* Satalia.
- Cathay, Emperor of, *see* Great Chan.
- Cathay, 171/3, 175/17; isles of, under Great Chan's rule, 26/7; position and description of, 140, etc., 169-75, 180/22; Chan's palace in, 140/22-145; description of inhabitants of, 142, 143, 144; silver despised in, 144/7; splendour of court of Chan of, 140-5; Mandeville's stay in, 144/15; greatest kingdom in world, 149/24, 151/26; conquered by Changuys, 149/23; compared with India, 179/25-180/23; compared with Casson, 204/21; twelve provinces of, 160/1.
- Catherine, St., martyred at Alexandria,

- 36/30; body at Mt. Sinai, 37/14, 41/18; church of, 38/34-40/21; miraculous lamps in church of, 39/33-40/6; relics of, 39/18; collect of, 41/29 (*see* Note); Mount of, 41/18; buried by angels, 41/18.
- Caucasus, Mts., *see* Caspian, Scythian and Chocaz Mts.
- Cave, of Adam and Eve, near Hebron, 44/7; of Nativity, described, 46/8; Double Cave, 43/34; cave where St. Peter hid, 61/19.
- Cave-dwellers that hiss like snakes, 129/34-130/5.
- Caydon (Gaydo or Tatou), city of, described, 140/19; palace of Great Chan at, 140/22. *See also* Gaydo.
- Cayphas (Haifa), city of, called Castle of Pilgrims, 216/22. *See also* Haifa.
- Cedar, city of, 73/15.
- Cedar, wood of, foundation of Holy Cross made of, 6/18; properties of, 6/26; of Lebanon, 69/8, 212/10.
- Cedron, Brook, *see* Kidron.
- Celsite (Seleucia), name for city of Alexandria, 103/33.
- Centurio, house of, under Mt. Sephor, 78/24.
- Cesarea Philippi, 20/17, 216/25; also called Dan (which *see*), 78/28.
- Ceylon (Silha), described, 131/8-132/16. *See also* Taprobane.
- Chahaday, son of Thiaut Chan, 164/4.
- Chalchidia, 215/22.
- Chaldea, 3/25, 91/11, 102/4, 172/8, 175/1; Baldak chief city of, 26/32; described, 27/8, 101/25-102/22; caliph of, 27/18; trade of, 81/20; position of, 95/10; routes to, 96/16, 98/16; extent of, 174/22.
- Chaldean, alphabet, 102/20; language, 101/26, 102/20; people, 101/31-102/3.
- Cham, or Ham, mightiest son of Noah, inherited Asia, 145/22; power and descendants of, 146/1 and 23.
- Chameleon, *see* Camiles.
- Chan, The Great, of Cathay, 206/30, 208/6; power of, 26/5, 125/36, 151/28; wars with King of Java, 125/34-126/4; covets King of Nacumera's ruby, 131/2; owns City of Pygmies, 138/36; dominions of, 138/13, 139/14, 160/2, 170/28, 172/23, 175/18, 205/2, 216/35; his palace and garden, 140/23-141/20; his throne, etc., 141/23-142/3; his household, 142/5 etc., 152/17-157/24; his array, power and possessions, 140-145, 152-162; served by Mandeville, 144/15; genealogy of Chans, 145/18-152/5; style of, 151/30; why called Great, 150/32; believes in God, 152/1; presents to, 155/28-156/4, 161/29; religious toleration of, 157/14 etc., 161/14, 162/25; money of, 157/26; wonderful ruby, etc., of, 158/2; residences of, 158/7; journeys of, 158/14-159/37, 161/8; postal system of, 160/14; Christian honour to, 161/14; greatest lord in world, 162/17, 181/2; greater than Prester John, 179/26; title of, 163/30, etc.; marries Prester John's daughter, 181/1; manner of burying, 167/17-168/7; manner of electing, 168/7. *See also* Cathay and Changvys.
- Chana (Thána), Isle of, description of its king, 109/13; inhabitants of, 109/15-111/17; corn and wine plentiful in, 109/11; held by Saracens, 111/17; giant rats of, 111/19; heat burns dead bodies in, 111/21.
- Changvys (Jenghiz), White Knight's appearance and prophecy to, 147/3; elected Emperor of Tartary, 147/20; statutes of, 147/27; his trial of subjects, 148/3; war of conquest and escape of, 148/11-149/36; his apologue on death-bed, 150/1.
- Channel (Emessa or Homis), land of, 216/13.
- Chariot, of Great Chan, his wife and son, 159/1, etc.; chariots presented to Emperor of Tartars at coronation, 168/23.
- Chariton, St., church of, near Bethlehem, 48/30, etc.
- Charlemagne, brings to France preputium given him by angel, 54/23.
- Charm, against robbers, 75/30-76/6; in Dry Tree, 45/12; in precious stones, 105/30, etc., 127/2, 183/37, etc.
- Charnell of Innocents, 46/27.
- Chartres, Christ's preputium at, 54/27.
- Chess, played by Sultan, 23/12.
- Chestnuts, forest of, in Casson, 205/1.
- Chickens, hatched by incubators in Egypt, 31/19. *See also* Hens.
- Chievout, gate of, 13/24; hill of, 13/25. *See also* Chintok.
- Children, mother's grief when they are born, 191/3; eaten when fat, 119/18; fathered on anyone, 119/5, 192/12.

- Chilenfo (Nanking), city of, described, 138/4.
- China, *see* Cathay; South China, *see* Maney.
- China, empress of, travelling state of, 159/28.
- Chinese, marriage customs of, 162/30.
- Chiutok, port of, 215/3. *See also* Chievetout.
- Chocaz (Caucasus), Mt., position and description of, 170/10.
- Chorasme (Khwarezm), kingdom and inhabitants of, described, 169/16, etc.
- Chorasme (Urghendj), city of, 169/20.
- Chorazin, city of, some say Antichrist shall be born in, 73/18; distances from, 73/13.
- Chorisque, *see* Corsica.
- Christendom, extent of, 199/16.
- Christian law, not only one pleasing to God, 197/11, 20, etc.
- Christians, alone can grow balm, 32/25; ruled Holy Land, 49/10; will re-conquer lost lands, 52/2; wrap heads in blue cloth, 73/1; variety of sects of, in East, 79/20, etc., 81/2; wars with Tartars, 83/32-84/4; faith of, compared with Mahomet's Law, 86/23-88/23; blamed by Sultan for neglecting religion, 88/24-90/8; Christian renegades, 91/34; idol of, 115/20; received into Mahomedan faith, 92/2; in Tauris pay tribute to Saracens, 99/32; soon die in Geth, 100/13; their belief in omens, 110/28; in cities in Pepper Forest, 111/33; in Sarchee, 111/26; Jews of Pathen attempt lives of, 126/16; well treated by Mangu Chan, 150/35, 151/21; given Holy Land, 151/20; in Great Chan's household, 157/14, 21; Christian physicians greatly trusted by Great Chan, 157/16; in Maney, 135/9; in Hangechow, 136/34; Chinese accuse them of lack of observation, 143/15; Great Chan's tolerance towards, 162/26; lands of, 171/4; their persecutor, Shapur II, overwhelmed with Darkness, 172/28-173/18; Christian kings in Georgia, 172/22; should be more devout and then would be irresistible, 173/22; Eastern Christians more devout than Western, 174/7-13; in Nubia, 175/10; slaughter of, in time of Antichrist, 177/35-178/8; beliefs of Indian Christians compared with those of Western, 181/10-14; only good Christians safe in Vale Perilous, 187/30, 189/12-15; theirs not only religion pleasing to God, 195/5, 197/5, etc.; of Greek Church, 199/34; in Taprobane, 200/13; in Tripoli, 212/26.
- Chryse, isle of, *see* Orille.
- Chuse (Cush), son of Cham, and father of Nimrod the Giant, 146/2.
- Chydydo, name of Great Chan's dispatch-riders, 161/7.
- Cieten, son of Thiaut Chan, 164/5.
- Cilicia, land of, 79/2 and 7.
- Cinnabar (Sumibor), Isle of, and inhabitants of, described, 124/25 (*see* Note)-125/3; at constant war with Adamites, 125/3. *See also* Lamary.
- Cinnamon, *see* Canel.
- Circle of Swans, *see* Zodiac, signs of.
- Circumcision, age of, among Jews and Mahomedans, 68/25; in China, 152/12; relie of Christ's, 54/24.
- Circumnavigation of Earth, proved possible, 119/36-122/33; story of chance circumnavigation, 122/11; difficulties of, 123/11; rare and difficult, 204/11.
- Cities of the Dead Sea, 67/28, 102/17.
- Civitot, port of, *see* Chiutok and Chievetout.
- Climate, of Tartary, 83/1; of Isle of Brahma, 194/30-195/4. *See also* Seven Climates.
- Cloth of Gold, in Great Chan's household, 24/19, 152/27; cheaper than wool in China, 153/5; worn by Tartars, 163/3, 168/26; in China, 179/31.
- Clothing, views on, 195/23, 196/17. *See also* Dress and Adamites.
- Clove-gylofres, 176/14; a counterfeit for balm, 33/2; in Java, 125/14.
- Clyron (Dilem), passage of, 177/29. *See* Note.
- Coat, Holy, the, at Constantinople, 6/2.
- Cobough, 7th Tartar lineage, 146/35.
- Cobyla (Kublai) Chan, a Christian, founded Peking, 151/22.
- Coel, King, father of St. Helena. King of England, born in Colchester, 8/1.
- Colchester, birthplace of King Coel, 8/1.
- Colcos, isle of, Hippocrates lord of, 14/27. *See* Note.
- Collos, isle of, *see* Rhodes.
- Colopeus, king of Amazonia, 102/30.
- Comania, *see* Cumania.

- Combar (Malabar), Pepper Forest in, 111/29.
- Communism, in Lamary, 119/6; among Brahmans, 195/19; community of wives, 118/28, 192/8.
- Compass, mariner's, 107/11.
- Confession, teaching concerning, and manner of, among Jacobites, etc., 79/26-80/32; auricular confession founded by St. Peter, 80/16; reasons for auricular confession, 80/18; among Tartars, 164/24; frequent confession among Eastern Christians, 174/8; of Mandeville, etc., before entering Vale Perilous, 188/19.
- Constance, Emperor, husband of St. Helena and father of Constantine, 8/3.
- Constantine, Emperor, son of St. Helena, 7/36, and of Emperor Constance, 8/4; Emperor of Rome and King of England, 8/5; used Holy Nail as horse's bit, 51/26; his victory, 51/28.
- Constantinople, 95/17; called Byzantium, seat of Emperor of Greece, 5/14; St. Sophia at, 5/17; image of Justinian at, 5/18; relics of Passion in, 6/1, etc., 8/19; head of Holy Spear claimed to be in, 9/21; saints' relics at, 9/24, 71/36; described, 10/1; palace of Emperor, and amphitheatre at, 11/4; route to, 36/20, 214/31.
- Constantinople, Emperor of, formerly held Trebizond, 97/3; spiritual and temporal lord, 13/5-10; used Holy Nail for horse's bit, 51/26; countries obedient to, 10/12, etc.; Turks won Nicæa from, 215/4.
- Constantinople, Mouth of, name for Hellespont, 10/3. *See also* Brace of St. George.
- Cordynes (Kurds), in Media, 172/11.
- Corfu, Isle of, belonging to Genoese, 36/16 (*see* Note), 213/27.
- Corn, scarce in Turkestan, 169/13; double harvest of, 200/10; not in Tartary, 217/3.
- Cornaa, city of, described, 100/17. *See* Note.
- Corodane (Koreish, the, an Arab tribe), Mahomet governor of, 90/26.
- Coromandel Coast, *see* Mabaron.
- Corsica (Chorisque), isle of, 35/24. *See* Italy, isles of.
- Cos, isle of, *see* Lango.
- Cosidroe, King, 62/24.
- Coston, city of, in Egypt, 29/12. *See* Note.
- Cotton, on trees, 178/26; Pignies work well with, 138/22; growth of, 192/26.
- Couriers, relays of, in Cathay, 160/14-161/7.
- Cracow (Poland), realm of, 83/17. *See also* Poland.
- Cranes, fought against and eaten by Pynnies, 138/23.
- Cranganor, city of, *see* Zinglantz.
- Crete, isle of, 19/14, 36/21; given by Emperor to Genoese, 14/26.
- Critige (Ortygia, Delos), in Greek Archipelago, 10/10.
- Crocodiles, in Pepper Forest, 112/24; in Ceylon, described, 131/11, etc.; ointment made from lemons used against, 131/33-132/2; described, 192/17; weeping crocodiles, 192/23.
- Cross of Christ, at Constantinople, 6/1; half wrongly thought to be in Cyprus, 6/6, 17/19; made of four woods, 6/13; legend of, 7/10-33; measurements of, 8/6; hidden under Mount Calvary, 7/33; found by St. Helena, 51/18; miracle of, 51/22; Church of at Jerusalem, 62/12; tree of, as bridge over Brook Kidron, 62/34.
- Cross of Christ, Hill of, in Cyprus, name of Monastery of Black Monks, Good Thief's (not Christ's) Cross at, 6/7, 17/16.
- Cross, Great Chan's reverence for, 161/16-28; borne before Prester John, 182/24-183/2; figure of, in apples of Paradise, 31/31.
- Crown of Thorus, made of rushes of sea, 8/16, 9/13; halt at Paris, half at Constantinople, 8/8, etc., 9/16; four crowns of different thorns, 8/28-9/15.
- Cruces, isle of, *see* Hormuz.
- Crnk (Korgho), city of, 97/10.
- Crystal, 153/29; produces diamonds, 104/32; diamonds counterfeited from yellow crystal, 107/1.
- Cubeb. berry of climbing shrub, "Piper Cubeba," 32/22.
- Culver (dove) of Noah, 7/4. *See also* Carrier Pigeon.
- Cumania, 4/28, 10/14; position and description of, 169/22-170/9; obedient to Great Chan, 170/26.
- Cumanians, revolt of in Egypt, 22/14 (*see* Note); expelled Guytoga, 23/9;

- expelled from Cumania and lived in Greece, 169/22.
- Cumant (10,000), 139/10, 156/35, 157/13, 158/23.
- Cuncy, son of Thiant Chan, 161/4.
- Cups, made from griffins' talons, 179/9; from skulls, 206/24.
- Cush, son of Ham, *see* Chuse.
- Cusis, name for Ethiopia, 104/15.
- Cylours (canopies) of gold and silver, 157/36.
- Cynocephali, described, 130/14, etc.
- Cypress, wood of, vertical piece of Holy Cross formed of, 6/30; properties of, 6/30; apple eaten by Adam grew on, 7/11; of Lebanon, 212/14.
- Cypron Oedenburg, city of, 4/33.
- Cyprus, 36/22; Good Thiefs, not Christ's cross, in, 6/6, 17/16; famous for wines, 16/21; described, 17/10, etc.; shrines of Saints in, 17/21-24; St. Barnabas born in, 17/25; hunting with Papyrouns, or leopards, in, 17/25; meals taken in ditches in, 17/29; diamonds in, 105/2; stopping-place for pilgrims, 18/8, 213/31.
- Cyprus, sea of, 48/23.
- Cyrus, king of Persia, took Babylon, 25/29.
- Cytople, city of, *see* Scythopolis.
- Dabago, name for flesh in Geth, 100/12. *See* Note.
- Dacoun, *see* Acre.
- Daire (Darnm), castle of, 20/24.
- Dalay River, *see* Yangtse Kiang.
- Dalfetidee, lake, name for Dead Sea, 67/26. *See* Note.
- Damascus, 18/32, 215/26, 216/20; chief town of Syria, 21/30; distance from Sea of Galilee, 77/31, description and Scriptural associations of, 81/14-82/13; field of, 44/12; scene of Adam's creation, 44/10.
- Damiette, city of, described, 29/25, etc., 36/27.
- Dan, city of, 70/36, 212/11; other names for, 78/27; at foot of Mount Lebanon, 78/29. *See also* Cesarea Philippi.
- Dancee, imaginary, produced by enchanters, 156/20.
- Daniel, prophet, 27/15.
- Danube, river, described, 5/2.
- Daraym, city of, *see* Haran.
- Daresten, realm of, 83/18. *See* Note.
- Darkness, Land of, in Abchaz, description and account of, 172/27-173/21;
- river flowing out of, 174/3; position and extent of, 201/29-33.
- Dart, burning, cast at Our Lord, becomes glowing tree, 78/15.
- Darum, *see* Daire.
- Dates, found by Moses in Vale of Elim, 37/25.
- David, King, wives of, 43/8, 47/27; born at Bethlehem, 47/26; named Jernsalem, 48/12; his vision and prayer at Bethel, 57/21-34; not allowed to build Temple, 57/25-29; buried at Mount Sion, 61/9; cursed Hills of Gilboa, 74/24; quoted concerning auricular confession, 79/32; quoted as witness that Jerusalem is centre of world, 122/1; quoted, 132/17, 173/30.
- Dayne, city of, *see* Ayne.
- Dead, bodies, consumed by heat, in Chana, 111/21; burned in Lomb, 114/3; on trees and eaten by birds, 129/12; burial of, by Tartars, 167/13, etc.; uncorrupted in Vale Perilous, 188/36-189/11; eat, and then eaten by birds, 205/32-206/20; souls of, Greek teaching concerning, 12/14. *See also* Cannibalism and Sutte.
- Dead Sea, described, 66/19-68/33; site of, 102/19.
- Dead Sea of Pathen, described, 126/31.
- Deafness, caused by rivers of Earthly Paradise, 204/2.
- Dearth, caused by excessive or insufficient floods of R. Nile, 28/1, etc.; foretold by flames of volcanoes in Lipari Islands, 36/8.
- Death, as source of joy, 191/3; of Christ unknown to Brahmans, 198/5; penalty of, among Tartars, 164/23; penalty of, for kings, 191/30.
- Deborah, prophetess, 74/13.
- Delilah, wife of Samson, 20/14.
- Delos, isle of, *see* Critige.
- Deluze city of, *see* Luz.
- Demeseer, province of Egypt, 29/24.
- De Profundis, 197/31.
- Derhend, passage of, 170/21. *See also* Gate of Hell.
- Deserts, 34/1, 177/23, 175/11; great, 175/3; of trees of Sun and Moon, 32/28, 198/26. *See also* Arabia, desert of.
- Destriers (war-horses), white, draw Great Chan's chariot, 159/10; beasts greater than, 193/25. *See* Horses.

- Devil's Head, in Vale Perilous, described, 187/18; River of Devils, 67/26. *See also* Fiends.
- Diamonds, in India, produced from crystal, 104/32; various kinds, virtues, etc., of, 104/32-106/37; watered with dew, 105/24; means to detect counterfeit, 107/1, etc.; their virtue lost through sin, 107/17.
- Diana, changed Hippocrates' daughter to dragon, 14/37.
- Dido, wife of Eneas, lived in Sydon, 18/26; founded Carthage, 18/27, 26/33.
- Dien, name for human blood drunk in Caffo, 129/26.
- Dilem, *see* Clyron.
- Dinah, Jacob's daughter, 71/7.
- Dirpe, or Dry Tree, legend and prophecy concerning, 44/31-45/11 (*see* Note); virtues of wood of, 45/12.
- Dismas, *see* Dysmas.
- Dispatch-riders, of Great Chan, 160/14, etc.; called Chydydo, 161/7.
- Dispolis (Lidda), city of, St. George beheaded at, 214/8.
- Divorce, 87/18.
- Djebeil, *see* Gibilet.
- Djiblé, *see* Gehel.
- Dogs, trained to kill sick, 129/16; people with heads like, 130/14. *See also* Hounds.
- Don, River, *see* Thamy R.
- Dondyn, Isle of, described, 132/20 (*see* Note) -133/25.
- Dondyn, king of, power and dominion of, 133/25.
- Doomsday, description, site and date of, 76/31-77/7; Koran's teaching concerning, 85/33; Greeks believe no joy or pain until, 12/14.
- Dothan, vale of, 71/12.
- Double Spelunke or Cave, tomb of patriarchs, 43/34.
- Dove, *see* Culver and Carrier Pigeon.
- Dozeleel, the Shadow of God, 39/18.
- Dragons, near Tower of Babel, 25/10; in Caspian desert, 177/26; in desert of Trees of Sun and Moon, 198/35; dragon slain by St. George, 212/28; daughter of Hippocrates turned into, 14/30.
- Dress, notes on, 24/19, 153/1, etc., 163/1, etc.; fashions of among Christians, 89/3. *See also* Clothing, Cloth of Gold, etc.
- Dromedaries, used to get gold, 201/5.
- Dry Tree, *see* Dirpe.
- Dung, of beasts, used as fuel, in Cumania, 169/31; in Tartary, 82/28.
- Duras (Durazzo), city of, 213/29, 214/29; Duke at, 36/19.
- Dwarfs, that suck in food, and hiss like adders, 134/9; that live by smell of wild apples, 198/11.
- Dysmas, the Good Thief, cross of, in Cyprus, 6/8, 17/18.
- Eagles, do reverence to Great Chan, 156/11; eat dead bodies, 206/1.
- Ears, people with monstrous, 134/18; enemies' ears sowed by Tartars, 166/15.
- Earth, roundness of, 202/4; roundness of proved, 119/32, 121/8-122/33, 204/9, etc.; circumference of, calculated, 123/18-124/10. seven climates of, 124/15; divided among three sons of Noah, 145/26; begins in East, 201/35; an exact globe before Noah's Flood, 202/4-10; in midst of firmament, 202/4. *See also* Circumnavigation.
- East, views concerning, 201/34-202/3; Earth begins at, 201/35.
- Eating, manner of, in Cyprus, 17/29; in Cathay, 144/31, etc.
- Ebony, trees of, 192/34.
- Ecchecha (Ogotai), Chan, 150/27.
- Edessa, city of, body of St. Thomas Apostle once in, 114/27. *See also* Rolauz.
- Edom, hill of, afterwards called Seir and Idumea, 68/12. *See also* Seir, Mt.
- Edward I, King of England, fights with Saracens, 22/28.
- Eels, giant, in River Indus, 107/24.
- Eflrata, *see* Ephrata.
- Eggs (cyren), hatched in incubators in Egypt, 31/19.
- Eglantine, our Lord crowned with, 9/10.
- Egypt, 3/25, 5/26, 28/15, 36/26, 48/21, 96/2, 202/35, 203/14; names for, 20/31, 21/28; under Sultan, 21/25; caliph of, 27/20; description of, 28/19-34/25; language and alphabet of, 34/21; language of, 203/14 (*see* Note); beef and veal scarce in, 47/22; Christian in Mahomet's time, 90/16; Ninus king of, 102/6; deserts of, 175/11; once Christian, 199/16.
- Egypt, Sultan of, dwells at Babylon the Less, 20/20, 21/14, 27/25;

- Mandeville served him as soldier, 21/20, 42/29; his kingdom, 21/25-22/4; list of sultans, 22/5-23/22 (*see Note*); his power, 23/22; his Emirs, 23/30; his wives, 24/2; his reception of strangers, 24/18; not so mighty as Great Chan, 26/4; war against Bedouins, 21/20, 42/28; has assumed title of Caliph, 27/21, etc.; fenced in Holy Sepulchre, 49/33; respect for signet of, 54/10; his speech to Mandeville on shortcomings of Christians, 88/23-90/8; interior to Great Chan, 162/20.
- Elbruz, Mt., *see* Abzor, Mt.
- El-Buk'a'a, *see* Bochar.
- Election, of Emperor, method and ceremonial of, among Tartars, 168/7; of kings, 191/18, 200/9.
- Elephants, used for warfare in Calounak, 127/31; called *warkes* in Calounak, 128/2; in Ceylon, 131/19; at Great Chan's court, 157/11; draw Great Chan's chariot, 159/10; slain by Odontotyrannus, 193/30; white elephants, 199/2.
- Eli, the prophet, 70/22.
- Eliezer Damascus, founder of Damascus, his expectations from Abraham, 81/21.
- Elijah, prophet, 18/23; dwelt at Carmel, 19/17; chapel of, at Horeb, 40/36, etc.; present at Transfiguration, 76/23.
- Elim, vale of, description and scriptural associations of, 37/23.
- Elisha, prophet, sweetened bitter river, 66/7; buried at Sebaste, 71/21.
- Elizabeth, St., visitation to, 62/14.
- El-Kalah, *see* Calahelyk.
- Elkanah, father of Samuel, 70/17.
- Elphy, sultan of Egypt, took Tripollee, 22/32. *See Note*.
- Emeralds, in Egypt, 31/11.
- Emessa, *see* Channel.
- Emlak (Havilah), name for High India, 104/25; name for India, 202/32.
- Emmaus, castle of, 62/19, 214/11, 216/26.
- Enchanters, marvellous deeds of, in China, 156/14.
- Endor, Mount, 74/10. *See Note*.
- Eneas, husband of Dido, 18/26; of Troy, King of Italy, 26/34.
- Engeddi, land of, balm used to grow at, 66/21.
- England, birthplace of Mandeville, 3/18; formerly called Britain, 8/2; Constantine King of, 8/5; in climate of the Moon, its people are therefore restless, 108/13; position of with regard to Jerusalem, 121/23; outside the Seven Climates, 124/12; mile of, 78/34; alphabet of, 92/10.
- Enochbalse, Saracen name for balmwood, 32/20.
- Entramets, (side-dishes) at dinner, 206/23.
- Euydros, vessel called, at Constantinople, properties of, 9/30, etc.
- Ephesus, position of, 14/6; St. John Evangelist died and was buried in, 14/7; always held by Christians, 14/9.
- Ephraim, a great clerk, lived at Haran, 27/3.
- Ephraim, Mt., birthplace of Samuel in, 70/17.
- Ephratah, name for Bethlehem, 45/20.
- Equinox, 121/35.
- Ermonye, *see* Armenia.
- Erzerum (Artyroun), city of, wasted by Turks, 98/21.
- Esau, King of Idumea, 101/10.
- Ethill (Volga) River, described, battles on ice of, 170/2.
- Ethiopia, 3/26, 93/2, 203/13; encompassed by River Nile, 28/14, 202/35; position of, 95/30; extent, divisions and description of, 103/33-104/24; great heat of, 104/11; extent and mountains of, 175/2 and 7; people of, described 104/12-21.
- Ethiopian language, 203/12. *See Note*.
- Etna, Mt., called Mt. Gybell, described, 36/5.
- Et Tih, desert of, *see* Achellek.
- Eucharist, how Greeks prepare bread for, 12/6; consecrated in primitive way by Indian priests, 52/24; St. Paul's precept of daily reception of, practised by Eastern Christians only, 174/8, etc.; received by Mandeville before entering Vale Perilous, 188/19; words of the Sacrament of, 200/2.
- Euphrates, River, 174/31; divided by Cyrus, 25/28; bounds Mesopotamia, 27/6; countries bounded by, 95/15; flows from Ea thly Paradise, 95/9; subterranean course and streams of, 98/26; course of, 202/37; meaning of its name, 203/18; description of, 203/18-204/7.
- Eurach, 3rd Tartar lineage, 146/33.
- Europe, inherited by Japhet, 145/29;

- people of, descended from Japhet, 146/18.
- Eustace, St., lost wife and children in Abana River, 215/28.
- Euxine Sea, *see* Black Sea, etc.
- Eve, 201/33, 128/21; buried at Hebron, 43/26; lake in Ceylon, made by tears of, 131/22. *See also* Cave of Adam and Eve.
- Evil Town, the, *see* Maleville.
- Extreme Unction, not administered by Greek Church, 12/12.
- Eye, people with only one, 133/31; people with eyes in shoulders, 133/34, 134/1; people with holes for eyes, 134/5.
- Eyren, *see* Eggs.
- Fairy fruit, 182/10.
- Faith, land of, name for Isle of Brahmans, 194/21.
- Faleons, at Great Chan's court, 157/8; on his chariot, 159/16. *See also* Sakers and Sakrets.
- Falling Sickness, cured by wood of Dry Tree, 45/13; Mahomet subject to, 90/30.
- Famagost, chief harbour of Cyprus, 213/31, 17/14; St. Barnabas born near, 17/24.
- Famine, *see* Hunger.
- Fanaticism, in India, 115/30.
- Farab, *see* Octorar.
- Farde (Straits), of Messina, 35/32.
- Farfar (Pharpar or Orontes), bridge and river of, 215/24, 216/5. *See also* Ferne.
- Fasting, in Greek Church, 12/24.
- Faxis (Tauris), city of, great trade of, 99/22.
- Feasts, in inns, 139/16; of Great Chan, 152/9, etc.
- Feathers, sunk in Dead Sea, 67/17; of owl, worshipped by Tartars, 149/3.
- Feet, smallness of, a sign of nobility in Chinese women, 207/16.
- Felt, *see* Fertre.
- Feminye, land of, *see* Amazonia.
- Ferne (İlgün), city of, 215/33.
- Ferne, river of, *see* Farfar.
- Ferne, *see* Fertre, 205/12.
- Fertre (bier), of St. Catherine, 39/19; (felt) 147/21, 205/12. *See* Notes.
- Field of Balm, near Cairo, associations of, with Christ, 32/4.
- Fiends, relations with women, 146/5; fiend in Noah's Ark, 98/37.
- Figs of Pharaoh, in Egypt, 32/1.
- Fines, to atone for sin, 164/25.
- Fire, guards entrance to Earthly Paradise, 202/26; in middle of Tartars' houses, 163/21; purification by, 164/29; worship of, justified 110/1, etc.
- Firmament, measurements and divisions of, 120/4-121/13, 123/24-124/22.
- Fish, roasted in the sun by Arabs, 42/20; not in Lybian Sea, 96/9; miraculous homage of, to King of Calonak, 128/5; do reverence to Great Chan, 156/12; caught by loirs, 136/16; strange kinds of, in Gravelly Sea, 181/26.
- Fladrine, city of, in Pepper Forest, 111/32.
- Flagrancy, land of, 216/21. *See* Note.
- Flanders, 216/31.
- Flaxon, isle of, 10/10.
- Fleas, not in Convent of Sinai, 40/21.
- Flesh and blood, from oil, 212/5.
- Flies, not in Convent of Sinai, 40/21; pest of, in Cumania, 169/28.
- Flood, Noe's, 19/1, 50/15; mountains and valleys result of, 202/5; did not reach Earthly Paradise, 202/18.
- Florach, castle of, 215/17.
- Floridus, field of, *see* Campus Floridus.
- Foals, eaten by Tartars, 165/15; used to get gold, 201/11.
- Fous Ororum, 18/11.
- Food, notes on, 165/14. *See also* Cannibalism, names of people, names of foodstuffs, animals and birds.
- Fools of Wanhope, 190/18.
- Foot, people with only one, 104/16; counterfeit of, worn by married women as head-dress, 142/14, 163/9.
- Fornication, Greek view of, 12/15; miracle of maiden condemned for, 45/28-46/8; punishment of, among Tartars, 164/36.
- Foss, or ditch, of Memnon, 19/29.
- Fountain, Hot and Cold, in Ethiopia, 104/4; of Gardens, 18/11; of Youth, described 113/3, etc.
- Fox, that shall lead Jews to freedom, 178/11; only beast unknown in Caspia, 178/16.
- France, relics of Passion in, 8/10; on way to Cairo, 35/13; on way to Jerusalem, 213/25, 216/31.
- Franciscan, Nuns, 72/3. *See* Note. *See also* under Friars.
- French language, "Travels" translated from, 4/2; spoken by Sultan and his court, 89/35.

- Friars, Mendicant, at Hangchow, 137/5; two Friars Minor accompany Mandeville through Vale Perilous, 188/14.
- Fruit, presented to Great Chan, 161/29. to Empress and son, 162/4; fruit of Trees of Sun and Moon gives long life, 198/28; fairy fruit, 182/10; containing a lamb, 175/26; fruit that becomes birds flying, 176/4.
- Fulfull, name for Black Pepper, 112/9.
- Funerals, feasts, in Dondyn, 133/8; in Tibet, 206/15: customs and rites, 111/21, 114/3, 118/1-12, 129/13; among Tartars, 167/14-168/7; in Tibet, 205/22-206/28. *See also* Cannibalism and Suttee.
- Furs, 163/2.
- Fusth (Lybia), land of, 29/15. *See also* Lybia.
- Fynepape (Philippopoli), city of, 5/13.
- Gabaon, city of, 70/26.
- Gabriel, Angel, saluted Blessed Virgin, 75/5; Mahomet's teaching concerning, 85/5, 86/9; Gabriel's apparitions to Mahomet, 90/12-37; well of, its connections with Holy Family, 75/15, etc.
- Gadrigge (Khadijah), wife of Mahomet, 90/28.
- Galamel, drink of Saracens, sugar made from, virtues of, 91/31.
- Galaoth, helmet of Great Chan, 161/22. *See* Note.
- Galilee, land of, 69/11; 70/16; 81/13; described 73/7-78/30; a province of Holy Land, in Syria, 79/6; Mt. of Galilee, 65/6; Sea of Galilee, 77/19-78/22. *See also* Tiberias, sea of.
- Galilee of Our Lord, cave where St. Peter hid, 61/19; of Folk. 78/25.
- Gangares, King of India, 203/8.
- Ganges (Phison), River, described, 203/5. *See also* Phison.
- Garantez, dark-coloured gems, 143/30.
- Garasoun, Mt., *see* Gerizim.
- Gardens, in Egypt. bear fruit seven times a year, 31/9; well of Gardens, 18/11; Garden of Sicily, 35/26; Garden of Delight in Mock Paradise, 185/5.
- Garegan, son of Thiant Chan, 164/6.
- Garners of Joseph, or Pyramids, described, 34/2; not sepulchres, 34/12. *See* Note.
- Garnets, *see* Grenaz.
- Gascony, mile of, 78/35.
- Gate of Hell, name for Alexandria, 170/17, 172/1; gates to Scythian Mts., 178/21. *See* notes on 170/13 and 17.
- Gatholonabes, the Old Man of the Mountain, and his Mock Paradise, 184/35-186/33.
- Gaul, name for ointment, 113/29.
- Gaydo (Caydon, or Tatou), city of, residence of Great Chan in, 158/11. *See also* Caydon.
- Gaza, city of, description and scriptural associations of, 20/8.
- Gebel (Djiblé), city of, 216/12.
- Gecse, two-headed, 132/9; white and crested, 135/28; barnacle geese, 176/3; rejected as food, 192/3; red and black and large, 193/36, etc.
- Gemeth, province of, 174/16. *See* Note.
- Genesis, Book of, belief in, 208/22.
- Gennesaret, Sea of, 77/34.
- Genoa, 96/17, 213/25, 214/27; on way to Cairo, 35/18; Isle of Corfu at, 36/16; relic of St. John Baptist revered at, 72/10; merchants of trade with Isle of Hormuz, 108/23; merchants of, in Cathay, 140/7; distance from Cathay, 140/9, 140/25; Isle of Greff or Corfu belongs to people of, 213/27; Crete given to people of, 14/26.
- Geomancy, practice and instruments of, at Great Chan's court, 154/2.
- George, St., slew dragon at Beyrout 212/28; church of at Dispolis, 214/9; Georgians his converts, 66/3, 80/33. *See also* Brace of St. George.
- Georgia, kingdom of, original home of Georgians, 80/35; extent, divisions of, and Christian kings of, 172/13, etc.; king of, subject to Great Chan, 172/22; devout Christians of, 174/6.
- Georgians, hermitage of, 66/1; converted by St. George, 66/3, 80/33; description and creed of, 80/32; religious devotion of, 174/7.
- Gerasa *see* Gerrasantz, land of the.
- Gerfalcons, *see* Falcons.
- Gerfauntz, name for Giraffes, 193/1.
- Gerizim, Mt., 71/10. *See* Note.
- Germany, *see* Almayne.
- Gerrasantz, land of the (Gerasa), 77/29.
- Gessen (Goshen), land of, 29/8.
- Geth, city of, described, 100/9. *See* Note.
- Gethsemane, scene of betrayal of Our Lord and print of His fingers at, 63/22-33.

- Giants, that devour men, 189/23-190/6; with only one eye, 133/30; engendered by devils, 146/9.
- Gibeon, city of, 70/26.
- Gibilet (Byblos), city of, 216/17. *See* Note.
- Gilboa, hills of, 69/4; Saul and Jonathan died at, 74/24; cursed by David, 74/26.
- Ginger, in land of Lomb, 113/15; in Java, 125/14.
- Giraffes, *see* Orafles and Gerfauntz.
- Girdling, Christians of, 81/2.
- Glass, made from gravel, 19/31.
- Gledes (kites), dead bodies exposed to, 206/1.
- God, His love for devout outside Christian law, 195/4, 197/7; belief of Brahmans in, 195/6; Gymnosophists believe God only to be immortal, 197/2; belief in God of Nature, 208/14; unbelief in God the Son, 208/21.
- Godfrey, de Bouillon, tomb of, on Calvary, 50/19.
- Gog and Magog, legend of, 176/19, etc.
- Golbach (Cambaye), city of, popinjays abound in, 180/31.
- Gold, comparative values of, 153/22; vessels of, used in Necromancy, etc., 154/7; used for pillars, etc., and not for money in China, 157/34-36; offered to Emperor of Tartars at his coronation, 168/23; in Prester John's palace, 183/6, etc.; in Vale Perilous, 187/13, 188/27; mine of, 200/22; Hills of, 200/29; method of getting it from Gold Hills, 201/3; gravel of 202/34.
- Golden Gate, at Jerusalem, 53/4.
- Golden Horde, the, *see* Orda.
- Golgotha, Mt., *see* Calvary.
- Gomorrhah, city of, in Dead Sea, 67/29, 102/17.
- Goshen, *see* Gessen.
- Gosra (Bozrah), land of, Job ruled, 101/1.
- Goth, *see* Gog.
- Gourds, 175/26.
- Gout, arthritic, Mandeville's, 210/27.
- Grapes, giant, 176/16.
- Gravel, of gold, in R. Phison, 202/34; glass made from gravel of Foss of Memnon, 19/30.
- Gravelly Sea, 100/10; described, 181/19; described under the name of Foss of Memnon, 19/29, etc.
- Great Sea (Euxine), 95/17 (*see* Note); 170/8, 172/18.
- Greece, 5/12, 173/6, 188/23, 214/28; on way to Cairo, 36/17; Christian Sect of, 81/1; Cumanians in 169/23; sea of, 171/6, 174/19; Isles of, 10/9.
- Greece, Emperor of, his loss of dominions, 5/22; lands subject to, 10/12; palace of, at Constantinople, 11/4; head of Greek Church, 13/5, etc.; gave Crete to Genoese, 14/26; Rhodes taken from, 16/16.
- Greef, isle of, *see* Corfu.
- Greek, quotations in, 50/21 and 28. *See* Notes.
- Greeks, 209/4; destroyed Troy, 10/6; ruled Holy Land, 49/10; wear beards and make Sacrament of Unleavened Bread, 80/28 (*see* Note); two Greek companions of Mandeville lost in Vale Perilous, 188/23; Greek views on, and mode of, Confession differ from those of Latin Church, 80/31; their method of saying Mass, 199/33, etc.; Greek Christians, 81/1, 199/34; tenets and religious practices of, 11/22-13/12; the Patriarch of Greek Church, 11/26, 13/6; their answer to Pope John XXII, 11/28, etc.; their alphabet, 13/10.
- Greff, isle of, *see* Corfu.
- Gregory, St., quoted concerning Confession, 80/3.
- Grenaz (garnets), 143/28.
- Griffins, in Bactria, described, 178/34-179/12.
- Gruunting Men, in India, 182/15.
- Gums, odoriferous, burnt when Great Chan passes, 161/8.
- Guybalse, name for balm liquor, 32/23.
- Guyo (Kuyuk) Chan, 150/33.
- Guyrboylle (cuir bouilli), hardened leather, used for armour, 166/8.
- Guytoga (Meletheadell), Sultan of Egypt, 23/6. *See* Note.
- Gybell, Mt., name for Mt. Etna, 36/5.
- Gynosophe (Gymnosophe) Isle of, description and account of inhabitants, etc., of, 196/12, etc. (*see* Note); inhabitants of, ask Alexander for immortality, and rebuke him, 196/25, etc.; natural law of, pleasing to God, 197/7.
- Gyson (Nile), River, 202/35; meaning of name, 203/11. *See also* Nile, R.
- Hadrian, *see* Adrian.
- Hagar, mother of Ishmael, 68/21, 91/3; gave name to Saracen tribe, 91/4.

- Hagarenes, Saracens so-called after Hagar, 91/4.
- Haifa, ruins of, at foot of Mt. Carmel, 19/20. *See also* Cayphas.
- Hail, unknown in Isle of Brahmans, 195/2.
- Hair, people with little, 135/16, 167/8; hairy amphibious folk, 198/16.
- Halaon (Hulagu), brother of Mangu Chan, won Holy Land for Christians, 150/35-151/20; sentenced Caliph of Baghdad, 151/6.
- Halapice (Aleppo), kingdom of, 51/32; under Sultan, 21/31; once Christian, 199/18 *See also* Aleppo.
- Ham, Noah's son, *see* Cham.
- Hamah, *see* Math.
- Hamese, name for diamonds, 104/36.
- Hananiah, 21/8.
- Hang-Chow, *see* Cassay.
- Hannah, *see* Annah.
- Haran, city of, in Mesopotamia, home of Abraham, etc., 26/37-27/5.
- Haran, father of Lot, 68/16.
- Hare, of ill-omen, 110/32; rejected as food, 192/2.
- Harme, name for the Koran, 84/21.
- Harvests, twice a year, 200/10; seven times a year, 31/9.
- Haunson, Land of Darkness, 172/29.
- Havilah, *see* Emlak.
- Hawks, at Great Chan's palace, 157/9.
- Haylla, city of, *see* Ai.
- Heads, of dead men, eaten, 206/20; people without, 133/34; cloths for wrapping round, 42/31, 72/34-73/2.
- Heat, effect of, on human body in Hormuz, 108/24, etc.; on rivers in Ethiopia, 104/11. *See also* Nubia and Chana.
- Heathen religions, some truth in, 208/10.
- Heber, husband of Jael, 74/15.
- Hebrew, only language known by Jews, 177/7 and 32; why all Jews learn, 177/36, etc.; alphabet, 73/4.
- Hebron, city of, why so called, description and associations of, 43/11-44/17; places near, 44/27; supplies Jerusalem with water, 48/8; distance from Jerusalem, 48/26.
- Hebron, people of, sacrificed at Shiloh, 70/22.
- Hebron, vale of, or Mamre, Adam dwelt in, 44/19; cambil dug from earth in, 44/22.
- Hedgehogs, *see* Urchins.
- Helena, St., mother of Constantine, 7/35; daughter of King Coel and wife of Emperor Constance, 8/1; brought St. Anne's body to Constantinople, 9/24, 58/25; found True Cross, 51/18.
- Heliopolis, city of, meaning of name, temple at, 30/18.
- Hell, gate of, in Caucasus Range, 170/17. *See Note.*
- Hellespont, Constantinople and ruins of Troy on, 10/2, etc. *See* Brace of St. George.
- Hens, white and woolly, in Maney, 136/10; rejected as food, 192/3. *See also* Chickens.
- Heraelea, city of, described as a river, 215/10.
- Hercules, worship of, 109/29; Pillars of, 96/1.
- Hermaphrodites, 134/26.
- Hermes (Hormuz), city of, founded by Hermes, 180/28. *See Note.*
- Hermes, the philosopher, 180/29.
- Hermit, of Egypt (St. Anthony the Great), legend of, 30/2, etc.; Mahomet's friendship with hermits, 90/19, 91/9.
- Hermogenes, grave of, in St. Sophia's, 11/13; his prophecy of Christ, 11/15.
- Hermion Mt., 77/32, 74/10. *See Note.*
- Hero-worship among Indians, 109/27.
- Herod, House of, at Jerusalem, 58/35; his cruelty, 59/1, etc.; his death, 59/10, etc.; names of the Three Herods, 59/26.
- Hiberia, land of, 95/28.
- High Hill, The, 212/24.
- Hilary, St., shrine of, in Cyprus, at Castle of Amoure, 17/23; quoted concerning Confession, 80/6.
- Hill, of Salt, near Tauris, 99/30; the High Hill, 212/24; hills were formed by Noah's Flood, 202/5; Hill of Holy Cross, *see* Holy Cross.
- Hippocrates, lord of Isles of Coleos and Lango, 14/27; his daughter changed into dragon, 14/29.
- Hippocrates' daughter, changed into dragon, description and legend of, 14/29-16/14.
- Hippopotamus, in Bacharia, described, 178/28.
- Hircania, land of, 95/27.
- Holy Cross, Hill of, in Cyprus (name of monastery of Black Monks), 6/7, 17/16; Good Thief's Cross at, 6/8, 17/18.
- Holy Ghost, Descent of, on Mt. Sion, 60/35; at Christ's baptism, 69/21;

- Greek doctrine of Procession of, 11/24; disbelief in, 208/21.
- Holy Land, 70/5; the centre of the world, 1/20; praises of, 1/1-3/13; prophecy of re-conquest of, 45/3, etc.; beef and veal scarce in, 47/21; rulers of, 49/8; extent and position of, 78/30; lost by Christians for sin, to be regained through righteousness, 89/13; countries beyond, 95/6, etc.; won by Halaon for Christians, 150/36, 151/19; routes to, 13/22, 216/28.
- Holy of Holies, in Temple, described, 55/31-56/2.
- Homeopathy, practised in Pathen, 126/12.
- Homicide, 191/28; unknown among Brahmans, 194/26.
- Homs, *see* Channel.
- Honey, grows on trees in Pathen, 126/10; intoxicating liquor made from, 165/32; ale made with, in Turkestan, 169/15; conduit of milk, wine and honey, 185/27; rivers of Paradise flow with milk and, 191/15.
- Horde, the Golden, *see* Orda.
- Horeb, Mt., 41/1.
- Hormuz (Crues, Hermes), isle of, position, commerce and great heat of, 108/20, etc.; ships without iron used in, because of the rocks of magnet near, 109/1; city of, 180/28. *See* Note.
- Horned men, in India, 182/14.
- Horologes of gold, in Great Chan's Court, 154/9.
- Horses, white, given to Great Chan, 155/25; draw his chariot, 159/10; used to get gold, 201/5; folk with feet of, 134/20. *See* Destriers.
- Hosea, prophet, *see* Ozee.
- Hospitallers, took Rhodes from Emperor, 16/15; Hospital of, at Jerusalem, 53/11; charnel of Hospital of, 62/10; first foundation in Solomon's Temple, 58/10; legend of Templar and Sparrowhawk, 98/10.
- Hot Springs, etc., at Phenice, 215/32.
- Hounds, great, in Albania, 95/26; eaten by Tartars, 165/14; wild, in India, 182/16. *See also* Dogs.
- Houris, in Mock Paradise, 185/18.
- Hulagu, *see* Halaon.
- Human blood, drunk in Milke, 129/26; human sacrifice, in Lomb, 114/1; to Idol of Juggernaut, 116/1 and 30, 117/12, etc.
- Hungary, 4/23, 5/1; possessions of king of, 4/25.
- Hunger, unknown to Brahmans, common in the West, 195/2.
- Hunts, imaginary, produced by enchanters, 156/28.
- Hur, city of, *see* Ur.
- Hwang-Ho River, *see* Caramaron.
- Hydromancy, practice and instruments of, at Great Chan's court, 154/3.
- Ibis (kind of stork), on River Nile, 28/18.
- Ice, traffic on, 83/27; of R. Volga, battles on, 170/4.
- Iconium, *see* Scanton.
- Idols, different from simulacres, 109/20; oracles in, 113/36; children slain before, 114/1, 116/1; giant idols in Maney, 136/4; fed on smoke in Maney, 136/8; consulted about diseases, 132/23-133/7; feasts of idols of Great Chan, 152/13; of Tartars, 163/25; made naked in Tartary, 166/24; worship of, justified, 208/27. *See also* Juggernaut, Idol of.
- Idumea, land of, 26/31, 69/11; Esau and Job, kings of, 101/10.
- Idumeans, overcome by Barak and Deborah, 74/12.
- Ilgün, *see* Ferne.
- Images, of Saints, at Alexandria, white-washed by Saracens, 36/33; use of, 208/29, etc.
- Immortality, requested of Alexander, 196/25.
- Incarnation of Christ, Brahman belief in, 198/4.
- Incubators, in Egypt, described, 31/17.
- India, 91/12, 95/19, 99/34, 122/14, 171/24, 174/21; in part ruled by Great Chan, 26/8; balm said to grow in India Major, 32/27; India Minor once Christian, 51/34; priests of, at Jerusalem, 52/24; Christian sect of, 81/5; merchants of, trade with Damascus, 81/20; routes to, 96/16, 98/19, 104/24, 170/13; course of River Euphrates to, 98/28; divisions of, described, 104/26; diamonds in, 105/5, 106/20; takes its name from R. Indus, 107/22; isles of, and inhabitants, etc., described, 107/26-114/19, and 187/1-204/7; Prester John, Emperor of, 121/22; India, our Antipodes, 121/22, 204/9; Maney in India Major,

- 135/5; inhabitants of, descended from Cham, 146/12; visited by Mandeville, 3/26, 146/21; desert of, 171/16; India the Less, 172/6; desert of India the Less, 174/33; High India, 175/23; split into Isles by Floods of Paradise, 179/19; further than China, 180/3, 22 and 26; adamant rocks in, 180/5; food of people in, 180/34; beliefs of Christians in, 181/9, etc.; marvels in, 182/1, etc.; the church in, 184/18, etc.; wrecks in seas about, 180/10; precious stones in, 181/3.
- India, Isles of, 3/27; 5000 in number, 122/14; position of, 124/20. *See also* India.
- India, Emperor of, second greatest Emperor, 171/8; power of, 179/16. *See also* Prester John.
- Indus, River, giant eels in, 107/24; coloured men on banks of, 107/24.
- Innocents charnel of, at Bethlehem, 46/27.
- Inns, excellence of, in Achellek, 20/28; in Cathay, 160/11; private feasts at, 139/15.
- Intelligence, system of, in land of Great Chan, 160/14 etc.
- Ireland, outside Seven Climates, 124/12, etc.
- Iron, not to be used in cutting balm, 32/19; floats in Dead Sea, 67/16; not in ships either in Hormuz, 109/2, or in Indian Seas, 180/7; charm against injury from, 127/3.
- Isaac, 81/22; sepulchre of, at Hebron, 43/26; age of, at circumcision, 68/22.
- Isaiah, the prophet, buried at Pool of Siloam, 61/27.
- Isauria *see* Saure.
- Ishmael, age of, at circumcision, 68/24; son of Hagar and Abraham, 68/20, 91/2; Mahomet of family of, 91/2; gave name to tribe of Saracens, 91/4.
- Isles, of the West, outside Seven Climates, 124/12; of Greece, 10/9; of Italy, 35/24. *See* Note.
- Ispahan, *see* Saphon.
- Israelites, journey of, to Promised Land, 37/16; crossed Jordan R., 69/24; descended from Japhet, 146/18.
- Italy, Eneas king of, 26/35; Isles of, 35/24. *See* Note.
- Ivory, 153/29; in Prester John's palace, 183/16.
- Jongge (Peking), city of, in Cathay, founded by Kublai Khan, greater than Rome, 151/23. *See also* Jong.
- Jabbok, river of, crossed by Jacob, 68/34.
- Jacob, 47/35; sepulchre of, at Hebron, 43/26; dream of, 56/31; name changed to Israel at Bethel, 57/1; well of, 70/32.
- Jacobites, converted by St. James, their views on, and manner of, confession, 79/24-80/15.
- Jael, wife of Heber, slew Sisera, 74/15.
- Jaffa, 48/27, 78/33, 213/35, 214/2, 216/25; now called Joppa, and reason for its name, 18/35; founded before the Flood, 19/1; giant Andromede bound there, 19/3; St. Peter's vision at, 197/22.
- James the Great, St., born at Sephoris, 19/23; at Transfiguration, 76/22; calling of, 78/8; converted and gave name to Jacobites, 79/25 (*see* Note); pilgrimage to his shrine at Compostella compared with Indian pilgrimages, 115/26.
- James, Alphe, St., house of, 62/2; tomb of, 64/2; cast down from Temple, 58/2; Bishop of Jerusalem, 58/4; church of, at Jerusalem, 59/29.
- Janichay (Yangchow), city of, described, 139/4, etc.
- Japhet, son of Noah, founded Jaffa, 18/36; inherited Europe, 145/29; descendants of, 146/18.
- Jasper, 153/28, 183/22, 185/25; box of, in Ark of Covenant, 56/23.
- Java, Isle of described, 125/8, etc.
- Java, King of, his power, 125/9; palace of, described, 125/22; his wars with Great Chan, 125/34-126/4.
- Jebus, old name for Jerusalem, 48/11.
- Jehoshaphat, *see* Josaphat.
- Jenghiz Chan, *see* Changguys.
- Jeremiah, the prophet, house of, 66/17.
- Jericho, city of, 66/19, 78/33; distance of, from Jerusalem, 48/26; description of, 65/10, etc.
- Jeroboam, King, 70/35.
- Jerome, St., tomb of, 46/29; his translation of the Bible, 46/30; chair in which he sat while translating Bible, 46/32.
- Jerusalem, 36/25; centre of the world, 2/9; this proved, 121/32-122/7; ways to, 4/13, 13/21, 18/1, 20/23,

- 213/10-217/7; in Judea, 5/25; body of St. Anne at first in, 9/25; under Sultan, 21/28; greatest of all pilgrimages is the one to, 35/6; holy places of, 48/6-53/21; names of, 48/9, etc.; Temple and churches, etc., of, 53/22-56/18; fortifications of, 52/32; besieged by Titus, 54/29; rebuilt and renamed by Hadrian, 55/10-20; Our Lady begotten at, 75/1; Melchisedech, king of, 76/16; upward journey to, 121/24; once Christian, 199/16.
- Jerusalem, Kings of, *see* Baldwin and Bouillon, Godfrey de.
- Jesus Christ, 117/5, 183/1; associations of, with Holy Land, 1/1-2/29; Cross of, at Constantinople, 6/1; crowned four times, 8/31-9/11; His Passion, 8/28-9/23; Hermogenes' prophecy of, 11/15; Greek belief as to His eating, 12/31; associations of, with Tyre, 18/14, etc.; wells made with His foot, 32/7; of kindred of Seth, 44/20; Cave of Nativity, 46/10; holy places of, at Jerusalem, 49/16-50/31; age of, 50/32-51/11; imprisoned in many places, 52/9; His preputium in France, 54/22, etc.; associations of, with Rock Bethel, 57/4, etc.; bath of, 58/15; Holy places and relics of, 61/1-65/35; Temptation of, 65/33, 70/1; often scourged, 63/2; Baptism of, 69/17; reason for taking surname from Nazareth, 75/2; associations of, with Nazareth, 75/15, etc.; Leap of Our Lord, 75/26; miracles and relics of, 77/9-78/18; Mahomedan beliefs concerning, 85/3-8/13; protector of Christians, 173/26; quoted, 197/18; Brahman prophecy and beliefs concerning, 198/1-6; taught Apostles to say Mass, 199/37; apparition of, to Our Lady, 214/5. *See also* Relics, Incarnation, Passion, etc.
- Jews, their connection with Passion, 6/22, 8/30, 9/12; sold relics of Passion, 8/13 (*see* Note); ruled Holy Land, 49/9; ill-treated by Titus, 54/29-55/3; circumcised on eighth day, 68/25; their use of Psalter, 72/28; wrap heads in yellow cloth, 73/2; pay tribute, 73/3; their alphabet, 73/4; blamed by Saracens, 86/15, 88/19; Mahomedans say that law of, has failed, 87/7; in cities in Pepper Forest, 111/34; attempt on lives of Christians, 126/16; ten tribes of, enclosed in Scythian Mts., 176/20; Hebrew their only language, 177/7 and 32; have no country of their own, and pay tribute to queen of the Amazons, 177/9, etc.; cannot escape from Scythian Mts., 177/16-33; will escape in time of Antichrist and will slaughter the Christians, 177/33; all Jews learn Hebrew, 177/36; fox shall lead them to liberty in time of Antichrist, 178/14, etc.
- Jezreel, or Zarin, city of, Jezebel queen of, 74/17.
- Joachim, St., body of, at Jerusalem, 58/23.
- Job, 197/9; tomb of, 69/17; well called after, 72/20; land of, described, 100/27, 101/13; account of, 101/1; identified with Jobab, 101/13.
- Jobab, identified with Job, 101/13.
- John the Baptist, St., 57/19; beheaded, 59/27; birth-place of, 62/18; church of, 66/16, 68/31; baptised Christ, 66/17, 69/17; buried at Sebaste, but beheaded at Macheron, 71/20; bones of, burnt by Julian the Apostate, 71/24, 72/4; finger of, saved by St. Thecla and buried at Sebaste, 71/26; head of, once at Sebaste, part of, at Constantinople, 71/32; part of his head at Rome and part at Genoa, 72/1, etc.; platter on which his head rested and other relics of, honoured at Genoa, 72/8; doubt as to whether his head is at Amiens, 72/12; baptised the Jacobites, 79/25. *See* Note.
- John, St., bishop, head of, said to be at Amiens, 72/13.
- John Chrysostom, St., archbishop of Constantinople, where his body lies, 9/26; left arm of, at Jerusalem, 59/31.
- John the Evangelist, St., wrote Apocalypse in Patmos, 14/1; age of, 14/3; tomb of, in Ephesus, contains Manna, 14/10; death of, 14/7; body of, in Paradise, 14/12; born at Sepphoris, 19/23; vine planted by, on Mt. Sinai, 41/4; dream of, 61/2; present at Transfiguration, 76/22; calling of, 78/8.
- John, St., Hospital of, at Jerusalem, 53/11; charnel of Hospital of, 62/10. *See also* Hospitaliers.

- John XXII, pope, correspondence of, with Greek Church, 11/28.
- Jonah, identified with the widow's son raised by Elijah, 18/24.
- Jonathan, died at Gilboa, 74/25.
- Jong (Peking), city of, residence of Great Chan in, 158/12. *See also* Jonge.
- Joppa, *see* Jaffa.
- Joram, king, killed in field of Megiddo, 74/22.
- Jordan, River, 65/30, 66/15, 216/20; mouth of, 68/28; rich in fish, 68/36; source of, 68/37, etc., 78/29; origin of its name, 69/1; course of, 69/10; Scriptural associations of, 69/16, etc.; bridge over, 77/27; Sea of Galilee runs into, 77/24.
- Josaphat, king, tomb of, 63/34; conversion of, 63/35, etc.
- Josaphat, vale of, 53/1; body of Our Lady borne there by Apostles, 61/13; position of, 52/36, etc., 62/31; tombs of Our Lady and Saints in, 63/34-64/2; size of, 64/8; scene of Last Judgment, 76/36.
- Joseph, St., marriage of, 75/3.
- Joseph of Arimathea, 52/4.
- Joseph, patriarch, lived at Babylon, in Egypt, 21/5; tomb of, 71/3; cast in well at Dothan, 71/12; garners of, in Egypt, 34/2.
- Joshua, at Hebron, 43/21; took Jericho, 65/12; took Ai, 69/31.
- Judas Iscariot, hanged himself near Pool of Siloam, repentance of, 61/31; according to Saracen belief, crucified in place of Our Lord, 86/22.
- Judas Maccabæus, father of, 214/15; king of Judea, 48/19.
- Judea, 5/25; called after Judas Maccabæus, 48/19; boundaries of, 48/20; a province of Holy Land, in Syria, 79/5.
- Juggernaut, Idol of, described, 115/17, etc.; pilgrimage to, described, 115/24-116/10; pilgrims' offerings to, 116/13; feasts of, 116/20; human sacrifice to, 116/1; procession of Car of, 116/23-117/10; suicide, and ritual of suicide for, 117/11-118/13.
- Jugglers, marvellous deeds of, in China, 156/13, etc.
- Julian, St., the Good Harbourer, identified with Simon the Leper, 64/24.
- Julian the Apostate allowed re-building of Temple, 55/4; burnt the bones of St. John the Baptist, 71/24, 72/4.
- Julius Caesar, calendar of, 51/4.
- Juniper Tree, 192/34.
- Junks, Chinese, white as snow, 139/27.
- Justinian, emperor, possessions of 5/23; image of, at Constantinople, 5/18.
- Kau-son, isle of, *see* Casson.
- Karanke Chan, wife of Thiant Chan, 161/8.
- Karemen (Kermanchâh), city of, 172/13.
- Karitet, St., *see* Chariton.
- Karna, cave of, 66/26. *See* Note.
- Keimûn, Tell, *see* Cain Mt.
- Kerra, war-cry of Tartars, 84/3.
- Khadidjah (Gadrigé), wife of Mahomet, 90/28.
- Khwarezmi, land of, *see* Chorasme.
- Kidron, brook, 62/33.
- Kings, election of, conditional rule of, and punishments for, 191/18-37; elected, 200/9.
- Kirjath Arba (Kariarba), Saracen name for Hebron, 43/36.
- Kishon, brook, once called Brook Radumu, 74/10.
- Knees, folk who walk on, 134/33.
- Knives, of flint or sharp bone, to cut balm, 32/17; superstitions as to, 164/15, etc. *See also* Iron.
- Koran, book of, names for, 47/7, 84/20; forbids drinking of wine, 47/9; teaching of, 84/23-88/18; given to Mahommedans by Mahomet, 90/10.
- Koreish, The (Corrodane), an Arab tribe, 90/27.
- Korho, city of, *see* Cruk.
- Krak, hill of, Arabic name for Mount-royal, 70/7.
- Kublai Khan, *see* Cobyly Chan.
- Kurds, *see* Cordynes.
- Kuyuk, Chan, *see* Guyo Chan.
- Laboch, River, *see* Jabbok and Note.
- Lachyn, or Melechmanser, sultan of Egypt, 23/11. *See* Note.
- Laeth (Laodicea), city of, 216/12.
- Laiazzo, city of, *see* Layays.
- Lake, filled with Adam and Eve's tears, 131/20, etc.; precious stones in, given to poor, 131/30; a bottomless lake, 126/31. *See also* Vivary.
- Lama, The Grand, *see* Lobassy.
- Lamary, land of (kingdom in Isle of Sumatra), description and inhabitants of, 118/14-119/32. *See* Note to 118/18.
- Lamb, fruit containing, 175/25.

- Lamech, father of Noah, in his blindness slew Cain, 77/15, etc.
- Lamory, *see* Lamary.
- Lamp, miraculous election of abbot by, 39/36; lamps foretelling death, 39/35, 40/2, etc.; lamp that lights and dies miraculously, in Church of Sepulchre, 50/3, etc.
- Land, of Faith, name for Isle of Brahmans, 194/21; held in common, 119/6. *See also* Darkness, land of, etc.
- Lango, or Cos, isle of, Hippocrates lord of, 14/28; dragon in, 14/29, etc.
- Laniers (= lanners, falcons), kept at Great Chan's Court, 157/9.
- Lanteryne (Linching), city of, 139/33.
- Laodicea, *see* Lacuth.
- Lapidary, the, quoted for virtues of diamonds, 105/36; not known to many men, 105/36.
- Latimers (interpreters), act as guides, 38/19.
- Latorin (Canton), chief city of Mancey or Albany, greater than Paris, 135/22.
- Law courts, unnecessary among Brahmans, 196/2, etc.
- Lay, River, 215/7. *See* Note.
- Layays (Laiazzo), city of, 97/9.
- Lazarus, raising of, 64/32.
- Leah, sepulchre of, at Hebron, 43/27.
- Leap of Our Lord, 75/26.
- Leather, money of, 157/27; armour of hardened, 166/8.
- Lebanon, hills of, 212/10, 215/27; source of Jordan in, 68/37, 78/29; divide Syria from Phœnicia, 69/7; cedars and apples of, 69/9; Cesarea Philippi at foot of, 78/28.
- Leeches, *see* Water-leeches.
- Lemnos (Lempne), isle of, Mt. Athos in, 10/11; shadow of Mt. Athos reaches to, 10/28. *See* Note.
- Lemons, described, 131/36; ointment made from, used in Ceylon, as protection against crocodiles, etc., 131/33-132/2.
- Leo, emperor, brought St. Mark's bones to Venice, 36/32.
- Leopards, do reverence to Great Chan, 156/11; eaten by Tartars, 165/14. *See also* Papyouns.
- Lette (Lithuania), land of, 83/17.
- Libra, sign of, 28/7.
- Lidda, name for Dispolis, city of, 214/8.
- Lightning, in Tartary, 83/3; unknown in Isle of Brahmans, 195/1.
- Lignum aloes, *see* Aloes.
- Linching, city of, *see* Lanternye.
- Lineages, *see under* Seven Lineages.
- Lion, Cave of the (now a church), at Jerusalem, 62/21; sign of the, 27/33; lions do reverence to Great Chan, 156/11; eaten by Tartars, 165/14; great white lions in Ceylon, 132/10, in India, 193/24, 199/3, and in Chana, 111/18.
- Lipari Islands, 36/7. *See* Note.
- Lips, folk with monstrous, 134/7; folk without, 134/6.
- Lithuania, *see* Lette.
- Livonia, *see* Niflan.
- Lobassy (Grand Lama), office of, 205/17, etc.
- Lode-star, 119/28.
- Loerancz (or Odontotyrannus), described, 193/26-30. *See* Note.
- Loirs (otters) used for catching fish, 136/15.
- Lomb (Quilon), land of, Pepper Forest in, 111/28; snakes, etc., in, 112/20; Fountain of Youth in, 113/3; ox worshipped in, 113/16; customs of natives of, 113/16-114/19. *See also* Polombe.
- Lombardy, hills of, 5/4, 213/25; havens of, 214/26; on way to Cairo, 35/13; merchants of, in Cathay, 140/8; distance from Cathay, 140/9; two friars of Lombardy accompany Mandeville through the Vale Perilous, 188/14; mile of, 35/34, 36/24, equal to English mile, 78/34; sea of, 35/33.
- Longemaath, city of, 215/20.
- Lot, grave of, 44/28; dwelt at Zoar, 67/34; father of Moab and Ammon, 68/1, 91/7; his wife changed into pillar of salt, 68/14; his relations, 68/16; left Hur for Canaan, 102/14; saved from Sodom and Gomorrah, 102/17.
- Louis, St., king of France, bought Crown of Thorns, etc., 8/12; fought with sultan of Egypt, 22/18; ransomed, 22/22.
- Luke, St., Evangelist, body of, at Constantinople, 9/27; his bones brought from Bethany, 9/28; St. Paul's disciple in physie, 82/6.
- Luz, city of, 70/37; Abraham dwelt at, 71/1.
- Lybia, 3/25; position of, 95/30; description of, 29/13, 96/3, etc.; observations by Mandeville on Polar Star, made in, 120/18; divided into Low and High Lybia, 175/7-15,

120/20, 95/30 and 31; Sea of, described, 96/9.
Lyson, Mt., 174/36. *See Note.*

Mabaron, land of (the Coromandel Coast), described, 114/22; St. Thomas the Apostle's body in, 114/24.

Maccabees, graves of, 214/16.

Mace (husk of nutmeg), in Java, 125/16.

Macedonia, 10/26; Alexander king of, 10/15; Aristotle a native of, 10/16; high hills of, 10/24; diamonds in, 105/4.

Macedonians, ruled Holy Land, 49/10.

Macharyme (Macheron), castle of, St. John Baptist beheaded at, 71/22.

Machpelah, cave of, 43/25.

Mageddo, plain of, 74/21.

Magi, *see* Three Kings.

Magnificat, church of, 62/13.

Magog, legend of, 176/21.

Mahomet, buried in Methon, 26/14; his reason for forbidding drinking of wine, 47/11, 91/14, etc.; teaching of, 84/23-88/18; thought by Saracens to be inferior to Christ, 86/1; Saracens believe his law will fail, 87/5; life and miracles of, 90/11, etc.; descent of, 91/1, etc.; relations of, with hermit Sergius, 91/9; the Messenger of God, 88/5, 90/11, 92/4; Halaon sent to destroy law of, 151/1.

Mahommedans, *see* Saracens.

Mailapúr, city of, *see* Calamia.

Mailbrins, vales of, 215/8.

Malabar, *see* Combar.

Maleville (Evil Town, *i.e.* Semlin), in Hungary, 4/33-5/1.

Mamre (Mambre), Mt. of, near Hebron, 44/29; oak of, 44/31. *See Note.*

Mamre (Mambre), vale of, 69/32, 44/30.

Maney (S. China), kingdom of, called Albany, described, 135/2-138/12. *See also* Albania.

Maney, king of, his first seat at Nanking, 138/7; formerly dwelt at Hangechow, 137/3; Mandeville, etc., served in Great Chan's wars against, 144/16.

Mandeville, Sir John, born at St. Albans, 3/17; passed the sea in 1322; his travels, 3/19, 210/21; the translator's account of his book, 4/1; given one of the thorns from Christ's crown, 8/23; in military service of sultan, 21/20; refused

to marry a princess, on condition of apostasy, 21/22; left Egypt when Melchmadabron was sultan, 23/21; did not go to Desert of Trees of Sun and Moon because of perils of way, 32/29, 198/24-199/1; his admonition *re* miracles, to monks of Sinai, 40/9; privileged by sultan's Great Seal to enter Holy Places, 53/28-54/11; his route to Jerusalem, 83/14, etc.; conversation of, with sultan on shortcomings of Christians, 88/23-90/8; has watered diamonds with may-dew, 105/22; has drunk three or four times of Well of Youth, and thinks he fares the better, 113/9; extent of his travels and astronomical observations on the spot, 120/3-121/10; his geographical and astronomical deductions, 121/10-121/23; has seen giant canes of Calonak, 127/12; questioned monks in garden of Abbey in Hangechow, about giving alms to beasts, 137/31; failed to persuade Chinese to teach him their craft, 143/18; served fifteen months with Great Chan in his war against king of Maney, 144/16; personal observations in Court of Great Chan, 144/19-145/17; his own theory as to origin of title of Chan, 146/22; visited India, 146/21; asked Chinese philosophers the meaning of symbolical gestures, 154/29; in China during reign of Thiaut Chan, 163/31; has eaten of Vegetable Lamb, 175/30; told people of Caldilhe of the barnacle goose in Europe, 176/3; has seen wrecks of ships sunk on Adamant Rocks, 180/10; his account of his passage through the Vale Perilous, 188/9-189/22; did not go near the giant cannibals, 189/35; has seen giant sheep, 190/2; his religious toleration, 90/9, 174/7, 181/12, 195/5, 197/6-36, 208/10; his admission of scandals in his church, 12/3, 4, 21 and 22, 88/20, 89/37, etc., 173/24, 174/13; not worthy to enter Earthly Paradise, 202/10; limits of his work, 209/9-30; confessed to the Pope in Rome, 209/32; showed his book to the Pope and got his approval, 210/1-18; shown a book by which his own was approved, 210/11; has done no deed of arms, 210/25; wrote his book in 1356, when resting owing to arthritic gout, 210/26-33; asks

- his readers for prayers, and promises them his prayers and a share in his merits, 210/34-211/5; text of his prayer for his readers, 211/6, etc.
- Mango Chan, a Christian, 150/33; sent his brother Halaon to win Holy Land for Christians and to take Caliph of Bagdad, 150/35-151/2.
- Manna, called Angels' Meat, 14/11; found in St. John Evangelist's grave, 14/10; in Ark of Covenant, 56/21; called Bread of Angels, 101/17; found in land of Job, 101/15; description and medicinal uses of, 101/17.
- Mappa Mundi, book from which it was made compared with "Mandeville's Travels," 210/11.
- Maraga, city of, 174/25. *See Note.*
- Marah, well of, in desert of Arabia, Moses' miracle at, 37/20.
- Mares, eaten by Tartars, 165/15; milk of, drunk by Tartars, 165/30; used as means of getting gold, 201/11, etc.
- Marioch (Marasch), city of, 215/22.
- Maritime Plain, 48/17.
- Mark, St., Evangelist, martyred at Alexandria, bones moved to Venice, 36/31.
- Marmistire (Mopsuestia), city of, 215/21.
- Marmosets (monkeys), in abbey of Monks, 137/12; kept at Great Chan's court, 157/12.
- Maron, *see Meron.*
- Marriage, second marriage not allowed by Greek church, 12/16; community of wives, 118/28-119/6, 192/5, etc.; emblem of man's foot worn on head by married women, 142/13, 163/9; coronals worn by unmarried women, 136/12; marriage customs, 190/12, 192/5, 207/1, etc., of sultan of Egypt, 24/2, of Saracens, 87/16, of king of Calonak, 127/18, of Chinese, 162/29, of Tartars, 163/12, of Prester John, 184/2. *See also Women, Children, Suttce, Polygamy, Divorce, etc.*
- Marrok (Morocco), city of, 95/16; seat of Caliph of Barbaresques and Africans, 27/20.
- Marrok (Morava), river, 5/11. *See Note.*
- Martha, sister of Lazarus, 64/31.
- Martha (Myra), bishopric of St. Nicholas, 14/23; wine of, 14/25.
- Mary, the Blessed Virgin, *see Virgin Mary.*
- Mary Cleophas, 53/19; dwelt at Bethany, 61/34.
- Mary Magdalene, St., 52/11; 53/19; 64/29; 65/7.
- Mary the Egyptian, St., shrine of, on Mt. Olivet, 64/18.
- Maryn, *i.e.* sea-coast of Syria, 216/21. *See Note.*
- Mass, only one a day to be said at same altar, in Greek church, 12/30; sung in preparation for entering Vale Perilous, 188/18; Greek rite of, in Prester John's land, 199/30; Apostolic rite of, 199/36; papal additions to, 200/3.
- Mastic trees, gum from, in Sylo (Scios), 13/30.
- Math (Hamah), land of, 21/31. *See Note.*
- Mattathias, father of Judas Maccabæus, 214/15.
- Maubek (Malbec, Baalbec), castle of, 216/14.
- Maundy, 12/9, 60/22.
- Maure (Black) Sea, 170/9. *See Note. See also Black Sea.*
- Mauritania, name of Ethiopia Meridional, described, 104/1, etc.; position and extent of, 175/5 etc. *See also Morekane.*
- May-dew, diamonds watered with, 105/24.
- Mayrok, city of, *see Morocco.*
- Meal, grows on trees, 126/7.
- Media, kingdom of, 104/29; 171/22; 203/1; position of, 95/12; extent and description of, 172/4.
- Medians, Trebizond haven of, 96/20.
- Mediterranean Sea, extent of, 95/15.
- Medonites, ruled Holy Land, 49/9.
- Meeting, omens of, 110/18, etc.
- Megiddo, field of, King Joram killed in, 74/21.
- Megou (Moughan), plain and battle of, in Land of Darkness, 173/6, etc.
- Melazgherd, *see Milstorak.*
- Melchisedech, 48/10; offered bread and wine on Rock Bethel, 57/19; met Abraham, 76/16.
- Meldan, plain of, tomb of Job in, 69/13. *See Note.*
- Melechdare, sultan of Egypt, 22/27. *See Note.*
- Melechemes, sultan of Egypt, 22/25.
- Melechmadabron, sultan of Egypt, 23/21.
- Melechmader, sultan of Egypt, 23/19.
- Melechmanser, or Lachyn, sultan of Egypt, 23/12.
- Melechmasser, sultan of Egypt, 23/5.

- Melechsalan, sultan of Egypt, imprisoned St. Louis, 22/16.
- Meleschach, sultan of Egypt, 22/31.
- Mellethasserai, sultan of Egypt, 23/1. *See Note.*
- Melos, in Greek Archipelago, 10/10.
- Membroth, *see* Nimrod.
- Memnon, *see* Memnon.
- Mengley, 6th Tartar lineage, 146/34.
- Menke, *see* Menzu.
- Memnon (Memnon), Foss of, description and properties of, 19/30-20/5.
- Menzu (Ningpo), city of, position and great ships of, 139/27. *See Note.*
- Merom, lake of, 69/2.
- Mesaph, name for Koran, 47/8. *See also* Meshaf.
- Mesell = leper, 69/28.
- Meshach, 21/10.
- Meshaf, name for Koran, 81/21. *See also* Mesaph.
- Mesopotamia, 68/35; extent and associations of, 26/35-27/8; position of, 95/10; body of St. Thomas Apostle once in, 114/26; extent and description of, 174/28.
- Messengers, relays of, in Cathay, 160/14.
- Messina, Straits of, 35/31.
- Methon, city of, in Arabia, Mahomet lies at (*see Note*), 26/14; distance of, from Babylon the Less, 26/17.
- Mice, great ones in Egypt, 31/13; eaten by Tartars, 165/15; as great as hounds and ravens, and yellow, 193/35.
- Michal, wife of David, 47/27.
- Milcch, wife of Nahor, sister to Lot, 68/18.
- Miles, of Lombardy, Gascony, etc., 78/34, etc.
- Milk, of beasts offered to idols by Tartars, 163/26; of mares, etc., drunk by Tartars, 165/29, 217/6; intoxicating liquor made from, 165/31; conduit of milk and honey, 185/26; rivers of Paradise flow with milk and honey, 191/15.
- Milke, isle of, cursed customs of inhabitants of, 129/23 (*see Note*); treaties ratified by blood-drinking in, 129/28.
- Milstorak (Melazgherd), isle of, 187/1; Old Man of the Mountain dwelt in, 184/34. *See Note.*
- Mines, of gold and silver, in Chryse and Argyre, 200/21.
- Minoa (Paros), *see* Mynea.
- Minstrels, at Great Chan's court, 155/16, 156/7 and 34; his treatment of, 156/36-157/7.
- Mirabilia, 40/17. *See Note.*
- Mirrok, port of, 213/28; 211/29; 36/18. *See Note.*
- Misak (Meshach), name given to Mishacl, 21/10.
- Mizael (Mishacl), one of the Three Children, 21/9.
- Moab, son of Lot, 68/1; gave name to a tribe of Saracens, 91/6.
- Moabites, name of Saracens descended from Moab, 91/6.
- Modyn, Mt., 211/14.
- Money, only leather and paper, in China, 157/26-35.
- Monkeys, *see* Apes, Marmosets and Baboons.
- Monks, Abbey of, at Mt. Sinai, 38/27; at Hangchow, 137/7, etc.; their peculiar views on alms-giving, 137/13, etc.; monks sing in Church of Forty Martyrs, 41/20. *See also* Monks, Black.
- Monks, Black, Abbey of, called Hill of Holy Cross, in Cyprus, possesses God Thief's Cross, 6/7, 17/16; held Church of Our Lady's sepulchre in Vale of Jehoshaphat, 63/26.
- Monsters, definition of, 30/3; description of satyr, 30/6; one-footed men, 104/16; hissing cave-dwellers, 129/36; the Cynocephali, 130/14; various kinds of, 133/29-134/30, 146/8; how engendered, 146/5; grunting, horned men, 182/13; giant cannibals, 189/23-190/6; basilisk women, 190/8; dwarfs, feeding on smell of wild apples, 198/10; hairy, amphibious folk, 198/16; animal monsters, 193/30. *See also* under names of animals.
- Montroyal, 23/17, 70/7.
- Moon, Climate of, 108/14; description and influence of, 108/8, 14, etc.; light of, produced by enchanter, 156/14; worship of, by Tartars, 164/9; only second quarter of, seen in Chryse and Argyre, 200/26; circle of the, 202/16; Trees of the Sun and Moon, 32/28, 198/26.
- Moors, 29/22; in Mauritania, described, 104/2.
- Mopsuesta, city of, *see* Marmistie.
- Morava river, *see* Marrok river.
- Morekane (Mauritania), land of, 28/15. *See also* Mauritania.
- Moriah, rock, called Bethel, Ark of Covenant rested on, 56/9.

- Morocco, city of, seat of Caliph of Barbaresques, 27/20; on Sea of Spain, 95/16.
- Morsyn, name for Egypt, 20/31. *See* Note.
- Moseach (mosque), 152/11.
- Moses, led Israelites through deserts of Arabia, 37/16; scenes of incidents in life of, 39/11-41/35; chapel, etc., of, 41/6, etc.; well of, 37/17, 40/31; present at Transfiguration, 76/23; his teaching on Confession, 79/31; Saracens say he was a familiar speaker with God, 88/4; heathen belief in books of, 208/23; Rod, etc., of, in Ark of Covenant, 56/15. *See also* Mount of Moses.
- Mosque, forms of the word, 152/11, 26/17.
- Moss, on walls of Earthly Paradise, 202/22. *See* Note.
- Mosul, city of, 174/30.
- Moughan, *see* Megon.
- Mountains, formed by Noah's Flood, 202/5.
- Mountjoy, Samuel buried at, 62/26, 70/19, 214/12; reason for its name, 62/28; first sight of Jerusalem from, 62/29, 214/11.
- Mount of the Moabites, Balaam cursed Israelites from, 66/25.
- Mount of Moses, a distinct part of Sinai, lower than Mount St. Catherine, 41/18, etc.
- Mount of Olives, description, churches and relics of, 64/3, etc.; scene of Ascension, 64/8.
- Mountour, of Great Chan, 141/23. *See* Note.
- Mouths, people without, 134/11; with crooked, etc., 133/35-134/9.
- Musketh (mosque), 26/17.
- Mynea (Minoa), in Greek Archipelago, 10/10.
- Myra, city of, *see* Martha.
- Myrok, *see* Mirrok.
- Naaman the Syrian, bathed in Jordan, 69/27.
- Naason, father of Salmon, 65/28.
- Nablus, city of, *see* Neople.
- Naboth, 74/20.
- Nacumera, isle of, described, 130/12 (*see* Note); inhabitants of, description and customs of, 130/14-131/8; king of, described, 130/24-131/8; precious stones of, 130/26-131/4.
- Nahor, brother-in-law to Lot, 68/18.
- Nails, the Holy, four in number, 51/24; one used as horse's bit by Constantine, 51/26; the rich man with long, 206/32-208/5; length of, a sign of nobility, 207/11.
- Nain, city of, 73/11; widow's son raised at, 77/9.
- Nairmont (Noirmont), hills of, 215/8.
- Nakedness, custom of, 118/19, 196/17; of Tartar idols, 166/26.
- Nakers, *i.e.* kettledrums, 187/9.
- Nanking, city of, *see* Chilenfo.
- Naphtali, tribe of, 78/26. *See* Note.
- Naples, on way to Cairo, 35/20.
- Natural law, Mandeville's praise of, 195/4, 197/7, 208/7, etc.
- Nazareth, 74/4; described, 74/32; its connection with Our Lady, etc., 75/1, etc.; gave Our Lord His surname, 70/13, 75/2; means Flower of the Garden, 75/20.
- Nebuchadnezzar, and the Three Children, 21/6; founded Bagdad, 27/13.
- Necromancy, practised at Great Chan's court, 154/2.
- Negu, son of Thiaut Chan, 164/5.
- Neiseburgh (Wieselburg), castle of, 4/33.
- Nemrath, *see* Nimrod.
- Neople (or Sichem), city of, 70/30. *See also* Siehem.
- Nessabor (Nishapur), city of, 171/25.
- Nestorians, Christian sect of, 81/4.
- Nicea, *see* Nike.
- Nicholas, St., 13/28; born at Patera, 14/22; bishop of Martha, 14/23; church of, 46/33.
- Nicobar Islands, *see* Nacumera.
- Nicosia, archbishop at, 17/12.
- Niflan (Livonia), land of, 4/31, 83/17.
- Nike (Nicaea), city of, 13/24, 215/3.
- Nile, River, also called Gyson R., source, course, and floods of, 27/29, etc.; ebb of, 28/3; Pyramids near, 33/36, etc.; precious stones and wood aloes found in, 37/4; countries bounded by, 95/12; course of, 202/34; reason for name, 203/11; description of, 203/35-204/3. *See also* Gyson R.
- Nimrod, giant, founded Tower of Babel, 25/18, 146/4; introduced idolatry, 25/20; first king in world, 25/20, 146/3; his descent, 146/1, etc.
- Nine, number, revered by Tartars, 149/25.
- Nineveh, city of, 174/23; begun by Noah, completed by Ninus, 102/7; Tobijah buried at, 102/10.

- Ningpo, city of, *see* Menzu.
- Ninus, king of Babylon, etc., completed city of Nineveh, 102/6.
- Nish, city of, 5/12.
- Nishapur, city of, *see* Nessabor.
- Noah, his dove, 7/4; son of Lamech, 77/14; expelled fiend from Ark, 98/36, etc.; founded city of Ayne, 99/8; began to build Nineveh, 102/8; saved with family from Flood, 145/20; sons of, 145/21.
- Noah's Ark, still on Mount Ararat, 98/32; fiend expelled from, by Noah, 98/37; some men say they have touched, 98/36; a plank of, brought down by a monk, 99/6.
- Noah's Flood, 68/6, 145/20; formed hills and valleys, 202/5.
- Noeab, son of Thiaut Chan, 164/5.
- Noirmont, *see* Nairmont.
- North, the, *see* Septentrion.
- Norway, 122/29; outside the Seven Climates, 124/12.
- Notre Dame de Latine, church of, at Jerusalem, 53/18; N. D. la Grande, church of, at Jerusalem, 53/17.
- Nubia, land of, its Christian inhabitants, 29/20, 175/10; position of, 175/9.
- Nubians, Christian sect of, 29/21, 81/5, 175/10.
- Nuns Cordelers (Franciscan nuns), 72/3. *See* Note.
- Nutmegs, in Java, 125/15; on trees in Caldilhe, 176/14.
- Nuts, as big as a man's head, 192/36; great nuts of India, 176/14.
- Nye (Nish), cit. of, 5/12.
- Nyse, city of, 179/23; capital of Prester John, 184/4.
- Oak of Abraham, *see* Dirpe.
- Oaths, condemned by Brahmans, 194/17.
- Ocean Sea, 95/19, 104/7, 118/14, 129/11, 130/11, 135/3, 170/8, 174/26, 175/8, 190/7, 200/23; Hormuz in, 108/21.
- Octorar (Farab), city of, 169/13. *See* Note.
- Odenthos (Odontotyrannus), described, 193/27.
- Oedenburg, city of. *see* Cypron.
- Ogotai Chan, *see* Ecchecha Chan.
- Oil, miraculous, brought by birds to Mount Sinai, 38/36-39/8; from bones of St. Catherine, 39/22; miraculous oil, properties of, 212/1; oil of mercy, 7/16; olive oil, valued by Tartars, 167/6.
- Old Law, 165/17.
- Old Man of Mountain and his Mock Paradise, 184/35-186/33.
- Olive, wood of, used for Holy Cross, 6/20; signifies peace, 7/3; miraculous oil of, 38/30-39/8, 212/1; oil of, valued by Tartars, 167/6. *See also* Mount of Olives.
- Olympus, Mount, separates Macedonia and Thrace, 10/25; height of, 10/26.
- Omens, of meetings with bea ts, 141/19, 110/18, etc.
- One—giants with only one eye, 133/31; one-footed men, 104/16.
- Oracles (giraffes), called "gerfauntz" in Arabia, 192/37, etc.; described, 193/1.
- Orda (the Golden Horde), city of, in Tartary, 83/8.
- Orders, Service of, attended by Prester John, 199/21; Nuns of 100 Orders (*i.e.* Franciscan Nuns), 72/3. *See* Note.
- Ordij, son of Thiaut Chan, 164/4.
- Orfray (embroidery, or rich cloth, or ornamental border), 154/15.
- Orille (Chryse), isle of, described, 200/21, etc.
- Ormanx, town of, 215/9.
- Orontes, bridge and river of, *see* Farfar.
- Ortygia (Delos), isle of, *see* Critige.
- Ostriches, at Great Chan's court, 157/8.
- Otters, *see* Loirs.
- Owl, saved life of Jenghiz, and therefore worshipped by Tartars, 148/28-149/7.
- Ox, calling of, 122/32; worshipped in India, 110/8, 113/16; worshipped by Cynocephali, 130/16.
- Oxidrate, Isle of, 196/13. *See* Note.
- Ozee (Hosea), prophet, quoted, 197/15.
- Pagans, descended from Cham, 146/11; augurs among, 111/9; religions of, Mandeville's remarks on, 90/9, 195/4, 197/5, 208/10.
- Palace, of king of Java, 125/22; of Great Chan, 140/22.
- Palestine, position of, 48/6, 95/14; a province of Holy Land, in Syria, 79/5; once Christian, 199/16. *See also* Holy Land.
- Palm, wood, in Holy Cross, 6/32; signifies victory, 6/33; trees, 37/25.
- Pannonye, land of, 4/24.

- Panther, sweet smell from, 141/15; worshipped for virtue and sweet smell, 141/19; skins of, described, 141/14, etc.
- Paper, money of, 157/27.
- Pappyouns, hunting leopards, in Cyprus, described, 17/25.
- Paradise, Earthly, the, Seth's visit to, 7/13; source of Nile in, 28/8, 202/34; wood-aloes from, 37/6, 142/29, 159/3; Adam's connection with, 44/8-17; apples of, 31/26; well from river of, 63/9; rivers of, 95/9, 98/25, 171/13, 202/28, etc.; Well of Youth said to come from, 113/13; floods of, split up India, 179/19; River of Precious Stones flows out of, 181/31; position of, 201/32; reasons why Mandeville did not go to, 202/10; description of, 202/12, etc.; Well of, the source of all sweet waters, 203/1; inaccessible to mortals, 203/20-204/7.
- Paradise, Heavenly, the, St. John Evangelist's body translated to, 14/12; Mohammedan ideas of, 84/26-85/3; Tartar idea of, 167/26, etc.; rivers of, flowing with milk and honey, 191/15.
- Paradise, Mock, the, of Gatholonabes, 185/1-186/33.
- Paris, relics of Passion at, 8/8, 9/16 and 21; Our Lord's preputium taken to, 54/25; compared with Latoryn, 135/22.
- Paros, *see* Mynea.
- Parrots, *see* Popinjays.
- Passion of Christ unknown to Brahmans, 198/5; relics of, 6/1, etc., 8/5-9/23, 49/16-53/21.
- Passover, the, eaten by Christ, 61/2.
- Patera, birth-place of St. Nicholas, 14/22.
- Pater Noster, 130/27; in Apostolic Mass, 200/2; for Mandeville, 211/1.
- Pathen, isle of, flour, honey and poison grow on trees in, 126/7, etc.; described, 126/4, etc. (*see* Note); Dead Sea of, 126/31; long canes of, 126/33-127/16; precious stones on roots of canes in, 127/1.
- Patmos, isle of, St. John wrote Apocalypse in, 14/1.
- Patriarch, of Greek Church, equal to Pope, 11/26; of St. Thomas, head of Indian Church, 184/20; sepulchres of patriarchs, at Hebron, 43/25, etc.; Place of Patriarchs, 44/1.
- Paul, St., epistle of, to people of Rhodes, 16/18; physician and teacher of physic at Damascus, 82/3 and 8; connections with Damascus, 82/4 and 9; St. Luke his pupil, 82/6; quoted on interpretation of Scripture, 88/17; his teaching on daily Communion, 174/11.
- Peacocks, of gold, in Great Chan's palace, 143/4.
- Pearls, orient, in Nacumera, 130/26; great pearls in Ceylon, 131/26; in Mock Paradise, 185/26; in Great Chan's court, 153/4.
- Peas, rare among Tartars, 165/20, 217/2.
- Peking, city of, 140/16. *See also* Camaalech and Jong.
- Pentexoire, isle of, land of Prester John, 179/15, 184/32; city of Nysa in, 179/23.
- Pepper, three kinds on one tree, described, 112/6; manner of gathering, 112/22.
- Pepper Forest, the, in land of Lomb, described, 111/28-112/35.
- Perschembé, city of, *see* Pharsipée.
- Persia, 3/24, 5/26, 169/10, 172/6, 177/3, 180/28, 203/1; held of Great Chan, 26/4; trade of, 81/20; position of, 95/12 (*see* Note); routes to, 96/15, 98/19; on way to India, 170/22; divisions and description of, 171/9; sea of, 98/30.
- Persia, Emperor of, his custom on merchandise, 99/24; lives in Soldania in summer, 99/36; best city of, 100/10; extent of dominions of, 100/21; inferior to Great Chan, 162/17; the third greatest Emperor in world, 171/7; Emperor Shapur II persecuted Christians, and was lost in Land of Darkness, 172/36-173/18.
- Persians, ruled Holy Land, 49/9; Trebizond, haven of, 96/20; alphabet of, 100/23.
- Perydos, a green gem, 143/29.
- Pestilence, unknown among Brahmans, common in the West, 195/2.
- Peter, St., his denial of Our Lord, 9/2, 61/20; his sins forgiven, 63/7; imprisoned, 59/29; wept for sin at Mount Sion, 61/14; born at Bethsaida, 73/12; present at Transfiguration, 76/21; his connection with Sea of Galilee, 78/6; introduced auricular confession, 80/16; his vision at Joppa, 197/21; his manner of saying Mass, 199/36.

- Pharan, desert of, 69/6.
- Pharaoh, pursued Israelites, 37/31; death of, in Red Sea, 38/2; Figs of, 32/1.
- Pharpar, River, *see* Farfar.
- Pharsipée (Perschembé), city of, 97/10; Castle of Sparrowhawk near, 97/7 and 11.
- Phenice (Philomelium), city of, hot springs at, 215/32.
- Philip, St., Apostle, house of, 62/1.
- Philistines, 20/7; Hebron chief city of, 43/15; slain by Samson, 20/11.
- Philomelium, city of, *see* Phenice.
- Philosophers, at Great Chan's court, 154/1-155/14; a philosopher explains symbolical gestures to Mandeville, 154/29.
- Phison (Ganges), River, 171/20; near Vale Perilous, 187/2; described, 202/30-204/7; reason for its name, 203/5. *See also* Ganges.
- Phœnicia, 69/8; position of, 95/14.
- Phoenix, legend of, 30/21; a symbol of Christ, 30/35; description of, 31/37-31/9.
- Phrygia, province of. *see* Brique.
- Physicians, Christian and Saracen, at Great Chan's court, 157/14, etc.
- Picardy, 72/13.
- Pigeon-post, in Syria, etc., described, 79/7.
- Pigmies, 134/11, 198/11; description of, 138/14-139/2; city of, kept by Great Chan, 138/36.
- Pilate, Pontius, 9/11; house of, at Jerusalem, 58/35.
- Pilches (skins with fur on), worn by Tartars, 163/5.
- Pilgrimage, 35/4; greatest is one to Jerusalem, 35/6; to Joseph's tomb, 71/3; to Indian idol, 115/24-116/10; to St. James, etc., 115/25.
- Pilgrims, their first sight of Jerusalem, 62/28, 214/11. *See also* Pilgrimage.
- Pilgrims, Castle of, 20/17; also called Cayphas, 216/22.
- Pillars of Hercules, 96/1.
- Pincenati, land of the, 5/11, 10/14.
- Pisa, 36/14.
- Pismires (ants), that guard Hills of Gold, account of, 200/28-201/26.
- Placidus (Placidus), name for St. Eustace, 215/28.
- Plantains (long apples), in Egypt, 31/26; in Caldille, 176/9.
- Poi-on, from trees, 126/11-31.
- Poitiers, Preputium of Christ at, 54/26. *See* Note.
- Poland, 1/24. *See also* Cracow, realm of.
- Polar Star, names for, 119/23; description of, 119/22, 120/11; not visible in Lamory, 119/22 and 31; relative heights of, and deductions from, 120/3-121/14.
- Polombe (Quilon), city of, in Pepper Forest, 112/36; mountain of, in Pepper Forest, with Well of Youth at its foot, 113/1. *See also* Lomb.
- Polyandry, *see under* Communism.
- Polygamy, 24/2, 87/15, 127/18, 142/11, 162/29, 163/12.
- Pontus Enximus (Black Sea), Trebizond formerly haven of, 96/20.
- Pope of Rome, compared with heads of other churches, 11/25, 27/10, 184/21, 205/17; St. Athanasius imprisoned by, 96/27; quarrel between Greek Church and Pope John XXII, 11/28-12/5; additions by popes to the Mass, 200/3; Mandeville confessed to, 209/32; Mandeville's book approved by, 210/1-18.
- Popinjays (parrots), at Great Chan's court, 157/10; plentiful in India, 180/32; two sorts of, 182/17, etc.; called Psitakes, 182/17.
- Porez de Spynne (hedgehogs), 193/23.
- Postal service, of Great Chan, 160/14.
- Pottages, little eaten by Tartars, 165/20.
- Precious stones, on roots of canes in Pathen, 127/1; in Great Chan's palace, 141/27, 142/2, etc., 143/24, 144/3, 152/29, 153/4 and 20, etc., 158/2, 159/9; Caliph of Bagdad starves amid, 151/16; comparative values of, 153/22; offered to Great Chan, 156/1; offered to Tartar emperor, 168/21; in Prester John's land, 181/4, 183/6, etc., 199/8; river of, 181/31-182/5; in Vale Perilous, 188/27; women with eyes of, 190/8; in River Phison, 202/32.
- Prelates, approach Great Chan, 161/26. *See also* Abbot.
- Preputium of Christ, 54/22.
- Presents, to Great Chan, 149/27, 155/23, 161/29-162/4; to Tartar Emperor, 168/21.
- Prester John, 26/8; Christians of land of, 81/6, 199/30; his kingdom our Antipodes, 121/22; Emperor of India, 121/22, 179/13; inferior to Great Chan, 162/19; daughter of, married to Thiant Chan, 164/6; empire, government and royal state

- of, 179/16-186/33; second to Great Chan, 171/8, 179/24, 181/2; always marries Great Chan's daughter, 180/36; riches of, 181/2; marvels in land of, 181/17, 184/32, etc.; religion of, 181/9; subject provinces of, 181/15, 200/8; order of array of, 182/24-183/4; palaces and jewels of, 183/4-184/7; his continence, 184/2; household of, 184/7, etc.; extent of land of, 184/29, 199/5; why so called, 199/9; deserts in land of, 201/27; ways back from land of, 204/8 and 16. *See also under* India, etc.
- Priest, taken as title by Prester John, 199/27; priests wedded in Greek Church, 12/18.
- Probatia Piscina, 58/26.
- Promise, Land of, 70/5, 78/21, 151/19, 212/12, 213/14. *See also* Holy Land.
- Prophets, among Brahmans, 197/35; belief in teaching of, 208/21.
- Prostitution, unknown among Brahmans, 194/27.
- Prussia, 4/31, 83/30, 150/30, 170/1, 171/4, 216/34.
- Psitakes name for parrots, 182/17.
- Ptolemais, city of, or Acre, 19/9. *See also* Acre.
- Pulveral (Bafira), city of, 214/35. *See* Note.
- Purgatory, denied by Greek Church, 12/13.
- Purification by fire, 164/28, etc., 191/8.
- Pyncynard, *see* Pincenati, land of the.
- Pyramids, *see* Garners of Joseph.
- Pyromancy, at Great Chan's court, 154/3.
- Pytan, isle of, inhabitants of, 198/7. *See* Note.
- Pytan (Bithynia), province of Turkey, 174/16.
- Quarrels, decided by arm of St. Thomas, 115/3.
- Quesiton, province of, 174/16. *See* Note.
- Quilon, *see* Polombe and Lomb.
- Quybybes, *see* Cubeb.
- Rachel, wife of Jacob, tomb of, 47/32.
- Radumu, *see* Kishon.
- Rafinêh, city of, *see* Raphane.
- Rahab, of Jericho, marriage of, 65/17-29.
- Raisins of Staphis, name for vine planted by St. John Evangelist, 41/4.
- Rama, 70/27.
- Ramadan, fast, kept by Saracens, 86/12.
- Ramatha, city of, 48/28, 70/16, 214/14.
- Rames (Ramleh), city of, 216/25; described, 214/2.
- Rameses, land of, in Egypt, 29/7.
- Raphane (Rafinêh), city of, 212/17.
- Rats, giant ones in Isle of Chana, 111/19; eaten by Tartars, 82/26, 165/15.
- Ravens, mice as great as, 193/36; of ill omen, 110/36; eat dead bodies, 206/1.
- Rebekah, sepulchre of, at Hebron, 43/27.
- Red Sea, 29/11, 56/15, 95/29, 175/6, 200/23, 215/31 (*see* Note); Israelites' passage over, 37/29, etc.; reason for name, 38/3; extent of, 38/1.
- Reeds, giant, called Thaby, in Pathen, described, 126/33-127/16; precious stones at roof of, their virtues, 127/1; in Ceylon, 131/27.
- Relics, of Passion, at Constantinople, 6/1, etc., in Paris, 8/8, etc., at Jerusalem, 49/16-53/21; of suicides before Idol of Juggernaut, 118/11; feathers of owl revered as relics, by Tartars, 149/4; *see also* Holy Cross, Nail, etc.
- Religious men, at court of Great Chan, 157/22; ceremonies of, at meeting of Great Chan, 161/14, of Empress and Son, 162/2.
- Religious Toleration, advocated by Mandeville, *see under* Mandeville.
- Resich (Reshid), island province of, 29/24.
- Rhodes, 36/22, 213/32; Knights of Hospital of, 15/6, etc.; governed by Hospitaliers, 16/15; also known as Collos, 16/17; St. Paul's epistle to people of, 16/18; distance of, from Cyprus, 17/9.
- Rice, 180/35, 206/37.
- Richard, Cœur de Lion, his fight with Saladin, 22/9.
- Rich Lord, served by 50 maidens, story of, 206/32, etc.
- Riclay, city of, *see* Heraclea.
- River, of Precious Stones, described, 181/29-182/5; *see also* Paradise rivers of.
- Robbery, unknown in Nacmmera, 131/4, among Tartars, 165/11, and among Brahmans, 194/26; death-penalty

- for, among Tartars, 161/37; *see also* Theft.
- Roboas, *see* Jeroboam.
- Roianz (Rohais or Edessa), city of, 174/31. *See also* Edessa.
- Romans, ruled Holy Land, 49/10.
- Roman Sea, 215/16.
- Romany (province of Italy), merchants from, in Cathay, 140/7, etc.
- Romany (Asia Minor), plains of, 215/16.
- Rome, city of, on way to Cairo, 35/21; Ark of Covenant taken to, 56/12; part of St. John Baptist's head at, 72/1; Peking greater than, 151/24; Mandeville in, 209/31.
- Roses, legend of' origin of, 45/28-46/8. *See* Note.
- Roumania, 5/24.
- Roundness, of earth, demonstrated, 119/32, 122/9, 201/36-202/7, 204/9, etc.
- Ruby, royal, of King of Naemera, described, 130/31; coveted by Great Chan, 131/2; rubies found on coast of Tyre, 18/9; ruby of wonderful size and brilliance belonging to Great Chan, 158/1.
- Ruffynell, castle in, 214/33. *See* Note.
- Russia, 4/29 (*see* Note), 83/16, 170/1, 171/4; campaigns of Great Chan's brothers extended as far as, 150/30.
- Ryboth (Tibet), description of, and account of inhabitants of, 205/7-206/28.
- St. Albans, birthplace of Mandeville, 3/18.
- St. Catherine, Mt., St. Catherine buried at, 41/18 and 24; higher than Mt. of Moses, 41/22; a distinct part of Mt. Sinai, 41/29, etc.
- Ste. Chapell, in Paris, relics of Passion in, 8/8; preputium of Circumcision at, 54/25.
- St. Saviour, church of, at Tyre, 18/18; at Jerusalem, relics at, 59/30.
- St. Simeon, port of, 216/10.
- St. Sophia, church of, praised, 5/16; grave of Hermogenes in, 11/10.
- Saba, city of, in Ethiopia, 104/22.
- Sabatory (Sabbath), River, reason for its name, 212/18.
- Sabisocolle, hill of, 98/31. *See* Note.
- Sachala (Satalia), city of, *see* Satalia.
- Sadonye, city of, *see* Soldania.
- Saduz (Shangtu, Xanadu), city of, summer residence of Great Chan, 158/7. *See* Note.
- Safed, castle of, *see* Sephor, castle of.
- Saffre, *see* Sepphoris.
- Sahyth (Said), a province of Egypt, 29/23.
- Saints, Indian, compared with Christian, 117/16, etc.; suicides before Juggernaut Idol counted as, 118/13.
- Sakers (female falcons), kept at Great Chan's court, 157/9.
- Sakrets (male falcons), kept at Great Chan's court, 157/10.
- Saladin, Sultan of Egypt, fought with Richard I, 22/9; assumed sole power of caliphate, 27/21, etc.
- Salem, old name for Jerusalem, 48/11.
- Salmata, *see* Zalmumma.
- Salmon, son of Naason, married Rahab, 65/28.
- Salt, hill of, near Tauris, 99/30.
- Samar (Sennaar), country of, 25/26.
- Samaria, province of, 70/29; city of Neople in, 70/31; king of, 74/22.
- Samaria, or Sebaste, town of, chief city of Samaria, 71/15, etc.; shrines in, 71/20; St. John Baptist's finger at, 71/26; his head once at, 71/32; 12 miles from Jerusalem, 72/16.
- Samaritans, sacrifice at Mt. Gerizim, 71/10; their conversion, 72/21; have own belief and laws, 72/23, etc.; their clothing, 72/32; what they told Mandeville about Noah's descendants and the title of Chan, 145/18-146/20.
- Samaritan woman, church on site of well at which Christ spoke to her now destroyed, 70/32; Jeroboam's golden calves, built near this well, 70/34.
- Samarkand, city of, 171/19 and 25.
- Samson, capture and death of, 20/9.
- Samuel, prophet, tomb of, 62/26, 70/19, 214/12; birthplace in Mt. Ephraim, 70/18; parents of, 70/17; vision of God to, concerning Orders, 70/24.
- Sand, glass made from, 19/30; *see also* Gravel and Gravelly Sea.
- Saphon (Ispahan), city of, 171/26.
- Saphor (Sephor), castle of, 78/20. *See* Note.
- Sapphires, diamonds counterfeited from two kinds of, 107/2; used as preservatives from lechery, 183/36-184/1; sapphire loupe = loop, 'a precious stone of imperfect brilliancy, esp. a sapphire' (N.E.D.), 107/3.
- Saraens, destroyed Tyre, 18/4; counterfeited balm, 33/7; whitewashed paintings in Alexandria, 36/36; their reverence for patriarchs' sepul-

- chres, 43/27; their contempt for Jews and Christians, to whom they forbid the holy places, 43/30, etc., 53/25; drink no wine, 47/5, 91/28; some drink wine privately, 91/29; eat no pork, 47/17; ruled Holy Land, 49/11; their reverence for Temple, 55/20; circumcised when fourteen years old, 68/26; their honour to relic of St. John Baptist, 72/11; wrap heads in white linen, 72/35; keep Nazareth for profit, 75/11; wickedness of, in Nazareth 75/13; customs and law of, 84/17-92/12; have whole Bible in Arabic, 88/12; rite for admission of converts, 91/34-92/4; blame Jews for not keeping law of Moses, 88/18; blame Christians for not following the Gospel, 88/20-89/36; loyal to their own religion, 90/8; drink "galamel," 91/30; different names of, 91/4; descent of, 91/2, 146/17; alphabet of, 92/6; Armenia under tribute to, 98/3; take toll from Christians in Tauris, 99/31; augurs of, 111/8; hold Isle of Chana, 111/17; in Mancy, 135/8; Caliph of Bagdad, Emperor of, 151/1; Saracen physicians less trusted by Great Chan than Christian ones, 157/16; in Media, 172/10. *See also* Mahomet.
- Sarah, sepulchre of, at Hebron, 43/25; sister of Lot, 68/17; age of, at birth of Isaac, 68/19; gave name to Saracen tribe, 91/5; left Ur for Canaan, 102/14.
- Sarak (Serai), chief city of Cumania, 170/17.
- Sarche, city of, in India, inhabited by Christians, 111/24. *See* Note.
- Sardenak, city of, 212/6; five miles from Damascus, 18/31; church of Our Lady at, described, 82/14, etc. (*see* Note); miraculous image of Our Lady of, 82/21; three days' journey from Beyrout, 214/2.
- Sardinia, island of, 35/25. *See also* Italy, Isles of.
- Sarepta, or Sarphen, city of, 18/22.
- Sarmassane (Samarkand), city of, 171/25. *See* Note, *also* Samarkand.
- Sarmois, language (Arabian), 89/14, 70/7. *See* Notes.
- Saroukhan, *see* Quesiton.
- Sarphen, or Sarepta, city of, Elijah's miracle at, 18/23.
- Sarias (Shiraz), city of, 172/12.
- Satalia, city of, legend of its destruction, 16/26, etc.; on Sea of Greece, 174/18.
- Saturday, no fasting in Greek Church on, 12/26; Sabatory River only runs on, 212/18.
- Saturn, climate of, 108/6; character and influence of, 108/7, etc.
- Satyr, St. Anthony's meeting with, 30/2.
- Saul, died at Gilboa, 74/24; his head hung on walls of Bethshan, 74/30.
- Saure (Isauria), province of, 174/16.
- Saures (Shapur II), Emperor of Persians, persecuted Christians and overwhelmed with darkness, 172/35-173/18.
- Sayete, name for Sidon, 18/28. *See* Note.
- Scala Tyriorum, hill called, 19/27.
- Scanton (Leonium), town of, described as a river, 215/10.
- School of God, on-Mt. Tabor, 76/14.
- Scios, island of, *see* Sylo.
- Sclavonia, 4/27.
- Scotland, position of, with regard to Jerusalem, 121/23; outside the Seven Climates, 124/12.
- Scriptures, Saracen reverence for, 86/2 and 8, 88/11; interpretation of, by Saracens, Jews and Christians, 88/13; St. Paul quoted on interpretation of, 88/17. *See also* Bible.
- Seythia, kingdom of, described, 95/19; Colopheus slain in battle in, 102/27, etc.; Ten Tribes in mountains of, 176/19.
- Seythian Mts. (Caucasus), Jews enclosed in, 176/19; unscalable, 177/19; surrounded by deserts, 177/23; one exit from, 177/21 and 28; gates of, 178/12 and 21.
- Seythopolis, city of, formerly called Bethshan, head of Saul hung on walls of, 74/30.
- Sea, higher than land in Lybia, 96/3, in Ceylon, 132/12, etc.
- Sea, rushes of the, Holy Crown made from, 8/16, 9/13.
- Seals, of Great Chan, 151/33, etc.
- Sebaste, *see* Samaria, town of.
- Seboyin (Zeboim), city of, in Dead Sea, 67/29.
- Sellüriel, city of, *see* Sephor, city of.
- Segor, city of, *see* Zoar.
- Seir, Mt., 81/26. *See also* Edom, hill of.
- Seleucia, *see* Celsite.
- Semlin, city of, *see* Evil Town.
- Semoch, fifth Tartar lineage, 146/34.

- Sennaar, *see* Samar.
- Seonergant, *see* Samarkand.
- Sephor (Safed), castle of, position and associations of, 78/18, etc. *See* Note.
- Sephor (Seffürich), city of, two miles from Nazareth, 75/24.
- Sepphoris, town of, SS. James and John born at, 19/22, 77/11.
- Septentrion (North), the, 78/19, 104/30; described, 84/9.
- Sepulchre, Holy, the, church of, at Jerusalem, described, 49/16–52/32; fortifications of Jerusalem weak before, 52/32; Augustinian Canons at, 52/13; enclosed by Adrian, 55/16; stone of, at Mt. Sion, 60/8; Church of Our Lady's Sepulchre, described, 63/3, etc.
- Serai, city of, *see* Sarak.
- Sergius, Nestorian hermit, killed by followers of Mahomet, 91/9, etc.
- Serioch Chan, daughter of Prester John, and first wife of Thiaut Chan, 164/7.
- Serpents, in Sicily try legitimacy of children, 35/35; worshipped by Indians, 110/18; in land of Lomb, 112/20; in Pepper Forest, 112/22; flesh of, eaten in Tracoda, 130/3; people that hiss like, 130/5; ointment of lemons a protection against, in Tracoda, 131/33; do no harm to strangers in Ceylon, 132/4; eaten as great delicacy in Maney, 135/32; do reverence to Great Chan, 156/12; in Caspian desert, 177/26; in maiden's bodies, 190/32; lie as in a dream, 192/21; giant, crested and upright, etc., 193/12; their significance in vision at Joppa, 197/19, etc.; in Desert of Trees of Sun and Moon, 198/37. *See also* Adders.
- Seth, legend of his visit to Paradise, 7/13, etc.; Christ of his kindred, 44/20.
- Seven Climates, the, 108/6–15; correspond to the seven planets, 124/15; British Isles, etc., outside, 124/10 and 17.
- Seven Lineages, names and account of, 146/29, etc.; elect the Tartar emperor, 168/7.
- Seyr, Mt., *see* Seir, Mt.
- Shadrach, name given to one of Three Holy Children, 21/10.
- Shangtn, city of, *see* Saduz.
- Shapur II, *see* Saures.
- Sheep, giant, 190/1.
- Sheerkooch, Sultan, *see* Zarocon.
- Shem, son of Noah, inherited Africa, 145/29; descendants of, 146/17.
- Shere, or Maundy, Thursday, 12/8.
- Shiloh, Ark kept at, 70/20.
- Ships, made without iron, 109/1; ships with iron, dare not pass Adamant Rocks, 180/7; modern ships faster than old ones, 200/15.
- Shiraz, *see* Sarraz.
- Sichem, sometimes called Sichar, 70/28; also called Neople, 71/1; Jewish pilgrimage to shrine of Joseph at, 71/3, etc.; Scriptural associations of, 71/7, etc., 102/10.
- Sicily, distance of, from Acre, 19/13; on way to Jerusalem, 35/25; description of, 35/25, etc.; serpents that test legitimacy of children in, 35/35, etc.; volcanoes in, 36/4. *See* Note. *See also* Isles of Italy.
- Siek, killed in Caffo, 129/12–22; treatment of, in Dondyn, 132/23–133/25.
- Sickness, rare among Brahmans, 195/10.
- Sidon, city of, *see* Sydon.
- Sikonies (storks), on R. Nile, 28/17.
- Silesia, *see* Slesie.
- Silha, *see* Ceylon.
- Silk, 140/14; price of, in China, 153/5; in India, 180/1; *see also* Camoka.
- Siloam, Pool of, Scriptural associations of, 61/23, etc.
- Silver, not used for money but for pillars, etc., in China, 157/34, etc.; offered to Emperor of Tartars at his coronation, 168/24; in Vale Perilous 187/13, 188/27; mine of, 200/22.
- Silvester, St., church of, at Rome, part of St. John Baptist's head at, 72/1; nuns of 100 orders at, 72/2. *See* Note.
- Simeon, St., 57/4; tomb of, near Temple, 58/18; *see also* St. Simeon, Port of.
- Simon Chananens (the Canaanite), 74/4.
- Simon the Leper, *see* Julian, St.
- Simony, general in Eastern and Western Churches, 12/22.
- Simulacres, defined and differentiated from idols, 109/20, etc.; those in church of St. Thomas Apostle described, 115/15; uses of and views on, 203/27.
- Sinai, Convent of, monks of, 38/27, etc.; church and relics of St. Catherine in, 38/35–39/33; miraculous oil of, 39/1, etc.; method of choosing prelate of, 39/34–40/9; Mandeville's admo-

- nition to monks of, 40/9, etc.; how the Blessed Virgin banished vermin from, 40/21, etc.; well of Moses near, 40/30; church of Our Lady near, 40/34; monks of, provide food for pilgrims, 42/4.
 Sinai, Mt., 20/22, 35/2, 95/3, 213/12; St. Catherine's body at, 39/20, 41/18 and 24; way to, 37/27, 38/8; origin of name of, 38/23; convent at, 38/27-40/32; church of Our Lady and chapel of Elijah on, 40/34 and 37; vine planted by St. John Evangelist on, 41/4; chapel and cave of Moses on, 41/6, etc.; stone brought by angels to Our Lady from, 60/3; Sergius dwelt near, 91/9; Valley between Mt. Sinai and Mt. St. Catherine, church of Forty Martyrs in, 41/17, etc.; old of, 41/21.
 Sindjâr, *see* Symar.
 Sinope, *see* Synople.
 Sion, Mt., church of Our Lady at, 59/36; holy places and Scriptural associations of, 60/3-62/30; position of, 61/5; graves of Jewish kings at, 61/9; King Joram buried in, 74/23.
 Sisera, King, 74/14.
 Six-footed beasts, 193/32.
 Skulls, made into cups, 206/23.
 Slave-market, at Cairo, 31/14.
 Sleights, used for transport in Tartary, 83/34.
 Slesie (Silesia), land of, 4/24.
 Snails, giant, in Calonak, 128/36-129/7; ointment of, used in gathering pepper, 112/30.
 Soara, *see* Zoar.
 Sobach, town of, 70/12.
 Sodom, city of, in Dead Sea, 67/28, 102/17.
 Soldania, city of, described, 99/34.
 Solomon, King, 43/9, 48/13; built Temple, 57/27; buried at Mt. Sion, 61/9; Solomon's School near Temple, 58/6; Temple of, first foundation of Templars at, 58/8 etc.
 Sorbotyn, name for long pepper, 112/8.
 Sornagant, *see* Samarkand.
 Sothim (Ramatha Sophim), city of, 70/16.
 Spain, Sea of, 95/16, 96/1, 175/14; spikenard of, 33/3.
 Spanish companions of Maudeville lost in Vale Perilous, 188/24.
 Sparrowhawk, Castle of, its position, 97/7; account and legends of, 97/11-98/16.
 Sparrowhawks, flights of, as omens, 110/33; at Great Chan's court, 157/9.
 Spear with which Christ's side pierced, by whom possessed, 9/20, etc.
 Spelunke (cave), Double, name for cave of Machpelah, 42/33.
 Spheres, used by Chinese necromancers, 154/5.
 Spices, 176/15; in India, 180/1.
 Spikenard of Spain, used as a counterfeiter for balm, 33/3.
 Spurs, not used in Cathay, 164/12.
 Stagira, city of, birth and burial place of Aristotle, 10/16.
 Staphis, raisins of, *see* Raisins.
 Stars, 200/24; Star of Three Kings fell near Bethlehem, 46/14. *See also* Antarctic and Lode Stars.
 Steel, charm against injury from, 127/3.
 Stephen, St., church of, above Vale of Jehoshaphat, 53/2; part of head of, at Jerusalem, 59/32; buried at Mt. Sion, 60/27.
 Storks, on R. Nile, 28/17.
 Strageis, city of, *see* Stagira.
 Strangers, Tartar contempt for, 165/13; serpents, etc., that do not harm, 132/4.
 Subenite, beginning of burial service, 206/6.
 Sugarmago (T'siuingchow), town of, famous for silks, etc., 140/14.
 Suicides, before Juggernaut Idol, 116/30, 117/11, etc.
 Sukkarke, or entremet, 206/23. *See* Note.
 Sultan, *see* Egypt, Sultan of.
 Sumatra, *see* Lamary and Cinnabar.
 Summer, two summers in one year in Taprobane, 200/10.
 Sumobor, isle of, *see* Cinnabar.
 Sun, flesh roasted by, 42/20; worship of, justified, 109/16 and 37 etc.; light of, produced by enchanters, 156/15 Tartars worship the, 164/10; rising of the, 201/36, etc.; Trees of Sun and Moon, 32/28, 198/26.
 Superstitions, among heathens and Christians, 109/15-111/17; of Tartars, 164/9, etc.
 Surre, city of, *see* Tyre.
 Surrye, country of, *see* Syria.
 Susa, city of, palace of Prester John in, described, 183/8.
 Suts, name for Bagdad, 27/13.
 Suttee, in land of Lomb, 114/5, etc.; in Calonak, 129/7; in India, 191/6.
 Swans, circle of, *see* Zodiac, signs of.

Sweze, name for land of Job, 100/28.

See Note.

Swine, flesh of, forbidden to Saracens, 47/18, 165/14; of ill omen, 110/32; not kept by Tartars, 163/23, 165/16; wild swine, spotted and great as oxen, 193/20.

Sychar, *see* Siehem.

Sydon, city of, 213/3; Dido queen of, 18/25, etc.

Sylo (Scios), isle of, mastic grows in, 13/29.

Sylo (Shiloh), Ark kept at, 70/20.

Symar (Sindjâr), Mt., 174/35.

Symbolical gestures, at Great Chan's court, 154/13-155/6.

Synople (Sinope), castle of, 214/35.

Syria, 3/24, 5/25, 20/25, 48/23, 69/27, 216/9; under sultan, 21/23-30; divided by Lebanon from Phœnicia, 69/7; Holy Land in, 78/37; extent and divisions of, 79/1, etc.; pigeon-post in, 79/8; position of, 48/15, 95/13; description of, 174/20; once Christian, 199/16; Desert of, position and extent of, 29/4 and 15, etc.

Syrians, their doctrine of Confession, 80/26; rites and customs of, 80/27, etc.; alphabet of, 80/29; their views concerning the descent of peoples, and title of Chan, 145/18-146/20.

Table, of Breaking of Bread, at Tiberias, 78/8 (*see Note*); of Last Supper, part of, at Mt. Sion, 60/21.

Tabor, Mt., description and scriptural associations of, 76/11, etc.; the Last Judgement to be held on, 76/31.

Tabriz, city of, greatest city in Armenia, 172/3.

Taknia, enchanter, 85/15; Mohammedans say Blessed Virgin doubted if Angel Gabriel were he, 85/18, etc.

Taneez, Jewish name for Mt. Ararat, 98/33.

Tanghot, second Tartar lineage, 146/33.

Tangut Chan, *see* Thiant Chan.

Tapirobane (Ceylon), isle of, described, 200/6, etc.; hills of gold in, watched by ants, 200/28.

Tarmegite, land of, described, 103/29.

Tarshish, land of, position of, 169/3; obedient to Great Chan, 170/26; customs of inhabitants of, 169/6; King of one of the Magi, 169/4. *See Note.*

Tarsus, city of, 215/19.

Tartaire, *see* Tartary, cloth of.

Tartars, ruled Holy Land, 49/11; evil habits of, 82/26, 146/28; descendants of Ham, 146/23; greatest of the seven chief nations of Asia, 146/31; rise of, 146/25-149/24; why they worship the owl, 148/28 149/7; why they worship the number nine, 149/16-35; their belief in God, 152/1, 163/24; law and customs of, in Cathay, 163/1-168/27; religious beliefs of, 152/1, 163/24-29; superstitions of, 164/9, etc.; condition of Tartar women, 165/3, etc.; food and drink of, 82/26, 165/14, etc.; do not respect strangers, 165/12; dirty habits of, 165/23; warfare of, 84/1, 166/3 and 33; their views on nakedness, 166/24; description of, 167/7; funeral customs of, 167/13-168/7; their idea of the future life, 167/31; *see also* Tartary and Emperor of Tartars.

Tartars, Emperor of, Batu, of Golden Horde, 83/7; account of first chan, 146/35-149/24; imperial family of, 163/30-164/8; method and ceremonial of election of Emperor, 168/7, etc.; *see also* Chan and Cathay.

Tartary, 3/24; evil climate and conditions of, 82/27-84/16, 217/1; routes to, 96/15, 98/19; Caydon, the Tartar city in China, described, 140/18; once Christian, 199/16; held of Great Chan, 216/35; on way to Jerusalem, 216/34; *see also* Tartars, Cathay, Batn, etc.

Tartary, cloth of, 24/19, 116/25; in Great Chan's household, 152/27, 153/1; Tartars clothed in, 143/3; offered to Emperor of Tartars at his coronation, 168/27.

Taton, the Tartar city, *see* Caydon and Gaydo.

Tattooing, in Sumatra, 124/26.

Tauris, city of, formerly called Faxis, described, 99/21.

Taurizo, city of, *see* Tabriz.

Taverns, preferred to churches, 88/34.

Techee (Tekoah), town of, grave of Amos the prophet at, 211/17.

Telling of beads, in Nacumera, 130/28.

Tell Keimûn, *see* Cain, Mt.

Teman, city of, in land of Job, 100/29.

Tempests, in Tartary, 83/2; not in Isle of Brahmans, frequent in the West, 195/1, etc.

Temple, at Jerusalem, described, 53/22, etc.; Canons Regular at, 54/20,

- 58/13; Charlemagne in, 54/23; burnt by Titus, 54/33; rebuilt twice, 55/5 and 11; Saracen reverence for, 55/20; dimensions and description of, 55/28-56/30; names of, 57/33; David not allowed to build, 57/24; Scriptural associations of, 57/34-58/36.
- Templars, Knights, *see* Hospitallers.
- Ten Commandments, in Ark of Covenant, 56/14; obeyed by Brahmans, 194/15.
- Ten Tribes, 71/18 (*see* Note); enclosed in Scythian Mts., 176/20.
- Terah (Thare), Abraham's father, 102/5.
- Termegite, *see* Tarmegite.
- Tesbria, in Greek Archipelago, 10/10.
- Tessue, son of Thiant Chan, 164/1.
- Thaby, name for giant reeds in Pathen, 126/33.
- Thamy (Don), River, 95/21.
- Thána, isle of, *see* Chana, isle of.
- Thare, *see* Terah.
- Tharse, land of, *see* Tarshish.
- Thauriso, city of, *see* Tauris.
- Thebe, River, 194/23. *See* Note.
- Thecla, St., saved finger of St. John Baptist, 71/29.
- Theft, texts used as charms against, 76/1; *see also* Robbery.
- Theman, city of, *see* Teman.
- Theodosius, Emperor, removed St. John Baptist's head to Constantinople, 71/34.
- Theophilus, of Haran, saved by Our Lady, 27/4.
- Thera, *see* Calistre.
- Thert (unleavened) bread, Greeks make Sacrament of the Altar of, 12/6 (*see* Note); Syrians use, for Sacrament, 80/29. *See* Note.
- Thiant, name of Great Chan, at time of Mandeville's visit, 163/32 (*see* note); wives and sons of, 164/1, etc.
- Thire, city of, *see* Tyre.
- Tholonayda, *see* Acre.
- Thomas, St., Apostle, 60/32; girllle given to, by Our Lady, 65/1; body once in Mesopotamia, now in Calamnia, 114/23, etc.; dooms given by hand of, 115/3, etc.; church of, described, 115/13; Idol of Juggernaut in church of, 115/17, etc.; his way of saying Mass, 200/1.
- Thomas, St., Patriarch of, head of Indian Church, compared to the Pope, 184/20; christians of, 199/31.
- Thorn (þ), letter, in English alphabet, 92/12.
- Thorns, Christ's crown of, *see* Crown.
- Thrace, 5/6, 10/18.
- Three Holy Children, names of, 21/6, etc.
- Three Kings, names of, 46/14; met at Cassan, 46/20. 100/4; quick journey of, 46/21, etc.; place where their star fell, 46/13; lands ruled by, 21/32, 104/22, 169/4.
- Thunder and lightning, in Tartary, 83/3; not among Brahmans, but in west, 195/1.
- Tiberias, city of, on Sea of Tiberias, described, 77/20, etc.; baths of, 77/25; Table of Breaking of Bread at, 78/8; site of Miracle of Loaves and Fishes near, 78/12; dart cast at Our Lord in, 78/14.
- Tiberias, sea of, 69/3; city of Tiberias on, 77/19; names of, 77/33; description of, 77/19, etc.; bridge near, 77/26; associations of, with Our Lord, 78/1, etc.; Capernaum and Sephor on, 78/18, etc.
- Tibet, *see* Ryboth.
- Tibetans, land and customs of, 205/7-206/28.
- Tiger, gives its name to R. Tigris, 203/16.
- Tigris, River, 174/29; bounds Mesopotamia, 27/6; flows from Earthly Paradise, 95/9; countries bounded by, 95/10, etc.; course of, 202/36; description of, 203/14-204/7; reason for name, 203/14, etc.
- Titus, Emperor of Rome, son of Vespasian, besieged Jerusalem, 54/29; burnt the Temple, 54/33; ill-treated the Jews, 54/33-55/3; took Ark of Covenant to Rome, 56/12.
- Tobijah, buried at Nineveh, 102/10.
- Toleration, *see* Religious Toleration.
- Tonsures, round and square, of the Georgians, 80/36.
- Toothill (an observation post, or lookout), of Rich Man, 208/1. *See* Note.
- Torrens Kishon, called Radum, 74/11.
- Tortouse (Tortosa), city of, 216/13.
- Tournaments, imaginary, produced by Enchanters, 156/24.
- Toursout, *see* Tarsus.
- Towels, rare among Tartars, 165/25.
- Trachie, *see* Thrace.
- Trachonitis, kingdom of, extent of, 77/31.
- Tracoda, isle of, inhabited by cave-dwellers who hiss like snakes, 129/35-130/10; precious stone, Tracodoun, in, 130/6.

- Tracodonn, precious stone of 60 colours, 130/6.
- Tragve, country of, obedient to Emperor of Constantinople, 10/15.
- Transfiguration, accounts of Christ's, 76, 21.
- Transmigration of Souls, believed in by Monks at Hangehow, 137/23, etc.
- Transmontane, name for Polar or Lode Star, 119/23.
- Treacle, *see* Triacle.
- Trebizond (Trapazond), city of, 98/20; formerly haven of Pontus Euxinus, 96/19; description of, 96/19, etc.; St. Athanasius buried at, 96/22; empire of, once held of Emperor of Constantinople, but usurped by his deputy, 97/2.
- Trees, of Sun and Moon, 32/28, 198/26; worshipped, 109/17; producing honey, flour and poison, 126/9-31; dried up at death of Christ, 44/33-45/3; tree that sprang up on night of Blessed Virgin's Conception, 58/21; tree that grew from burning dart cast at Our Lord, 78/15, etc.; trees bearing clove and gylofres, etc., 176/13; ephemeral trees in India, 182/8; bearing cotton, 178/26; cotton and nut trees, 192/27 and 36; incombustible and rotless, 192/34; *see also* Dirpe.
- Triacle, 126/15.
- Trinity, Holy, present at Christ's Baptism, 69/23; three persons of, accepted by Saracens, 87/23, and by Indians, 181/12; token of, 214/6; unknown to heathens, 208/20.
- Tripoli, city of, 212/25; 216/15; destroyed by Sultan of Egypt, 22/33.
- Troy, ruins of, on Hellespont 10/5, etc.; destruction of, referred to, 18/27; Eneas of, 26/34; Hadrian of lineage of, 55/10. *See* Note.
- T'siningchow, *see* Sugarmago.
- Turcopuli, country of, 10/14.
- Turkestan, on way to India, 170/22; position and description of, 169/8, etc., 171/12.
- Turkey, kingdom of, 3/23; 171/30; 172/17; on way to Jerusalem, 13/23, 215/2; provinces and extent of, 174/14, etc.; once Christian, 159/16.
- Turkish bows, Amazons shoot with, 103/16.
- Turks, 16/17; 97/4; possessions of, 14/12; ruled Holy Land, 49/11; Erzerum wasted by, 98/22; took Nicæa from Emperor of Constantinople, 215/4.
- Turpentine, a counterfeit for balm, 32/34.
- Turqueman (Turcoman) = Tympieman, sultan, 22/24. *See* Note.
- Tuscany, on way to Cairo, 35/23.
- Two-headed geese, in Ceylon, 132/9.
- Tympieman (El-Mo'izz Eybek), 6th sultan of Egypt, let St. Louis be ransomed, 22/21. *See* Note.
- Tyre (Thire), city of, 213/7; called Surrye, described, 18/3; Scriptural associations of, 18/10-20; rubies found on sea-side of, 18/9; Church of St. Saviour's at, 18/20; Agenore, described as the father of Dido, reigned at, 18/28; a day's journey from Acre, 19/8.
- Uber, name of Caspian Mts., 176/19. *See* Note.
- Unclean beasts, eating of, forbidden in Greek Church, 12/35.
- Uction, Greek use of, restricted to Baptism, 12/11.
- Unicorns, 199/2.
- Unity of God, doctrine of, rejected by Saracens, 87/23; believed in by Tartars, 163/24, and by Brahmans, 197/6.
- Unmarried women, in Mancy, wear token to show unmarried state, 136/12.
- Ur, city of, birth-place of Abraham, 102/4.
- Urchins, (hedgehogs), called Porez de Spyne, 193/22.
- Urghendj, *see* Chorasme, city of.
- Usury, not forbidden as deadly sin, by Greek Church, 12/19.
- Valair, 4th Tartar lineage, 146/34.
- Vale Perilous, the, also called Vale Enchanted, or of Devils, described, 187/3-189/22; Mandeville and his company's passage through, 188/9-189/22; precautions of good Christians before entering, 187/32.
- Valleys, formed by Noah's flood, 202/4, etc.
- Valona, haven of, 36/18, 213/28, 214/29.
- Vapa, name for wine in Geth, 100/12. *See* Note.
- Venice, 35/18, 36/22, 96/17, 213/25, 214/28; distance of from Acre, 19/12; St. Mark's bones at, 36/32; merchants of, 91/12, 105/22, 140/7;

- compared with Hangchow, 136/29; distance of, from Cathay, 140/9, 180/23; gulf of, 35/19.
- Venom, from trees, used by Jews to poison Christians, 126/12, etc.; from bark of trees, 126/29; from serpents, 193/19.
- Ventours (*misprint in text* for Veutours = vultures), do reverence to Great Chan, 156/12.
- Vermín, expelled from Convent of Sinai, 40/21, etc.
- Vespasian, father of Titus, 54/29.
- Vines, surround Bethlehem, 47/3; giant vines, 176/15; vine planted by St. John the Evangelist, 41/4; golden vine in Great Chan's palace, 143/22; vines of Gaddy, name for balm, 66/24.
- Violastres, Indian diamonds called, 106/20.
- Virgin Birth of Christ, Saracen belief in, 85/8; Brahman belief in, 198/2.
- Virgin Mary, 1/10; church of, at Cairo, 21/1; rested on site of church of St. Nicholas, 46/34; spots of her milk on stones, 46/36; learned Psalter sitting on Rock Bethel, 57/14; bed of, 58/17; conception of, 58/20; dwelt and died at Mt. Sion, 59/37; body of, borne by Apostles to Vale of Jehoshaphat, 60/2, 61/13; church of, at Mt. Sion, 59/36-60/7; heard Angels sing Mass, 60/28; Visitation of, 62/14; Sepulchre and age of, 63/5; gave her girdle to St. Thomas, in a vision, 65/1; her death foretold by Angel, 65/9; begotten at Jerusalem, born at Nazareth, 75/1; married when fourteen, at Nazareth, 75/3; dates in her life, 76/6, etc.; miraculous image of, at Sardenak, 82/21; Mohammedan belief concerning, 85/3-86/36, 87/29-35; Brahman prophecy of Christ's birth of, 198/2; use of images of, 208/29; church of, outside Rames, where Christ appeared to her, 214/4.
- Virgo, sign of, 28/5.
- Vivary, containing valuables, at Calamia, 116/11; in Great Chan's palace, described, 141/2.
- Volga, River, *see* Ethill.
- Vultures, *see* Ventours, *misprint in text* for Veutours.
- Wales, outside the Seven Climates, 124/12.
- War, unknown among Brahmans, 195/2; carrier-pigeons used in, 79/7.
- Warkes, name for elephants in Calonak, 128/2.
- Water, that freezes by night only, 212/21.
- Water-leeches, of great size, in Ceylon, 131/29.
- Weather, foretold by volcanoes, 36/8; good weather in Isle of Brahmans, 195/1.
- Weeping Pillars, at Jerusalem, 51/14.
- Well, of Moses, 37/17, 40/31; of Living Waters, 18/12; of Jacob, 70/32; in which Joseph was cast, 71/13; of Job, which changes colour four times a year, 72/18, etc.; of Gabriel, in which Christ bathed, 75/15, etc.; well beside which Lamech slew Cain, 77/14; hot and cold, 104/4; of Youth, 113/3; wells flowing with wine, milk and honey, 185/27; of Earthly Paradise, 202/28, the source of all sweet waters, 203/2.
- West Sea, 79/5. *See* Note.
- Wheat, scarce in India, 180/34.
- Whips, Tartars do not strike horses with handles of, 164/17.
- White Knight, The, apparition of, to Jenghiz Chan, 147/1, etc., 149/12.
- Whit-Saturday, 199/21.
- Widows, burning of, *see* Suttee.
- Wieselburg (Neiseburgh), castle of, 4/33.
- Wine, of Martha, 14/25; of Cyprus, 16/21; forbidden by Mahomet, 47/9, 91/27; secretly drunk by Saracens, 91/29; drunk by women only, in Lomb, 114/18; called "Bigon" in China, 137/1; not drunk by Tartars, 165/33, 217/3, or in Tarshish or Khwarezm, 169/7-17; conduit of wine, etc., 185/27.
- Winters, two each year in Taprobane, 200/10.
- Women, head-dress of married, 142/14, 163/9, and of unmarried, 136/12; Tartar women practise most trades, 165/3; dressed as men, 163/7, 165/8; drink wine and shave their beards, in Lomb, 114/18; feet of, bound, 207/16, etc.; with eyes of precious stones, that kill with a look, 190/8, etc.; that grieve for birth and rejoice for death of children, 191/2, etc.: *see also* Marriage, Suttee, Children, Divorce, Polyandry, etc.
- Wood, incombustible and hard, 192/30-35.

- Wool, price of, compared with silk, 153/5; wool-bearing trees, *see* Cotton.
- World, *see* Earth.
- Worms, white and great, with black heads, in Calonak, 129/3.
- Wrecks, caused by Adamant Rocks, seen by Mandeville, 180/10, etc.
- Xanadu, city of, *see* Saduz.
- Yalovatch, *see* Antioch the Less.
- Yangchow, city of, *see* Janichay.
- Yangtse Kiang (Dalay, Balay), River, description and course of, 138/9 (*see* Note); city of Menzu on, 139/25.
- Yezd, city of, *see* Geth, and note on page 100/9.
- Yogh (5), letter, in English alphabet, 92/12.
- Youth, *see* under Fountain.
- Ypocras, *see* Hippocrates.
- Ypotaynes, *see* Hippopotamus.
- Yroga, name of Tartars' God of Nature, 163/29. *See* Note.
- Ysya Chan, name of Jenghiz Chan's statutes, 147/28.
- Zaccheus, the dwarf, of Jericho, 65/14.
- Zacharias, altar near which he was slain, 57/36.
- Zacharias, priest, 57/18.
- Zacharias, prophet, tomb of, 64/2.
- Zalmunna, death of, 74/16.
- Zarim, city of, *see* Jezreel.
- Zarocon (Sheerkooch), first Sultan of Egypt, 22/6. *See* Note.
- Zebah, death of, 74/16. *See* Note.
- Zebedee, father of SS. James and John, 77/12; 78/8.
- Zeboim, *see* Seboym.
- Zebulun, tribe of, 78/26.
- Zedewall, spice, in Java, 125/15.
- Zeeb, death of, 74/16. *See* Note.
- Zenomyne, St., shrine of, in Cyprus, 17/21. *See* Note.
- Zerah, *see* Are.
- Zinglantz (Cranganor), city of, in Pepper Forest, 111/33.
- Zoar, city of, 66/30, 68/12; in Dead Sea, 67/29; dwelling-place of Lot, and saved by him, 67/31, etc.
- Zodiac, signs of, in Ark of Covenant, 56/27. *See* Note.

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY
RICHARD CLAY & SONS, LIMITED,
BUNGAY, SUFFOLK.

Early English Text Society.

OFFICERS AND COMMITTEE:

Honorary Director:

SIR I. GOLLANCZ, F.B.A., Litt.D., KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON, W.C. 2.

Assistant Director and Secretary:

MISS MABEL DAY, D.Lit., 15, ELGIN COURT, ELGIN AVENUE,
LONDON, W. 9.

American Committee { Chairmen : Prof. G. L. KITTREDGE, Harvard Coll., Cambr., Mass.
Prof. J. W. BRIGHT, Johns Hopkins Univ., Baltimore.
Hon. Sec. : Prof. CARLETON BROWN, Bryn Mawr Coll., Penn., U.S.A.

DR. HENRY BRADLEY, F.B.A., D.Lit. SIR SIDNEY LEE, F.B.A., Litt.D.

PROFESSOR R. W. CHAMBERS, D.Lit. MR. HENRY LITTLEHALES.

REV. DR. ANDREW CLARK. PROFESSOR A. W. POLLARD, C.B.,
F.B.A.

MR. W. A. DALZIEL.

PROFESSOR W. P. KER, F.B.A., LL.D. MR. ROBERT STEELE.

SIR G. F. WARNER, F.B.A., D.Lit.

Bankers:

THE NATIONAL PROVINCIAL AND UNION BANK OF ENGLAND,
2, PRINCES STREET, LONDON, E.C. 2.

The Subscription to the Society, which constitutes membership, is £2 2s. a year for the annual publications, from 1921 onwards, due in advance on the 1st of JANUARY, and should be paid by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money Order, crossed 'National Provincial and Union Bank of England,' to the Secretary, DR. MABEL DAY, 15, Elgin Court, Elgin Avenue, London, W. 9. The Society's Texts can also be purchased separately through a bookseller at the prices put after them in the Lists.

Any Member could save time and trouble by sending the Secretary an order on the Member's Banker to pay the subscription each January, until countermanded. A printed form for this purpose would be sent on application to the Secretary.

THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY was started by the late DR. FURNIVALL in 1864 for the purpose of bringing the mass of Early English Literature within the reach of the ordinary student, and of wiping away the reproach under which England had long rested, of having felt little interest in the monuments of her early language and life.

On the starting of the Society, so many Texts of importance were at once taken in hand by its Editors, that it became necessary in 1867 to open, besides the *Original Series* with which the Society began, an *Extra Series* which should be mainly devoted to fresh editions of all that is most valuable in texts already printed and Caxton's and other black-letter books, though first editions of MSS. will not be excluded when the convenience of issuing them demands their inclusion in the Extra Series. From 1921 there will be but one series of publications, merging the *Original* and *Extra Series*.

During the sixty years of the Society's existence, it has produced, with whatever shortcomings, and at a cost of over £35,000, an amount of good solid work for which all students of our Language, and some of our Literature, must be grateful, and which has rendered possible the beginnings (at least) of proper Histories and Dictionaries of that Language and Literature, and has illustrated the thoughts, the life, the manners and customs of our forefathers and foremothers.

The Society's experience has shown the very small number of those inheritors of the speech of Cynewulf, Chaucer, and Shakspeare, who care two guineas a year for the records of that speech. The Society has never had money enough to produce the Texts that could easily have been got ready for it; and Editors are now anxious to send to press the work they have prepared. The necessity has therefore arisen for trying to increase the number of the Society's members, and to induce its well-wishers to help it by gifts of money, either in one sum or by instalments. The Committee trust that all Members will bring before their friends and acquaintances the Society's claims for liberal support. Until all Early English MSS. are printed, no proper history of our language or social life is possible.

ORIGINAL SERIES. *(One guinea each year up to 1920.)*

1. Early English Alliterative Poems, ab. 1360 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.	16s.	1864
2. Arthur, ab. 1440, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A.	4s.	"
3. Lauder on the Dewtie of Kyngis, &c., 1556, ed. F. Hall, D.C.L.	4s.	"
4. Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, ab. 1360, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.	10s.	"
5. Hume's Orthographie and Congruitie of the Britan Tongue, ab. 1617, ed. H. B. Wheatley.	4s.	1865
6. Lancelot of the Laik, ab. 1500, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.	8s.	"
7. Genesis & Exodus, ab. 1250, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.	8s.	"
8. Morte Arthure, ab. 1440, ed. E. Brock.	7s.	"
9. Thynne on Speght's ed. of Chaucer, A.D. 1599, ed. Dr. G. Kingsley and Dr. F. J. Furnivall.	10s.	"
10. Merlin, ab. 1440, Part I., ed. H. B. Wheatley.	2s. 6d.	"
11. Lyndesay's Monarchie, &c., 1552, Part I., ed. J. Small, M.A.	3s.	"
12. Wright's Chaste Wife, ab. 1462, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A.	1s.	"
13. Seinte Marherete, 1200-1330, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne.		1866
14. Kyng Horn, Floris and Blanchefleur, &c., ed. Rev. J. R. Lumby, D.D., re-ed. Dr. G. H. McKnight.	5s.	"
15. Political, Religious, and Love Poems, ed. F. J. Furnivall.	7s. 6d.	"
16. The Book of Quinte Essence, ab. 1460-70, ed. F. J. Furnivall.	1s.	"
17. Parallel Extracts from 45 MSS. of Piers the Plowman, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.	1s.	"
18. Hali Meidenhad, ab. 1200, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne, re-edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall.	(v. under 1920.)	"
19. Lyndesay's Monarchie, &c., Part II., ed. J. Small, M.A.	3s. 6d.	"
20. Richard Rolle de Hampole, English Prose Treatises of, ed. Rev. G. G. Perry.	(v. under 1920.)	"
21. Merlin, Part II., ed. H. B. Wheatley.	4s.	"
22. Partenay or Lusignen, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.	6s.	"
23. Dan Michel's Ayenbite of Inwyt, 1340, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.	10s. 6d.	"
24. Hymns to the Virgin and Christ; the Parliament of Devils, &c., ab. 1430, ed. F. J. Furnivall.	3s.	1867
25. The Stacions of Reme, the Pilgrims' Sea-voyage, with Glene Maydenhod, ed. F. J. Furnivall.	1s.	"
26. Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse, from R. Thornton's MS., ed. Rev. G. G. Perry.	5s. [1913.]	"
27. Levins's Manipulus Vocabulorum, a ryming Dictionary, 1570, ed. H. B. Wheatley.	12s.	"
28. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, 1362 A.D.; Text A, Part I., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.	6s.	"
29. Old English Homilies (ab. 1220-30 A.D.). Series I, Part I. Edited by Rev. Dr. R. Morris.	7s.	"
30. Pierce the Ploughmans Crede, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.	2s.	"
31. Myrc's Duties of a Parish Priest, in Verse, ab. 1420 A.D., ed. E. Peacock.	4s.	1868
32. Early English Meals and Manners: the Boke of Nourture of John Russell, the Bokes of Keruynge, Curtasye, and Demeanor, the Babees Book, Urbanitatis, &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall.	12s.	"
33. The Knight de la Tour Landry, ab. 1440 A.D. A Book for Daughters, ed. T. Wright, M.A.		"
34. Old English Homilies (before 1300 A.D.). Series I, Part II., ed. R. Morris, LL.D.	8s.	"
35. Lyndesay's Works, Part III.: The Historie and Testament of Squyer Meldrum, ed. F. Hall.	2s.	"
36. Merlin, Part III. Ed. H. B. Wheatley. On Arthurian Localities, by J. S. Stuart Glennie.	12s.	1869
37. Sir David Lyndesay's Works, Part IV., Ane Satyre of the Three Estaitis. Ed. F. Hall, D.C.L.	4s.	"
38. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, Part II. Text B. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.	10s. 6d.	"
39. Alliterative Romance of the Destruction of Troy. Ed. D. Donaldson & G. A. Panton. Pt. I.	10s. 6d.	"
40. English Gilds, their Statutes and Customs, 1389 A.D. Edit. Toulmin Smith and Lucy T. Smith, with an Essay on Gilds and Trades-Unions, by P. L. Brentano.	21s.	1870
41. William Lauder's Minor Poems. Ed. F. J. Furnivall.	3s.	"
42. Bernardus De Cura Rei Familiaris, Early Scottish Prophecies, &c. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A.	2s.	"
43. Ratis Raving, and other Moral and Religious Pieces. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A.	3s.	"
44. The Alliterative Romance of Joseph of Arimathe, or the Holy Grail: from the Vernon MS.; with W. de Worde's and Pynson's Lives of Joseph; ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.	5s.	1871
45. King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, edited from 2 MSS., with an English translation, by Henry Sweet, Esq., B.A., Balliol College, Oxford. Part I.	10s.	"
46. Legends of the Holy Rood, Symbols of the Passion and Cross Poems, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.	10s.	"
47. Sir David Lyndesay's Works, Part V., ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray.	3s.	"
48. The Times' Whistle, and other Poems, by R. C., 1616; ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq.	6s.	"
49. An Old English Miscellany, containing a Bestiary, Kentish Sermons, Proverbs of Alfred, and Religious Poems of the 13th cent., ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. R. Morris, LL.D.	10s.	1872
50. King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. Part II.	10s.	"
51. The Life of St Juliana, 2 versions, A.D. 1230, with translations; ed. T. O. Cockayne & E. Brock.	2s.	"
52. Palladius on Husbandrie, englished (ab. 1420 A.D.), ed. Rev. Barton Lodge, M.A. Part I.	10s.	"
53. Old-English Homilies, Series II., and three Hymns to the Virgin and God, 13th-century, with the music to two of them, in old and modern notation; ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D.	8s.	1873
54. The Vision of Piers Plowman, Text C: Richard the Redeles (by William, the author of the Vision) and The Crowned King; Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.	18s.	"
55. Generydes, a Romance, ab. 1440 A.D., ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part I.	8s.	"

56. *The Gest Hystoriale of the Destruction of Troy*, in alliterative verse; ed. by D. Donaldson, Esq., and the late Rev. G. A. Panton. Part II. 10s. 6d. 1874
57. *The Early English Version of the "Cursor Mundi"*; in four Texts, edited by the Rev. R. Morris, M.A., LL.D. Part I, with 2 photolithographic facsimiles. 10s. 6d. "
58. *The Blickling Homilies*, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. Part I. 8s. "
59. *The "Cursor Mundi"* in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 15s. 1875
60. *Meditacyuns on the Soper of our Lorde* (by Robert of Brunne), edited by J. M. Cowper. 2s. 6d. "
61. *The Romance and Prophecies of Thomas of Erceeldoune*, from 5 MSS.; ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 10s. 6d. "
62. *The "Cursor Mundi"*, in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 15s. 1876
63. *The Blickling Homilies*, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 7s. "
64. *Francis Thynne's Embleames and Epigrams*, A.D. 1600, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 7s. "
65. *Be Domes Dæge* (Bede's *De Die Judici*), &c., ed. J. R. Lumby, B.D. 2s. "
66. *The "Cursor Mundi"*, in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part IV., with 2 autotypes. 10s. 1877
67. *Notes on Piers Plowman*, by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 21s. "
68. *The "Cursor Mundi"*, in 4 Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part V. 25s. 1878
69. *Adam Davie's 5 Dreams about Edward II.*, &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 5s. "
70. *Generydes*, a Romance, ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part II. 4s. "
71. *The Lay Folks Mass-Book*, four texts, ed. Rev. Canon Simmons. 25s. 1879
72. *Palladius on Husbandrie*, englishit (ab. 1420 A.D.). Part II. Ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. 15s. "
73. *The Blickling Homilies*, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 10s. 1880
74. *English Works of Wyclif*, hitherto unprinted, ed. F. D. Matthew, Esq. 20s. "
75. *Catholicon Anglicum*, an early English Dictionary, from Lord Monson's MS. A.D. 1483, ed., with Introduction & Notes, by S. J. Herrtage, B.A.; and with a Preface by H. B. Wheatley. 20s. 1881
76. *Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints*, in MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 10s. "
77. *Beowulf*, the unique MS. antotyped and transliterated, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D. 25s. 1882
78. *The Fifty Earliest English Wills*, in the Court of Probate, 1387-1439, ed. by F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 7s. "
79. *King Alfred's Orosius*, from Lord Tollemache's 9th century MS., Part I. ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 13s. 1883
- 79 b. *Extra Volume*. Facsimile of the Epinal Glossary, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 15s. "
80. *The Early-English Life of St. Katherine and its Latin Original*, ed. Dr. Einenkel. 12s. 1884
81. *Piers Plowman*: Notes, Glossary, &c. Part IV., completing the work, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. 18s. "
82. *Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints*, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A., LL.D. Part II. 12s. 1885
83. *The Oldest English Texts, Charters, &c.*, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 20s. "
84. *Additional Analogs to 'The Wright's Chaste Wife'*, No. 12, by W. A. Clouston. 1s. 1886
85. *The Three Kings of Cologne*. 2 English Texts, and 1 Latin, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 17s. "
86. *Prose Lives of Women Saints*, ab. 1610 A.D., ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. C. Horstmann. 12s. "
87. *The Early South-English Legendary* (earliest version), Land MS. 108, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20s. 1887
88. *Hy. Bradshaw's Life of St. Werburghe* (Pynson, 1521), ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 10s. "
89. *Vices and Virtues*, from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Dr. F. Holtlaussen. Part I. 8s. 1888
90. *Anglo-Saxon and Latin Rule of St. Benet*, interlinear Glosses, ed. Dr. H. Logeman. 12s. "
91. *Two Fifteenth-Century Cookery-Books*, ab. 1430-1450, edited by Dr. T. Austin. 10s. "
92. *Eadwine's Canterbury Psalter*, from the Trin. Cambr. MS., ab. 1150 A.D., ed. F. Harsley, B.A. Pt. I. 12s. 1889
93. *Defensor's Liber Scintillarum*, edited from the MSS. by Ernest Rhodes, B.A. 12s. "
94. *Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints*, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., Part III., ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 15s. 1890
95. *The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History*, re-ed. by Dr. Thomas Miller. Part I, § 1. 18s. "
96. *The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History*, re-ed. by Dr. Thomas Miller. Pt. I, § 2. 15s. 1891
97. *The Earliest English Prose Psalter*, edited from its 2 MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring. Part I. 15s. "
98. *Minor Poems of the Vernon MS.*, Part I., ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20s. 1892
99. *Cursor Mundi*. Part VI. Preface, Notes, and Glossary, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. "
100. *Capgrave's Life of St. Katharine*, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann, with Forewords by Dr. Furnivall. 20s. 1893
101. *Cursor Mundi*. Part VII. Essay on the MSS., their Dialects, &c., by Dr. H. Hupe. 10s. "
102. *Lanfranco's Chirurgie*, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker. Part I. 20s. 1894
103. *The Legend of the Cross*, from a 12th century MS., &c., ed. Prof. A. S. Napier, M.A., Ph.D. 7s. 6d. "
104. *The Exeter Book* (Anglo-Saxon Poems), re-edited from the unique MS. by I. Gollancz, M.A. Part I. 20s. 1895
105. *The Prymer or Lay-Folks' Prayer-Book*, Camb. Univ. MS., ab. 1420, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part I. 10s. "
106. *R. Misyng's Fire of Love and Mending of Life* (Hampole), 1434, 1435, ed. Rev. R. Harvey, M.A. 15s. 1896
107. *The English Conquest of Ireland*, A.D. 1166-1185, 2 Texts, 1425, 1440, Pt. I, ed. Dr. Furnivall. 15s. "
108. *Child-Marriages and -Divorces, Trothplights, &c.* Chester Depositions, 1561-6, ed. Dr. Furnivall. 15s. 1897
109. *The Prymer or Lay-Folks' Prayer-Book*, ab. 1420, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part II. 10s. "
110. *The Old-English Version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History*, ed. Dr. T. Miller. Part II, § 1. 15s. 1898
111. *The Old-English Version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History*, ed. Dr. T. Miller. Part II, § 2. 15s. "
112. *Merlin*, Part IV: *Outlines of the Legend of Merlin*, by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D. 15s. 1899
113. *Queen Elizabeth's Englishings of Boethius, Plutarch &c. &c.*, ed. Miss C. Pemberton. 15s. "
114. *Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints*, Part IV and last, ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 10s. 1900
115. *Jacob's Well*, edited from the unique Salisbury Cathedral MS. by Dr. A. Brandeis. Part I. 10s. "
116. *An Old-English Martyrology*, re-edited by Dr. G. Herzfeld. 10s. "
117. *Minor Poems of the Vernon MS.*, edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Part II. 15s. 1901
118. *The Lay Folks' Catechism*, ed. by Canon Simmons and Rev. H. E. Nolloth, M.A. 5s. "
119. *Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne* (1303), and its French original, re-ed. by Dr. Furnivall. Pt. I. 10s. "
120. *The Rule of St. Benet in Northern Prose and Verse & Caxton's Summary*, ed. by E. A. Kock. 15s. 1902

121. **The Laud MS. Troy-Book**, ed. from the unique Laud MS. 595, by Dr. J. E. Wülfing. Part I. 15s. 1902
122. **The Laud MS. Troy-Book**, ed. from the unique Laud MS. 595, by Dr. J. E. Wülfing. Part II. 20s. 1903
123. **Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne** (1303), and its French original, re-ed. by Dr. Furnivall. Pt. II. 10s. "
124. **Twenty-six Political and other Poems** from Digby MS. 102 &c., ed. by Dr. J. Kail. Part I. 10s. 1904
125. **Medieval Records of a London City Church**, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part I. 10s. "
126. **An Alphabet of Tales**, in Northern English, from the Latin, ed. Mrs. M. M. Banks. Part I. 10s. "
127. **An Alphabet of Tales**, in Northern English, from the Latin, ed. Mrs. M. M. Banks. Part II. 10s. 1905
128. **Medieval Records of a London City Church**, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part II. 10s. "
129. **The English Register of Godstow Nunnery**, ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Pt. I. 10s. "
130. **The English Register of Godstow Nunnery**, ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. Dr. A. Clark. Pt. II. 15s. 1906
131. **The Brut, or The Chronicle of England**, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. F. Brie. Part I. 10s. "
132. **John Metham's Works**, edited from the unique MS. by Dr. Hardin Craig. 15s. "
133. **The English Register of Osney Abbey**, by Oxford, ed. by the Rev. Dr. A. Clark. Part I. 15s. 1907
134. **The Coventry Leet Book**, edited from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dormer Harris. Part I. 15s. "
135. **The Coventry Leet Book**, edited from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dormer Harris. Part II. 15s. 1908
- 135 b. **Extra Issue.** Prof. Manly's *Piers Plowman* & its Sequence, urging the fivefold authorship of the *Fision*. 5s. [*On sale to Members only.*]
136. **The Brut, or The Chronicle of England**, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. F. Brie. Part II. 15s. "
137. **Twelfth-Century Homilies** in MS. Bodley 343, ed. by A. O. Belfour, M.A. Part I, the Text. 15s. 1909
138. **The Coventry Leet Book**, edited from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dormer Harris. Part III. 15s. "
139. **John Arderne's Treatises on Fistula in Ano, &c.**, ed. by D'Arey Power, M.D. 15s. 1910
- 139 b, c, d, e, f. **Extra Issue.** The *Piers Plowman* Controversy: b. Dr. Jusserand's 1st Reply to Prof. Manly; c. Prof. Manly's Answer to Dr. Jusserand; d. Dr. Jusserand's 2nd Reply to Prof. Manly; e. Mr. R. W. Chambers's Article; f. Dr. Henry Bradley's Rejoinder to Mr. R. W. Chambers (issued separately). 10s. [*On sale to Members only.*] "
140. **Capgrave's Lives of St. Augustine and St. Gilbert of Sempringham**, A.D. 1451, ed. by John Munro. 10s. "
141. **Earth upon Earth**, all the known texts, ed., with an Introduction, by Miss Hilda Murray, M.A. 10s. 1911
142. **The English Register of Godstow Nunnery**, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part III. 10s. "
143. **The Wars of Alexander the Great**, Thornton MS., ed. J. S. Westlake, M.A. 10s. "
144. **The English Register of Osney Abbey**, by Oxford, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part II. 10s. 1912
145. **The Northern Passion**, ed. by Miss F. A. Foster, Ph.D. Part I, the four parallel texts. 15s. "
146. **The Coventry Leet Book**, ed. Miss M. Dormer Harris. Introduction, Indexes, etc. Part IV. 10s. 1913
147. **The Northern Passion**, ed. Miss F. A. Foster, Ph.D., Introduction, French Text, Variants and Fragments, Glossary. Part II. 15s. "
- [An enlarged re-print of No. 26, *Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse*, from the Thornton MS., edited by Rev. G. G. Perry. 5s.]
148. **A Fifteenth-Century Courtesy Book and Two Franciscan Rules** edited by R. W. Chambers, M.A., Litt.D., and W. W. Seton, M.A. 7s. 6d. 1914
149. **Sixty-three Lincoln Diocese Documents**, ed. by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. 15s. "
150. **The Old-English Rule of Bp. Chrodegang**, and the *Capitula* of Bp. Theodulf, ed. Prof. Napier, Ph.D. 7s. 6d. "
151. **The Lanterne of Light**, ed. by Miss Lilian M. Swinburn, M.A. 15s. 1915
152. **Early English Homilies**, from Vesp. D. XIV., ed. by Miss Rubie D.-N. Warner. Part I, Text. 15s. "
153. **Mandeville's Travels**, ed. by Professor Paul Hamelinus. Part I, Text. 15s. 1916
154. **Mandeville's Travels** (Notes and Introduction). 15s. "
155. **The Wheatley MS.**, ed. by Miss Mabel Pay, M.A. 30s. 1917
156. **Reginald Pecock's Donet**, from Bodl. MS. 916; ed. by Miss E. Vaughan Hitchcock. 35s. 1918
157. **Harmony of the Life of Christ**, from MS. Pepys 2198, ed. by Miss Margery Goates. 15s. 1919
158. **Meditations on the Life and Passion of Christ**, from MS. Addit. 11307, ed. by Miss Charlotte D'Evelyn. 20s. "
159. **Vices and Virtues**, Part II., ed. Prof. F. Holtlaussen. 12s. 1920
- [A re-print of No. 20, *English Prose Treatises of Richard Rolle de Hampole*, ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. 5s.] "
- [A re-edition of No. 18, *Hali Meidenhad*, ed. O. Cockayne, with a variant MS., Bodl. 24, hitherto unprinted, ed. Dr. Furnivall. 12s.] "
160. **The Old English Heptateuch** (MS. Bodl. Misc. 509), ed. S. J. Crawford, M.A. 42s. 1921
161. **Alliterative Siege of Jerusalem**. 21s. [*Text in preparation.*] "
162. **Facsimile of MS. Cotton Nero A. x** (Pearl, Patience, Cleanness and Sir Gawain), Introduction by Sir I. Gollancz. 63s. 1922
163. **Book of the Foundation of St. Bartholomew's**, Smithfield, ed. the late Sir Norman Moore. 10s. 1923

EXTRA SERIES. (*One guinea each year up to 1920.*)

The Publications for 1867-1916 (one guinea each year) are:—

I. William of Palerne; or, William and the Werwolf. Re-edited by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.	13s.	1867
II. Early English Pronunciation with especial Reference to Shakspeare and Chancer, by A. J. Ellis. F.R.S. Part I.	10s.	"
III. Caxton's Book of Curtesye, in Three Versions. Ed. F. J. Furnivall.	5s.	1868
IV. Havelok the Dane. Re-edited by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.	10s.	"
V. Chaucer's Boethius. Edited from the two best MSS. by Rev. Dr. R. Morris.	12s.	"
VI. Chevelere Assigne. Re-edited from the unique MS. by Lord Aldenham, M.A.	3s.	"
VII. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part II.	10s.	1869
VIII. Queene Elizabethes Achademy, &c. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. Essays on early Italian and German Books of Courtesy, by W. M. Rossetti and Dr. E. Oswald.	13s.	"
IX. Awekeley's Fraternitye of Vacabondes, Harman's Caveat, &c. Ed. E. Viles & F. J. Furnivall.	7s. 6d.	"
X. Andrew Boorde's Introduction of Knowledge, 1547, Dyetary of Helth, 1542, Barnes in Defence of the Berde, 1542-3. Ed. F. J. Furnivall.	18s.	1870
XI. Barbour's Bruce, Part I. Ed. from MSS. and editions, by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.	12s.	"
XII. England in Henry VIII.'s Time: a Dialogue between Cardinal Pole & Lupset, by Thom. Starkey, Chaplain to Henry VIII. Ed. J. M. Cowper. Part II.	12s. (Part I. is No. XXXII, 1878, 8s.)	1871
XIII. A Supplicacyon of the Beggars, by Simon Fish, 1528-9 A.D., ed. F. J. Furnivall; with A Supplication to our Moste Soueraigne Lorde; A Supplication of the Poore Commons; and The Decaye of England by the Great Multitude of Sheep, ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq.	6s.	"
XIV. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part III.	10s.	"
XV. Robert Crowley's Thirty-One Epigrams, Voyce of the Last Trumpet, Way to Wealth, &c., A.D. 1550-1, edited by J. M. Cowper, Esq.	12s.	1872
XVI. Chaucer's Treatise on the Astrolabe. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.	6s.	"
XVII. The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D., with 4 Tracts (1542-48), ed. Dr. Murray. Part I.	10s.	"
XVIII. The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D., ed. Dr. Murray. Part II.	8s.	1873
XIX. Oure Ladyes Myroure, A.D. 1530, ed. Rev. J. H. Blunt, M.A.	24s.	"
XX. Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail (ab. 1450 A.D.), ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part I.	8s.	1874
XXI. Barbour's Bruce, Part II., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.	4s.	"
XXII. Henry Brinklow's Complaynt of Roderick Mors (ab. 1542): and The Lamentacion of a Christian against the Citie of London, made by Roderigo Mors, A.D. 1545. Ed. J. M. Cowper.	9s.	"
XXIII. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part IV.	10s.	"
XXIV. Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part II.	10s.	1875
XXV. Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I.	20s.	"
XXVI. Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part II.	14s.	1876
XXVII. Bp. Fisher's English Works (died 1535), ed. by Prof. J. E. B. Mayor. Part I, the Text.	16s.	"
XXVIII. Lovelich's Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part III.	10s.	1877
XXIX. Barbour's Bruce. Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.	21s.	"
XXX. Lovelich's Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part IV.	15s.	1878
XXXI. The Alliterative Romance of Alexander and Dindimus, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.	6s.	"
XXXII. Starkey's "England in Henry VIII.'s time." Pt. I. Starkey's Life and Letters, ed. S. J. Hertridge.	8s.	"
XXXIII. Gesta Romanorum (englisht ab. 1440), ed. S. J. Hertridge, B.A.	15s.	1879
XXXIV. The Charlemagne Romances:—1. Sir Ferumbras, from Ashm. MS. 33, ed. S. J. Hertridge.	15s.	"
XXXV. Charlemagne Romances:—2. The Sege off Melayne, Sir Otuell, &c., ed. S. J. Hertridge.	12s.	1880
XXXVI. Charlemagne Romances:—3. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. I., ed. S. J. Hertridge.	16s.	"
XXXVII. Charlemagne Romances:—4. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. II., ed. S. J. Hertridge.	15s.	1881
XXXVIII. Charlemagne Romances:—5. The Sowdone of Babylone, ed. Dr. Hansknecht.	15s.	"
XXXIX. Charlemagne Romances:—6. Rauf Colyear, Roland, Otuel, &c., ed. S. J. Hertridge, B.A.	15s.	1882
XL. Charlemagne Romances:—7. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part I.	15s.	"
XLI. Charlemagne Romances:—8. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Pt. II.	15s.	1883
XLII. Guy of Warwick: 2 texts (Achinleck MS. and Caius MS.), ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I.	15s.	"
XLIII. Charlemagne Romances:—9. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Pt. III.	15s.	1884
XLIV. Charlemagne Romances:—10. The Four Sons of Aymon, ed. Miss Octavia Richardson. Pt. I.	15s.	"
XLV. Charlemagne Romances:—11. The Four Sons of Aymon, ed. Miss O. Richardson. Pt. II.	20s.	1885
XLVI. Sir Bevis of Hamton, from the Achinleck and other MSS., ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part I.	10s.	"
XLVII. The Wars of Alexander, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D.	20s.	1886
XLVIII. Sir Bevis of Hamton, ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part II.	10s.	"
XLIX. Guy of Warwick, 2 texts (Achinleck and Caius MSS.), Pt. II., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D.	15s.	1887
L. Charlemagne Romances:—12. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part IV.	5s.	"
LI. Torrent of Portyngale, from the unique MS. in the Chetham Library, ed. E. Adam, Ph.D.	10s.	"
LII. Bullen's Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence, 1578 (ed. 1, 1564). Ed. M. & A. H. Bullen.	10s.	1888
LIII. Vicary's Anatomie of the Body of Man, 1548, ed. 1577, ed. F. J. & Percy Furnivall. Part I.	15s.	"
LIV. Caxton's Englishing of Alain Chartier's Curial, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall & Prof. P. Meyer.	5s.	"

LV. Barbour's Bruce, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. Part IV. 5s.	1889
LVI. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Pl. V., the present English Dialects. 2s. 6d.	1890
LVII. Caxton's Enseydos, A.D. 1490, coll. with its French, ed. M. T. Culley, M.A. & Dr. F. J. Furnivall, 13s.	1890
LVIII. Caxton's Blanchardyn & Eglantine, c. 1489, extracts from ed. 1595, & French, ed. Dr. L. Kellner, 17s.	1891
LIX. Guy of Warwick, 2 texts (Auchinleck and Caius MSS.), Part III., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D. 15s.	1891
LX. Lydgate's Temple of Glass, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. J. Schick. 15s.	1892
LXI. Hoccleve's Minor Poems, I., from the Philipps and Durham MSS., ed. F. J. Furnivall, Ph.D. 15s.	1892
LXII. The Chester Plays, re-edited from the MSS. by the late Dr. Hermann Deimling. Part I. 15s.	1893
LXIII. Thomas a Kempis's De Imitatione Christi, english ab. 1440, & 1502, ed. Prof. J. K. Ingram. 15s.	1893
LXIV. Caxton's Godfrey of Boleyn, or Last Siege of Jerusalem, 1481, ed. Dr. Mary N. Colvin. 15s.	1894
LXV. Sir Bevis of Hampton, ed. Prof. E. Kölbner, Ph.D. Part III. 15s.	1894
LXVI. Lydgate's and Burgh's Secrees of Philosoofres ('Governance of Kings and Princes'), ab. 1445—50, ed. R. Steele, B.A. 15s.	1895
LXVII. The Three Kings' Sons, a Romance, ab. 1500, Part I., the Text, ed. Dr. Furnivall. 10s.	1895
LXVIII. Melusine, the prose Romance, ab. 1500, Part I., the Text, ed. A. K. Donald. 20s.	1896
LXIX. Lydgate's Assembly of the Gods, ed. Prof. Oscar L. Triggs, M.A., Ph.D. 15s.	1896
LXX. The Digby Plays, edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 15s.	1897
LXXI. The Towneley Plays, ed. Geo. England and A. W. Pollard, M.A. 15s.	1897
LXXII. Hoccleve's Regement of Princes, 1411-12, and 14 Poems, edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 15s.	1898
LXXIII. Hoccleve's Minor Poems, II., from the Ashburnham MS., ed. I. Gollancz, M.A. [At Press.]	1898
LXXIV. Secreta Secretorum, 3 prose Englishings, one by Jas Yonge, 1428, ed. R. Steele, B.A. Part I. 20s.	1898
LXXV. Speculum Guidonis de Warwyk, edited by Miss G. L. Morrill, M.A., Ph.D. 10s.	1899
LXXVI. George Ashby's Poems, &c., ed. Miss Mary Bateson. 15s.	1899
LXXVII. Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, 1426, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Part I. 10s.	1900
LXXVIII. The Life and Death of Mary Magdalene, by T. Robinson, c. 1620, ed. Dr. H. O. Sommer. 5s.	1900
LXXIX. Caxton's Dialogues, English and French, c. 1483, ed. Henry Bradley, M.A. 10s.	1900
LXXX. Lydgate's Two Nightingale Poems, ed. Dr. Otto Glanville. 5s.	1901
LXXXI. Gower's Confessio Amantis, edited by G. C. Macaulay, M.A. Vol. I. 15s.	1901
LXXXII. Gower's Confessio Amantis, edited by G. C. Macaulay, M.A. Vol. II. 15s.	1901
LXXXIII. Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, 1426, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Pt. II. 10s.	1902
LXXXIV. Lydgate's Reason and Sensuality, edited by Dr. E. Sieper. Part I. 5s.	1902
LXXXV. Alexander Scott's Poems, 1568, from the unique Edinburgh MS., ed. A. K. Donald, B.A. 10s.	1902
LXXXVI. William of Shoreham's Poems, re-ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. M. Konrath. Part I. 10s.	1903
LXXXVII. Two Coventry Corpus-Christi Plays, re-edited by Hardin Craig, M.A. 10s.	1903
LXXXVIII. Le Morte Arthur, re-edited from the Harleian MS. 2252 by Prof. Bruce, Ph.D. 15s.	1903
LXXXIX. Lydgate's Reason and Sensuality, edited by Dr. E. Sieper. Part II. 15s.	1904
XC. English Fragments from Latin Medieval Service-Books, ed. by Hy. Littlehales. 5s.	1904
XCI. The Macro Plays, from Mr. Gurney's unique MS., ed. Dr. Furnivall and A. W. Pollard, M.A. 10s.	1904
XCII. Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, Part III., ed. Miss Loeck. 10s.	1905
XCIII. Lovelich's Romance of Merlin, from the unique MS., ed. Dr. E. A. Kock, Ph.D. Part I. 10s.	1905
XCIV. Respublica, a Play on Social England, A.D. 1553, ed. L. A. Magnus, LL.B. 12s.	1905
XCV. Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail, Pt. V.: The Legend of the Holy Grail, by Dorothy Kempe. 6s.	1906
XCVI. Mir's Festival, edited from the MSS. by Dr. Erbe. Part I. 12s.	1906
XCVII. Lydgate's Troy Book, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part I, Books I and II. 15s.	1906
XCVIII. Skelton's Magnificence, edited by Dr. R. L. Ramsay, with an Introduction. 7s. 6d.	1907
XCIX. The Romance of Emaré, re-edited from the MS. by Miss Edith Rickert, Ph.D. 7s. 6d.	1907
C. The Harrowing of Hell, and The Gospel of Nicodemus, re-ed. by Prof. Hulme, M.A., Ph.D. 15s.	1907
CI. Songs, Carols, &c., from Richard III's Balliol MS., edited by Dr. Roman Dyboski. 15s.	1908
CII. Promptorium Parvulorum, the 1st English-Latin Dictionary, ed. Rev. A. L. Mayhew, M.A. 21s.	1908
CIII. Lydgate's Troy Book, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part II, Book III. 10s.	1909
CIV. The Non-Cycle Mystery Plays, re-edited by O. Waterhouse, M.A. 15s.	1909
CV. The Tale of Beryn, with the Pardoner and Tapster, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall and W. G. Stone. 15s.	1910
CVI. Lydgate's Troy Book, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part III. 15s.	1910
CVII. Lydgate's Minor Poems, edited by Dr. H. N. MacCracken. Part I, Religious Poems. 15s.	1911
CVIII. Lydgate's Siege of Thebes, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. Dr. A. Erdmann. Pt. I, The Text. 15s.	1911
CIX. Partonope, re-edited from its 3 MSS. by Dr. A. T. Böttcher. The Texts. 15s.	1912
CX. Caxton's Mirrour of the World, with all the woodcuts, ed. by O. H. Prior, M.A., Litt.D. 15s.	1912
CXI. Caxton's History of Jason, the Text, Part I, ed. by John Munro. 15s.	1913
CXII. Lovelich's Romance of Merlin, ed. from the unique MS. by Prof. E. A. Kock, Ph.D. Pt. II. 15s.	1913
CXIII. Poems by Sir John Salusbury, Robert Chester, and others, from Christ Church MS. 184, &c., ed. by Prof. Carleton Brown, Ph.D. 15s.	1914
CXIV. The Gild of St. Mary, Lichfield, ed. by the late Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 15s.	1914
CXV. The Chester Plays. Part II, re-edited by Dr. Matthews. 15s.	1915
CXVI. The Pauline Epistles, ed. Miss M. J. Powell. 15s.	1915
CXVII. Bp. Fisher's English Works, Pt. II, ed. by the Rev. Ronald Bayne. 15s.	1916
CXVIII. The Craft of Nombrynge, ed. by R. Steele, B.A. 15s.	1916
CXIX. The Owl and Nightingale, 2 Texts parallel, ed. by the late G. F. H. Sykes and J. H. G. Grattan. 15s. [At Press.]	1917
CXX. Ludus Coventrie, ed. by Miss K. S. Block, M.A.	1917

ORIGINAL SERIES.

Forthcoming issues will be chosen from the following:—

- The Alliterative Siege of Jerusalem, edited by the late Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. [*At Press.*]
 A Stanzaic Exposition of the Feasts of the Church and the Life of Christ based on the *Legenda Aurea*, ed. from the MSS. Harl. 3909, Harl. 2250, and Addit. 38666, by Miss F. A. Foster, Ph.D. [*At Press.*]
 The Earliest English Apocalypse with a Commentary, edited by Dr. Anna C. Paves. [*At Press.*]
 Trevisa's Dialogus inter Militem et Clericum, Sermon by FitzRalph, and Begynnyng of the World, edited from the MSS. by Aaron J. Perry, M.A. [*At Press.*]
 The Sege or Battail of Troy, ed. by Miss Barnicle.
 Three Old English Prose Tracts, from MS. Cott. Vitell. A. XV.; ed. by Dr. S. I. Rypins. [*At Press.*]
 The Folewer to the Donet, ed. by Miss E. Vaughan Hitchcock.
-

EXTRA SERIES.

The Publications due up to 1920 will probably be chosen from:—

- Lydgate's Minor Poems, ed. Dr. H. N. MacCracken. Part II, **Secular Poems.** [*At Press.*]
 Lydgate's Troy Book, ed. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part IV, Introduction, Notes, &c. [*At Press.*]
 Lydgate's Siege of Thebes, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. Dr. A. Erdmann. Part II, Notes, &c.
 Piers Plowman, the A Text, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. R. W. Chambers, M.A., D.Lit., and J. H. G. Grattan, M.A. [*At Press.*]
 King Alisaunder, two parallel texts, ed. from Lincoln's Inn MS. 150 and Laud. Misc. 622 by L. F. Powell, Esq.
 Caxton's Paris and Vienne, ed. by O. H. Prior, Litt.D.
 Interludium de Clerico et Puella and Dux Moraud, ed. Prof. J. M. Manly.

Other texts are in preparation.

April 1923.

PUBLISHER:

LONDON: HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIV. PRESS, AMEN CORNER, E.C. 4.

PR	Early English Text
1119	Society
A2	[Publications]
no.153-	Original series
154	

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH

